Title 37 Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

CHAPTER I --PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

SUBCHAPTER A --GENERAL PATENTS

PART 1 --RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

SUBPART A --GENERAL PROVISIONS

GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

§ 1.1 Addresses for correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office.

(a) Except for paragraphs (a)(3)(i) and (ii), and (d)(1) of this section, all correspondence intended for the United States Patent and Trademark Office must be addressed to either "Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231" or to specific areas within the Office as set out in paragraphs (a)(1), (2) and (3)(iii) of this section. When appropriate, correspondence should also be marked for the attention of a particular office or individual.

(1) Patent correspondence. All correspondence concerning patent matters processed by organizations reporting to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents should be addressed to "Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231."

(2) Trademark correspondence. (i) Send all trademark filings and correspondence, except as specified below or unless submitting electronically, to: Assistant Commissioner for Trademarks, 2900 Crystal Drive, Arlington, Virginia 22202-3513.

(ii) Send trademark-related documents for the Assignment Division to record to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignment, Washington, DC 20231.

(iii) Send requests for certified or uncertified copies of trademark applications and registrations, other than coupon orders for uncertified copies of registrations, to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 10, Washington, DC 20231.

(iv) Send requests for coupon orders for uncertified copies of registrations to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 9, Washington, DC 20231.

(v) An applicant may transmit an application for trademark registration electronically, but only if the applicant uses the Patent and Trademark Office's electronic form.

(3) Office of Solicitor correspondence. (i) Correspondence relating to pending litigation required by court rule or order to be served on the Solicitor shall be hand-delivered to the Office of the Solicitor or shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, Virginia 22215; or such other address as may be designated in writing in the litigation. See § § 1.302(c) and 2.145(b)(3) for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

(ii) Correspondence relating to disciplinary proceedings pending before an Administrative Law Judge or the Commissioner shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 16116, Arlington, Virginia 22215.

(iii) All other correspondence to the Office of the Solicitor shall be addressed to: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231.

(iv) Correspondence improperly addressed to a Post Office Box specified in paragraphs (a)(3) (i) and (ii) of this section will not be filed elsewhere in the Patent and Trademark Office, and may be returned.

(b) Letters and other communications relating to international applications during the international stage and prior to the assignment of a national serial number should be additionally marked "Box PCT."

(c) Requests for reexamination should be additionally marked "Box Reexam."

(d) Maintenance fee correspondence.

(1) Payments of maintenance fees in patents not submitted electronically over the Internet should be mailed to: United States Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 371611, Pittsburgh, PA 15250-1611.

(2) Correspondence related to maintenance fees other than payments of maintenance fees in patents is not to be mailed to P.O. Box 371611, Pittsburgh, PA 15250-1611, but must be mailed to: Box M Correspondence, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

(e) Communications relating to interferences and applications or patents involved in an interference should be additionally marked "BOX INTERFERENCE."

(f) All applications for extension of patent term and any communications relating thereto intended for the Patent and Trademark Office should be additionally marked "Box Patent Ext." When appropriate, the communication should also be marked to the attention of a particular individual, as where a decision has been rendered.

(g) [Reserved]

(h) In applications under section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(b), all statements of use filed under section 1(d) of the Act, and requests for extensions of time therefor, should be additionally marked "Box ITU."

(i) The filing of all provisional applications and any communications relating thereto should be additionally marked "Box Provisional Patent Application."

NOTE: Sections 1.1 to 1.26 are applicable to trademark cases as well as to national and international patent cases except for provisions specifically directed to patent cases. See § 1.9 for definitions of "national application" and "international application."

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; 53 FR 16413, May 9, 1988; 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989; 60 FR 20220, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 56439, 56446, Nov. 1, 1996; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999; 66 FR 39447, 39448, July 31, 2001]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 39447, 39448, July 31, 2001, revised the introductory text of paragraph (a), and revised paragraph (d), effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

§ 1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent and Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

§ 1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.

Applicants and their attorneys or agents are required to conduct their business with the Patent and Trademark Office with decorum and courtesy. Papers presented in violation of this requirement will be submitted to the Commissioner and will be returned by the Commissioner's direct order. Complaints against examiners and other employees must be made in correspondence separate from other papers.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 61 FR 56439, 56446, Nov. 1, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 56439, 56446, Nov. 1, 1996, revised this section, effective Dec. 2, 1996.]

§ 1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.

(a) Correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office comprises:

(1) Correspondence relating to services and facilities of the Office, such as general inquiries, requests for publications supplied by the Office, orders for printed copies of patents or trademark registrations, orders for copies of records, transmission of assignments for recording, and the like, and

(2) Correspondence in and relating to a particular application or other proceeding in the Office. See particularly the rules relating to the filing, processing, or other proceedings of national applications in subpart B, § § 1.31 to 1.378; of international applications in subpart C, § § 1.401 to 1.499; of ex parte reexaminations of patents in subpart D, § § 1.501 to 1.570; of interferences in subpart E, § § 1.601 to 1.690; of extension of patent term in subpart F, § § 1.710 to 1.785; of inter partes reexaminations of patents in subpart H, § § 1.902 to 1.997; and of trademark applications § § 2.11 to 2.189.

(b) Since each file must be complete in itself, a separate copy of every paper to be filed in a patent or trademark application, patent file, trademark registration file, or other proceeding must be furnished for each file to which the paper pertains, even though the contents of the papers filed in two or more files may be identical. The filing of duplicate copies of correspondence in the file of an application, patent, trademark registration file, or other proceeding should be avoided, except in situations in which the Office requires the filing of duplicate copies. The Office may dispose of duplicate copies of correspondence in the file of an application, patent, trademark registration file, or other proceeding.

(c) Since different matters may be considered by different branches or sections of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, each distinct subject, inquiry or order must be contained in a separate paper to avoid confusion and delay in answering papers dealing with different subjects.

(d)(1) Each piece of correspondence, except as provided in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section, filed in an application, patent file, trademark registration file, or other proceeding in the Office which requires a person's signature, must:

(i) Be an original, that is, have an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person; or

(ii) Be a direct or indirect copy, such as a photocopy or facsimile transmission(§ 1.6(d)), of an original. In the event that a copy of the original is filed, the original should be retained as evidence of authenticity. If a question of authenticity arises, the Office may require submission of the original; or

(iii) Where an electronically transmitted trademark filing is permitted, the person who signs the filing must either:

(A) Place a symbol comprised of numbers and/or letters between two forward slash marks in the signature block on the electronic submission; and print, sign and date in permanent ink, and maintain a paper copy of the electronic submission; or

(B) Sign the verified statement using some other form of electronic signature specified by the Commissioner.

(2) The presentation to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) of any paper by a party, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, constitutes a certification under § 10.18(b) of this chapter. Violations of § 10.18(b)(2) of this chapter by a party, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, may result in the imposition of sanctions under § 10.18(c) of this chapter. Any practitioner violating § 10.18(b) may also be subject to disciplinary action. See § § 10.18(d) and 10.23(c)(15).

(e) Correspondence requiring a person's signature and relating to registration to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases, enrollment and disciplinary investigations, or disciplinary proceedings must be submitted with an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person.

(f) When a document that is required by statute to be certified must be filed, a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of the certification is not acceptable.

(g) An applicant who has not made of record a registered attorney or agent may be required to state whether assistance was received in the preparation or prosecution of the patent application, for which any compensation or consideration was given or charged, and if so, to disclose the name or names of the person or persons providing such assistance. Assistance includes the preparation for the applicant of the specification and amendments or other papers to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, as well as other assistance in such matters, but does not include merely making drawings by draftsmen or stenographic services in typing papers.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1982; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 53 FR 47807, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 54501, Oct. 22, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53180, Oct. 10, 1997; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999; 65 FR 54604, 54656, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999, amended paragraphs (a) and (d), effective Oct. 30, 1999; 65 FR 54604, 54656, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (b) and (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (a)(2), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.5 Identification of application, patent or registration.

(a) No correspondence relating to an application should be filed prior to receipt of the application number from the Patent and Trademark Office. When a letter directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerns a previously filed application for a patent, it must identify on the top page in a conspicuous location, the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number; e.g., 07/123,456), or the serial number and filing date assigned to that application by the Patent and Trademark Office, or the international application number of the international application. Any correspondence not containing such identification will be returned to the sender where a return address is available. The returned correspondence will be accompanied by a cover letter which will indicate to the sender that if the returned correspondence is resubmitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within two weeks of the mailing date on the cover letter, the original date of receipt of the correspondence will be considered by the Patent and Trademark Office as the date of receipt of the correspondence. Applicants may use either the Certificate of Mailing or Transmission procedure under § 1.8 or the Express Mail procedure under § 1.10 for resubmissions of returned correspondence if they desire to have the benefit of the date of deposit with the United States Postal Service. If the returned correspondence is not resubmitted within the two-week period, the date of receipt of the resubmission will be considered to be the date of receipt of the correspondence. The two-week period to resubmit the returned correspondence will not be extended. In addition to the application number, all letters directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerning applications for patents should also state the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date of filing the same, and, if known, the group art unit or other unit within the Patent and Trademark Office responsible for considering the letter and the name of the examiner or other person to which it has been assigned.

(b) When the letter concerns a patent other than for purposes of paying a maintenance fee, it should state the number and date of issue of the patent, the name of the patentee, and the title of the invention. For letters concerning payment of a maintenance fee in a patent, see the provisions of § 1.366(c).

(c)(1) A letter about a trademark application should identify the serial number, the name of the applicant, and the mark.

(2) A letter about a registered trademark should identify the registration number, the name of the registrant, and the mark.

(d) A letter relating to a reexamination proceeding should identify it as such by the number of the patent undergoing reexamination, the reexamination request control number assigned to such proceeding and, if known, the group art unit and name of the examiner to which it has been assigned.

(e) When a paper concerns an interference, it should state the names of the parties and the number of the interference. The name of the examiner-in-chief assigned to the interference (§ 1.610) and the name of the party filing the paper should appear conspicuously on the first page of the paper.

(f) When a paper concerns a provisional application, it should identify the application as such and include the application number.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 53 FR 47807, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 54501, Oct. 22, 1993; 61 FR 42790, 42802, Aug. 19, 1996; 61 FR 56439, 56446, Nov. 1, 1996; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (c), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 1.6 Receipt of correspondence.

(a) Date of receipt and Express Mail date of deposit. Correspondence received in the Patent and Trademark Office is stamped with the date of receipt except as follows:

(1) The Patent and Trademark Office is not open for the filing of correspondence on any day that is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. Except for correspondence transmitted by facsimile under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, or filed electronically under paragraph (a)(4) of this section, no correspondence is received in the Office on Saturdays, Sundays, or Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

(2) Correspondence filed in accordance with § 1.10 will be stamped with the date of deposit as "Express Mail" with the United States Postal Service.

(3) Correspondence transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office will be stamped with the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, in which case the date stamped will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

(4) Trademark-related correspondence transmitted electronically will be stamped with the date on which the Office receives the transmission.

(b) Patent and Trademark Office Post Office pouch. Mail placed in the Patent and Trademark Office pouch up to midnight on any day, except Saturdays, Sundays and Federal holidays within the District of Columbia, by the post office at Washington, DC, serving the Patent and Trademark Office, is considered as having been received in the Patent and Trademark Office on the day it was so placed in the pouch by the U.S. Postal Service.

(c) Correspondence delivered by hand. In addition to being mailed, correspondence may be delivered by hand during hours the Office is open to receive correspondence.

(d) Facsimile transmission. Except in the cases enumerated below, correspondence, including authorizations to charge a deposit account, may be transmitted by facsimile. The receipt date accorded to the correspondence will be the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See § 1.6(a)(3). To facilitate proper processing, each transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application or other proceeding before the Patent and Trademark Office. The application number of a patent or trademark application, the control number of a reexamination proceeding, the interference number of an interference proceeding, the patent number of a patent, or the registration number of a trademark should be entered as a part of the sender's identification on a facsimile cover sheet. Facsimile transmissions are not permitted and if submitted, will not be accorded a date of receipt, in the following situations:

(1) Correspondence as specified in § 1.4(e), requiring an original signature;

(2) Certified documents as specified in § 1.4(f);

(3) Correspondence which cannot receive the benefit of the certificate of mailing or transmission as specified in § 1.8(a)(2)(i) (A) through (D) and (F), § 1.8(a)(2)(ii)(A), and § 1.8(a)(2)(iii)(A), except that a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d) may be transmitted to the Office by facsimile;

(4) Drawings submitted under § § 1.81, 1.83 through 1.85, 1.152, 1.165, 1.174, 1.437, 2.51, 2.52, or 2.72;

(5) A request for reexamination under § 1.510 or § 1.913;

(6) Correspondence to be filed in a patent application subject to a secrecy order under § § 5.1 through 5.5 of this chapter and directly related to the secrecy order content of the application;

(7) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e); and certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e);

(8) Correspondence to be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, except the notice of ex parte appeal;

(9) Correspondence to be filed in an interference proceeding which consists of a preliminary statement under § 1.621; a transcript of a deposition under § 1.676 or of interrogatories, or cross-interrogatories; or an evidentiary record and exhibits under § 1.653.

(e) Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service. If interruptions or emergencies in the United States Postal Service which have been so designated by the Commissioner occur, the Patent and Trademark Office will consider as filed on a particular date in the Office any correspondence which is:

(1) Promptly filed after the ending of the designated interruption or emergency; and

(2) Accompanied by a statement indicating that such correspondence would have been filed on that particular date if it were not for the designated interruption or emergency in the United States Postal Service.

(f) Facsimile transmission of a patent application under § 1.53(d). In the event that the Office has no evidence of receipt of an application under § 1.53(d) (a continued prosecution application) transmitted to the Office by facsimile transmission, the party who transmitted the application under § 1.53(d) may petition the Commissioner to accord the application under § 1.53(d) a filing date as of the date the application under § 1.53(d) is shown to have been transmitted to and received in the Office,

(1) Provided that the party who transmitted such application under § 1.53(d):

(i) Informs the Office of the previous transmission of the application under § 1.53(d) promptly after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the application under § 1.53(d);

(ii) Supplies an additional copy of the previously transmitted application under § 1.53(d); and

(iii) Includes a statement which attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to the previous transmission of the application under § 1.53(d) and is accompanied by a copy of the sending unit's report confirming transmission of the application under § 1.53(d) or evidence that came into being after the complete transmission and within one business day of the complete transmission of the application under § 1.53(d).

(2) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the application under § 1.53(d) was transmitted to and received in the Office on the date in question.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984; 58 FR 54501, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64154, Dec. 6, 1993; 61 FR 56439, 56447, Nov. 1, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53180, Oct. 10, 1997; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999; 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (a)(1) and added paragraph (a)(4), effective Oct. 30, 1999; 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (d)(9), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (d)(5), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

ADJUSTMENT OF PATENT TERM DUE TO EXAMINATION DELAY

§ 1.7 Times for taking action; Expiration on Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday.

(a) Whenever periods of time are specified in this part in days, calendar days are intended. When the day, or the last day fixed by statute or by or under this part for taking any action or paying any fee in the United States Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or on a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding business day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday. See § 1.304 for time for appeal or for commencing civil action.

(b) If the day that is twelve months after the filing date of a provisional application under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) and § 1.53(c) falls on Saturday, Sunday, or on a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the period of pendency shall be extended to the next succeeding secular or business day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983; 65 FR 14865, 14871, Mar. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14871, Mar. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective May. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.

(a) Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, correspondence required to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within a set period of time will be considered as being timely filed if the procedure described in this section is followed. The actual date of receipt will be used for all other purposes.

(1) Correspondence will be considered as being timely filed if:

(i) The correspondence is mailed or transmitted prior to expiration of the set period of time by being:

(A) Addressed as set out in § 1.1(a) and deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail; or

(B) Transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with § 1.6(d); and

(ii) The correspondence includes a certificate for each piece of correspondence stating the date of deposit or transmission. The person signing the certificate should have reasonable basis to expect that the correspondence would be mailed or transmitted on or before the date indicated.

(2) The procedure described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section does not apply to, and no benefit will be given to a Certificate of Mailing or Transmission on the following:

(i) Relative to Patents and Patent Applications --

(A) The filing of a national patent application specification and drawing or other correspondence for the purpose of obtaining an application filing date, including a request for a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d);

(B) The filing of correspondence in an interference which an examiner-in-chief orders to be filed by hand or "Express Mail";

(C) The filing of agreements between parties to an interference under 35 U.S.C. 135(c);

(D) The filing of an international application for patent;

(E) The filing of correspondence in an international application before the U.S. Receiving Office, the U.S. International Searching Authority, or the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority;

(F) The filing of a copy of the international application and the basic national fee necessary to enter the national stage, as specified in § 1.495(b).

(ii) Relative to Trademark Registrations and Trademark Applications:

(A) The filing of a trademark application.

(B) [Reserved]

(C) - (E) [Reserved]

(F) [Reserved]

(iii) Relative to Disciplinary Proceedings --

(A) Correspondence filed in connection with a disciplinary proceeding under part 10 of this chapter.

(B) [Reserved]

(b) In the event that correspondence is considered timely filed by being mailed or transmitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, but not received in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the application is held to be abandoned or the proceeding is dismissed, terminated, or decided with prejudice, the correspondence will be considered timely if the party who forwarded such correspondence:

(1) Informs the Office of the previous mailing or transmission of the correspondence promptly after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) Supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed or transmitted correspondence and certificate; and

(3) Includes a statement which attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to the previous timely mailing or transmission. If the correspondence was sent by facsimile transmission, a copy of the sending unit's report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement.

(c) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was timely filed.

**Legislative History**

[41 FR 43721, Oct. 4, 1976, as amended at 47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982; 48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987; 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64154, Dec. 6, 1993; 61 FR 56439, 56447, Nov. 1, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53181, Oct. 10, 1997; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan.4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 56439, 56447, Nov. 1, 1996, revised paragraphs (a)(1)(i)(A) and (a)(2)(ii), effective Dec. 2, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53181, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (a)(2)(i)(A) and (b), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.9 Definitions.

(a)(1) A national application as used in this chapter means a U.S. application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111, or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(2) A provisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(b).

(3) A nonprovisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(a), or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(b) An international application as used in this chapter means an international application for patent filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty prior to entering national processing at the Designated Office stage.

(c) A published application as used in this chapter means an application for patent which has been published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b).

(d)-(f) [Reserved]

(g) For definitions in interferences see § 1.601.

(h) A Federal holiday within the District of Columbia as used in this chapter means any day, except Saturdays and Sundays, when the Patent and Trademark Office is officially closed for business for the entire day.

(i) National security classified as used in this chapter means specifically authorized under criteria established by an Act of Congress or Executive Order to be kept secret in the interest of national defense or foreign policy and, in fact, properly classified pursuant to such Act of Congress or Executive Order.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20461, May 11, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 40139, Sept. 10, 1982; 47 FR 43275, Sept. 30, 1982; 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 58 FR 54508, Oct, 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 20220, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 56439, 56447, Nov. 1, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53181, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (c), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.10 Filing of correspondence by "Express Mail."

(a) Any correspondence received by the Patent and Trademark Office (Office) that was delivered by the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the United States Postal Service (USPS) will be considered filed in the Office on the date of deposit with the USPS. The date of deposit with the USPS is shown by the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other official USPS notation. If the USPS deposit date cannot be determined, the correspondence will be accorded the Office receipt date as the filing date. See § 1.6(a).

(b) Correspondence should be deposited directly with an employee of the USPS to ensure that the person depositing the correspondence receives a legible copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label with the "date-in" clearly marked. Persons dealing indirectly with the employees of the USPS (such as by deposit in an "Express Mail" drop box) do so at the risk of not receiving a copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label with the desired "date-in" clearly marked. The paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence should also include the "Express Mail" mailing label number thereon. See paragraphs (c), (d) and (e) of this section.

(c) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the USPS, who can show that there is a discrepancy between the filing date accorded by the Office to the correspondence and the date of deposit as shown by the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other official USPS notation, may petition the Commissioner to accord the

correspondence a filing date as of the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other official USPS notation, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date other than the USPS deposit date;

(2) The number of the "Express Mail" mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by "Express Mail;" and

(3) The petition includes a true copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label showing the "date-in," and of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit.

(d) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the USPS, who can show that the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS was incorrectly entered or omitted by the USPS, may petition the Commissioner to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the date the correspondence is shown to have been deposited with the USPS, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date based upon an incorrect entry by the USPS;

(2) The number of the "Express Mail" mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by "Express Mail"; and

(3) The petition includes a showing which establishes, to the satisfaction of the Commissioner, that the requested filing date was the date the correspondence was deposited in the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service prior to the last scheduled pickup for that day. Any showing pursuant to this paragraph must be corroborated by evidence from the USPS or that came into being after deposit and within one business day of the deposit of the correspondence in the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the USPS.

(e) Any person mailing correspondence addressed as set out in § 1.1(a) to the Office with sufficient postage utilizing the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the USPS but not received by the Office, may petition the Commissioner to consider such correspondence filed in the Office on the USPS deposit date, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) The number of the "Express Mail" mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by "Express Mail";

(3) The petition includes a copy of the originally deposited paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence showing the number of the "Express Mail" mailing label thereon, a copy of any returned postcard receipt, a copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label showing the "date-in," a copy of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit, and, if the requested filing date is a date other than the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS, a showing pursuant to paragraph (d)(3) of this section that the requested filing date was the date the correspondence was deposited in the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service prior to the last scheduled pickup for that day; and

(4) The petition includes a statement which establishes, to the satisfaction of the Commissioner, the original deposit of the correspondence and that the copies of the correspondence, the copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label, the copy of any returned postcard receipt, and any official notation entered by the USPS are true copies of the originally mailed correspondence, original "Express Mail" mailing label, returned postcard receipt, and official notation entered by the USPS.

(f) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was deposited as "Express Mail" with the USPS on the date in question.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984; 61 FR 56439, 56447, Nov. 1, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53181, Oct. 10, 1997]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53181, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (d) and (e), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 1.11 Files open to the public.

(a) The specification, drawings, and all papers relating to the file of an abandoned published application, except if a redacted copy of the application was used for the patent application publication, a patent, or a statutory invention registration are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon the payment of the fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(2). See § 2.27 for trademark files.

(b) All reissue applications, all applications in which the Office has accepted a request to open the complete application to inspection by the public, and related papers in the application file, are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor. The filing of reissue applications, other than continued prosecution applications under § 1.53(d) of reissue applications, will be announced in the Official Gazette. The announcement shall include at least the filing date, reissue application and original patent numbers, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the owner of record, name of the attorney or agent of record, and examining group to which the reissue application is assigned.

(c) All requests for reexamination for which the fee under § 1.20(c) has been paid, will be announced in the Official Gazette. Any reexaminations at the initiative of the Commissioner pursuant to § 1.520 will also be announced in the Official Gazette. The announcement shall include at least the date of the request, if any, the reexamination request control number or the Commissioner initiated order control number, patent number, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the patent owner of record, and the examining group to which the reexamination is assigned.

(d) All papers or copies thereof relating to a reexamination proceeding which have been entered of record in the patent or reexamination file are open to inspection by the general public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) The file of any interference involving a patent, a statutory invention registration, a reissue application, or an application on which a patent has been issued or which has been published as a statutory invention registration, is open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor, if:

(1) The interference has terminated or

(2) An award of priority or judgment has been entered as to all parties and all counts.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; 47 FR 41272, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 9378, Mar. 7, 1985; 60 FR 14518, Mar. 17, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53181, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.

(a)(1) Separate assignment records are maintained in the United States Patent and Trademark Office for patents and trademarks. The assignment records, relating to original or reissue patents, including digests and indexes (for assignments recorded on or after May 1, 1957), published patent applications, and assignment records relating to pending or abandoned trademark applications and to trademark registrations (for assignments recorded on or after January 1, 1955), are open to public inspection at the United States Patent and Trademark Office, and copies of those assignment records may be obtained upon request and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.19 and § 2.6 of this chapter.

(2) All records of assignments of patents recorded before May 1, 1957, and all records of trademark assignments recorded before January 1, 1955, are maintained by the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). The records are open to public inspection. Certified and uncertified copies of those assignment records are provided by NARA upon request and payment of the fees required by NARA.

(b) Assignment records, digests, and indexes relating to any pending or abandoned patent application which has not been published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) are not available to the public. Copies of any such assignment records and related information shall be obtainable only upon written authority of the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent or upon a showing that the person seeking such information is a bona fide prospective or actual purchaser, mortgagee, or licensee of such application, unless it shall be necessary to the proper conduct of business before the Office or as provided in this part.

(c) Any request by a member of the public seeking copies of any assignment records of any pending or abandoned patent application preserved in confidence under § 1.14, or any information with respect thereto, must:

(1) Be in the form of a petition including the fee set forth in § 1.17(h); or

(2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public to the particular assignment records from the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent of record.

(d) An order for a copy of an assignment or other document should identify the reel and frame number where the assignment or document is recorded. If a document is identified without specifying its correct reel and frame, an extra charge as set forth in § 1.21(j) will be made for the time consumed in making a search for such assignment.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41272, Sept. 17, 1982; as amended at 54 FR 6900, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 65151, Dec. 13, 1991; 56 FR 66670, Dec. 24, 1991; 57 FR 29641, July 6, 1992; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42790, 42802, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (c)(1), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraphs (a)(1) and (b), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.13 Copies and certified copies.

(a) Non-certified copies of patents, patent application publications, and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public, will be furnished by the United States Patent and Trademark Office to any person, and copies of other records or papers will be furnished to persons entitled thereto, upon payment of the appropriate fee.

(b) Certified copies of patents, patent application publications, and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public or persons entitled thereto will be authenticated by the seal of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and certified by the Commissioner, or in his or her name attested by an officer of the United States Patent and Trademark Office authorized by the Commissioner, upon payment of the fee for the certified copy.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 56 FR 65151, Dec. 13, 1991, 58 FR 54508, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.14 Patent applications preserved in confidence.

(a) Confidentiality of patent application information. Patent applications that have not been published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) are generally preserved in confidence pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(a). Information concerning the filing, pendency, or subject matter of an application for patent, including status information, and access to the application, will only be given to the public as set forth in § 1.11 or in this section.

(1) Status information is:

(i) Whether the application is pending, abandoned, or patented;

(ii) Whether the application has been published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b); and

(iii) The application "numerical identifier" which may be:

(A) The eight-digit application number (the two-digit series code plus the six-digit serial number); or

(B) The six-digit serial number plus any one of the filing date of the national application, the international filing date, or date of entry into the national stage.

(2) Access is defined as providing the application file for review and copying of any material in the application file.

(b) When status information may be supplied. Status information of an application may be supplied by the Office to the public if any of the following apply:

(1) Access to the application is available pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section;

(2) The application is referred to by its numerical identifier in a published patent document (e.g., a U.S. patent, a U.S. patent application publication, or an international application publication), or in a U.S. application open to public inspection (§ 1.11(b), or paragraph (e)(2)(i) or (e)(2)(ii) of this section);

(3) The application is a published international application in which the United States of America has been indicated as a designated state; or

(4) The application claims the benefit of the filing date of an application for which status information may be provided pursuant to paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(3) of this section.

(c) When copies may be supplied. A copy of an application-as-filed or a file wrapper and contents may be supplied by the Office to the public[, subject to paragraph (i) of this section (which addresses international applications),] if any of the following apply:

(1) Application-as-filed.

(i) If a U.S. patent application publication or patent incorporates by reference, or includes a specific reference under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120 to, a pending or abandoned application, a copy of that application-as-filed may be provided to any person upon written request including the fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(1); or

(ii) If an international application, which designates the U.S. and which has been published in accordance with PCT Article 21(2), incorporates by reference or claims priority under PCT Article 8 to a pending or abandoned U.S. application, a copy of that application-as-filed may be provided to any person upon written request including a showing that the publication of the application in accordance with PCT Article 21(2) has occurred and that the U.S. was designated, and upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(1).

(2) File wrapper and contents. A copy of the specification, drawings, and all papers relating to the file of an abandoned or pending published application may be provided to any person upon written request, including the fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(2). If a redacted copy of the application was used for the patent application publication, the copy of the specification, drawings, and papers may be limited to a redacted copy.

(d) Power to inspect a pending or abandoned application. Access to an application may be provided to any person if the application file is available, and the application contains written authority (e.g., a power to inspect) granting access to such person. The written authority must be signed by:

(1) An applicant;

(2) An attorney or agent of record;

(3) An authorized official of an assignee of record (made of record pursuant to § 3.71 of this chapter); or

(4) A registered attorney or agent named in the papers accompanying the application papers filed under § 1.53 or the national stage documents filed under § 1.495, if an executed oath or declaration pursuant to § 1.63 or § 1.497 has not been filed.

(e) Public access to a pending or abandoned application. Access to an application may be provided to any person[, subject to paragraph (i) of this section,] if a written request for access is submitted, the application file is available, and any of the following apply:

(1) The application is open to public inspection pursuant to § 1.11(b); or

(2) The application is abandoned, it is not within the file jacket of a pending application under § 1.53(d), and it is referred to:

(i) In a U.S. patent application publication or patent;

(ii) In another U.S. application which is open to public inspection either pursuant to § 1.11(b) or paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section; or

(iii) In an international application which designates the U.S. and is published in accordance with PCT Article 21(2).

(f) Applications reported to Department of Energy. Applications for patents which appear to disclose, purport to disclose or do disclose inventions or discoveries relating to atomic energy are reported to the Department of Energy, which Department will be given access to the applications. Such reporting does not constitute a determination that the subject matter of each application so reported is in fact useful or is an invention or discovery, or that such application in fact discloses subject matter in categories specified by 42 U.S.C. 2181(c) and (d).

(g) Decisions by the Commissioner or the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. Any decision by the Commissioner or the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences which would not otherwise be open to public inspection may be published or made available for public inspection if:

(1) The Commissioner believes the decision involves an interpretation of patent laws or regulations that would be of precedential value; and

(2) The applicant, or a party involved in an interference for which a decision was rendered, is given notice and an opportunity to object in writing within two months on the ground that the decision discloses a trade secret or other confidential information. Any objection must identify the deletions in the text of the decision considered necessary to protect the information, or explain why the entire decision must be withheld from the public to protect such information. An applicant or party will be given time, not less than twenty days, to request reconsideration and seek court review before any portions of a decision are made public under this paragraph over his or her objection.

(h) Publication pursuant to § 1.47. Information as to the filing of an application will be published in the Official Gazette in accordance with § 1.47(c).

(i) International applications.

(1) Copies of international application files for international applications which designate the U.S. and which have been published in accordance with PCT Article 21(2), or copies of a document in such application files, will be furnished in accordance with PCT Articles 30 and 38 and PCT Rules 94.2 and 94.3, upon written request including a showing that the publication of the application has occurred and that the U.S. was designated, and upon payment of the appropriate fee (see § 1.19(b)(2) or 1.19(b)(3)), if:

(i) With respect to the Home Copy, the international application was filed with the U.S. Receiving Office;

(ii) With respect to the Search Copy, the U.S. acted as the International Searching Authority; or

(iii) With respect to the Examination Copy, the United States acted as the International Preliminary Examining Authority, an International Preliminary Examination Report has issued, and the United States was elected.

(2) A copy of an English language translation of an international application which has been filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4) will be furnished upon written request including a showing that the publication of the application in accordance with PCT Article 21(2) has occurred and that the U.S. was designated, and upon payment of the appropriate fee (§ 1.19(b)(2) or § 1.19(b)(3)).

(3) Access to international application files for international applications which designate the U.S. and which have been published in accordance with PCT Article 21(2), or copies of a document in such application files, will be furnished in accordance with PCT Articles 30 and 38 and PCT Rules 94.2 and 94.3, upon written request including a showing that the publication of the application has occurred and that the U.S. was designated.

(4) In accordance with PCT Article 30, copies of an international application-as-filed under paragraph (c)(1) of this section will not be provided prior to the international publication of the application pursuant to PCT Article 21(2).

(5) Access to international application files under paragraphs (e) and (i)(3) of this section will not be permitted with respect to the Examination Copy in accordance with PCT Article 38.

(j) Access or copies in other circumstances. The Office, either sua sponte or on petition, may also provide access or copies of all or part of an application if necessary to carry out an Act of Congress or if warranted by other special

circumstances. Any petition by a member of the public seeking access to, or copies of, all or part of any pending or abandoned application preserved in confidence pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, or any related papers, must include:

(1) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h); and

(2) A showing that access to the application is necessary to carry out an Act of Congress or that special circumstances exist which warrant petitioner being granted access to all or part of the application.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977, and 43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978, as amended at 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 9378, Mar. 7, 1985; 53 FR 23733, June 23, 1988; 54 FR 6900, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 55461, Oct. 28, 1991; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42790, 42802, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53182, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998; 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54657, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

(a) Requests for records, not disclosed to the public as part of the regular informational activity of the Patent and Trademark Office and which are not otherwise dealt with in the rules in this part, shall be made in writing, with the envelope and the letter clearly marked "Freedom of Information Request." Each such request, so marked, should be submitted by mail addressed to the "Patent and Trademark Office, Freedom of Information Request Control Desk, Box 8, Washington, DC 20231," or hand delivered to the Office of the Solicitor, Patent and Trademark Office, Arlington, Virginia. The request will be processed in accordance with the procedures set forth in part 4 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) Any person whose request for records has been initially denied in whole or in part, or has not been timely determined, may submit a written appeal as provided in § 4.8 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(c) Procedures applicable in the event of service of process or in connection with testimony of employees on official matters and production of official documents of the Patent and Trademark Office in civil legal proceedings not involving the United States shall be those established in parts 15 and 15a of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 47686, Nov. 25, 1988]

FEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

§ 1.16 National application filing fees.

(a) Basic fee for filing each application for an original patent, except provisional, design, or plant applications:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 370.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 740.00

(b) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of 3:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 42.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 84.00

(c) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes.):

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 9.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 18.00

(d) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 140.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 280.00

(e) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or oath or declaration on a date later than the filing date of the application, except provisional applications:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 65.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 130.00

(f) Basic fee for filing each design application:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 165.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 330.00

(g) Basic fee for filing each plant application, except provisional applications:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 255.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 510.00

(h) Basic fee for filing each reissue application:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 370.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 740.00

(i) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim which is in excess of the number of independent claims in the original patent:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 42.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 84.00

(j) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 and also in excess of the number of claims in the original patent (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee purposes.):

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 9.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 18.00

(k) Basic fee for filing each provisional application:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 80.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 160.00 |

(l) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or cover sheet (§ 1.51(c)(1)) on a date later than the filing date of the provisional application:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 25.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 50.00 |

(m) If the additional fees required by paragraphs (b), (c), (d), (i) and (j) of this section are not paid on filing or on later presentation of the claims for which the additional fees are due, they must be paid or the claims must be canceled by amendment, prior to the expiration of the time period set for reply by the Office in any notice of fee deficiency.

NOTE: See § § 1.445, 1.482 and 1.492 for international application filing and processing fees.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65151, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38194, Aug. 21, 1992; 59 FR 43740, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39587, July 30, 1996, as corrected at 61 FR 43400, Aug. 22, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40452, July 29, 1997; 62 FR 53132, 53182, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 39731, 39733, July 24, 1998; 63 FR 52609, 52610, Oct. 1, 1998; 63 FR 67578, 67579, Dec. 8, 1998; 64 FR 67774, 67777, Dec. 3, 1999; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000, amended this section, effective Oct. 1, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) through (l), effective Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001, revised paragraphs (a), (b), (d), (f) through (i), and (k), effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

§ 1.17 Patent application and reexamination processing fees.

(a) Extension fees pursuant to § 1.136(a):

(1) For reply within first month:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 55.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 110.00 |

(2) For reply within second month:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 200.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 400.00 |

(3) For reply within third month:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 460.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 920.00 |

(4) For reply within fourth month:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 720.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 1,440.00

(5) For reply within fifth month:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 980.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 1,960.00

(b) For filing a notice of appeal from the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 160.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 320.00

(c) In addition to the fee for filing a notice of appeal, for filing a brief in support of an appeal:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 160.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 320.00

(d) For filing a request for an oral hearing before the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 134:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 140.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 280.00

(e) To request continued examination pursuant to § 1.114:

By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- $ 370.00
By other than a small entity -- $ 740.00

(f)-(g) [Reserved]

(h) For filing a petition under one of the following sections which refers to this paragraph: $ 130.00

§ 1.12 -- for access to an assignment record

§ 1.14 -- for access to an application

§ 1.47 -- for filing by other than all the inventors or a person not the inventor

§ 1.53(e) -- to accord a filing date

§ 1.59 -- for expungement and return of information

§ 1.84 -- for accepting color drawings or photographs

§ 1.91 -- for entry of a model or exhibit

§ 1.102 -- to make an application special

§ 1.103(a) -- to suspend action in an application

§ 1.138(c) -- to expressly abandon an application to avoid publication

§ 1.182 -- for decision on a question not specifically provided for

§ 1.183 -- to suspend the rules

§ 1.295 -- for review of refusal to publish a statutory invention registration

§ 1.313 -- to withdraw an application from issue

§ 1.314 -- to defer issuance of a patent

§ 1.377 -- for review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of a patent

§ 1.378(e) -- for reconsideration of decision on petition refusing to accept delayed payment of maintenance fee in an expired patent

§ 1.644(e) -- for petition in an interference

§ 1.644(f) -- for request for reconsideration of a decision on petition in an interference

§ 1.666(b) -- for access to an interference settlement agreement

§ 1.666(c) -- for late filing of interference settlement agreement

§ 1.741(b) -- to accord a filing date to an application under § 1.740 for extension of a patent term

§ 5.12 -- for expedited handling of a foreign filing license

§ 5.15 -- for changing the scope of a license

§ 5.25 -- for retroactive license

§ 104.3 -- for waiver of a rule in Part 104 of this title

(i) Processing fee for taking action under one of the following sections which refers to this paragraph: $ 130.00

§ 1.28(c)(3) -- for processing a non-itemized fee deficiency based on an error in small entity status

§ 1.41 -- for supplying the name or names of the inventor or inventors after the filing date without an oath or declaration as prescribed by § 1.63, except in provisional applications

§ 1.48 -- for correcting inventorship, except in provisional applications

§ 1.52(d) -- for processing a nonprovisional application filed with a specification in a language other than English

§ 1.53(b)(3) -- to convert a provisional application filed under § 1.53(c) into a nonprovisional application under § 1.53(b)

§ 1.55 -- for entry of late priority papers

§ 1.99(e) -- for processing a belated submission under § 1.99

§ 1.103(b) -- for requesting limited suspension of action, continued prosecution application (§ 1.53(d))

§ 1.103(c) -- for requesting limited suspension of action, request for continued examination (§ 1.114)

§ 1.103(d) -- for requesting deferred examination of an application

§ 1.217 -- for processing a redacted copy of a paper submitted in the file of an application in which a redacted copy was submitted for the patent application publication

§ 1.221 -- for requesting voluntary publication or republication of an application

§ 1.497(d) -- for filing an oath or declaration pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) naming an inventive entity different from the inventive entity set forth in the international stage

§ 3.81 -- for a patent to issue to assignee, assignment submitted after payment of the issue fee

(j) For filing a petition to institute a public use proceeding under § 1.292 -- $ 1,510.00

(k) For filing a request for expedited examination under § 1.155(a) -- $ 900.00

(l) For filing a petition for the revival of an unavoidably abandoned application under 35 U.S.C. 111, 133, 364, or 371, for the unavoidably delayed payment of the issue fee under 35 U.S.C. 151, or for the revival of an unavoidably terminated reexamination proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 133 (§ 1.137(a)):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a)):-- | $ | 55.00. |
| By other than a small entity: -- | $ | 110.00. |

(m) For filing a petition for revival of an unintentionally abandoned application, for the unintentionally delayed payment of the fee for issuing a patent, or for the revival of an unintentionally terminated reexamination proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(7) (§ 1.137(b)):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 640.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 1,280.00 |

(n) For requesting publication of a statutory invention registration prior to the mailing of the first examiner's action pursuant to § 1.104 -- $ 920.00 reduced by the amount of the application basic filing fee paid.

(o) For requesting publication of a statutory invention registration after the mailing of the first examiner's action pursuant to § 1.104 -- $ 1,840.00 reduced by the amount of the application basic filing fee paid.

(p) For an information disclosure statement under § 1.97(c) or (d) or a submission under § 1.99: $ 180.00.

(q) Processing fee for taking action under one of the following sections which refers to this paragraph -- $ 50.00

§ 1.41 -- to supply the name or names of the inventor or inventors after the filing date without a cover sheet as prescribed by § 1.51(c)(1) in a provisional application.

§ 1.48 -- for correction of inventorship in a provisional application.

§ 1.53(c)(2) -- to convert a nonprovisional application filed under § 1.53(b) to a provisional application under § 1.53(c).

(r) For entry of a submission after final rejection under § 1.129(a):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 370.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 740.00 |

(s) For each additional invention requested to be examined under § 1.129(b):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 370.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 740.00 |

(t) For the acceptance of an unintentionally delayed claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365(a) or (c) (§ § 1.55 and 1.78) -- $ 1,280.00

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65152, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 2033, Jan 17, 1992; 57 FR 32439, July 22, 1992; 57 FR 38194, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993, as corrected at 59 FR 45841, Aug 31, 1993; 59 FR 43740, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39587, July 30, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40452, July 29, 1997; 62 FR 53132, 53182, Oct. 10, 1997, as corrected at 62 FR 61235, Nov. 17, 1997; 63 FR 39731, 39733, July 24, 1998; 63 FR 52609, 52610, Oct. 1, 1998; 63 FR 67578, 67580, Dec. 8, 1998; 64 FR 67774, 67777, Dec. 3, 1999; 65 FR 14865, 14871, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54658, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57052, Sept. 20, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001; 66 FR 47387, 47389, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14871, Mar. 20, 2000, added paragraph (e) and revised paragraph (i), effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000, amended this section, effective Oct. 1, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54658, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) through (e), (r) and (s), effective Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001, revised paragraphs (a)(2) through (a)(5), (b) through (e), (m), and (r) through (t), effective Oct. 1, 2001; 66 FR 47387, 47389, Sept. 12, 2001, revised paragraph (h), effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 1.18 Patent post allowance (including issue) fees.

(a) Issue fee for issuing each original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 640.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 1,280.00 |

(b) Issue fee for issuing a design patent:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 230.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 460.00 |

(c) Issue fee for issuing a plant patent:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 310.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 620.00 |

(d) Publication fee -- $ 300.00

(e) For filing an application for patent term adjustment under § 1.705: $ 200.00.

(f) For filing a request for reinstatement of all or part of the term reduced pursuant to § 1.704(b) in an application for patent term adjustment under § 1.705: $ 400.00.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 59 FR 43740, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39588, July 30, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40452, July 29, 1997; 63 FR 39731, 39733, July 24, 1998; 63 FR 52609, 52610, Oct. 1, 1998; 63 FR 67578, 67580, Dec. 8, 1998; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000; 65 FR 56366, 56391, Sept. 18, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000, revised this section, effective Oct. 1, 2000; 65 FR 56366, 56391, Sept. 18, 2000, revised the heading and added paragraphs (d), (e) and (f), effective Nov. 17, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000, added paragraph (d), effective Nov. 29, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78959, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) through (c), effective Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001, revised paragraphs (a) through (c), effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

§ 1.19 Document supply fees.

The United States Patent and Trademark Office will supply copies of the following documents upon payment of the fees indicated. The copies will be in black and white unless the original document is in color, a color copy is requested and the fee for a color copy is paid.

(a) Uncertified copies of patent application publications and patents:

(1) Printed copy of the paper portion of a patent application publication or patent, including a design patent, statutory invention registration, or defensive publication document:

Click here to view image.

(b) Certified and uncertified copies of Office documents:

(1) Certified or uncertified copy of the paper portion of patent application as filed:

(i) Regular service -- $ 15.00

(ii) Expedited regular service -- $ 30.00

(2) Certified or uncertified copy of paper portion of patent-related file wrapper and contents:

(i) File wrapper and paper contents of 400 or fewer pages -- $ 200.00

(ii) Additional fee for each additional 100 pages or portion thereof -- $ 40.00

(iii) Additional fee for certification -- $ 25.00

(3) Certified or uncertified copy on compact disc of patent-related file-wrapper contents that were submitted on compact disc:

(i) First compact disc in a single order -- $ 55.00

(ii) Each additional compact disc in the single order of paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section -- $ 15.00

(4) Certified or uncertified copy of Office records, per document except as otherwise provided in this section -- $ 25.00

(5) For assignment records, abstract of title and certification, per patent -- $ 25.00

(c) Library service (35 U.S.C. 13): For providing to libraries copies of all patents issued annually, per annum -- $ 50.00

(d) For list of all United States patents and statutory invention registrations in a subclass -- $ 3.00

(e) Uncertified statement as to status of the payment of maintenance fees due on a patent or expiration of a patent -- $ 10.00

(f) Uncertified copy of a non-United States patent document, per document -- $ 25.00

(g)-(h) [Reserved]

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65152, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 62 FR 40450, 40452, July 29, 1997; 64 FR 67486, Dec. 2, 1999; 65 FR 54604, 54658, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 67486, Dec. 2, 1999, amended paragraph (a)(1), effective Dec. 2, 1999; 65 FR 54604, 54658, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.20 Post issuance fees.

(a) For providing a certificate of correction for applicant's mistake:

(§ 1.323) -- $ 100.00

(b) Processing fee for correcting inventorship in a patent (§ 1.324) -- $ 130.00.

(c) In reexamination proceedings

(1) For filing a request for ex parte reexamination (§ 1.510(a)) -- $ 2,520.00

(2) For filing a request for inter partes reexamination (§ 1.915(a)) -- $ 8,800.00

(d) For filing each statutory disclaimer (§ 1.321):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 55.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 110.00 |

(e) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond four years; the fee is due by three years and six months after the original grant:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 440.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 880.00 |

(f) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond eight years; the fee is due by seven years and six months after the original grant:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 1,010.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 2,020.00 |

(g) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond twelve years; the fee is due by eleven years and six months after the original grant:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 1,550.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 3,100.00 |

(h) Surcharge for paying a maintenance fee during the six-month grace period following the expiration of three years and six months, seven years and six months and eleven years and six months after the date of the original grant of a patent based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 65.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 130.00 |

(i) Surcharge for accepting a maintenance fee after expiration of a patent for non-timely payment of a maintenance fee where the delay in payment is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been--

(1) Unavoidable -- $ 700.00

(2) Unintentional -- $ 1,640.00

(j) For filing an application for extension of the term of a patent (§ 1.740) -- $ 1,060.00

(1) Application for extension under § 1.740 -- $ 1,120.00

(2) Initial application for interim extension under § 1.790 -- $ 420.00

(3) Subsequent application for interim extension under § 1.790 -- $ 220.00

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 57 FR 56450, Nov. 30, 1992; 58 FR 44280, Aug. 20, 1993; 59 FR 43741, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39588, July 30, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997; 63 FR 39731, 39733, July 24, 1998; 63 FR 52609, 52610, Oct. 1, 1998; 63 FR 67578, 67580, Dec. 8, 1998; 64 FR 67774, 67777, Dec. 3, 1999; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 80755, Dec. 22, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (c), effective Feb. 5, 2001; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraphs (b) and (d) through (h), effective Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39449, July 31, 2001, revised paragraphs (e) through (g), effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

§ 1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.

[PUBLISHER'S NOTE: Paragraph (o) was removed and reserved at 66 FR 39447, 39450, July 31, 2001, effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

The Patent and Trademark Office has established the following fees for the services indicated:

(a) Registration of attorneys and agents:

(1) For admission to examination for registration to practice:

(i) Application Fee (non-refundable) -- $ 40.00

(ii) Registration examination fee -- $ 310.00

(2) On registration to practice -- $ 100.00

(3) For reinstatement to practice -- $ 40.00

(4) For certificate of good standing as an attorney or agent -- $ 10.00

Suitable for framing -- $ 20.00

(5) For review of a decision of the Director of Enrollment and Discipline under § 10.2(c) -- $ 130.00

(6) For requesting regrading of an examination under § 10.7(c):

(i) Regrading of seven or fewer questions -- $ 230.00

(ii) Regrading of eight or more questions -- $ 460.00

(b) Deposit accounts:

(1) For establishing a deposit account -- $ 10.00

(2) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below $ 1,000 -- $ 25.00

(3) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below $ 300 for restricted subscription deposit accounts used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued -- $ 25.00

(c) Disclosure document: For filing a disclosure document -- $ 10.00

(d) Delivery box: Local delivery box rental, per annum -- $ 50.00

(e) International type search reports: For preparing an international type search report of an international type search made at the time of the first action on the merits in a national patent application -- $ 40.00

(f) [Reserved]

(g) Self-service copy charge, per page -- $ 0.25

(h) For recording each assignment, agreement or other paper relating to the property in a patent or application, per property -- $ 40.00

(i) Publication in Official Gazette: For publication in the Official Gazette of a notice of the availability of an application or a patent for licensing or sale:

Each application or patent -- $ 25.00

(j) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof -- $ 40.00

(k) For items and services that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service -- Actual Cost

(l) For processing and retaining any application abandoned pursuant to § 1.53(f), unless the required basic filing fee (§ 1.16) has been paid -- $ 130.00

(m) For processing each payment refused (including a check returned "unpaid") or charged back by a financial institution -- $ 50.00.

(n) For handling an application in which proceedings are terminated pursuant to § 1.53(e) -- $ 130.00

(o) [This paragraph was removed and reserved at 66 FR 39447, 39450, July 31, 2001, effective Oct. 1, 2001.] Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using Automated Patent

System full-text search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to the Automated Patent System full-text search capability (APS-Text) upon a showing of need or hardship, and if such waiver is in the public interest -- $ 40.00

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 57 FR 40493, Sept. 3, 1992; 59 FR 43741, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39588, July 30, 1996, as corrected at 61 FR 43400, Aug. 22, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997; 62 FR 53132, 53183, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 39731, 39734, July 24, 1998; 63 FR 52609, 52610, Oct. 1, 1998; 63 FR 67578, 67580, Dec. 8, 1998; 65 FR 33452, 33455, May 24, 2000; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39450, July 31, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 33452, 33455, May 24, 2000, revised paragraph (m), effective July 24, 2000; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000, revised paragraph (a)(6), effective Oct. 1, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39450, July 31, 2001, removed and reserved paragraph (o), effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

§ 1.22 Fees payable in advance.

(a) Patent and trademark fees and charges payable to the Patent and Trademark Office are required to be paid in advance, that is, at the time of requesting any action by the Office for which a fee or charge is payable with the exception that under § 1.53 applications for patent may be assigned a filing date without payment of the basic filing fee.

(b) All fees paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office must be itemized in each individual application, patent, trademark registration file, or other proceeding in such a manner that it is clear for which purpose the fees are paid. The Office may return fees that are not itemized as required by this paragraph. The provisions of § 1.5(a) do not apply to the resubmission of fees returned pursuant to this paragraph.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.23 Methods of payment.

(a) All payments of money required for United States Patent and Trademark Office fees, including fees for the processing of international applications (§ 1.445), shall be made in U.S. dollars and in the form of a cashier's or certified check, Treasury note, national bank notes, or United States Postal Service money order. If sent in any other form, the Office may delay or cancel the credit until collection is made. Checks and money orders must be made payable to the Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office. (Checks made payable to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks will continue to be accepted.) Payments from foreign countries must be payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Money sent to the Office by mail will be at the risk of the sender, and letters containing money should be registered with the United States Postal Service.

(b) Payments of money required for United States Patent and Trademark Office fees may also be made by credit card. Payment of a fee by credit card must specify the amount to be charged to the credit card and such other information as is necessary to process the charge, and is subject to collection of the fee. The Office will not accept a

general authorization to charge fees to a credit card. If credit card information is provided on a form or document other than a form provided by the Office for the payment of fees by credit card, the Office will not be liable if the credit card number becomes public knowledge.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999; 65 FR 33452, 33455, May 24, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 33452, 33455, May 24, 2000, revised this section, effective June 5, 2000.]

§ 1.24 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.25 Deposit accounts.

(a) For the convenience of attorneys, and the general public in paying any fees due, in ordering services offered by the Office, copies of records, etc., deposit accounts may be established in the Patent and Trademark Office upon payment of the fee for establishing a deposit account (§ 1.21(b)(1)). A minimum deposit of $ 1,000 is required for paying any fees due or in ordering any services offered by the Office. However, a minimum deposit of $ 300 may be paid to establish a restricted subscription deposit account used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued. At the end of each month, a deposit account statement will be rendered. A remittance must be made promptly upon receipt of the statement to cover the value of items or services charged to the account and thus restore the account to its established normal deposit. An amount sufficient to cover all fees, services, copies, etc., requested must always be on deposit. Charges to accounts with insufficient funds will not be accepted. A service charge (§ 1.21(b)(2)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below $ 1,000. For restricted subscription deposit accounts, a service charge (§ 1.21(b)(3)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below $ 300.

(b) Filing, issue, appeal, international-type search report, international application processing, petition, and post-issuance fees may be charged against these accounts if sufficient funds are on deposit to cover such fees. A general authorization to charge all fees, or only certain fees, set forth in § 1.16 to 1.18 to a deposit account containing sufficient funds may be filed in an individual application, either for the entire pendency of the application or with a particular paper filed. An authorization to charge fees under § 1.16 in an international application entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be treated as an authorization to charge fees under § 1.492. An authorization to charge fees set forth in § 1.18 to a deposit account is subject to the provisions of § 1.311(b). An authorization to charge to a deposit account the fee for a request for reexamination pursuant to § 1.510 or § 1.913 and any other fees required in a reexamination proceeding in a patent may also be filed with the request for reexamination. An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account will not be considered payment of the fee on the date the authorization to charge the fee is effective as to the particular fee to be charged unless sufficient funds are present in the account to cover the fee. as an authorization to charge fees under § 1.492. An authorization to charge fees set forth in § 1.18 to a deposit account is subject to the provisions of § 1.311(b). An authorization to charge to a deposit account the fee for a request for reexamination pursuant to § 1.510 or § 1.913 and any other fees required in a reexamination proceeding in a patent may also be filed with the request for reexamination.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76772, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.26 Refunds.

(a) The Commissioner may refund any fee paid by mistake or in excess of that required. A change of purpose after the payment of a fee, such as when a party desires to withdraw a patent or trademark filing for which the fee was paid, including an application, an appeal, or a request for an oral hearing, will not entitle a party to a refund of such fee. The Office will not refund amounts of twenty-five dollars or less unless a refund is specifically requested, and will not notify the payor of such amounts. If a party paying a fee or requesting a refund does not provide the banking information necessary for making refunds by electronic funds transfer (31 U.S.C. 3332 and 31 CFR part 208), or instruct the Office that refunds are to be credited to a deposit account, the Commissioner may require such information, or use the banking information on the payment instrument to make a refund. Any refund of a fee paid by credit card will be by a credit to the credit card account to which the fee was charged.

(b) Any request for refund must be filed within two years from the date the fee was paid, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph or in § 1.28(a). If the Office charges a deposit account by an amount other than an amount specifically indicated in an authorization (§ 1.25(b)), any request for refund based upon such charge must be filed within two years from the date of the deposit account statement indicating such charge, and include a copy of that deposit account statement. The time periods set forth in this paragraph are not extendable.

(c) If the Commissioner decides not to institute a reexamination proceeding, for ex parte reexaminations filed under § 1.510, a refund of $ 1,690 will be made to the reexamination requester. For inter partes reexaminations filed under § 1.913, a refund of $ 7,970 will be made to the reexamination requester. The reexamination requester should indicate the form in which any refund should be made (e.g., by check, electronic funds transfer, credit to a deposit account, etc.). Generally, reexamination refunds will be issued in the form that the original payment was provided.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 54 FR 6902, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991; 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53183, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Feb. 5, 2001]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (a) and added paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Feb. 5, 2001, revised paragraph (c), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.27 Definition of small entities and establishing status as a small entity to permit payment of small entity fees; when a determination of entitlement to small entity status and notification of loss of entitlement to small entity status are required; fraud on the Office.

(a) Definition of small entities. A small entity as used in this chapter means any party (person, small business concern, or nonprofit organization) under paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) of this section.

(1) Person. A person, as used in paragraph (c) of this section, means any inventor or other individual (e.g., an individual to whom an inventor has transferred some rights in the invention), who has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed,

and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention. An inventor or other individual who has transferred some rights, or is under an obligation to transfer some rights in the invention to one or more parties, can also qualify for small entity status if all the parties who have had rights in the invention transferred to them also qualify for small entity status either as a person, small business concern, or nonprofit organization under this section.

(2) Small business concern. A small business concern, as used in paragraph (c) of this section, means any business concern that:

(i) Has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention to any person, concern, or organization which would not qualify for small entity status as a person, small business concern, or nonprofit organization.

(ii) Meets the standards set forth in 13 CFR part 121 to be eligible for reduced patent fees. Questions related to standards for a small business concern may be directed to: Small Business Administration, Size Standards Staff, 409 Third Street, S.W., Washington, D.C. 20416.

(3) Nonprofit Organization. A nonprofit organization, as used in paragraph (c) of this section, means any nonprofit organization that:

(i) Has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention to any person, concern, or organization which would not qualify as a person, small business concern, or a nonprofit organization, and

(ii) Is either:

(A) A university or other institution of higher education located in any country;

(B) An organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a));

(C) Any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a nonprofit organization statute of a state of this country (35 U.S.C. 201(i)); or

(D) Any nonprofit organization located in a foreign country which would qualify as a nonprofit organization under paragraphs (a)(3)(ii)(B) of this section or (a)(3)(ii)(C) of this section if it were located in this country.

(4) License to a Federal agency. (i) For persons under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, a license to the Government resulting from a rights determination under Executive Order 10096 does not constitute a license so as to prohibit claiming small entity status.

(ii) For small business concerns and nonprofit organizations under paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a license for the purposes of paragraphs (a)(2)(i) and (a)(3)(i) of this section.

(b) Establishment of small entity status permits payment of reduced fees. A small entity, as defined in paragraph (a) of this section, who has properly asserted entitlement to small entity status pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section will be accorded small entity status by the Office in the particular application or patent in which entitlement to small entity status was asserted. Establishment of small entity status allows the payment of certain reduced patent fees pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 41(h).

(c) Assertion of small entity status. Any party (person, small business concern or nonprofit organization) should make a determination, pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, of entitlement to be accorded small entity status based on the definitions set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, and must, in order to establish small entity status for the purpose of paying small entity fees, actually make an assertion of entitlement to small entity status, in the manner set

forth in paragraphs (c)(1) or (c)(3) of this section, in the application or patent in which such small entity fees are to be paid.

(1) Assertion by writing. Small entity status may be established by a written assertion of entitlement to small entity status. A written assertion must:

(i) Be clearly identifiable;

(ii) Be signed (see paragraph (c)(2) of this section); and

(iii) Convey the concept of entitlement to small entity status, such as by stating that applicant is a small entity, or that small entity status is entitled to be asserted for the application or patent. While no specific words or wording are required to assert small entity status, the intent to assert small entity status must be clearly indicated in order to comply with the assertion requirement.

(2) Parties who can sign and file the written assertion. The written assertion can be signed by:

(i) One of the parties identified in § 1.33(b) (e.g., an attorney or agent registered with the Office), § 3.73(b) of this chapter notwithstanding, who can also file the written assertion;

(ii) At least one of the individuals identified as an inventor (even though a § 1.63 executed oath or declaration has not been submitted), notwithstanding § 1.33(b)(4), who can also file the written assertion pursuant to the exception under § 1.33(b) of this part; or

(iii) An assignee of an undivided part interest, notwithstanding § § 1.33(b)(3) and 3.73(b) of this chapter, but the partial assignee cannot file the assertion without resort to a party identified under § 1.33(b) of this part.

(3) Assertion by payment of the small entity basic filing or basic national fee. The payment, by any party, of the exact amount of one of the small entity basic filing fees set forth in § § 1.16(a), (f), (g), (h), or (k), or one of the small entity basic national fees set forth in § § 1.492(a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), (a)(4), or (a)(5), will be treated as a written assertion of entitlement to small entity status even if the type of basic filing or basic national fee is inadvertently selected in error.

(i) If the Office accords small entity status based on payment of a small entity basic filing or basic national fee under paragraph (c)(3) of this section that is not applicable to that application, any balance of the small entity fee that is applicable to that application will be due along with the appropriate surcharge set forth in § 1.16(e), or § 1.16(l).

(ii) The payment of any small entity fee other than those set forth in paragraph (c)(3) of this section (whether in the exact fee amount or not) will not be treated as a written assertion of entitlement to small entity status and will not be sufficient to establish small entity status in an application or a patent.

(4) Assertion required in related, continuing, and reissue applications. Status as a small entity must be specifically established by an assertion in each related, continuing and reissue application in which status is appropriate and desired. Status as a small entity in one application or patent does not affect the status of any other application or patent, regardless of the relationship of the applications or patents. The refiling of an application under § 1.53 as a continuation, divisional, or continuation-in-part application (including a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d)), or the filing of a reissue application, requires a new assertion as to continued entitlement to small entity status for the continuing or reissue application.

(d) When small entity fees can be paid. Any fee, other than the small entity basic filing fees and the small entity national fees of paragraph (c)(3) of this section, can be paid in the small entity amount only if it is submitted with, or subsequent to, the submission of a written assertion of entitlement to small entity status, except when refunds are permitted by § 1.28(a).

(e) Only one assertion required. (1) An assertion of small entity status need only be filed once in an application or patent. Small entity status, once established, remains in effect until changed pursuant to paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

Where an assignment of rights or an obligation to assign rights to other parties who are small entities occurs subsequent to an assertion of small entity status, a second assertion is not required.

(2) Once small entity status is withdrawn pursuant to paragraph (g)(2) of this section, a new written assertion is required to again obtain small entity status.

(f) Assertion requires a determination of entitlement to pay small entity fees. Prior to submitting an assertion of entitlement to small entity status in an application, including a related, continuing, or reissue application, a determination of such entitlement should be made pursuant to the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section. It should be determined that all parties holding rights in the invention qualify for small entity status. The Office will generally not question any assertion of small entity status that is made in accordance with the requirements of this section, but note paragraph (h) of this section.

(g)(1) New determination of entitlement to small entity status is needed when issue and maintenance fees are due. Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, fees as a small entity may thereafter be paid in that application or patent without regard to a change in status until the issue fee is due or any maintenance fee is due.

(2) Notification of loss of entitlement to small entity status is required when issue and maintenance fees are due. Notification of a loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in the application or patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest of the issue fee or any maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity as defined in paragraph (a) of this section is no longer appropriate. The notification that small entity status is no longer appropriate must be signed by a party identified in § 1.33(b). Payment of a fee in other than the small entity amount is not sufficient notification that small entity status is no longer appropriate.

(h) Fraud attempted or practiced on the Office.

(1) Any attempt to fraudulently establish status as a small entity, or pay fees as a small entity, shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.

(2) Improperly, and with intent to deceive, establishing status as a small entity, or paying fees as a small entity, shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 40139, Sept. 10, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53183, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54659, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.28 Refunds when small entity status is later established; how errors in small entity status are excused.

(a) Refunds based on later establishment of small entity status. A refund pursuant to § 1.26, based on establishment of small entity status, of a portion of fees timely paid in full prior to establishing status as a small entity may only be obtained if an assertion under § 1.27(c) and a request for a refund of the excess amount are filed within three months of the date of the timely payment of the full fee. The three-month time period is not extendable under § 1.136. Status as a small entity is waived for any fee by the failure to establish the status prior to paying, at the time of paying, or within three months of the date of payment of, the full fee.

(b) Date of payment. (1) The three-month period for requesting a refund, pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, starts on the date that a full fee has been paid;

(2) The date when a deficiency payment is paid in full determines the amount of deficiency that is due, pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) How errors in small entity status are excused. If status as a small entity is established in good faith, and fees as a small entity are paid in good faith, in any application or patent, and it is later discovered that such status as a small entity was established in error, or that through error the Office was not notified of a loss of entitlement to small entity status as required by § 1.27(g)(2), the error will be excused upon: compliance with the separate submission and itemization requirements of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section, and the deficiency payment requirement of paragraph (c)(2) of this section:

(1) Separate submission required for each application or patent. Any paper submitted under this paragraph must be limited to the deficiency payment (all fees paid in error), required by paragraph (c)(2) of this section, for one application or one patent. Where more than one application or patent is involved, separate submissions of deficiency payments (e.g., checks) and itemizations are required for each application or patent. See § 1.4(b).

(2) Payment of deficiency owed. The deficiency owed, resulting from the previous erroneous payment of small entity fees, must be paid.

(i) Calculation of the deficiency owed. The deficiency owed for each previous fee erroneously paid as a small entity is the difference between the current fee amount (for other than a small entity) on the date the deficiency is paid in full and the amount of the previous erroneous (small entity) fee payment. The total deficiency payment owed is the sum of the individual deficiency owed amounts for each fee amount previously erroneously paid as a small entity. Where a fee paid in error as a small entity was subject to a fee decrease between the time the fee was paid in error and the time the deficiency is paid in full, the deficiency owed is equal to the amount (previously) paid in error;

(ii) Itemization of the deficiency payment. An itemization of the total deficiency payment is required. The itemization must include the following information:

(A) Each particular type of fee that was erroneously paid as a small entity, (e.g., basic statutory filing fee, two-month extension of time fee) along with the current fee amount for a non-small entity;

(B) The small entity fee actually paid, and when. This will permit the Office to differentiate, for example, between two one-month extension of time fees erroneously paid as a small entity but on different dates;

(C) The deficiency owed amount (for each fee erroneously paid); and

(D) The total deficiency payment owed, which is the sum or total of the individual deficiency owed amounts set forth in paragraph (c)(2)(ii)(C) of this section.

(3) Failure to comply with requirements. If the requirements of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section are not complied with, such failure will either: be treated as an authorization for the Office to process the deficiency payment and charge the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i), or result in a requirement for compliance within a one-month non-extendable time period under § 1.136(a) to avoid the return of the fee deficiency paper, at the option of the Office.

(d) Payment of deficiency operates as notification of loss of status. Any deficiency payment (based on a previous erroneous payment of a small entity fee) submitted under paragraph (c) of this section will be treated under § 1.27(g)(2) as a notification of a loss of entitlement to small entity status.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 40140, Sept. 10, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984; 57 FR 2033, Jan. 17, 1992; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53183, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54661, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54661, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

SUBPART B --NATIONAL PROCESSING PROVISIONS
PROSECUTION OF APPLICATION AND APPOINTMENT OF ATTORNEY OR AGENT

§ 1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.

An applicant for patent may file and prosecute his or her own case, or he or she may be represented by a registered attorney, registered agent, or other individual authorized to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases. See § § 10.6 and 10.9 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of a registered attorney or agent.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 1.32 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.

(a) Correspondence address and daytime telephone number. When filing an application, a correspondence address must be set forth in either an application data sheet (§ 1.76), or elsewhere, in a clearly identifiable manner, in any paper submitted with an application filing. If no correspondence address is specified, the Office may treat the mailing address of the first named inventor (if provided, see § § 1.76(b)(1) and 1.63(c)(2)) as the correspondence address. The Office will direct all notices, official letters, and other communications relating to the application to the correspondence address. The Office will not engage in double correspondence with an applicant and a registered attorney or agent, or with more than one registered attorney or agent except as deemed necessary by the Commissioner. If more than one correspondence address is specified, the Office will establish one as the correspondence address. For the party to whom correspondence is to be addressed, a daytime telephone number should be supplied in a clearly identifiable manner and may be changed by any party who may change the correspondence address. The correspondence address may be changed as follows:

(1) Prior to filing of a § 1.63 oath or declaration by any of the inventors. If a § 1.63 oath or declaration has not been filed by any of the inventors, the correspondence address may be changed by the party who filed the application. If the application was filed by a registered attorney or agent, any other registered practitioner named in the transmittal papers may also change the correspondence address. Thus, the inventor(s), any registered practitioner named in the transmittal papers accompanying the original application, or a party that will be the assignee who filed the application, may change the correspondence address in that application under this paragraph.

(2) Where a § 1.63 oath or declaration has been filed by any of the inventors. If a § 1.63 oath or declaration has been filed, or is filed concurrent with the filing of an application, by any of the inventors, the correspondence address may be changed by the parties set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, except for paragraph (b)(2).

(b) Amendments and other papers. Amendments and other papers, except for written assertions pursuant to § 1.27(c)(2)(ii) of this part, filed in the application must be signed by:

(1) A registered attorney or agent of record appointed in compliance with § 1.34(b);

(2) A registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of § 1.34(a);

(3) An assignee as provided for under § 3.71(b) of this chapter; or

(4) All of the applicants (§ 1.41(b)) for patent, unless there is an assignee of the entire interest and such assignee has taken action in the application in accordance with § 3.71 of this chapter.

(c) All notices, official letters, and other communications for the patent owner or owners in a reexamination proceeding will be directed to the attorney or agent of record (see § 1.34(b)) in the patent file at the address listed on the register of patent attorneys and agents maintained pursuant to § § 10.5 and 10.11 or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the patent owner or owners at the address or addresses of record. Amendments and other papers filed in a reexamination proceeding on behalf of the patent owner must be signed by the patent owner, or if there is more than one owner by all the owners, or by an attorney or agent of record in the patent file, or by a registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of § 1.34(a). Double correspondence with the patent owner or owners and the patent owner's attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more than one attorney or agent is of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the last attorney or agent made of record.

(d) A "correspondence address" or change thereto may be filed with the Patent and Trademark Office during the enforceable life of the patent. The "correspondence address" will be used in any correspondence relating to maintenance fees unless a separate "fee address" has been specified. See § 1.363 for "fee address" used solely for maintenance fee purposes.

**Legislative History**

[36 FR 12617, July 2, 1971, as amended at 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984; 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 62 FR 53132, 53184, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54661, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54661, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) and (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.34 Recognition for representation.

(a) When a registered attorney or agent acting in a representative capacity, pursuant to § 1.31, appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the United States Patent and Trademark Office in a patent case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the United States Patent and Trademark Office that under the provisions of this subchapter and the law, he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. In filing such a paper, the registered attorney or agent should specify his or her registration number with his or her signature. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) When a registered attorney or agent shall have filed his or her power of attorney, or authorization, duly executed by the person or persons entitled to prosecute an application or a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding, pursuant to § 1.31, he or she is a principal registered attorney or agent of record in the case. A principal registered attorney or agent, so appointed, may appoint an associate registered attorney or agent who shall also then be of record.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of registered attorney or agent.

A power of attorney or authorization of agent, pursuant to § 1.31, may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case, and a registered attorney or agent may withdraw, upon application to and approval by the Commissioner. A registered attorney or agent, except an associate registered attorney or agent whose address is the same as that of the principal registered attorney or agent, will be notified of the revocation of the power of attorney or authorization, and the applicant or patent owner will be notified of the withdrawal of the registered attorney or agent. An assignment will not of itself operate as a revocation of a power or authorization previously given, but the assignee of the entire interest may revoke previous powers and be represented by a registered attorney or agent of the assignee's own selection. See § 1.613(d) for withdrawal in an interference.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984; 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

§ 1.41 Applicant for patent.

(a) A patent is applied for in the name or names of the actual inventor or inventors.

(1) The inventorship of a nonprovisional application is that inventorship set forth in the oath or declaration as prescribed by § 1.63, except as provided for in § § 1.53(d)(4) and 1.63(d). If an oath or declaration as prescribed by § 1.63 is not filed during the pendency of a nonprovisional application, the inventorship is that inventorship set forth in the application papers filed pursuant to § 1.53(b), unless applicant files a paper, including the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i), supplying or changing the name or names of the inventor or inventors.

(2) The inventorship of a provisional application is that inventorship set forth in the cover sheet as prescribed by § 1.51(c)(1). If a cover sheet as prescribed by § 1.51(c)(1) is not filed during the pendency of a provisional application, the inventorship is that inventorship set forth in the application papers filed pursuant to § 1.53(c), unless applicant files a paper including the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(q), supplying or changing the name or names of the inventor or inventors.

(3) In a nonprovisional application filed without an oath or declaration as prescribed by § 1.63 or a provisional application filed without a cover sheet as prescribed by § 1.51(c)(1), the name, residence, and citizenship of each person believed to be an actual inventor should be provided when the application papers pursuant to § 1.53(b) or § 1.53(c) are filed.

(4) The inventorship of an international application entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 is that inventorship set forth in the international application, which includes any change effected under PCT Rule 92 bis. See § 1.497(d) and (f) for filing an oath or declaration naming an inventive entity different from the inventive entity named in the international application, or if a change to the inventive entity has been effected under PCT Rule 92 bis subsequent to the execution of any declaration filed under PCT Rule 4.17(iv) (§ 1.48(f)(1) does not apply to an international application entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371).

(b) Unless the contrary is indicated the word "applicant" when used in these sections refers to the inventor or joint inventors who are applying for a patent, or to the person mentioned in § § 1.42, 1.43, or § 1.47 who is applying for a patent in place of the inventor.

(c) Any person authorized by the applicant may physically or electronically deliver an application for patent to the Office on behalf of the inventor or inventors, but an oath or declaration for the application (§ 1.63) can only be made in accordance with § 1.64.

(d) A showing may be required from the person filing the application that the filing was authorized where such authorization comes into question.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983; 62 FR 53132, 53184, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) and (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.42 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent. Where the inventor dies during the time intervening between the filing of the application and the granting of a patent thereon, the letters patent may be issued to the legal representative upon proper intervention.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

§ 1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

§ 1.44 [This section was removed and reserved. See 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.45 Joint inventors.

(a) Joint inventors must apply for a patent jointly and each must make the required oath or declaration: neither of them alone, nor less than the entire number, can apply for a patent for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in § 1.47.

(b) Inventors may apply for a patent jointly even though

(1) They did not physically work together or at the same time,

(2) Each inventor did not make the same type or amount of contribution, or

(3) Each inventor did not make a contribution to the subject matter of every claim of the application.

(c) If multiple inventors are named in a nonprovisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter of at least one claim of the application and the application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116. If multiple inventors are named in a provisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter disclosed in the provisional application and the provisional application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

§ 1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.

In case the whole or a part interest in the invention or in the patent to be issued is assigned, the application must still be made or authorized to be made, and an oath or declaration signed, by the inventor or one of the persons mentioned in § § 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. However, the patent may be issued to the assignee or jointly to the inventor and the assignee as provided in § 3.81.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

§ 1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.

(a) If a joint inventor refuses to join in an application for patent or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the application may be made by the other inventor on behalf of himself or herself and the nonsigning inventor. The oath

or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts, the fee set forth in § 1.17(h), and the last known address of the nonsigning inventor. The nonsigning inventor may subsequently join in the application by filing an oath or declaration complying with § 1.63.

(b) Whenever all of the inventors refuse to execute an application for patent, or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, a person to whom an inventor has assigned or agreed in writing to assign the invention, or who otherwise shows sufficient sproprietary interest in the matter justifying such action, may make application for patent on behalf of and as agent for all the inventors. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts, a showing that such action is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties or to prevent irreparable damage, the fee set forth in § 1.17(h), and the last known address of all of the inventors. An inventor may subsequently join in the application by filing an oath or declaration complying with § 1.63.

(c) The Office will send notice of the filing of the application to all inventors who have not joined in the application at the address(es) provided in the petition under this section, and publish notice of the filing of the application in the Official Gazette. The Office may dispense with this notice provision in a continuation or divisional application, if notice regarding the filing of the prior application was given to the nonsigning inventor(s).

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983; 62 FR 53132, 53184, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54662, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.48 Correction of inventorship in a patent application, other than a reissue application, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 116.

(a) Nonprovisional application after oath/declaration filed. If the inventive entity is set forth in error in an executed § 1.63 oath or declaration in a nonprovisional application, and such error arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the person named as an inventor in error or on the part of the person who through error was not named as an inventor, the inventorship of the nonprovisional application may be amended to name only the actual inventor or inventors. If the nonprovisional application is involved in an interference, the amendment must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634. Amendment of the inventorship requires:

(1) A request to correct the inventorship that sets forth the desired inventorship change;

(2) A statement from each person being added as an inventor and from each person being deleted as an inventor that the error in inventorship occurred without deceptive intention on his or her part;

(3) An oath or declaration by the actual inventor or inventors as required by § 1.63 or as permitted by § § 1.42, 1.43 or § 1.47;

(4) The processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i); and

(5) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see § 3.73(b) of this chapter).

(b) Nonprovisional application -- fewer inventors due to amendment or cancellation of claims. If the correct inventors are named in a nonprovisional application, and the prosecution of the nonprovisional application results in the amendment or cancellation of claims so that fewer than all of the currently named inventors are the actual inventors of the invention being claimed in the nonprovisional application, an amendment must be filed requesting deletion of the name or names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed. If the application is involved in an interference, the amendment must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634. Amendment of the inventorship requires:

(1) A request, signed by a party set forth in § 1.33(b), to correct the inventorship that identifies the named inventor or inventors being deleted and acknowledges that the inventor's invention is no longer being claimed in the nonprovisional application; and

(2) The processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i).

(c) Nonprovisional application -- inventors added for claims to previously unclaimed subject matter. If a nonprovisional application discloses unclaimed subject matter by an inventor or inventors not named in the application, the application may be amended to add claims to the subject matter and name the correct inventors for the application. If the application is involved in an interference, the amendment must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634. Amendment of the inventorship requires:

(1) A request to correct the inventorship that sets forth the desired inventorship change;

(2) A statement from each person being added as an inventor that the addition is necessitated by amendment of the claims and that the inventorship error occurred without deceptive intention on his or her part;

(3) An oath or declaration by the actual inventors as required by § 1.63 or as permitted by § § 1.42, 1.43, or § 1.47;

(4) The processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i); and

(5) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see § 3.73(b) of this chapter).

(d) Provisional application -- adding omitted inventors. If the name or names of an inventor or inventors were omitted in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of the omitted inventor or inventors, the provisional application may be amended to add the name or names of the omitted inventor or inventors. Amendment of the inventorship requires:

(1) A request, signed by a party set forth in § 1.33(b), to correct the inventorship that identifies the inventor or inventors being added and states that the inventorship error occurred without deceptive intention on the part of the omitted inventor or inventors; and

(2) The processing fee set forth in § 1.17(q).

(e) Provisional application -- deleting the name or names of the inventor or inventors. If a person or persons were named as an inventor or inventors in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of such person or persons, an amendment may be filed in the provisional application deleting the name or names of the person or persons who were erroneously named. Amendment of the inventorship requires:

(1) A request to correct the inventorship that sets forth the desired inventorship change;

(2) A statement by the person or persons whose name or names are being deleted that the inventorship error occurred without deceptive intention on the part of such person or persons;

(3) The processing fee set forth in § 1.17(q); and

(4) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see § 3.73(b) of this chapter).

(f)(1) Nonprovisional application-filing executed oath/declaration corrects inventorship. If the correct inventor or inventors are not named on filing a nonprovisional application under § 1.53(b) without an executed oath or declaration under § 1.63 by any of the inventors, the first submission of an executed oath or declaration under § 1.63 by any of the inventors during the pendency of the application will act to correct the earlier identification of inventorship. See §

1.41(a)(4) and 1.497(d) and (f) for submission of an executed oath or declaration to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 naming an inventive entity different from the inventive entity set forth in the international stage.

(2) Provisional application -- filing cover sheet corrects inventorship. If the correct inventor or inventors are not named on filing a provisional application without a cover sheet under § 1.51(c)(1), the later submission of a cover sheet under § 1.51(c)(1) during the pendency of the application will act to correct the earlier identification of inventorship.

(g) Additional information may be required. The Office may require such other information as may be deemed appropriate under the particular circumstances surrounding the correction of inventorship.

(h) Reissue applications not covered. The provisions of this section do not apply to reissue applications. See § § 1.171 and 1.175 for correction of inventorship in a patent via a reissue application.

(i) Correction of inventorship in patent or interference. See § 1.324 for correction of inventorship in a patent, and § 1.634 for correction of inventorship in an interference.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985; 57 FR 56447, Nov. 30, 1992; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53185, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54663, Sept. 8, 2000; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54663, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

THE APPLICATION

§ 1.51 General requisites of an application.

(a) Applications for patents must be made to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) A complete application filed under § 1.53(b) or § 1.53(d) comprises:

(1) A specification as prescribed by 35 U.S.C. 112, including a claim or claims, see § § 1.71 to 1.77;

(2) An oath or declaration, see § § 1.63 and 1.68;

(3) Drawings, when necessary, see § § 1.81 to 1.85; and

(4) The prescribed filing fee, see § 1.16.

(c) A complete provisional application filed under § 1.53(c) comprises:

(1) A cover sheet identifying:

(i) The application as a provisional application,

(ii) The name or names of the inventor or inventors, (see § 1.41(a)(2)),

(iii) The residence of each named inventor,

(iv) The title of the invention,

(v) The name and registration number of the attorney or agent (if applicable),

(vi) The docket number used by the person filing the application to identify the application (if applicable),

(vii) The correspondence address, and

(viii) The name of the U.S. Government agency and Government contract number (if the invention was made by an agency of the U.S. Government or under a contract with an agency of the U.S. Government);

(2) A specification as prescribed by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, see § 1.71;

(3) Drawings, when necessary, see § § 1.81 to 1.85; and

(4) The prescribed filing fee, see § 1.16.

(d) Applicants are encouraged to file an information disclosure statement in nonprovisional applications. See § 1.97 and § 1.98. No information disclosure statement may be filed in a provisional application.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982; 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983; 57 FR 2033, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53185, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54664, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54664, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.

(a) Papers that are to become a part of the permanent United States Patent and Trademark Office records in the file of a patent application or a reexamination proceeding.

(1) All papers, other than drawings, that are to become a part of the permanent United States Patent and Trademark Office records in the file of a patent application or reexamination proceeding must be on sheets of paper that are the same size, and:

(i) Flexible, strong, smooth, non-shiny, durable, and white;

(ii) Either 21.0 cm by 29.7 cm (DIN size A4) or 21.6 cm by 27.9 cm (8 1/2 by 11 inches), with each sheet including a top margin of at least 2.0 cm ( 3/4 inch), a left side margin of at least 2.5 cm (1 inch), a right side margin of at least 2.0 cm ( 3/4 inch), and a bottom margin of at least 2.0 cm ( 3/4 inch);

(iii) Written on only one side in portrait orientation;

(iv) Plainly and legibly written either by a typewriter or machine printer in permanent dark ink or its equivalent; and

(v) Presented in a form having sufficient clarity and contrast between the paper and the writing thereon to permit the direct reproduction of readily legible copies in any number by use of photographic, electrostatic, photo-offset, and microfilming processes and electronic capture by use of digital imaging and optical character recognition.

(2) All papers that are to become a part of the permanent records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office should have no holes in the sheets as submitted.

(3) The provisions of this paragraph and paragraph (b) of this section do not apply to the pre-printed information on forms provided by the Office, or to the copy of the patent submitted in double column format as the specification in a reissue application or request for reexamination.

(4) See § 1.58 for chemical and mathematical formulae and tables, and § 1.84 for drawings.

(5) If papers that do not comply with paragraph (a)(1) of this section are submitted as part of the permanent record, other than the drawings, applicant, or the patent owner, or the requester in a reexamination proceeding, will be notified and must provide substitute papers that comply with paragraph (a)(1) of this section within a set time period.

(b) The application (specification, including the claims, drawings, and oath or declaration) or reexamination proceeding and any amendments or corrections to the application or reexamination proceeding. (1) The application or proceeding and any amendments or corrections to the application (including any translation submitted pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section) or proceeding, except as provided for in § 1.69 and paragraph (d) of this section, must:

(i) Comply with the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section; and

(ii) Be in the English language or be accompanied by a translation of the application and a translation of any corrections or amendments into the English language together with a statement that the translation is accurate.

(2) The specification (including the abstract and claims) for other than reissue applications and reexamination proceedings, and any amendments for applications (including reissue applications) and reexamination proceedings to the specification, except as provided for in § § 1.821 through 1.825, must have:

(i) Lines that are 1 1/2 or double spaced;

(ii) Text written in a nonscript type font (e.g., Arial, Times Roman, or Courier) lettering style having capital letters which are at least 0.21 cm (0.08 inch) high; and

(iii) Only a single column of text.

(3) The claim or claims must commence on a separate sheet (§ 1.75(h)).

(4) The abstract must commence on a separate sheet or be submitted as the first page of the patent in a reissue application or reexamination proceeding (§ 1.72(b)).

(5) Other than in a reissue application or reexamination proceeding, the pages of the specification including claims and abstract must be numbered consecutively, starting with 1, the numbers being centrally located above or preferably, below, the text.

(6) Other than in a reissue application or reexamination proceeding, the paragraphs of the specification, other than in the claims or abstract, may be numbered at the time the application is filed, and should be individually and consecutively numbered using Arabic numerals, so as to unambiguously identify each paragraph. The number should consist of at least four numerals enclosed in square brackets, including leading zeros (e.g., [0001]). The numbers and enclosing brackets should appear to the right of the left margin as the first item in each paragraph, before the first word of the paragraph, and should be highlighted in bold. A gap, equivalent to approximately four spaces, should follow the number. Nontext elements (e.g., tables, mathematical or chemical formulae, chemical structures, and sequence data) are considered part of the numbered paragraph around or above the elements, and should not be independently numbered. If a nontext element extends to the left margin, it should not be numbered as a separate and independent paragraph. A list is also treated as part of the paragraph around or above the list, and should not be independently numbered. Paragraph or section headers (titles), whether abutting the left margin or centered on the page, are not considered paragraphs and should not be numbered.

(7) If papers that do not comply with paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(5) of this section are submitted as part of the application, applicant, or patent owner, or requester in a reexamination proceeding, will be notified and the applicant, patent owner or requester in a reexamination proceeding must provide substitute papers that comply with paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(5) of this section within a set time period.

(c)(1) Any interlineation, erasure, cancellation or other alteration of the application papers filed must be made before the signing of any accompanying oath or declaration pursuant to § 1.63 referring to those application papers and should be dated and initialed or signed by the applicant on the same sheet of paper. Application papers containing alterations made after the signing of an oath or declaration referring to those application papers must be supported by a supplemental

oath or declaration under § 1.67. In either situation, a substitute specification (§ 1.125) is required if the application papers do not comply with paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(2) After the signing of the oath or declaration referring to the application papers, amendments may only be made in the manner provided by § 1.121.

(3) Notwithstanding the provisions of this paragraph, if an oath or declaration is a copy of the oath or declaration from a prior application, the application for which such copy is submitted may contain alterations that do not introduce matter that would have been new matter in the prior application.

(d) A nonprovisional or provisional application may be filed in a language other than English.

(1) Nonprovisional application. If a nonprovisional application is filed in a language other than English, an English language translation of the non-English language application, a statement that the translation is accurate, and the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i) are required. If these items are not filed with the application, applicant will be notified and given a period of time within which they must be filed in order to avoid abandonment.

(2) Provisional application. If a provisional application is filed in a language other than English, an English language translation of the non-English language provisional application will not be required in the provisional application. See § 1.78(a) for the requirements for claiming the benefit of such provisional application in a nonprovisional application.

(e) Electronic documents that are to become part of the permanent United States Patent and Trademark Office records in the file of a patent application or reexamination proceeding.

(1) The following documents may be submitted to the Office on a compact disc in compliance with this paragraph:

(i) A computer program listing (see § 1.96);

(ii) A "Sequence Listing" (submitted under § 1.821(c)); or

(iii) A table (see § 1.58) that has more than 50 pages of text.

(2) A compact disc as used in this part means a Compact Disc-Read Only Memory (CD-ROM) or a Compact Disc-Recordable (CD-R) in compliance with this paragraph. A CD-ROM is a "read-only" medium on which the data is pressed into the disc so that it cannot be changed or erased. A CD-R is a "write once" medium on which once the data is recorded, it is permanent and cannot be changed or erased.

(3)(i) Each compact disc must conform to the International Standards Organization (ISO) 9660 standard, and the contents of each compact disc must be in compliance with the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII).

(ii) Each compact disc must be enclosed in a hard compact disc case within an unsealed padded and protective mailing envelope and accompanied by a transmittal letter on paper in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section. The transmittal letter must list for each compact disc the machine format (e.g., IBM-PC, Macintosh), the operating system compatibility (e.g., MS-DOS, MS-Windows, Macintosh, Unix), a list of files contained on the compact disc including their names, sizes in bytes, and dates of creation, plus any other special information that is necessary to identify, maintain, and interpret the information on the compact disc. Compact discs submitted to the Office will not be returned to the applicant.

(4) Any compact disc must be submitted in duplicate unless it contains only the "Sequence Listing" in computer readable form required by § 1.821(e). The compact disc and duplicate copy must be labeled "Copy 1" and "Copy 2," respectively. The transmittal letter which accompanies the compact disc must include a statement that the two compact discs are identical. In the event that the two compact discs are not identical, the Office will use the compact disc labeled "Copy 1" for further processing. Any amendment to the information on a compact disc must be by way of a replacement compact disc in compliance with this paragraph containing the substitute information, and must be accompanied by a

statement that the replacement compact disc contains no new matter. The compact disc and copy must be labeled "COPY 1 REPLACEMENT MM/DD/YYYY" (with the month, day and year of creation indicated), and "COPY 2 REPLACEMENT MM/DD/YYYY," respectively.

(5) The specification must contain an incorporation-by-reference of the material on the compact disc in a separate paragraph (§ 1.77(b)(4)), identifying each compact disc by the names of the files contained on each of the compact discs, their date of creation and their sizes in bytes. The Office may require applicant to amend the specification to include in the paper portion any part of the specification previously submitted on compact disc.

(6) A compact disc must also be labeled with the following information:

(i) The name of each inventor (if known);

(ii) Title of the invention;

(iii) The docket number, or application number if known, used by the person filing the application to identify the application; and

(iv) A creation date of the compact disc.

(v) If multiple compact discs are submitted, the label shall indicate their order (e.g. "1 of X").

(vi) An indication that the disk is "Copy 1" or "Copy 2" of the submission. See paragraph (b)(4) of this section.

(7) If a file is unreadable on both copies of the disc, the unreadable file will be treated as not having been submitted. A file is unreadable if, for example, it is of a format that does not comply with the requirements of paragraph (e)(3) of this section, it is corrupted by a computer virus, or it is written onto a defective compact disc.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20462, May. 11, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982; 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983; 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984; 57 FR 2033, Jan. 17, 1992; 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53186, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54664, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, Dec. 18, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54664, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a), (b), and (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000, and added paragraph (e), effective Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (d), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.53 Application number, filing date, and completion of application.

(a) Application number. Any papers received in the Patent and Trademark Office which purport to be an application for a patent will be assigned an application number for identification purposes.

(b) Application filing requirements -- Nonprovisional application. The filing date of an application for patent filed under this section, except for a provisional application under paragraph (c) of this section or a continued prosecution application under paragraph (d) of this section, is the date on which a specification as prescribed by 35 U.S.C. 112 containing a description pursuant to § 1.71 and at least one claim pursuant to § 1.75, and any drawing required by § 1.81(a) are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. No new matter may be introduced into an application after its filing date. A continuing application, which may be a continuation, divisional, or continuation-in-part application, may be filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) and § 1.78(a).

(1) A continuation or divisional application that names as inventors the same or fewer than all of the inventors named in the prior application may be filed under this paragraph or paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) A continuation-in-part application (which may disclose and claim subject matter not disclosed in the prior application) or a continuation or divisional application naming an inventor not named in the prior application must be filed under this paragraph.

(c) Application filing requirements -- Provisional application. The filing date of a provisional application is the date on which a specification as prescribed by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, and any drawing required by § 1.81(a) are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. No amendment, other than to make the provisional application comply with the patent statute and all applicable regulations, may be made to the provisional application after the filing date of the provisional application.

(1) A provisional application must also include the cover sheet required by § 1.51(c)(1), which may be an application data sheet (§ 1.76), or a cover letter identifying the application as a provisional application. Otherwise, the application will be treated as an application filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(2) An application for patent filed under paragraph (b) of this section may be converted to a provisional application and be accorded the original filing date of the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section. The grant of such a request for conversion will not entitle applicant to a refund of the fees that were properly paid in the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section. Such a request for conversion must be accompanied by the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(q) and be filed prior to the earliest of:

(i) Abandonment of the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section;

(ii) Payment of the issue fee on the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section;

(iii) Expiration of twelve months after the filing date of the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section; or

(iv) The filing of a request for a statutory invention registration under § 1.293 in the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) A provisional application filed under paragraph (c) of this section may be converted to a nonprovisional application filed under paragraph (b) of this section and accorded the original filing date of the provisional application. The conversion of a provisional application to a nonprovisional application will not result in either the refund of any fee properly paid in the provisional application or the application of any such fee to the filing fee, or any other fee, for the nonprovisional application. Conversion of a provisional application to a nonprovisional application under this paragraph will result in the term of any patent to issue from the application being measured from at least the filing date of the provisional application for which conversion is requested. Thus, applicants should consider avoiding this adverse patent term impact by filing a nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of the provisional application under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) (rather than converting the provisional application into a nonprovisional application pursuant to this paragraph). A request to convert a provisional application to a nonprovisional application must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and an amendment including at least one claim as prescribed by the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, unless the provisional application under paragraph (c) of this section otherwise contains at least one claim as prescribed by the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. The nonprovisional application resulting from conversion of a provisional application must also include the filing fee for a nonprovisional application, an oath or declaration by the applicant pursuant to § § 1.63, 1.162, or 1.175, and the surcharge required by § 1.16(e) if either the basic filing fee for a nonprovisional application or the oath or declaration was not present on the filing date accorded the resulting nonprovisional application (i.e., the filing date of the original provisional application). A request to convert a provisional application to a nonprovisional application must also be filed prior to the earliest of:

(i) Abandonment of the provisional application filed under paragraph (c) of this section; or

(ii) Expiration of twelve months after the filing date of the provisional application filed under this paragraph (c).

(4) A provisional application is not entitled to the right of priority under 35 U.S.C. 119 or 365(a) or § 1.55, or to the benefit of an earlier filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) or § 1.78 of any other application. No claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or § 1.78(a)(4) may be made in a design application based on a provisional application. No request under § 1.293 for a statutory invention registration may be filed in a provisional application. The requirements of § § 1.821 through 1.825 regarding application disclosures containing nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are not mandatory for provisional applications.

(d) Application filing requirements -- Continued prosecution (nonprovisional) application. (1) A continuation or divisional application (but not a continuation-in-part) of a prior nonprovisional application may be filed as a continued prosecution application under this paragraph, provided that:

(i) The prior nonprovisional application is:

(A) A utility or plant application that was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) before May 29, 2000, and is complete as defined by § 1.51(b);

(B) A design application that is complete as defined by § 1.51(b); or

(C) The national stage of an international application that was filed under 35 U.S.C. 363 before May 29, 2000, and is in compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371; and

(ii) The application under this paragraph is filed before the earliest of:

(A) Payment of the issue fee on the prior application, unless a petition under § 1.313(c) is granted in the prior application;

(B) Abandonment of the prior application; or

(C) Termination of proceedings on the prior application.

(2) The filing date of a continued prosecution application is the date on which a request on a separate paper for an application under this paragraph is filed. An application filed under this paragraph:

(i) Must identify the prior application;

(ii) Discloses and claims only subject matter disclosed in the prior application;

(iii) Names as inventors the same inventors named in the prior application on the date the application under this paragraph was filed, except as provided in paragraph (d)(4) of this section;

(iv) Includes the request for an application under this paragraph, will utilize the file jacket and contents of the prior application, including the specification, drawings and oath or declaration from the prior application, to constitute the new application, and will be assigned the application number of the prior application for identification purposes; and

(v) Is a request to expressly abandon the prior application as of the filing date of the request for an application under this paragraph.

(3) The filing fee for a continued prosecution application filed under this paragraph is:

(i) The basic filing fee as set forth in § 1.16; and

(ii) Any additional § 1.16 fee due based on the number of claims remaining in the application after entry of any amendment accompanying the request for an application under this paragraph and entry of any amendments under § 1.116 unentered in the prior application which applicant has requested to be entered in the continued prosecution application.

(4) An application filed under this paragraph may be filed by fewer than all the inventors named in the prior application, provided that the request for an application under this paragraph when filed is accompanied by a statement requesting deletion of the name or names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed in the new application. No person may be named as an inventor in an application filed under this paragraph who was not named as an inventor in the prior application on the date the application under this paragraph was filed, except by way of correction of inventorship under § 1.48.

(5) Any new change must be made in the form of an amendment to the prior application as it existed prior to the filing of an application under this paragraph. No amendment in an application under this paragraph (a continued prosecution application) may introduce new matter or matter that would have been new matter in the prior application. Any new specification filed with the request for an application under this paragraph will not be considered part of the original application papers, but will be treated as a substitute specification in accordance with § 1.125.

(6) The filing of a continued prosecution application under this paragraph will be construed to include a waiver of confidentiality by the applicant under 35 U.S.C. 122 to the extent that any member of the public, who is entitled under the provisions of § 1.14 to access to, copies of, or information concerning either the prior application or any continuing application filed under the provisions of this paragraph, may be given similar access to, copies of, or similar information concerning the other application or applications in the file jacket.

(7) A request for an application under this paragraph is the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 to every application assigned the application number identified in such request. No amendment in an application under this paragraph may delete this specific reference to any prior application.

(8) In addition to identifying the application number of the prior application, applicant should furnish in the request for an application under this paragraph the following information relating to the prior application to the best of his or her ability:

(i) Title of invention;

(ii) Name of applicant(s); and

(iii) Correspondence address.

(9) Envelopes containing only requests and fees for filing an application under this paragraph should be marked "Box CPA." Requests for an application under this paragraph filed by facsimile transmission should be clearly marked "Box CPA."

(10) See § 1.103(b) for requesting a limited suspension of action in an application filed under this paragraph.

(e) Failure to meet filing date requirements. (1) If an application deposited under paragraph (b), (c), or (d) of this section does not meet the requirements of such paragraph to be entitled to a filing date, applicant will be so notified, if a correspondence address has been provided, and given a time period within which to correct the filing error.

(2) Any request for review of a notification pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section, or a notification that the original application papers lack a portion of the specification or drawing(s), must be by way of a petition pursuant to this paragraph accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h). In the absence of a timely (§ 1.181(f)) petition pursuant to this paragraph, the filing date of an application in which the applicant was notified of a filing error pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section will be the date the filing error is corrected.

(3) If an applicant is notified of a filing error pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section, but fails to correct the filing error within the given time period or otherwise timely (§ 1.181(f)) take action pursuant to this paragraph, proceedings in the application will be considered terminated. Where proceedings in an application are terminated pursuant to this paragraph, the application may be disposed of, and any filing fees, less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n), will be refunded.

(f) Completion of application subsequent to filing -- Nonprovisional (including continued prosecution or reissue) application.

(1) If an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b) or (d) of this section does not include the basic filing fee, or if an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section does not include an oath or declaration by the applicant pursuant to § § 1.63, 1.162 or § 1.175, and applicant has provided a correspondence address (§ 1.33(a)), applicant will be notified and given a period of time within which to pay the filing fee, file an oath or declaration in an application under paragraph (b) of this section, and pay the surcharge required by § 1.16(e) to avoid abandonment.

(2) If an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section does not include the basic filing fee or an oath or declaration by the applicant pursuant to § § 1.63, 1.162 or § 1.175, and applicant has not provided a correspondence address (§ 1.33(a)), applicant has two months from the filing date of the application within which to pay the basic filing fee, file an oath or declaration, and pay the surcharge required by § 1.16(e) to avoid abandonment.

(3) This paragraph applies to continuation or divisional applications under paragraphs (b) or (d) of this section and to continuation-in-part applications under paragraph (b) of this section.

(4) See § 1.63(d) concerning the submission of a copy of the oath or declaration from the prior application for a continuation or divisional application under paragraph (b) of this section.

(5) If applicant does not pay one of the basic filing or the processing and retention fees (§ 1.21(l)) during the pendency of the application, the Office may dispose of the application.

(g) Completion of application subsequent to filing -- provisional application.

(1) If a provisional application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section does not include the cover sheet required by § 1.51(c)(1) or the basic filing fee (§ 1.16(k)), and applicant has provided a correspondence address (§ 1.33(a)), applicant will be notified and given a period of time within which to pay the basic filing fee, file a cover sheet (§ 1.51(c)(1)), and pay the surcharge required by § 1.16(l) to avoid abandonment.

(2) If a provisional application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section does not include the cover sheet required by § 1.51(c)(1) or the basic filing fee (§ 1.16(k)), and applicant has not provided a correspondence address (§ 1.33(a)), applicant has two months from the filing date of the application within which to pay the basic filing fee, file a cover sheet (§ 1.51(c)(1)), and pay the surcharge required by § 1.16(l) to avoid abandonment.

(3) If applicant does not pay the basic filing fee during the pendency of the application, the Office may dispose of the application.

(h) Subsequent treatment of application -- Nonprovisional (including continued prosecution) application. An application for a patent filed under paragraphs (b) or (d) of this section will not be placed on the files for examination until all its required parts, complying with the rules relating thereto, are received, except that certain minor informalities may be waived subject to subsequent correction whenever required.

(i) Subsequent treatment of application -- Provisional application. A provisional application for a patent filed under paragraph (c) of this section will not be placed on the files for examination and will become abandoned no later than twelve months after its filing date pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 111(b)(1).

(j) Filing date of international application. The filing date of an international application designating the United States of America is treated as the filing date in the United States of America under PCT Article 11(3), except as provided in 35 U.S.C. 102(e).

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988; 54 FR 47518, Nov. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20223, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53186, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 5732, 5734, Feb. 4, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 36184, 36185, July 2, 1998; 65 FR 14865, 14871, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 50092, 50104, Aug. 16, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54665, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14871, Mar. 20, 2000, amended this section, effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 50092, 50104, Aug. 16, 2000, revised paragraph (c)(3), effective Aug. 16, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54665, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraph (c)(4), effective Dec. 18, 2000.]

§ 1.54 Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.

(a) It is desirable that all parts of the complete application be deposited in the Office together; otherwise, a letter must accompany each part, accurately and clearly connecting it with the other parts of the application. See § 1.53 (f) and (g) with regard to completion of an application.

(b) Applicant will be informed of the application number and filing date by a filing receipt, unless the application is an application filed under § 1.53(d).

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983; 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53188, Oct. 10, 1997]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53188, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.55 Claim for foreign priority.

(a) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may claim the benefit of the filing date of one or more prior foreign applications under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(a) through (d) and (f), 172, and 365(a) and (b).

(1)(i) In an original application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a), the claim for priority must be presented during the pendency of the application, and within the later of four months from the actual filing date of the application or sixteen months from the filing date of the prior foreign application. This time period is not extendable. The claim must identify the foreign application for which priority is claimed, as well as any foreign application for the same subject matter and having a filing date before that of the application for which priority is claimed, by specifying the application number, country (or intellectual property authority), day, month, and year of its filing. The time periods in this paragraph do not apply in an application under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) if the application is:

(ii) In an application that entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371, the claim for priority must be made during the pendency of the application and within the time limit set forth in the PCT and the Regulations under the PCT.

(2) The claim for priority and the certified copy of the foreign application specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(b) or PCT Rule 17 must, in any event, be filed before the patent is granted. If the claim for priority or the certified copy of the foreign application is filed after the date the issue fee is paid, it must be accompanied by the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i), but the patent will not include the priority claim unless corrected by a certificate of correction under 35 U.S.C. 255 and § 1.323.

(3) When the application becomes involved in an interference (§ 1.630), when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner, or when deemed necessary by the examiner, the Office may require that the

claim for priority and the certified copy of the foreign application be filed earlier than provided in paragraphs (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section.

(4) An English language translation of a non-English language foreign application is not required except when the application is involved in an interference (§ 1.630), when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner, or when specifically required by the examiner. If an English language translation is required, it must be filed together with a statement that the translation of the certified copy is accurate.

(b) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may under certain circumstances claim priority on the basis of one or more applications for an inventor's certificate in a country granting both inventor's certificates and patents. To claim the right of priority on the basis of an application for an inventor's certificate in such a country under 35 U.S.C. 119(d), the applicant when submitting a claim for such right as specified in paragraph (a) of this section, shall include an affidavit or declaration. The affidavit or declaration must include a specific statement that, upon an investigation, he or she is satisfied that to the best of his or her knowledge, the applicant, when filing the application for the inventor's certificate, had the option to file an application for either a patent or an inventor's certificate as to the subject matter of the identified claim or claims forming the basis for the claim of priority.

(c) Unless such claim is accepted in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph, any claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(a) not presented within the time period provided by paragraph (a) of this section is considered to have been waived. If a claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(a) is presented after the time period provided by paragraph (a) of this section, the claim may be accepted if the claim identifying the prior foreign application by specifying its application number, country (or intellectual property authority), and the day, month, and year of its filing was unintentionally delayed. A petition to accept a delayed claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(a) must be accompanied by:

(1) The surcharge set forth in § 1.17(t); and

(2) A statement that the entire delay between the date the claim was due under paragraph (a)(1) of this section and the date the claim was filed was unintentional. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984; 54 FR 47518, Nov. 15, 1989; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 20224, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53188, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54666, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 66502, Nov. 6, 2000;66 FR 67087, 67094, Dec. 28, 2001; 66 FR 67087, 67094, Dec. 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54666, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57053, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a) and added paragraph (c), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective patent examination occurs when, at the time an application is being examined, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability. Each individual associated with the filing and prosecution of a patent application has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability as defined in this section. The duty to disclose information exists with respect to each pending claim until the claim is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration, or the application becomes abandoned. Information material to the patentability of a claim that is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration need not be submitted if the information is not material to the patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the application. There is no duty to submit information which is not

material to the patentability of any existing claim. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim issued in a patent was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in the manner prescribed by § § 1.97(b)-(d) and 1.98. However, no patent will be granted on an application in connection with which fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct. The Office encourages applicants to carefully examine:

(1) prior art cited in search reports of a foreign patent office in a counterpart application, and

(2) the closest information over which individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application believe any pending claim patentably defines, to make sure that any material information contained therein is disclosed to the Office.

(b) Under this section, information is material to patentability when it is not cumulative to information already of record or being made of record in the application, and

(1) It establishes, by itself or in combination with other information, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or

(2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the applicant takes in:

(i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or

(ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

(c) Individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application within the meaning of this section are:

(1) Each inventor named in the application;

(2) Each attorney or agent who prepares or prosecutes the application; and

(3) Every other person who is substantively involved in the preparation or prosecution of the application and who is associated with the inventor, with the assignee or with anyone to whom there is an obligation to assign the application.

(d) Individuals other than the attorney, agent or inventor may comply with this section by disclosing information to the attorney, agent, or inventor.

(e) In any continuation-in-part application, the duty under this section includes the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability, as defined in paragraph (b) of this section, which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992; 65 FR 54604, 54666, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54666, Sept. 8, 2000, added paragraph (e), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.57 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables.

(a) The specification, including the claims, may contain chemical and mathematical formulas, but shall not contain drawings or flow diagrams. The description portion of the specification may contain tables; claims may contain tables either if necessary to conform to 35 U.S.C. 112 or if otherwise found to be desirable.

(b) Tables that are submitted in electronic form (§ § 1.96(c) and 1.821(c)) must maintain the spatial relationships (e.g., columns and rows) of the table elements and preserve the information they convey. Chemical and mathematical formulae must be encoded to maintain the proper positioning of their characters when displayed in order to preserve their intended meaning.

(c) Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables must be presented in compliance with § 1.52 (a) and (b), except that chemical and mathematical formulae or tables may be placed in a landscape orientation if they cannot be presented satisfactorily in a portrait orientation. Typewritten characters used in such formulae and tables must be chosen from a block (nonscript) type font or lettering style having capital letters which are at least 0.21 cm. (0.08 inch) high (e.g., elite type). A space at least 0.64 cm. ( 1/4 inch) high should be provided between complex formulae and tables and the text. Tables should have the lines and columns of data closely spaced to conserve space, consistent with a high degree of legibility.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20463, May 11, 1978; 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000, added paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.59 Expungement of information or copy of papers in application file.

(a)(1) Information in an application will not be expunged and returned, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. See § 1.618 for return of unauthorized and improper papers in interferences.

(2) Information forming part of the original disclosure (i.e., written specification including the claims, drawings, and any preliminary amendment specifically incorporated into an executed oath or declaration under § § 1.63 and 1.175) will not be expunged from the application file.

(b) An applicant may request that the Office expunge and return information, other than what is excluded by paragraph (a)(2) of this section, by filing a petition under this paragraph. Any petition to expunge and return information from an application must include the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and establish to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the return of the information is appropriate.

(c) Upon request by an applicant and payment of the fee specified in § 1.19(b), the Office will furnish copies of an application, unless the application has been disposed of (see § 1.53 (e), (f) and (g)). The Office cannot provide or certify copies of an application that has been disposed of.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 20224, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53188, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.60 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.61 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.62 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

OATH OR DECLARATION

§ 1.63 Oath or declaration.

(a) An oath or declaration filed under § 1.51(b)(2) as a part of a nonprovisional application must:

(1) Be executed, i.e., signed, in accordance with either § 1.66 or § 1.68. There is no minimum age for a person to be qualified to sign, but the person must be competent to sign, i.e., understand the document that the person is signing;

(2) Identify each inventor by full name, including the family name, and at least one given name without abbreviation together with any other given name or initial;

(3) Identify the country of citizenship of each inventor; and

(4) State that the person making the oath or declaration believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought.

(b) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the oath or declaration must also:

(1) Identify the application to which it is directed;

(2) State that the person making the oath or declaration has reviewed and understands the contents of the application, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to in the oath or declaration; and

(3) State that the person making the oath or declaration acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

(c) Unless such information is supplied on an application data sheet in accordance with § 1.76, the oath or declaration must also identify:

(1) The mailing address, and the residence if an inventor lives at a location which is different from where the inventor customarily receives mail, of each inventor; and

(2) Any foreign application for patent (or inventor's certificate) for which a claim for priority is made pursuant to § 1.55, and any foreign application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed, by specifying the application number, country, day, month, and year of its filing.

(d)(1) A newly executed oath or declaration is not required under § 1.51(b)(2) and § 1.53(f) in a continuation or divisional application, provided that:

(i) The prior nonprovisional application contained an oath or declaration as prescribed by paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section;

(ii) The continuation or divisional application was filed by all or by fewer than all of the inventors named in the prior application;

(iii) The specification and drawings filed in the continuation or divisional application contain no matter that would have been new matter in the prior application; and

(iv) A copy of the executed oath or declaration filed in the prior application, showing the signature or an indication thereon that it was signed, is submitted for the continuation or divisional application.

(2) The copy of the executed oath or declaration submitted under this paragraph for a continuation or divisional application must be accompanied by a statement requesting the deletion of the name or names of the person or persons who are not inventors in the continuation or divisional application.

(3) Where the executed oath or declaration of which a copy is submitted for a continuation or divisional application was originally filed in a prior application accorded status under § 1.47, the copy of the executed oath or declaration for such prior application must be accompanied by:

(i) A copy of the decision granting a petition to accord § 1.47 status to the prior application, unless all inventors or legal representatives have filed an oath or declaration to join in an application accorded status under § 1.47 of which the continuation or divisional application claims a benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c); and

(ii) If one or more inventor(s) or legal representative(s) who refused to join in the prior application or could not be found or reached has subsequently joined in the prior application or another application of which the continuation or divisional application claims a benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c), a copy of the subsequently executed oath(s) or declaration(s) filed by the inventor or legal representative to join in the application.

(4) Where the power of attorney (or authorization of agent) or correspondence address was changed during the prosecution of the prior application, the change in power of attorney (or authorization of agent) or correspondence address must be identified in the continuation or divisional application. Otherwise, the Office may not recognize in the continuation or divisional application the change of power of attorney (or authorization of agent) or correspondence address during the prosecution of the prior application.

(5) A newly executed oath or declaration must be filed in a continuation or divisional application naming an inventor not named in the prior application.

(e) A newly executed oath or declaration must be filed in any continuation-in-part application, which application may name all, more, or fewer than all of the inventors named in the prior application.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983; 57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53188, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.64 Person making oath or declaration.

(a) The oath or declaration (§ 1.63), including any supplemental oath or declaration (§ 1.67), must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in § § 1.42, 1.43, 1.47, or § 1.67.

(b) If the person making the oath or declaration or any supplemental oath or declaration is not the inventor (§ § 1.42, 1.43, 1.47, or § 1.67), the oath or declaration shall state the relationship of the person to the inventor, and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor is required to state. If the person signing the oath or declaration is the legal representative of a deceased inventor, the oath or declaration shall also state that the person is a legal representative and the citizenship, residence, and mailing address of the legal representative.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983; 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.

(a) The oath or affirmation may be made before any person within the United States authorized by law to administer oaths. An oath made in a foreign country may be made before any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States authorized to administer oaths, or before any officer having an official seal and authorized to administer oaths in the foreign country in which the applicant may be, whose authority shall be proved by a certificate of a diplomatic or consular officer of the United States, or by an apostille of an official designated by a foreign country which, by treaty or convention, accords like effect to apostilles of designated officials in the United States. The oath shall be attested in all cases in this and other countries, by the proper official seal of the officer before whom the oath or affirmation is made. Such oath or affirmation shall be valid as to execution if it complies with the laws of the State or country where made. When the person before whom the oath or affirmation is made in this country is not provided with a seal, his official character shall be established by competent evidence, as by a certificate from a clerk of a court of record or other proper officer having a seal.

(b) When the oath is taken before an officer in a country foreign to the United States, any accompanying application papers, except the drawings, must be attached together with the oath and a ribbon passed one or more times through all the sheets of the application, except the drawings, and the ends of said ribbon brought together under the seal before the latter is affixed and impressed, or each sheet must be impressed with the official seal of the officer before whom the oath is taken. If the papers as filed are not properly ribboned or each sheet impressed with the seal, the

case will be accepted for examination, but before it is allowed, duplicate papers, prepared in compliance with the foregoing sentence, must be filed.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

§ 1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.

(a) The Office may require, or inventors and applicants may submit, a supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 or § 1.162 to correct any deficiencies or inaccuracies present in the earlier filed oath or declaration.

(1) Deficiencies or inaccuracies relating to all the inventors or applicants (§ § 1.42, 1.43, or § 1.47) may be corrected with a supplemental oath or declaration signed by all the inventors or applicants.

(2) Deficiencies or inaccuracies relating to fewer than all of the inventor(s) or applicant(s) (§ § 1.42, 1.43 or § 1.47) may be corrected with a supplemental oath or declaration identifying the entire inventive entity but signed only by the inventor(s) or applicant(s) to whom the error or deficiency relates.

(3) Deficiencies or inaccuracies due to the failure to meet the requirements of § 1.63(c) (e.g., to correct the omission of a mailing address of an inventor) in an oath or declaration may be corrected with an application data sheet in accordance with § 1.76.

(4) Submission of a supplemental oath or declaration or an application data sheet (§ 1.76), as opposed to who must sign the supplemental oath or declaration or an application data sheet, is governed by § 1.33(a)(2) and paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 must be filed when a claim is presented for matter originally shown or described but not substantially embraced in the statement of invention or claims originally presented or when an oath or declaration submitted in accordance with § 1.53(f) after the filing of the specification and any required drawings specifically and improperly refers to an amendment which includes new matter. No new matter may be introduced into a nonprovisional application after its filing date even if a supplemental oath or declaration is filed. In proper situations, the oath or declaration here required may be made on information and belief by an applicant other than the inventor.

(c) [Reserved]

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53189, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.

Any document to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and which is required by any law, rule, or other regulation to be under oath may be subscribed to by a written declaration. Such declaration may be used in lieu of the oath otherwise required, if, and only if, the declarant is on the same document, warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon. The declarant must set forth in the body of the declaration that all statements made of the declarant's own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.

(a) Whenever an individual making an oath or declaration cannot understand English, the oath or declaration must be in a language that such individual can understand and shall state that such individual understands the content of any documents to which the oath or declaration relates.

(b) Unless the text of any oath or declaration in a language other than English is a form provided or approved by the Patent and Trademark Office, it must be accompanied by an English translation together with a statement that the translation is accurate, except that in the case of an oath or declaration filed under § 1.63, the translation may be filed in the Office no later than two months from the date applicant is notified to file the translation.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 5594, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983; 62 FR 53132, 53189, Oct. 10, 1997]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53189, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (b), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.70 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

SPECIFICATION

§ 1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.

(a) The specification must include a written description of the invention or discovery and of the manner and process of making and using the same, and is required to be in such full, clear, concise, and exact terms as to enable any person

skilled in the art or science to which the invention or discovery appertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to make and use the same.

(b) The specification must set forth the precise invention for which a patent is solicited, in such manner as to distinguish it from other inventions and from what is old. It must describe completely a specific embodiment of the process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter or improvement invented, and must explain the mode of operation or principle whenever applicable. The best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his invention must be set forth.

(c) In the case of an improvement, the specification must particularly point out the part or parts of the process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter to which the improvement relates, and the description should be confined to the specific improvement and to such parts as necessarily cooperate with it or as may be necessary to a complete understanding or description of it.

(d) A copyright or mask work notice may be placed in a design or utility patent application adjacent to copyright and mask work material contained therein. The notice may appear at any appropriate portion of the patent application disclosure. For notices in drawings, see § 1.84(s). The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, "copyright 1983 John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 401) and "*M* John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in paragraph (e) of this section is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(e) The authorization shall read as follows:

A portion of the disclosure of this patent document contains material which is subject to (copyright or mask work) protection. The (copyright or mask work) owner has no objection to the facsimile reproduction by anyone of the patent document or the patent disclosure, as it appears in the Patent and Trademark Office patent file or records, but otherwise reserves all (copyright or mask work) rights whatsoever.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

§ 1.72 Title and abstract.

(a) The title of the invention may not exceed 500 characters in length and must be as short and specific as possible. Characters that cannot be captured and recorded in the Office's automated information systems may not be reflected in the Office's records in such systems or in documents created by the Office. Unless the title is supplied in an application data sheet (§ 1.76), the title of the invention should appear as a heading on the first page of the specification.

(b) A brief abstract of the technical disclosure in the specification must commence on a separate sheet, preferably following the claims, under the heading "Abstract" or "Abstract of the Disclosure." The abstract in an application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111 may not exceed 150 words in length. The purpose of the abstract is to enable the United States Patent and Trademark Office and the public generally to determine quickly from a cursory inspection the nature and gist of the technical disclosure. The abstract will not be used for interpreting the scope of the claims.

**Legislative History**

[31 FR 12922, Oct. 4, 1966, as amended at 43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978; 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57054, Sept. 20, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54667, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57054, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.73 Summary of the invention.

A brief summary of the invention indicating its nature and substance, which may include a statement of the object of the invention, should precede the detailed description. Such summary should, when set forth, be commensurate with the invention as claimed and any object recited should be that of the invention as claimed.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

§ 1.74 Reference to drawings.

When there are drawings, there shall be a brief description of the several views of the drawings and the detailed description of the invention shall refer to the different views by specifying the numbers of the figures and to the different parts by use of reference letters or numerals (preferably the latter).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

§ 1.75 Claim(s).

(a) The specification must conclude with a claim particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention or discovery.

(b) More than one claim may be presented provided they differ substantially from each other and are not unduly multiplied.

(c) One or more claims may be presented in dependent form, referring back to and further limiting another claim or claims in the same application. Any dependent claim which refers to more than one other claim ("multiple dependent claim") shall refer to such other claims in the alternative only. A multiple dependent claim shall not serve as a basis for any other multiple dependent claim. For fee calculation purposes under § 1.16, a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made therein. For fee calculation purposes, also, any claim depending from a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made in that multiple dependent claim. In addition to the other filing fees, any original application which is filed with, or is amended to include, multiple dependent claims must have paid therein the fee set forth in § 1.16(d). Claims in dependent form shall be construed to include all the limitations of the claim incorporated by reference into the

dependent claim. A multiple dependent claim shall be construed to incorporate by reference all the limitations of each of the particular claims in relation to which it is being considered.

(d)(1) The claim or claims must conform to the invention as set forth in the remainder of the specification and the terms and phrases used in the claims must find clear support or antecedent basis in the description so that the meaning of the terms in the claims may be ascertainable by reference to the description. (See § 1.58(a).)

(2) See § § 1.141 to 1.146 as to claiming different inventions in one application.

(e) Where the nature of the case admits, as in the case of an improvement, any independent claim should contain in the following order:

(1) A preamble comprising a general description of all the elements or steps of the claimed combination which are conventional or known,

(2) a phrase such as "wherein the improvement comprises," and

(3) those elements, steps and/or relationships which constitute that portion of the claimed combination which the applicant considers as the new or improved portion.

(f) If there are several claims, they shall be numbered consecutively in Arabic numerals.

(g) The least restrictive claim should be presented as claim number 1, and all dependent claims should be grouped together with the claim or claims to which they refer to the extent practicable.

(h) The claim or claims must commence on a separate sheet.

(i) Where a claim sets forth a plurality of elements or steps, each element or step of the claim should be separated by a line indentation.

**Legislative History**

[31 FR 12922, Oct. 4, 1966, as amended at 36 FR 12690, July 3, 1971; 37 FR 21995, Oct. 18, 1972; 43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1126)

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996, which revised paragraph (g) and added paragraphs (h) and (i), became effective Sept. 23, 1996, and applies to applications filed on or after Sept. 23, 1996.]

§ 1.76 Application data sheet.

(a) Application data sheet. An application data sheet is a sheet or sheets, that may be voluntarily submitted in either provisional or nonprovisional applications, which contains bibliographic data, arranged in a format specified by the Office. If an application data sheet is provided, the application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it has been submitted.

(b) Bibliographic data. Bibliographic data as used in paragraph (a) of this section includes:

(1) Applicant information. This information includes the name, residence, mailing address, and citizenship of each applicant (§ 1.41(b)). The name of each applicant must include the family name, and at least one given name without

abbreviation together with any other given name or initial. If the applicant is not an inventor, this information also includes the applicant's authority (§ § 1.42, 1.43, and 1.47) to apply for the patent on behalf of the inventor.

(2) Correspondence information. This information includes the correspondence address, which may be indicated by reference to a customer number, to which correspondence is to be directed (see § 1.33(a)).

(3) Application information. This information includes the title of the invention, a suggested classification, by class and subclass, the Technology Center to which the subject matter of the invention is assigned, the total number of drawing sheets, a suggested drawing figure for publication (in a nonprovisional application), any docket number assigned to the application, the type of application (e.g., utility, plant, design, reissue, provisional), whether the application discloses any significant part of the subject matter of an application under a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2 of this chapter (see § 5.2(c)), and, for plant applications, the Latin name of the genus and species of the plant claimed, as well as the variety denomination. The suggested classification and Technology Center information should be supplied for provisional applications whether or not claims are present. If claims are not present in a provisional application, the suggested classification and Technology Center should be based upon the disclosure.

(4) Representative information. This information includes the registration number of each practitioner having a power of attorney or authorization of agent in the application (preferably by reference to a customer number). Providing this information in the application data sheet does not constitute a power of attorney or authorization of agent in the application (see § 1.34(b)).

(5) Domestic priority information. This information includes the application number, the filing date, the status (including patent number if available), and relationship of each application for which a benefit is claimed under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, or 365(c). Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and § 1.78(a)(2) or § 1.78(a)(4), and need not otherwise be made part of the specification.

(6) Foreign priority information. This information includes the application number, country, and filing date of each foreign application for which priority is claimed, as well as any foreign application having a filing date before that of the application for which priority is claimed. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and § 1.55(a).

(7) Assignee information. This information includes the name (either person or juristic entity) and address of the assignee of the entire right, title, and interest in an application. Providing this information in the application data sheet does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of this chapter to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

(c) Supplemental application data sheets. Supplemental application data sheets:

(1) May be subsequently supplied prior to payment of the issue fee either to correct or update information in a previously submitted application data sheet, or an oath or declaration under § 1.63 or § 1.67, except that inventorship changes are governed by § 1.48, correspondence changes are governed by § 1.33(a), and citizenship changes are governed by § 1.63 or § 1.67; and

(2) Should identify the information that is being changed (added, deleted, or modified) and therefore need not contain all the previously submitted information that has not changed.

(d) Inconsistencies between application data sheet and oath or declaration. For inconsistencies between information that is supplied by both an application data sheet under this section and by an oath or declaration under § § 1.63 and 1.67:

(1) The latest submitted information will govern notwithstanding whether supplied by an application data sheet, or by a § 1.63 or § 1.67 oath or declaration, except as provided by paragraph (d)(3) of this section;

(2) The information in the application data sheet will govern when the inconsistent information is supplied at the same time by a § 1.63 or § 1.67 oath or declaration, except as provided by paragraph (d)(3) of this section;

(3) The oath or declaration under § 1.63 or § 1.67 governs inconsistencies with the application data sheet in the naming of inventors (§ 1.41(a)(1)) and setting forth their citizenship (35 U.S.C. 115);

(4) The Office will initially capture bibliographic information from the application data sheet (notwithstanding whether an oath or declaration governs the information). Thus, the Office shall generally not look to an oath or declaration under § 1.63 to see if the bibliographic information contained therein is consistent with the bibliographic information captured from an application data sheet (whether the oath or declaration is submitted prior to or subsequent to the application data sheet). Captured bibliographic information derived from an application data sheet containing errors may be recaptured by a request therefor and the submission of a supplemental application data sheet, an oath or declaration under § 1.63 or § 1.67, or a letter pursuant to § 1.33(b).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 54604, 54668, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57054, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54668, Sept. 8, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57054, Sept. 20, 2000, added paragraph (b)(7), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.77 Arrangement of application elements.

(a) The elements of the application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Utility application transmittal form.

(2) Fee transmittal form.

(3) Application data sheet (see § 1.76).

(4) Specification.

(5) Drawings.

(6) Executed oath or declaration.

(b) The specification should include the following sections in order:

(1) Title of the invention, which may be accompanied by an introductory portion stating the name, citizenship, and residence of the applicant (unless included in the application data sheet).

(2) Cross-reference to related applications (unless included in the application data sheet).

(3) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(4) Reference to a "Sequence Listing," a table, or a computer program listing appendix submitted on a compact disc and an incorporation-by-reference of the material on the compact disc (see § 1.52(e)(5)). The total number of compact discs including duplicates and the files on each compact disc shall be specified.

(5) Background of the invention.

(6) Brief summary of the invention.

(7) Brief description of the several views of the drawing.

(8) Detailed description of the invention.

(9) A claim or claims.

(10) Abstract of the disclosure.

(11) "Sequence Listing," if on paper (see § § 1.821 through 1.825).

(c) The text of the specification sections defined in paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(11) of this section, if applicable, should be preceded by a section heading in uppercase and without underlining or bold type.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978, as amended at 46 FR 2612, Jan. 12, 1981; 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983; 61 FR 42790, 42803, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54668, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54668, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000]

§ 1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross references to other applications.

(a)(1) A nonprovisional application may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or copending international applications designating the United States of America. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of a prior filed copending nonprovisional application or copending international application designating the United States of America, each prior application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior application must be:

(i) An international application entitled to a filing date in accordance with PCT Article 11 and designating the United States of America; or

(ii) Complete as set forth in § 1.51(b); or

(iii) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b) or § 1.53(d) and include the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16; or

(iv) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b) and have paid therein the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) within the time period set forth in § 1.53(f).

(2) Except for a continued prosecution application filed under § 1.53(d), any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or international applications designating the United States of America must contain a reference to each such prior application, identifying it by application number (consisting of the series code and serial number) or international application number and international filing date and indicating the relationship of the applications. This reference must be submitted during the pendency of the application, and within the later of four months from the actual filing date of the application or sixteen months from the filing date of the prior application. This time period is not extendable. Unless the reference required by this paragraph is included in an application data sheet (§ 1.76), the specification must contain or be amended to contain such reference in the first sentence following the title. If the application claims the benefit of an international application, the first sentence of the specification must include an indication of whether the international application was published under PCT Article 21(2) in English (regardless of whether benefit for such application is claimed in the application data sheet). The request for a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d) is the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 to the prior application. The identification of an application by application number under this section is the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 to every application assigned that application number. Cross references to other related applications may be made when appropriate (see § 1.14). Except as provided in paragraph (a)(3) of this section, the failure to timely submit the reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 and this paragraph is considered a waiver of any benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c) to such prior application. The time period set forth in this paragraph does not apply to an application for a design patent.

(3) If the reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 and paragraph (a)(2) of this section is presented in a nonprovisional application after the time period provided by paragraph (a)(2) of this section, the claim under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c) for the benefit of a prior filed copending nonprovisional application or international application designating the United States of America may be accepted if the reference identifying the prior application by application number or international application number and international filing date was unintentionally delayed. A petition to accept an unintentionally delayed claim under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c) for the benefit of a prior filed application must be accompanied by:

(i) The surcharge set forth in § 1.17(t); and

(ii) A statement that the entire delay between the date the claim was due under paragraph (a)(2) of this section and the date the claim was filed was unintentional. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional.

(4) A nonprovisional application other than for a design patent may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed provisional applications. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of one or more prior filed provisional applications, each prior provisional application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior provisional application must be entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(c), and the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16(k) must be paid within the time period set forth in § 1.53(g).

(5) Any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending provisional applications must contain a reference to each such prior provisional application, identifying it as a provisional application, and including the provisional application number (consisting of series code and serial number), and, if the provisional application is filed in a language other than English, an English language translation of the non-English language provisional application and a statement that the translation is accurate. This reference and English language translation of a non-English language provisional application must be submitted during the pendency of the nonprovisional application, and within the later of four months from the actual filing date of the nonprovisional application or sixteen months from the filing date of the prior provisional application. This time period is not extendable. Unless the reference required by this paragraph is included in an application data sheet (§ 1.76), the specification must contain or be amended to contain such reference in the first sentence following the title. Except as provided in paragraph (a)(6) of this section, the failure to timely submit the reference and English language translation of a non-English language provisional application required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) and this paragraph is considered a waiver of any benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) to such prior provisional application.

(6) If the reference or English language translation of a non-English language provisional application required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) and paragraph (a)(5) of this section is presented in a nonprovisional application after the time period provided by paragraph (a)(5) of this section, the claim under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) for the benefit of a prior filed provisional application may be accepted during the pendency of the nonprovisional application if the reference identifying the prior application by provisional application number and any English language translation of a non-English language provisional application were unintentionally delayed. A petition to accept an unintentionally delayed claim under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) for the benefit of a prior filed provisional application must be accompanied by:

(i) The surcharge set forth in § 1.17(t); and

(ii) A statement that the entire delay between the date the claim was due under paragraph (a)(5) of this section and the date the claim was filed was unintentional. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional.

(b) Where two or more applications filed by the same applicant contain conflicting claims, elimination of such claims from all but one application may be required in the absence of good and sufficient reason for their retention during pendency in more than one application.

(c) If an application or a patent under reexamination and at least one other application naming different inventors are owned by the same party and contain conflicting claims, and there is no statement of record indicating that the

claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, the Office may require the assignee to state whether the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, and, if not, indicate which named inventor is the prior inventor.

**Legislative History**

[36 FR 7312, Apr. 17, 1971 and 50 FR 9380, Mar. 7, 1985; 50 FR 11366, Mar. 21, 1985; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42790, 42804, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53189, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54669, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57054, Sept. 20, 2000; 66 FR 67087, 67084, Dec. 28, 2001]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a)(3), effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54669, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a)(2), (a)(4) and (c), effective Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57054, Sept. 20, 2000, amended paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.

A reservation for a future application of subject matter disclosed but not claimed in a pending application will not be permitted in the pending application, but an application disclosing unclaimed subject matter may contain a reference to a later filed application of the same applicant or owned by a common assignee disclosing and claiming that subject matter.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

THE DRAWINGS

§ 1.81 Drawings required in patent application.

(a) The applicant for a patent is required to furnish a drawing of his or her invention where necessary for the understanding of the subject matter sought to be patented; this drawing, or a high quality copy thereof, must be filed with the application. Since corrections are the responsibility of the applicant, the original drawing(s) should be retained by the applicant for any necessary future correction.

(b) Drawings may include illustrations which facilitate an understanding of the invention (for example, flow sheets in cases of processes, and diagrammatic views).

(c) Whenever the nature of the subject matter sought to be patented admits of illustration by a drawing without its being necessary for the understanding of the subject matter and the applicant has not furnished such a drawing, the examiner will require its submission within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof.

(d) Drawings submitted after the filing date of the application may not be used to overcome any insufficiency of the specification due to lack of an enabling disclosure or otherwise inadequate disclosure therein, or to supplement the original disclosure thereof for the purpose of interpretation of the scope of any claim.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; as amended at 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 113.

§ 1.83 Content of drawing.

(a) The drawing in a nonprovisional application must show every feature of the invention specified in the claims. However, conventional features disclosed in the description and claims, where their detailed illustration is not essential for a proper understanding of the invention, should be illustrated in the drawing in the form of a graphical drawing symbol or a labeled representation (e.g., a labeled rectangular box).

(b) When the invention consists of an improvement on an old machine the drawing must when possible exhibit, in one or more views, the improved portion itself, disconnected from the old structure, and also in another view, so much only of the old structure as will suffice to show the connection of the invention therewith.

(c) Where the drawings in a nonprovisional application do not comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the examiner shall require such additional illustration within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof. Such corrections are subject to the requirements of § 1.81(d).

**Legislative History**

[31 FR 12923, Oct. 4, 1966, as amended at 43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 113.

§ 1.84 Standards for drawings.

(a) Drawings. There are two acceptable categories for presenting drawings in utility and design patent applications.

(1) Black ink. Black and white drawings are normally required. India ink, or its equivalent that secures solid black lines, must be used for drawings; or

(2) Color. On rare occasions, color drawings may be necessary as the only practical medium by which to disclose the subject matter sought to be patented in a utility or design patent application or the subject matter of a statutory invention registration. The color drawings must be of sufficient quality such that all details in the drawings are reproducible in black and white in the printed patent. Color drawings are not permitted in international applications (see PCT Rule 11.13), or in an application, or copy thereof, submitted under the Office electronic filing system. The Office will accept color drawings in utility or design patent applications and statutory invention registrations only after granting a petition filed under this paragraph explaining why the color drawings are necessary. Any such petition must include the following:

(i) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h);

(ii) Three (3) sets of color drawings;

(iii) A black and white photocopy that accurately depicts, to the extent possible, the subject matter shown in the color drawing; and

(iv) An amendment to the specification to insert (unless the specification contains or has been previously amended to contain) the following language as the first paragraph of the brief description of the drawings:

The patent or application file contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent or patent application publication with color drawing(s) will be provided by the Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee.

(b) Photographs. -- (1) Black and white. Photographs, including photocopies of photographs, are not ordinarily permitted in utility and design patent applications. The Office will accept photographs in utility and design patent applications, however, if photographs are the only practicable medium for illustrating the claimed invention. For example, photographs or photomicrographs of: electrophoresis gels, blots (e.g., immunological, western, Southern, and northern), autoradiographs, cell cultures (stained and unstained), histological tissue cross sections (stained and unstained), animals, plants, in vivo imaging, thin layer chromatography plates, crystalline structures, and, in a design patent application, ornamental effects, are acceptable. If the subject matter of the application admits of illustration by a drawing, the examiner may require a drawing in place of the photograph. The photographs must be of sufficient quality so that all details in the photographs are reproducible in the printed patent.

(2) Color photographs. Color photographs will be accepted in utility and design patent applications if the conditions for accepting color drawings and black and white photographs have been satisfied. See paragraphs (a)(2) and (b)(1) of this section.

(c) Identification of drawings. Identifying indicia, if provided, should include the title of the invention, inventor's name, and application number, or docket number (if any) if an application number has not been assigned to the application. If this information is provided, it must be placed on the front of each sheet and centered within the top margin.

(d) Graphic forms in drawings. Chemical or mathematical formulae, tables, and waveforms may be submitted as drawings, and are subject to the same requirements as drawings. Each chemical or mathematical formula must be labeled as a separate figure, using brackets when necessary, to show that information is properly integrated. Each group of waveforms must be presented as a single figure, using a common vertical axis with time extending along the horizontal axis. Each individual waveform discussed in the specification must be identified with a separate letter designation adjacent to the vertical axis.

(e) Type of paper. Drawings submitted to the Office must be made on paper which is flexible, strong, white, smooth, non-shiny, and durable. All sheets must be reasonably free from cracks, creases, and folds. Only one side of the sheet may be used for the drawing. Each sheet must be reasonably free from erasures and must be free from alterations, overwritings, and interlineations. Photographs must be developed on paper meeting the sheet-size requirements of paragraph (f) of this section and the margin requirements of paragraph (g) of this section. See paragraph (b) of this section for other requirements for photographs.

(f) Size of paper. All drawing sheets in an application must be the same size. One of the shorter sides of the sheet is regarded as its top. The size of the sheets on which drawings are made must be:

(1) 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4), or

(2) 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inches).

(g) Margins. The sheets must not contain frames around the sight (i.e., the usable surface), but should have scan target points (i.e., cross-hairs) printed on two catercorner margin corners. Each sheet must include a top margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a left side margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a right side margin of at least 1.5 cm. ( 5/8 inch), and a bottom margin of at least 1.0 cm. ( 3/8 inch), thereby leaving a sight no greater than 17.0 cm. by 26.2 cm. on 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) drawing sheets, and a sight no greater than 17.6 cm. by 24.4 cm. (6 15/16 by 9 5/8 inches) on 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inch) drawing sheets.

(h) Views. The drawing must contain as many views as necessary to show the invention. The views may be plan, elevation, section, or perspective views. Detail views of portions of elements, on a larger scale if necessary, may also be used. All views of the drawing must be grouped together and arranged on the sheet(s) without wasting space, preferably in an upright position, clearly separated from one another, and must not be included in the sheets containing the specifications, claims, or abstract. Views must not be connected by projection lines and must not contain center lines. Waveforms of electrical signals may be connected by dashed lines to show the relative timing of the waveforms.

(1) Exploded views. Exploded views, with the separated parts embraced by a bracket, to show the relationship or order of assembly of various parts are permissible. When an exploded view is shown in a figure which is on the same sheet as another figure, the exploded view should be placed in brackets.

(2) Partial views. When necessary, a view of a large machine or device in its entirety may be broken into partial views on a single sheet, or extended over several sheets if there is no loss in facility of understanding the view. Partial views drawn on separate sheets must always be capable of being linked edge to edge so that no partial view contains parts of another partial view. A smaller scale view should be included showing the whole formed by the partial views and indicating the positions of the parts shown. When a portion of a view is enlarged for magnification purposes, the view and the enlarged view must each be labeled as separate views.

(i) Where views on two or more sheets form, in effect, a single complete view, the views on the several sheets must be so arranged that the complete figure can be assembled without concealing any part of any of the views appearing on the various sheets.

(ii) A very long view may be divided into several parts placed one above the other on a single sheet. However, the relationship between the different parts must be clear and unambiguous.

(3) Sectional views. The plane upon which a sectional view is taken should be indicated on the view from which the section is cut by a broken line. The ends of the broken line should be designated by Arabic or Roman numerals corresponding to the view number of the sectional view, and should have arrows to indicate the direction of sight. Hatching must be used to indicate section portions of an object, and must be made by regularly spaced oblique parallel lines spaced sufficiently apart to enable the lines to be distinguished without difficulty. Hatching should not impede the clear reading of the reference characters and lead lines. If it is not possible to place reference characters outside the hatched area, the hatching may be broken off wherever reference characters are inserted. Hatching must be at a substantial angle to the surrounding axes or principal lines, preferably 45 degrees. A cross section must be set out and drawn to show all of the materials as they are shown in the view from which the cross section was taken. The parts in cross section must show proper material(s) by hatching with regularly spaced parallel oblique strokes, the space between strokes being chosen on the basis of the total area to be hatched. The various parts of a cross section of the same item should be hatched in the same manner and should accurately and graphically indicate the nature of the material(s) that is illustrated in cross section. The hatching of juxtaposed different elements must be angled in a different way. In the case of large areas, hatching may be confined to an edging drawn around the entire inside of the outline of the area to be hatched. Different types of hatching should have different conventional meanings as regards the nature of a material seen in cross section.

(4) Alternate position. A moved position may be shown by a broken line superimposed upon a suitable view if this can be done without crowding; otherwise, a separate view must be used for this purpose.

(5) Modified forms. Modified forms of construction must be shown in separate views.

(i) Arrangement of views. One view must not be placed upon another or within the outline of another. All views on the same sheet should stand in the same direction and, if possible, stand so that they can be read with the sheet held in an upright position. If views wider than the width of the sheet are necessary for the clearest illustration of the invention, the sheet may be turned on its side so that the top of the sheet, with the appropriate top margin to be used as the heading space, is on the right-hand side. Words must appear in a horizontal, left-to-right fashion when the page is either upright or turned so that the top becomes the right side, except for graphs utilizing standard scientific convention to denote the axis of abscissas (of X) and the axis of ordinates (of Y).

(j) Front page view. The drawing must contain as many views as necessary to show the invention. One of the views should be suitable for inclusion on the front page of the patent application publication and patent as the illustration of the invention. Views must not be connected by projection lines and must not contain center lines. Applicant may suggest a single view (by figure number) for inclusion on the front page of the patent application publication and patent.

(k) Scale. The scale to which a drawing is made must be large enough to show the mechanism without crowding when the drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in reproduction. Indications such as "actual size" or "scale 1/2 " on the drawings are not permitted since these lose their meaning with reproduction in a different format.

(l) Character of lines, numbers, and letters. All drawings must be made by a process which will give them satisfactory reproduction characteristics. Every line, number, and letter must be durable, clean, black (except for color drawings), sufficiently dense and dark, and uniformly thick and well-defined. The weight of all lines and letters must be heavy enough to permit adequate reproduction. This requirement applies to all lines however fine, to shading, and to lines representing cut surfaces in sectional views. Lines and strokes of different thicknesses may be used in the same drawing where different thicknesses have a different meaning.

(m) Shading. The use of shading in views is encouraged if it aids in understanding the invention and if it does not reduce legibility. Shading is used to indicate the surface or shape of spherical, cylindrical, and conical elements of an object. Flat parts may also be lightly shaded. Such shading is preferred in the case of parts shown in perspective, but not for cross sections. See paragraph (h)(3) of this section. Spaced lines for shading are preferred. These lines must be thin, as few in number as practicable, and they must contrast with the rest of the drawings. As a substitute for shading, heavy lines on the shade side of objects can be used except where they superimpose on each other or obscure reference characters. Light should come from the upper left corner at an angle of 45 degrees. Surface delineations should preferably be shown by proper shading. Solid black shading areas are not permitted, except when used to represent bar graphs or color.

(n) Symbols. Graphical drawing symbols may be used for conventional elements when appropriate. The elements for which such symbols and labeled representations are used must be adequately identified in the specification. Known devices should be illustrated by symbols which have a universally recognized conventional meaning and are generally accepted in the art. Other symbols which are not universally recognized may be used, subject to approval by the Office, if they are not likely to be confused with existing conventional symbols, and if they are readily identifiable.

(o) Legends. Suitable descriptive legends may be used subject to approval by the Office, or may be required by the examiner where necessary for understanding of the drawing. They should contain as few words as possible.

(p) Numbers, letters, and reference characters. (1) Reference characters (numerals are preferred), sheet numbers, and view numbers must be plain and legible, and must not be used in association with brackets or inverted commas, or enclosed within outlines, e.g., encircled. They must be oriented in the same direction as the view so as to avoid having to rotate the sheet. Reference characters should be arranged to follow the profile of the object depicted.

(2) The English alphabet must be used for letters, except where another alphabet is customarily used, such as the Greek alphabet to indicate angles, wavelengths, and mathematical formulas.

(3) Numbers, letters, and reference characters must measure at least.32 cm. ( 1/8 inch) in height. They should not be placed in the drawing so as to interfere with its comprehension. Therefore, they should not cross or mingle with the lines. They should not be placed upon hatched or shaded surfaces. When necessary, such as indicating a surface or cross section, a reference character may be underlined and a blank space may be left in the hatching or shading where the character occurs so that it appears distinct.

(4) The same part of an invention appearing in more than one view of the drawing must always be designated by the same reference character, and the same reference character must never be used to designate different parts.

(5) Reference characters not mentioned in the description shall not appear in the drawings. Reference characters mentioned in the description must appear in the drawings.

(q) Lead lines. Lead lines are those lines between the reference characters and the details referred to. Such lines may be straight or curved and should be as short as possible. They must originate in the immediate proximity of the reference character and extend to the feature indicated. Lead lines must not cross each other. Lead lines are required for each

reference character except for those which indicate the surface or cross section on which they are placed. Such a reference character must be underlined to make it clear that a lead line has not been left out by mistake. Lead lines must be executed in the same way as lines in the drawing. See paragraph (1) of this section.

(r) Arrows. Arrows may be used at the ends of the lines, provided that their meaning is clear, as follows:

(1) On a lead line, a freestanding arrow to indicate the entire section towards which it points;

(2) On a lead line, an arrow touching a line to indicate the surface shown by the line looking along the direction of the arrow; or

(3) To show the direction of movement.

(s) Copyright or Mask Work Notice. A copyright or mask work notice may appear in the drawing, but must be placed within the sight of the drawing immediately below the figure representing the copyright or mask work material and be limited to letters having a print size 32 cm. to.64 cm. ( 1/8 to 1/4 inches) high. The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, "copyright 1983 John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 401) and "*M* John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in § 1.71(e) is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(t) Numbering of sheets of drawings. The sheets of drawings should be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, within the sight as defined in paragraph (g) of this section. These numbers, if present, must be placed in the middle of the top of the sheet, but not in the margin. The numbers can be placed on the right-hand side if the drawing extends too close to the middle of the top edge of the usable surface. The drawing sheet numbering must be clear and larger than the numbers used as reference characters to avoid confusion. The number of each sheet should be shown by two Arabic numerals placed on either side of an oblique line, with the first being the sheet number, and the second being the total number of sheets of drawings, with no other marking.

(u) Numbering of views. (1) The different views must be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, independent of the numbering of the sheets and, if possible, in the order in which they appear on the drawing sheet(s). Partial views intended to form one complete view, on one or several sheets, must be identified by the same number followed by a capital letter. View numbers must be preceded by the abbreviation "FIG." Where only a single view is used in an application to illustrate the claimed invention, it must not be numbered and the abbreviation "FIG." must not appear.

(2) Numbers and letters identifying the views must be simple and clear and must not be used in association with brackets, circles, or inverted commas. The view numbers must be larger than the numbers used for reference characters.

(v) Security markings. Authorized security markings may be placed on the drawings provided they are outside the sight, preferably centered in the top margin.

(w) Corrections. Any corrections on drawings submitted to the Office must be durable and permanent.

(x) Holes. No holes should be made by applicant in the drawing sheets.

(y) Types of drawings. See § 1.152 for design drawings, § 1.165 for plant drawings, and § 1.174 for reissue drawings.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 31 FR 12923, Oct. 4, 1966; 36 FR 9775, May 28, 1971; 43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978; 45 FR 73657, Nov. 6, 1980; 53 FR 47809, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 45841, Aug. 31, 1993; 61 FR 42790, 42804, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53190, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54669, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57055, Sept. 20, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 113.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54669, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a), (b), (c), (j), (k), (o) and (x), and added paragraph (y), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57055, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraphs (a)(2), (e), and (j), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.85 Corrections to drawings.

(a) A utility or plant application will not be placed on the files for examination until objections to the drawings have been corrected. Except as provided in § 1.215(c), any patent application publication will not include drawings filed after the application has been placed on the files for examination. Unless applicant is otherwise notified in an Office action, objections to the drawings in a utility or plant application will not be held in abeyance, and a request to hold objections to the drawings in abeyance will not be considered a bona fide attempt to advance the application to final action (§ 1.135(c)). If a drawing in a design application meets the requirements of § 1.84(e), (f), and (g) and is suitable for reproduction, but is not otherwise in compliance with § 1.84, the drawing may be admitted for examination.

(b) The Office will not release drawings for purposes of correction. If corrections are necessary, new corrected drawings must be submitted within the time set by the Office.

(c) If a corrected drawing is required or if a drawing does not comply with § 1.84 at the time an application is allowed, the Office may notify the applicant and set a three month period of time from the mail date of the notice of allowability within which the applicant must file a corrected or formal drawing in compliance with § 1.84 to avoid abandonment. This time period is not extendable under § 1.136(a) or § 1.136(b).

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57055, Sept. 20, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 113.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57055, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.88 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

MODELS, EXHIBITS, SPECIMENS

§ 1.91 Models or exhibits not generally admitted as part of application or patent.

(a) A model or exhibit will not be admitted as part of the record of an application unless it:

(1) Substantially conforms to the requirements of § 1.52 or § 1.84;

(2) Is specifically required by the Office; or

(3) Is filed with a petition under this section including:

(i) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h); and

(ii) An explanation of why entry of the model or exhibit in the file record is necessary to demonstrate patentability.

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section, a model, working model, or other physical exhibit may be required by the Office if deemed necessary for any purpose in examination of the application.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 62 FR 53132, 53190, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (a)(3)(i), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.92 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.93 Specimens.

When the invention relates to a composition of matter, the applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the composition, or of its ingredients or intermediates, for the purpose of inspection or experiment.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 114.

§ 1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.

Models, exhibits, or specimens in applications which have become abandoned, and also in other applications on conclusion of the prosecution, may be returned to the applicant upon demand and at his expense, unless it be deemed necessary that they be preserved in the Office. Such physical exhibits in contested cases may be returned to the parties at their expense. If not claimed within a reasonable time, they may be disposed of at the discretion of the Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 114.

§ 1.95 Copies of exhibits.

Copies of models or other physical exhibits will not ordinarily be furnished by the Office, and any model or exhibit in an application or patent shall not be taken from the Office except in the custody of an employee of the Office specially authorized by the Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 114.

§ 1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

(a) General. Descriptions of the operation and general content of computer program listings should appear in the description portion of the specification. A computer program listing for the purpose of this section is defined as a printout that lists in appropriate sequence the instructions, routines, and other contents of a program for a computer. The program listing may be either in machine or machine-independent (object or source) language which will cause a computer to perform a desired procedure or task such as solve a problem, regulate the flow of work in a computer, or control or monitor events. Computer program listings may be submitted in patent applications as set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) Material which will be printed in the patent: If the computer program listing is contained in 300 lines or fewer, with each line of 72 characters or fewer, it may be submitted either as drawings or as part of the specification.

(1) Drawings. If the listing is submitted as drawings, it must be submitted in the manner and complying with the requirements for drawings as provided in § 1.84. At least one figure numeral is required on each sheet of drawing.

(2) Specification. (i) If the listing is submitted as part of the specification, it must be submitted in accordance with the provisions of § 1.52.

(ii) Any listing having more than 60 lines of code that is submitted as part of the specification must be positioned at the end of the description but before the claims. Any amendment must be made by way of submission of a substitute sheet.

(c) As an appendix which will not be printed: Any computer program listing may, and any computer program listing having over 300 lines (up to 72 characters per line) must, be submitted on a compact disc in compliance with § 1.52(e). A compact disc containing such a computer program listing is to be referred to as a "computer program listing appendix." The "computer program listing appendix" will not be part of the printed patent. The specification must include a reference to the "computer program listing appendix" at the location indicated in § 1.77(b)(4).

(1) Multiple computer program listings for a single application may be placed on a single compact disc. Multiple compact discs may be submitted for a single application if necessary. A separate compact disc is required for each application containing a computer program listing that must be submitted on a "computer program listing appendix."

(2) The "computer program listing appendix" must be submitted on a compact disc that complies with § 1.52(e) and the following specifications (no other format shall be allowed):

(i) Computer Compatibility: IBM PC/XT/AT, or compatibles, or Apple Macintosh;

(ii) Operating System Compatibility: MS-DOS, MS-Windows, Unix, or Macintosh;

(iii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed;

(iv) Control Codes: the data must not be dependent on control characters or codes which are not defined in the ASCII character set; and

(v) Compression: uncompressed data.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 2612, Jan. 12, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 47519, Nov. 15, 1989; 61 FR 42790, 42804, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (b) and (c), effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

§ 1.97 Filing of information disclosure statement.

(a) In order for an applicant for a patent or for a reissue of a patent to have an information disclosure statement in compliance with § 1.98 considered by the Office during the pendency of the application, the information disclosure statement must satisfy one of paragraphs (b), (c), or (d) of this section.

(b) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant within any one of the following time periods:

(1) Within three months of the filing date of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d);

(2) Within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application;

(3) Before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits; or

(4) Before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under § 1.114.

(c) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed after the period specified in paragraph (b) of this section, provided that the information disclosure statement is filed before the mailing date of any of a final action under § 1.113, a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, and it is accompanied by one of:

(1) The statement specified in paragraph (e) of this section; or

(2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(p).

(d) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant after the period specified in paragraph (c) of this section, provided that the information disclosure statement is filed on or before payment of the issue fee and is accompanied by:

(1) The statement specified in paragraph (e) of this section; and

(2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(p).

(e) A statement under this section must state either:

(1) That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement; or

(2) That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in § 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement.

(f) No extensions of time for filing an information disclosure statement are permitted under § 1.136. If a bona fide attempt is made to comply with § 1.98, but part of the required content is inadvertently omitted, additional time may be given to enable full compliance.

(g) An information disclosure statement filed in accordance with this section shall not be construed as a representation that a search has been made.

(h) The filing of an information disclosure statement shall not be construed to be an admission that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in § 1.56(b).

(i) If an information disclosure statement does not comply with either this section or § 1.98, it will be placed in the file but will not be considered by the Office.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992; 59 FR 32658, June 24, 1994; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42790, 42805, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53190, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54670, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) through (e) and (i), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.98 Content of information disclosure statement.

(a) Any information disclosure statement filed under § 1.97 shall include:

(1) A list of all patents, publications, applications, or other information submitted for consideration by the Office;

(2) A legible copy of:

(i) Each U.S. patent application publication and U.S. and foreign patent;

(ii) Each publication or that portion which caused it to be listed;

(iii) For each cited pending U.S. application, the application specification including the claims, and any drawing of the application, or that portion of the application which caused it to be listed including any claims directed to that portion; and

(iv) All other information or that portion which caused it to be listed; and

(3)(i) A concise explanation of the relevance, as it is presently understood by the individual designated in § 1.56(c) most knowledgeable about the content of the information, of each patent, publication, or other information listed that is not in the English language. The concise explanation may be either separate from applicant's specification or incorporated therein.

(ii) A copy of the translation if a written English-language translation of a non-English-language document, or portion thereof, is within the possession, custody, or control of, or is readily available to any individual designated in § 1.56(c).

(b)(1) Each U.S. patent listed in an information disclosure statement must be identified by inventor, patent number, and issue date.

(2) Each U.S. patent application publication listed in an information disclosure statement shall be identified by applicant, patent application publication number, and publication date.

(3) Each U.S. application listed in an information disclosure statement must be identified by the inventor, application number, and filing date.

(4) Each foreign patent or published foreign patent application listed in an information disclosure statement must be identified by the country or patent office which issued the patent or published the application, an appropriate document number, and the publication date indicated on the patent or published application.

(5) Each publication listed in an information disclosure statement must be identified by publisher, author (if any), title, relevant pages of the publication, date, and place of publication.

(c) When the disclosures of two or more patents or publications listed in an information disclosure statement are substantively cumulative, a copy of one of the patents or publications may be submitted without copies of the other patents or publications, provided that it is stated that these other patents or publications are cumulative.

(d) A copy of any patent, publication, pending U.S. application or other information, as specified in paragraph (a) of this section, listed in an information disclosure statement is required to be provided, even if the patent, publication, pending U.S. application or other information was previously submitted to, or cited by, the Office in an earlier application, unless:

(1) The earlier application is properly identified in the information disclosure statement and is relied on for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120; and

(2) The information disclosure statement submitted in the earlier application complies with paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57055, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57055, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a)(2) and (b), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.99 Third-party submission in published application.

(a) A submission by a member of the public of patents or publications relevant to a pending published application may be entered in the application file if the submission complies with the requirements of this section and the application is still pending when the submission and application file are brought before the examiner.

(b) A submission under this section must identify the application to which it is directed by application number and include:

(1) The fee set forth in § 1.17(p);

(2) A list of the patents or publications submitted for consideration by the Office, including the date of publication of each patent or publication;

(3) A copy of each listed patent or publication in written form or at least the pertinent portions; and

(4) An English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent or publication in written form relied upon.

(c) The submission under this section must be served upon the applicant in accordance with § 1.248.

(d) A submission under this section shall not include any explanation of the patents or publications, or any other information. The Office will dispose of such explanation or information if included in a submission under this section. A submission under this section is also limited to ten total patents or publications.

(e) A submission under this section must be filed within two months from the date of publication of the application (§ 1.215(a)) or prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance (§ 1.311), whichever is earlier. Any submission under this section not filed within this period is permitted only when the patents or publications could not have been submitted to the Office earlier, and must also be accompanied by the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i). A submission by a member of the public to a pending published application that does not comply with the requirements of this section will be returned or discarded.

(f) A member of the public may include a self-addressed postcard with a submission to receive an acknowledgment by the Office that the submission has been received. A member of the public filing a submission under this section will not receive any communications from the Office relating to the submission other than the return of a self-addressed postcard. In the absence of a request by the Office, an applicant has no duty to, and need not, reply to a submission under this section.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20. 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 66502, Nov. 6, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

§ 1.101 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.102 Advancement of examination.

(a) Applications will not be advanced out of turn for examination or for further action except as provided by this part, or upon order of the Commissioner to expedite the business of the Office, or upon filing of a request under paragraph (b) of this section or upon filing a petition under paragraphs (c) or (d) of this section with a showing which, in the opinion of the Commissioner, will justify so advancing it.

(b) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action for that reason, may be advanced for examination.

(c) A petition to make an application special may be filed without a fee if the basis for the petition is the applicant's age or health or that the invention will materially enhance the quality of the environment or materially contribute to the development or conservation of energy resources.

(d) A petition to make an application special on grounds other than those referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53190, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 131, 132.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (d), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.103 Suspension of action by the Office.

(a) Suspension for cause. On request of the applicant, the Office may grant a suspension of action by the Office under this paragraph for good and sufficient cause. The Office will not suspend action if a reply by applicant to an Office action is outstanding. Any petition for suspension of action under this paragraph must specify a period of suspension not exceeding six months. Any petition for suspension of action under this paragraph must also include:

(1) A showing of good and sufficient cause for suspension of action; and

(2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h), unless such cause is the fault of the Office.

(b) Limited suspension of action in a continued prosecution application (CPA) filed under § 1.53(d). On request of the applicant, the Office may grant a suspension of action by the Office under this paragraph in a continued prosecution application filed under § 1.53(d) for a period not exceeding three months. Any request for suspension of action under this paragraph must be filed with the request for an application filed under § 1.53(d), specify the period of suspension, and include the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i).

(c) Limited suspension of action after a request for continued examination (RCE) under § 1.114. On request of the applicant, the Office may grant a suspension of action by the Office under this paragraph after the filing of a request for continued examination in compliance with § 1.114 for a period not exceeding three months. Any request for suspension of action under this paragraph must be filed with the request for continued examination under § 1.114, specify the period of suspension, and include the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i).

(d) Deferral of examination. On request of the applicant, the Office may grant a deferral of examination under the conditions specified in this paragraph for a period not extending beyond three years from the earliest filing date for

which a benefit is claimed under title 35, United States Code. A request for deferral of examination under this paragraph must include the publication fee set forth in § 1.18(d) and the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i). A request for deferral of examination under this paragraph will not be granted unless:

(1) The application is an original utility or plant application filed under § 1.53(b) or resulting from entry of an international application into the national stage after compliance with § 1.495;

(2) The applicant has not filed a nonpublication request under § 1.213(a), or has filed a request under § 1.213(b) to rescind a previously filed nonpublication request;

(3) The application is in condition for publication as provided in § 1.211(c); and

(4) The Office has not issued either an Office action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

(e) Notice of suspension on initiative of the Office. The Office will notify applicant if the Office suspends action by the Office on an application on its own initiative.

(f) Suspension of action for public safety or defense. The Office may suspend action by the Office by order of the Commissioner if the following conditions are met:

(1) The application is owned by the United States;

(2) Publication of the invention may be detrimental to the public safety or defense; and

(3) The appropriate department or agency requests such suspension.

(g) Statutory invention registration. The Office will suspend action by the Office for the entire pendency of an application if the Office has accepted a request to publish a statutory invention registration in the application, except for purposes relating to patent interference proceedings under Subpart E of this part.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53191, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 50092, 50104, Aug. 16, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 131, 132.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 50092, 50104, Aug. 16, 2000, revised this section, effective Aug. 16, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.104 Nature of examination.

(a) Examiner's action. (1) On taking up an application for examination or a patent in a reexamination proceeding, the examiner shall make a thorough study thereof and shall make a thorough investigation of the available prior art relating to the subject matter of the claimed invention. The examination shall be complete with respect both to compliance of the application or patent under reexamination with the applicable statutes and rules and to the patentability of the invention as claimed, as well as with respect to matters of form, unless otherwise indicated.

(2) The applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, both the patent owner and the requester, will be notified of the examiner's action. The reasons for any adverse action or any objection or requirement will be stated in an Office

action and such information or references will be given as may be useful in aiding the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding the patent owner, to judge the propriety of continuing the prosecution.

(3) An international-type search will be made in all national applications filed on and after June 1, 1978.

(4) Any national application may also have an international-type search report prepared thereon at the time of the national examination on the merits, upon specific written request therefor and payment of the international-type search report fee set forth in § 1.21(e). The Patent and Trademark Office does not require that a formal report of an international-type search be prepared in order to obtain a search fee refund in a later filed international application.

(b) Completeness of examiner's action. The examiner's action will be complete as to all matters, except that in appropriate circumstances, such as misjoinder of invention, fundamental defects in the application, and the like, the action of the examiner may be limited to such matters before further action is made. However, matters of form need not be raised by the examiner until a claim is found allowable.

(c) Rejection of claims. (1) If the invention is not considered patentable, or not considered patentable as claimed, the claims, or those considered unpatentable will be rejected.

(2) In rejecting claims for want of novelty or for obviousness, the examiner must cite the best references at his or her command. When a reference is complex or shows or describes inventions other than that claimed by the applicant, the particular part relied on must be designated as nearly as practicable. The pertinence of each reference, if not apparent, must be clearly explained and each rejected claim specified.

(3) In rejecting claims the examiner may rely upon admissions by the applicant, or the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, as to any matter affecting patentability and, insofar as rejections in applications are concerned, may also rely upon facts within his or her knowledge pursuant to paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(4) Subject matter which is developed by another person which qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(e), (f) or (g) may be used as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 against a claimed invention unless the entire rights to the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned by the same person or organization or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person or organization at the time the claimed invention was made.

(5) The claims in any original application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the same subject matter is claimed in the application and the statutory invention registration. The claims in any reissue application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the reissue application seeks to claim subject matter:

(i) Which was not covered by claims issued in the patent prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration; and

(ii) Which was the same subject matter waived in the statutory invention registration.

(d) Citation of references.

(1) If domestic patents are cited by the examiner, their numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees will be stated. If domestic patent application publications are cited by the examiner, their publication number, publication date, and the names of the applicants will be stated. If foreign published applications or patents are cited, their nationality or country, numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees will be stated, and such other data will be furnished as may be necessary to enable the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, the patent owner, to identify the published applications or patents cited. In citing foreign published applications or patents, in case only a part of the document is involved, the particular pages and sheets containing the parts relied upon will be identified. If printed publications are cited, the author (if any), title, date, pages or plates, and place of publication, or place where a copy can be found, will be given.

(2) When a rejection in an application is based on facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, the data shall be as specific as possible, and the reference must be supported, when called for by the applicant,

by the affidavit of such employee, and such affidavit shall be subject to contradiction or explanation by the affidavits of the applicant and other persons.

(e) Reasons for allowance. If the examiner believes that the record of the prosecution as a whole does not make clear his or her reasons for allowing a claim or claims, the examiner may set forth such reasoning. The reasons shall be incorporated into an Office action rejecting other claims of the application or patent under reexamination or be the subject of a separate communication to the applicant or patent owner. The applicant or patent owner may file a statement commenting on the reasons for allowance within such time as may be specified by the examiner. Failure by the examiner to respond to any statement commenting on reasons for allowance does not give rise to any implication.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978, as amended at 46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981; 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985; 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53191, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (c)(4), effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a)(2) and (e), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000, removed paragraph (a)(5) and revised paragraph (d)(1), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.105 Requirements for information.

(a)(1) In the course of examining or treating a matter in a pending or abandoned application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111 or 371 (including a reissue application), in a patent, or in a reexamination proceeding, the examiner or other Office employee may require the submission, from individuals identified under § 1.56(c), or any assignee, of such information as may be reasonably necessary to properly examine or treat the matter, for example:

(i) Commercial databases: The existence of any particularly relevant commercial database known to any of the inventors that could be searched for a particular aspect of the invention.

(ii) Search: Whether a search of the prior art was made, and if so, what was searched.

(iii) Related information: A copy of any non-patent literature, published application, or patent (U.S. or foreign), by any of the inventors, that relates to the claimed invention.

(iv) Information used to draft application: A copy of any non-patent literature, published application, or patent (U.S. or foreign) that was used to draft the application.

(v) Information used in invention process: A copy of any non-patent literature, published application, or patent (U.S. or foreign) that was used in the invention process, such as by designing around or providing a solution to accomplish an invention result.

(vi) Improvements: Where the claimed invention is an improvement, identification of what is being improved.

(vii) In use: Identification of any use of the claimed invention known to any of the inventors at the time the application was filed notwithstanding the date of the use.

(2) Where an assignee has asserted its right to prosecute pursuant to § 3.71(a) of this chapter, matters such as paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (iii), and (vii) of this section may also be applied to such assignee.

(3) Any reply that states that the information required to be submitted is unknown and/or is not readily available to the party or parties from which it was requested will be accepted as a complete reply.

(b) The requirement for information of paragraph (a)(1) of this section may be included in an Office action, or sent separately.

(c) A reply, or a failure to reply, to a requirement for information under this section will be governed by § § 1.135 and 1.136.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54671, Sept. 8, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.106 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.107 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.108 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.109 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

When more than one inventor is named in an application or patent, the Patent and Trademark Office, when necessary for purposes of an Office proceeding, may require an applicant, patentee, or owner to identify the inventive entity of the subject matter of each claim in the application or patent. Where appropriate, the invention dates of the subject matter of each claim and the ownership of the subject matter on the date of invention may be required of the applicant, patentee or owner. See also § § 1.78(c) and 1.130.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985; 61 FR 42790, 42805, Aug. 19, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 42790, 42805, Aug. 19, 1996, which revised this section, became effective Sept. 23, 1996.]

ACTION BY APPLICANT AND FURTHER CONSIDERATION

§ 1.111 Reply by applicant or patent owner to a non-final Office action.

(a)(1) If the Office action after the first examination (§ 1.104) is adverse in any respect, the applicant or patent owner, if he or she persists in his or her application for a patent or reexamination proceeding, must reply and request reconsideration or further examination, with or without amendment. See § § 1.135 and 1.136 for time for reply to avoid abandonment.

(2) A second (or subsequent) supplemental reply will be entered unless disapproved by the Commissioner. A second (or subsequent) supplemental reply may be disapproved if the second (or subsequent) supplemental reply unduly interferes with an Office action being prepared in response to the previous reply. Factors that will be considered in disapproving a second (or subsequent) supplemental reply include:

(i) The state of preparation of an Office action responsive to the previous reply as of the date of receipt (§ 1.6) of the second (or subsequent) supplemental reply by the Office; and

(ii) The nature of any changes to the specification or claims that would result from entry of the second (or subsequent) supplemental reply.

(b) In order to be entitled to reconsideration or further examination, the applicant or patent owner must reply to the Office action. The reply by the applicant or patent owner must be reduced to a writing which distinctly and specifically points out the supposed errors in the examiner's action and must reply to every ground of objection and rejection in the prior Office action. The reply must present arguments pointing out the specific distinctions believed to render the claims, including any newly presented claims, patentable over any applied references. If the reply is with respect to an application, a request may be made that objections or requirements as to form not necessary to further consideration of the claims be held in abeyance until allowable subject matter is indicated. The applicant's or patent owner's reply must appear throughout to be a bona fide attempt to advance the application or the reexamination proceeding to final action. A general allegation that the claims define a patentable invention without specifically pointing out how the language of the claims patentably distinguishes them from the references does not comply with the requirements of this section.

(c) In amending in reply to a rejection of claims in an application or patent under reexamination, the applicant or patent owner must clearly point out the patentable novelty which he or she thinks the claims present in view of the state of the art disclosed by the references cited or the objections made. The applicant or patent owner must also show how the amendments avoid such references or objections.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981; 62 FR 53132, 53192, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000, revised the section heading and paragraphs (a) and (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.112 Reconsideration before final action.

After reply by applicant or patent owner (§ 1.111 or § 1.945) to a non-final action and any comments by an inter partes reexamination requester (§ 1.947), the application or the patent under reexamination will be reconsidered and again examined. The applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding the patent owner and any third party requester, will be notified if claims are rejected, objections or requirements made, or decisions favorable to patentability are made, in the same manner as after the first examination (§ 1.104). Applicant or patent owner may reply to such Office action in the same manner provided in § 1.111 or § 1.945, with or without amendment, unless such Office action indicates that it is made final (§ 1.113) or an appeal (§ 1.191) has been taken (§ 1.116), or in an inter partes reexamination, that it is an action closing prosecution (§ 1.949) or a right of appeal notice (§ 1.953).

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981; 62 FR 53132, 53192, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.113 Final rejection or action.

(a) On the second or any subsequent examination or consideration by the examiner the rejection or other action may be made final, whereupon applicant's, or for ex parte reexaminations filed under § 1.510, patent owner's reply is limited to appeal in the case of rejection of any claim (§ 1.191), or to amendment as specified in § 1.114 or § 1.116. Petition may be taken to the Commissioner in the case of objections or requirements not involved in the rejection of any claim (§ 1.181). Reply to a final rejection or action must comply with § 1.114 or paragraph (c) of this section. For final actions in an inter partes reexamination filed under § 1.913, see § 1.953.

(b) In making such final rejection, the examiner shall repeat or state all grounds of rejection then considered applicable to the claims in the application, clearly stating the reasons in support thereof.

(c) Reply to a final rejection or action must include cancellation of, or appeal from the rejection of, each rejected claim. If any claim stands allowed, the reply to a final rejection or action must comply with any requirements or objections as to form.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981; 62 FR 53132, 53192, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.114 Request for continued examination.

(a) If prosecution in an application is closed, an applicant may request continued examination of the application by filing a submission and the fee set forth in § 1.17(e) prior to the earliest of:

(1) Payment of the issue fee, unless a petition under § 1.313 is granted;

(2) Abandonment of the application; or

(3) The filing of a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit under 35 U.S.C. 141, or the commencement of a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146, unless the appeal or civil action is terminated.

(b) Prosecution in an application is closed as used in this section means that the application is under appeal, or that the last Office action is a final action (§ 1.113), a notice of allowance (§ 1.311), or an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application.

(c) A submission as used in this section includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims, or drawings, new arguments, or new evidence in support of patentability. If reply to an Office action under 35 U.S.C. 132 is outstanding, the submission must meet the reply requirements of § 1.111.

(d) If an applicant timely files a submission and fee set forth in § 1.17(e), the Office will withdraw the finality of any Office action and the submission will be entered and considered. If an applicant files a request for continued examination under this section after appeal, but prior to a decision on the appeal, it will be treated as a request to withdraw the appeal and to reopen prosecution of the application before the examiner. An appeal brief under § 1.192 or a reply brief under § 1.193(b), or related papers, will not be considered a submission under this section.

(e) The provisions of this section do not apply to:

(1) A provisional application;

(2) An application for a utility or plant patent filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) before June 8, 1995;

(3) An international application filed under 35 U.S.C. 363 before June 8, 1995;

(4) An application for a design patent; or

(5) A patent under reexamination.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 14865, 14872, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 50092, 50104, Aug. 16, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 50092, 50104, Aug. 16, 2000, this section, effective Aug. 16, 2000.]

AMENDMENTS

§ 1.115 Preliminary amendments.

(a) A preliminary amendment is an amendment that is received in the Office (§ 1.6) on or before the mail date of the first Office action under § 1.104.

(b)(1) A preliminary amendment will be entered unless disapproved by the Commissioner. A preliminary amendment may be disapproved if the preliminary amendment unduly interferes with the preparation of a first Office action in an application. Factors that will be considered in disapproving a preliminary amendment include:

(i) The state of preparation of a first Office action as of the date of receipt (§ 1.6) of the preliminary amendment by the Office; and

(ii) The nature of any changes to the specification or claims that would result from entry of the preliminary amendment.

(2) A preliminary amendment will not be disapproved if it is filed no later than:

(i) Three months from the filing date of an application under § 1.53(b);

(ii) The filing date of a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d); or

(iii) Three months from the date the national stage is entered as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application.

(c) The time periods specified in paragraph (b)(2) of this section are not extendable.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.116 Amendments after final action or appeal.

(a) An amendment after final action or appeal must comply with § 1.114 or this section.

(b) After a final rejection or other final action (§ 1.113) in an application or in an ex parte reexamination filed under § 1.510, or an action closing prosecution (§ 1.949) in an inter partes reexamination filed under § 1.913, amendments may be made canceling claims or complying with any requirement of form expressly set forth in a previous Office action. Amendments presenting rejected claims in better form for consideration on appeal may be admitted. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after a final rejection, a final action, an action closing prosecution, or any related proceedings will not operate to relieve the application or patent under reexamination from its condition as subject to appeal or to save the application from abandonment under § 1.135, or the reexamination from termination. No amendment can be made in an inter partes reexamination proceeding after the right of appeal notice under § 1.953 except as provided for in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) If amendments touching the merits of the application or patent under reexamination are presented after final rejection, or after appeal has been taken, or when such amendment might not otherwise be proper, they may be admitted upon a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they are necessary and were not earlier presented.

(d) No amendment can be made as a matter of right in appealed cases. After decision on appeal, amendments can only be made as provided in § § 1.198 and 1.981, or to carry into effect a recommendation under § 1.196 or § 1.977.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981; 62 FR 53132, 53192, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraphs (b) and (d), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.117 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.118 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.119 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.121 Manner of making amendments in applications.

(a) Amendments in applications, other than reissue applications. Amendments in applications, other than reissue applications, are made by filing a paper, in compliance with § 1.52, directing that specified amendments be made.

(b) Specification other than the claims and listings provided for elsewhere (§ § 1.96 and 1.825). -- (1) Amendment by instruction to delete, replace, or add a paragraph. Amendments to the specification, other than the claims and listings provided for elsewhere (§ § 1.96 and 1.825), may be made by submitting:

(i) An instruction, which unambiguously identifies the location, to delete one or more paragraphs of the specification, replace a deleted paragraph with one or more replacement paragraphs, or add one or more paragraphs;

(ii) Any replacement or added paragraph(s) in clean form, that is, without markings to indicate the changes that have been made; and

(iii) Another version of any replacement paragraph(s), on one or more pages separate from the amendment, marked up to show all the changes relative to the previous version of the paragraph(s). The changes may be shown by brackets (for deleted matter) or underlining (for added matter), or by any equivalent marking system. A marked up version does not have to be supplied for an added paragraph or a deleted paragraph as it is sufficient to state that a particular paragraph has been added, or deleted.

(2) Amendment by replacement section. If the sections of the specification contain section headings as provided in § § 1.77(b), 1.154(b), or § 1.163(c), amendments to the specification, other than the claims, may be made by submitting:

(i) A reference to the section heading along with an instruction to delete that section of the specification and to replace such deleted section with a replacement section;

(ii) A replacement section in clean form, that is, without markings to indicate the changes that have been made; and

(iii) Another version of the replacement section, on one or more pages separate from the amendment, marked up to show all changes relative to the previous version of the section. The changes may be shown by brackets (for deleted matter) or underlining (for added matter), or by any equivalent marking system.

(3) Amendment by substitute specification. The specification, other than the claims, may also be amended by submitting:

(i) An instruction to replace the specification;

(ii) A substitute specification in compliance with § 1.125(b); and

(iii) Another version of the substitute specification, separate from the substitute specification, marked up to show all changes relative to the previous version of the specification. The changes may be shown by brackets (for deleted matter), or underlining (for added matter), or by any equivalent marking system.

(4) Reinstatement: Deleted matter may be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the previously deleted matter.

(c) Claims. -- (1) Amendment by rewriting, directions to cancel or add: Amendments to a claim must be made by rewriting such claim with all changes (e.g., additions, deletions, modifications) included. The rewriting of a claim (with the same number) will be construed as directing the cancellation of the previous version of that claim. A claim may also be canceled by an instruction.

(i) A rewritten or newly added claim must be in clean form, that is, without markings to indicate the changes that have been made. A parenthetical expression should follow the claim number indicating the status of the claim as amended or newly added (e.g., "amended," "twice amended," or "new").

(ii) If a claim is amended by rewriting such claim with the same number, the amendment must be accompanied by another version of the rewritten claim, on one or more pages separate from the amendment, marked up to show all the changes relative to the previous version of that claim. A parenthetical expression should follow the claim number indicating the status of the claim, e.g., "amended," "twice amended," etc. The parenthetical expression "amended," "twice amended," etc. should be the same for both the clean version of the claim under paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section and the marked up version under this paragraph. The changes may be shown by brackets (for deleted matter) or underlining (for added matter), or by any equivalent marking system. A marked up version does not have to be supplied for an added claim or a canceled claim as it is sufficient to state that a particular claim has been added, or canceled.

(2) A claim canceled by amendment (deleted in its entirety) may be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the claim as a new claim with a new claim number.

(3) A clean version of the entire set of pending claims may be submitted in a single amendment paper. Such a submission shall be construed as directing the cancellation of all previous versions of any pending claims. A marked up version is required only for claims being changed by the current amendment (see paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section). Any claim not accompanied by a marked up version will constitute an assertion that it has not been changed relative to the immediate prior version.

(d) Drawings. Application drawings are amended in the following manner: Any change to the application drawings must be submitted on a separate paper showing the proposed changes in red for approval by the examiner. Upon approval by the examiner, new drawings in compliance with § 1.84 including the changes must be filed.

(e) Disclosure consistency. The disclosure must be amended, when required by the Office, to correct inaccuracies of description and definition, and to secure substantial correspondence between the claims, the remainder of the specification, and the drawings.

(f) No new matter. No amendment may introduce new matter into the disclosure of an application.

(g) Exception for examiner's amendments: Changes to the specification, including the claims, of an application made by the Office in an examiner's amendment may be made by specific instructions to insert or delete subject matter set forth in the examiner's amendment by identifying the precise point in the specification or the claim(s) where the insertion or deletion is to be made. Compliance with paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2) or (c)(1) of this section is not required.

(h) Amendments in reissue applications. Any amendment to the description and claims in reissue applications must be made in accordance with § 1.173.

(i) Amendments in reexamination proceedings: Any proposed amendment to the description and claims in patents involved in reexamination proceedings in both ex parte reexaminations filed under § 1.510 and inter partes reexaminations filed under § 1.913 must be made in accordance with § 1.530(d)-(j).

(j) Amendments in provisional applications: Amendments in provisional applications are not normally made. If an amendment is made to a provisional application, however, it must comply with the provisions of this section. Any amendments to a provisional application shall be placed in the provisional application file but may not be entered.

**Legislative History**

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967, as amended at 46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53192, Oct. 10, 1997, as corrected at 62 FR 61235, Nov. 17, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54672, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (i), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.122 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.123 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.124 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.125 Substitute specification.

(a) If the number or nature of the amendments or the legibility of the application papers renders it difficult to consider the application, or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, the Office may require the entire specification, including the claims, or any part thereof, be rewritten.

(b) A substitute specification, excluding the claims, may be filed at any point up to payment of the issue fee if it is accompanied by:

(1) A statement that the substitute specification includes no new matter; and

(2) A marked up version of the substitute specification showing all the changes (including the matter being added to and the matter being deleted from) to the specification of record. Numbering the paragraphs of the specification of record is not considered a change that must be shown pursuant to this paragraph.

(c) A substitute specification submitted under this section must be submitted in clean form without markings as to amended material. The paragraphs of any substitute specification, other than the claims, should be individually numbered in Arabic numerals so that any amendment to the specification may be made by replacement paragraph in accordance with § 1.121(b)(1).

(d) A substitute specification under this section is not permitted in a reissue application or in a reexamination proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983; 62 FR 53132, 53193, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54673, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54673, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (b)(2) and (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.126 Numbering of claims.

The original numbering of the claims must be preserved throughout the prosecution. When claims are canceled the remaining claims must not be renumbered. When claims are added, they must be numbered by the applicant consecutively beginning with the number next following the highest numbered claim previously presented (whether entered or not). When the application is ready for allowance, the examiner, if necessary, will renumber the claims consecutively in the order in which they appear or in such order as may have been requested by applicant.

**Legislative History**

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967; 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

From the refusal of the primary examiner to admit an amendment, in whole or in part, a petition will lie to the Commissioner under § 1.181.

**Legislative History**

24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990.

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

(a) An applicant in an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in such application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), is entitled to have a first submission entered and considered on the merits after final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the first submission and the fee set forth in § 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(r). If a subsequent final rejection is made in the application, applicant is entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits after the subsequent final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the second submission and a second fee set forth in § 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the subsequent final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the second fee set forth in § 1.17(r). Any submission filed after a final rejection made in an application subsequent to the fee set forth in § 1.17(r) having been twice paid will be treated as set forth in § 1.116. A submission as used in this paragraph includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims or drawings and a new substantive argument or new evidence in support of patentability.

(b)(1) In an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least three years as of June 8, 1995; taking into account any reference made in the application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, and 365(c), no requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications shall be made or maintained in the application after June 8, 1995, except where:

(i) The requirement was first made in the application or any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c) prior to April 8, 1995;

(ii) The examiner has not made a requirement for restriction in the present or parent application prior to April 8, 1995, due to actions by the applicant; or

(iii) The required fee for examination of each additional invention was not paid.

(2) If the application contains more than one independent and distinct invention and a requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications cannot be made or maintained pursuant to this paragraph, applicant will be so notified and given a time period to:

(i) Elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined, if no election has been made prior to the notice, and pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects;

(ii) Confirm an election made prior to the notice and pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in addition to the one invention which applicant previously elected; or

(iii) File a petition under this section traversing the requirement. If the required petition is filed in a timely manner, the original time period for electing and paying the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) will be deferred and any decision on the petition affirming or modifying the requirement will set a new time period to elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined and to pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects.

(3) The additional inventions for which the required fee has not been paid will be withdrawn from consideration under § 1.142(b). An applicant who desires examination of an invention so withdrawn from consideration can file a divisional application under 35 U.S.C. 121.

(c) The provisions of this section shall not be applicable to any application filed after June 8, 1995.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

§ 1.130 Affidavit or declaration to disqualify commonly owned patent or published application as prior art.

(a) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103 on a U.S. patent or U.S. patent application publication which is not prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(b), and the inventions defined by the claims in the application or patent under reexamination and by the claims in the patent or published application are not identical but are not patentably distinct, and the inventions are owned by the same party, the applicant or owner of the patent under reexamination may disqualify the patent or patent application publication as prior art. The patent or patent application publication can be disqualified as prior art by submission of:

(1) A terminal disclaimer in accordance with § 1.321(c); and

(2) An oath or declaration stating that the application or patent under reexamination and patent or published application are currently owned by the same party, and that the inventor named in the application or patent under reexamination is the prior inventor under 35 U.S.C. 104.

(b) When an application or a patent under reexamination claims an invention which is not patentably distinct from an invention claimed in a commonly owned patent with the same or a different inventive entity, a double patenting rejection will be made in the application or a patent under reexamination. A judicially created double patenting rejection may be obviated by filing a terminal disclaimer in accordance with § 1.321(c).

**Legislative History**

[61 FR 42790, 42805, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57056, Sept. 20, 2000, revised the section heading and paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention.

(a) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected, the inventor of the subject matter of the rejected claim, the owner of the patent under reexamination, or the party qualified under § § 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47, may submit an appropriate oath or declaration to establish invention of the subject matter of the rejected claim prior to the effective date of the reference or activity on which the rejection is based. The effective date of a U.S. patent, U.S. patent application publication, or international application publication under PCT Article 21(2) is the earlier of its publication date or date that it is effective as a reference under 35 U.S.C. 102(e). Prior invention may not be established under this section in any country other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. Prior invention may not be established under this section before December 8, 1993, in a NAFTA country other than the United States, or before January 1, 1996, in a WTO member country other than a NAFTA country. Prior invention may not be established under this section if either:

(1) The rejection is based upon a U.S. patent or U.S. patent application publication of a pending or patented application to another or others which claims the same patentable invention as defined in § 1.601(n); or

(2) The rejection is based upon a statutory bar.

(b) The showing of facts shall be such, in character and weight, as to establish reduction to practice prior to the effective date of the reference, or conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to said date to a subsequent reduction to practice or to the filing of the application. Original exhibits of drawings or records, or photocopies thereof, must accompany and form part of the affidavit or declaration of their absence satisfactorily explained.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 23734, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 21044, May 1, 1995; 61 FR 42790, 42806, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54673, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57057, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54673, Sept. 8, 2000, revised the section heading and paragraph (a), effective Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57057, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing rejections or objections.

When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected or objected to, any evidence submitted to traverse the rejection or objection on a basis not otherwise provided for must be by way of an oath or declaration under this section.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 61 FR 42790, 42806, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54673, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57057, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57057, Sept. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

INTERVIEWS

§ 1.133 Interviews.

(a)(1) Interviews with examiners concerning applications and other matters pending before the Office must be conducted on Office premises and within Office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner.

(2) An interview for the discussion of the patentability of a pending application will not occur before the first Office action, unless the application is a continuing or substitute application.

(3) The examiner may require that an interview be scheduled in advance.

(b) In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office actions as specified in § § 1.111 and 1.135.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 132)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

TIME FOR REPLY BY APPLICANT; ABANDONMENT OF APPLICATION

§ 1.134 Time period for reply to an Office action.

An Office action will notify the applicant of any non-statutory or shortened statutory time period set for reply to an Office action. Unless the applicant is notified in writing that a reply is required in less than six months, a maximum period of six months is allowed.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.135 Abandonment for failure to reply within time period.

(a) If an applicant of a patent application fails to reply within the time period provided under § 1.134 and § 1.136, the application will become abandoned unless an Office action indicates otherwise.

(b) Prosecution of an application to save it from abandonment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must include such complete and proper reply as the condition of the application may require. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after final rejection or any amendment not responsive to the last action, or any related proceedings, will not operate to save the application from abandonment.

(c) When reply by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to advance the application to final action, and is substantially a complete reply to the non-final Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, applicant may be given a new time period for reply under § 1.134 to supply the omission.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.136 Extensions of time.

(a)(1) If an applicant is required to reply within a nonstatutory or shortened statutory time period, applicant may extend the time period for reply up to the earlier of the expiration of any maximum period set by statute or five months after the time period set for reply, if a petition for an extension of time and the fee set in § 1.17(a) are filed, unless:

(i) Applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action;

(ii) The reply is a reply brief submitted pursuant to § 1.193(b);

(iii) The reply is a request for an oral hearing submitted pursuant to § 1.194(b);

(iv) The reply is to a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.196, § 1.197 or § 1.304; or

(v) The application is involved in an interference declared pursuant to § 1.611.

(2) The date on which the petition and the fee have been filed is the date for purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. The expiration of the time period is determined by the amount of the fee paid. A reply must be filed prior to the expiration of the period of extension to avoid abandonment of the application (§ 1.135), but in no situation may an applicant reply later than the maximum time period set by statute, or be granted an extension of time under paragraph (b) of this section when the provisions of this paragraph are available. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time relating to proceedings pursuant to § § 1.193(b), 1.194, 1.196 or 1.197; § 1.304 for extensions of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action; § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in ex parte reexamination proceedings; § 1.956 for extensions of time in inter partes reexamination proceedings; and § 1.645 for extensions of time in interference proceedings.

(3) A written request may be submitted in an application that is an authorization to treat any concurrent or future reply, requiring a petition for an extension of time under this paragraph for its timely submission, as incorporating a petition for extension of time for the appropriate length of time. An authorization to charge all required fees, fees under § 1.17, or all required extension of time fees will be treated as a constructive petition for an extension of time in any concurrent or future reply requiring a petition for an extension of time under this paragraph for its timely submission. Submission of the fee set forth in § 1.17(a) will also be treated as a constructive petition for an extension of time in any concurrent reply requiring a petition for an extension of time under this paragraph for its timely submission.

(b) When a reply cannot be filed within the time period set for such reply and the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section are not available, the period for reply will be extended only for sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for an extension of time under this paragraph must be filed on or before the day on which such reply is due, but the mere filing of such a request will not affect any extension under this paragraph. In no situation can any extension carry the date on which reply is due beyond the maximum time period set by statute. See § 1.304 for extensions of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action; § 1.645

for extensions of time in interference proceedings; § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in ex parte reexamination proceedings; and § 1.956 for extensions of time in inter partes reexamination proceedings.

(c) If an applicant is notified in a "Notice of Allowability" that an application is otherwise in condition for allowance, the following time periods are not extendable if set in the "Notice of Allowability" or in an Office action having a mail date on or after the mail date of the "Notice of Allowability":

(1) The period for submitting an oath or declaration in compliance with § 1.63;

(2) The period for submitting formal drawings set under § 1.85(c); and

(3) The period for making a deposit set under § 1.809(c).

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 29551, July 13, 1989; 54 FR 32637, Aug. 9, 1989; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000; 66 FR 21090, 21092, Apr. 27, 2001]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 133.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000, added paragraph (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76773, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraphs (a)(2) and (b), effective Feb. 5, 2001; 66 FR 21090, 21092, Apr. 27, 2001, revised paragraph (c), effective May 29, 2001.]

§ 1.137 Revival of abandoned application, terminated reexamination proceeding, or lapsed patent.

(a) Unavoidable. If the delay in reply by applicant or patent owner was unavoidable, a petition may be filed pursuant to this paragraph to revive an abandoned application, a reexamination proceeding terminated under § § 1.550(d) or 1.957(b) or (c), or a lapsed patent. A grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph must be accompanied by:

(1) The reply required to the outstanding Office action or notice, unless previously filed;

(2) The petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(l);

(3) A showing to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the entire delay in filing the required reply from the due date for the reply until the filing of a grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph was unavoidable; and

(4) Any terminal disclaimer (and fee as set forth in § 1.20(d)) required pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) Unintentional. If the delay in reply by applicant or patent owner was unintentional, a petition may be filed pursuant to this paragraph to revive an abandoned application, a reexamination proceeding terminated under § § 1.550(d) or 1.957(b) or (c), or a lapsed patent. A grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph must be accompanied by:

(1) The reply required to the outstanding Office action or notice, unless previously filed;

(2) The petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(m);

(3) A statement that the entire delay in filing the required reply from the due date for the reply until the filing of a grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph was unintentional. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Any terminal disclaimer (and fee as set forth in § 1.20(d)) required pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) Reply. In a nonprovisional application abandoned for failure to prosecute, the required reply may be met by the filing of a continuing application. In a nonprovisional utility or plant application filed on or after June 8, 1995, and abandoned for failure to prosecute, the required reply may also be met by the filing of a request for continued examination in compliance with § 1.114. In an application or patent, abandoned or lapsed for failure to pay the issue fee or any portion thereof, the required reply must include payment of the issue fee or any outstanding balance. In an application, abandoned for failure to pay the publication fee, the required reply must include payment of the publication fee.

(d) Terminal disclaimer. (1) Any petition to revive pursuant to this section in a design application must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer and fee as set forth in § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. Any petition to revive pursuant to this section in either a utility or plant application filed before June 8, 1995, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer and fee as set forth in § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the lesser of:

(i) The period of abandonment of the application; or

(ii) The period extending beyond twenty years from the date on which the application for the patent was filed in the United States or, if the application contains a specific reference to an earlier filed application(s) under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c), from the date on which the earliest such application was filed.

(2) Any terminal disclaimer pursuant to paragraph (d)(1) of this section must also apply to any patent granted on a continuing utility or plant application filed before June 8, 1995, or a continuing design application, that contains a specific reference under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c) to the application for which revival is sought.

(3) The provisions of paragraph (d)(1) of this section do not apply to applications for which revival is sought solely for purposes of copendency with a utility or plant application filed on or after June 8, 1995, to lapsed patents, or to reexamination proceedings.

(e) Request for reconsideration. Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive an abandoned application, a terminated reexamination proceeding, or lapsed patent upon petition filed pursuant to this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision. Unless a decision indicates otherwise, this time period may be extended under:

(1) The provisions of § 1.136 for an abandoned application or lapsed patent;

(2) The provisions of § 1.550(c) for a terminated ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510; or

(3) The provisions of § 1.956 for a terminated inter partes reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.913.

(f) Abandonment for failure to notify the Office of a foreign filing: A nonprovisional application abandoned pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b)(2)(B)(iii) for failure to timely notify the Office of the filing of an application in a foreign country or under a multinational treaty that requires publication of applications eighteen months after filing, may be revived only pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section. The reply requirement of paragraph (c) of this section is met by the notification of such filing in a foreign country or under a multinational treaty, but the filing of a petition under this section will not operate to stay any period for reply that may be running against the application.

(g) Provisional applications. A provisional application, abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement, may be revived pursuant to this section. Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 119(e)(3) and § 1.7(b), a provisional application will not be regarded as pending after twelve months from its filing date under any circumstances.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 58 FR 44280, Aug. 20, 1993; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53194, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57057, Sept. 20, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 133.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57051, Sept. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.138 Express abandonment.

(a) An application may be expressly abandoned by filing a written declaration of abandonment identifying the application in the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Express abandonment of the application may not be recognized by the Office before the date of issue or publication unless it is actually received by appropriate officials in time to act.

(b) A written declaration of abandonment must be signed by a party authorized under § 1.33(b)(1), (b)(3), or (b)(4) to sign a paper in the application, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph. A registered attorney or agent, not of record, who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of § 1.34(a) when filing a continuing application, may expressly abandon the prior application as of the filing date granted to the continuing application.

(c) An applicant seeking to abandon an application to avoid publication of the application (see § 1.211(a)(1)) must submit a declaration of express abandonment by way of a petition under this section including the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) in sufficient time to permit the appropriate officials to recognize the abandonment and remove the application from the publication process. Applicant should expect that the petition will not be granted and the application will be published in regular course unless such declaration of express abandonment and petition are received by the appropriate officials more than four weeks prior to the projected date of publication.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 133.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a) and added paragraph (c), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.139 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

JOINDER OF INVENTIONS IN ONE APPLICATION; RESTRICTION

§ 1.141 Different inventions in one national application.

(a) Two or more independent and distinct inventions may not be claimed in one national application, except that more than one species of an invention, not to exceed a reasonable number, may be specifically claimed in different claims in one national application, provided the application also includes an allowable claim generic to all the claimed species and all the claims to species in excess of one are written in dependent form (§ 1.75) or otherwise include all the limitations of the generic claim.

(b) Where claims to all three categories, product, process of making, and process of use, are included in a national application, a three way requirement for restriction can only be made where the process of making is distinct from the product. If the process of making and the product are not distinct, the process of using may be joined with the claims directed to the product and the process of making the product even though a showing of distinctness between the product and process of using the product can be made.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 121.

§ 1.142 Requirement for restriction.

(a) If two or more independent and distinct inventions are claimed in a single application, the examiner in an Office action will require the applicant in the reply to that action to elect an invention to which the claims will be restricted, this official action being called a requirement for restriction (also known as a requirement for division). Such requirement will normally be made before any action on the merits; however, it may be made at any time before final action.

(b) Claims to the invention or inventions not elected, if not canceled, are nevertheless withdrawn from further consideration by the examiner by the election, subject however to reinstatement in the event the requirement for restriction is withdrawn or overruled.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 121.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (a), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.

If the applicant disagrees with the requirement for restriction, he may request reconsideration and withdrawal or modification of the requirement, giving the reasons therefor. (See § 1.111.) In requesting reconsideration the applicant must indicate a provisional election of one invention for prosecution, which invention shall be the one elected in the event the requirement becomes final The requirement for restriction will be reconsidered on such a request. If the requirement is repeated and made final the examiner will at the same time act on the claims to the invention elected.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 121.

§ 1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.

After a final requirement for restriction, the applicant, in addition to making any reply due on the remainder of the action, may petition the Commissioner to review the requirement. Petition may be deferred until after final action on or allowance of claims to the invention elected, but must be filed not later than appeal. A petition will not be considered if reconsideration of the requirement was not requested (see § 1.181).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.

If, after an office action on an application, the applicant presents claims directed to an invention distinct from and independent of the invention previously claimed, the applicant will be required to restrict the claims to the invention previously claimed if the amendment is entered, subject to reconsideration and review as provided in § § 1.143 and 1.144.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 121.

§ 1.146 Election of species.

In the first action on an application containing a generic claim to a generic invention (genus) and claims to more than one patentably distinct species embraced thereby, the examiner may require the applicant in the reply to that action to elect a species of his or her invention to which his or her claim will be restricted if no claim to the genus is found to be allowable. However, if such application contains claims directed to more than a reasonable number of species, the examiner may require restriction of the claims to not more than a reasonable number of species before taking further action in the application.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978; 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

DESIGN PATENTS

§ 1.151 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patents for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for designs except as otherwise provided.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

(35 U.S.C. 171)

§ 1.152 Design drawings.

The design must be represented by a drawing that complies with the requirements of § 1.84 and must contain a sufficient number of views to constitute a complete disclosure of the appearance of the design. Appropriate and adequate surface shading should be used to show the character or contour of the surfaces represented. Solid black surface shading is not permitted except when used to represent the color black as well as color contrast. Broken lines may be used to show visible environmental structure, but may not be used to show hidden planes and surfaces that cannot be seen through opaque materials. Alternate positions of a design component, illustrated by full and broken lines in the same view are not permitted in a design drawing. Photographs and ink drawings are not permitted to be combined as formal drawings in one application. Photographs submitted in lieu of ink drawings in design patent applications must not disclose environmental structure but must be limited to the design claimed for the article.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 38726, July 20, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53195, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.

(a) The title of the design must designate the particular article. No description, other than a reference to the drawing, is ordinarily required. The claim shall be in formal terms to the ornamental design for the article (specifying name) as shown, or as shown and described. More than one claim is neither required nor permitted.

(b) The oath or declaration required of the applicant must comply with § 1.63.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 29 FR 18503, Dec. 29, 1964; 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

§ 1.154 Arrangement of application elements in a design application.

(a) The elements of the design application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Design application transmittal form.

(2) Fee transmittal form.

(3) Application data sheet (see § 1.76).

(4) Specification.

(5) Drawings or photographs.

(6) Executed oath or declaration (see § 1.153(b)).

(b) The specification should include the following sections in order:

(1) Preamble, stating the name of the applicant, title of the design, and a brief description of the nature and intended use of the article in which the design is embodied.

(2) Cross-reference to related applications (unless included in the application data sheet).

(3) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(4) Description of the figure or figures of the drawing.

(5) Feature description.

(6) A single claim.

(c) The text of the specification sections defined in paragraph (b) of this section, if applicable, should be preceded by a section heading in uppercase letters without underlining or bold type.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 61 FR 42790, 42806, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.155 Expedited examination of design applications.

(a) The applicant may request that the Office expedite the examination of a design application. To qualify for expedited examination:

(1) The application must include drawings in compliance with § 1.84;

(2) The applicant must have conducted a preexamination search; and

(3) The applicant must file a request for expedited examination including:

(i) The fee set forth in § 1.17(k); and

(ii) A statement that a preexamination search was conducted. The statement must also indicate the field of search and include an information disclosure statement in compliance with § 1.98.

(b) The Office will not examine an application that is not in condition for examination (e.g., missing basic filing fee) even if the applicant files a request for expedited examination under this section.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982; 59 FR 44280, Aug. 20, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54674, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

PLANT PATENTS

§ 1.161 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patent for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for plants except as otherwise provided.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

§ 1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.

The applicant for a plant patent must be the person who has invented or discovered and asexually reproduced the new and distinct variety of plant for which a patent is sought (or as provided in § § 1.42, 1.43, and 1.47). The oath or declaration required of the applicant, in addition to the averments required by § 1.63, must state that he or she has asexually reproduced the plant. Where the plant is a newly found plant the oath or declaration must also state that it was found in a cultivated area.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

§ 1.163 Specification and arrangement of application elements in a plant application.

(a) The specification must contain as full and complete a disclosure as possible of the plant and the characteristics thereof that distinguish the same over related known varieties, and its antecedents, and must particularly point out where and in what manner the variety of plant has been asexually reproduced. For a newly found plant, the specification must particularly point out the location and character of the area where the plant was discovered.

(b) The elements of the plant application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Plant application transmittal form.

(2) Fee transmittal form.

(3) Application data sheet (see § 1.76).

(4) Specification.

(5) Drawings (in duplicate).

(6) Executed oath or declaration (§ 1.162).

(c) The specification should include the following sections in order:

(1) Title of the invention, which may include an introductory portion stating the name, citizenship, and residence of the applicant.

(2) Cross-reference to related applications (unless included in the application data sheet).

(3) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(4) Latin name of the genus and species of the plant claimed.

(5) Variety denomination.

(6) Background of the invention.

(7) Brief summary of the invention.

(8) Brief description of the drawing.

(9) Detailed botanical description.

(10) A single claim.

(11) Abstract of the disclosure.

(d) The text of the specification or sections defined in paragraph (c) of this section, if applicable, should be preceded by a section heading in upper case, without underlining or bold type.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 61 FR 42790, 42806, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54675, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54675, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.164 Claim.

The claim shall be in formal terms to the new and distinct variety of the specified plant as described and illustrated, and may also recite the principal distinguishing characteristics. More than one claim is not permitted.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

§ 1.165 Plant drawings.

(a) Plant patent drawings should be artistically and competently executed and must comply with the requirements of § 1.84. View numbers and reference characters need not be employed unless required by the examiner. The drawing must disclose all the distinctive characteristics of the plant capable of visual representation.

(b) The drawings may be in color. The drawing must be in color if color is a distinguishing characteristic of the new variety. Two copies of color drawings or photographs and a black and white photocopy that accurately depicts, to the extent possible, the subject matter shown in the color drawing or photograph must be submitted.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982; 58 FR 38726, July 20, 1993; 65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 113, 161; 35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.166 Specimens.

The applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the plant, or its flower or fruit, in a quantity and at a time in its stage of growth as may be designated, for study and inspection. Such specimens, properly packed, must be forwarded in conformity with instructions furnished to the applicant. When it is not possible to forward such specimens, plants must be made available for official inspection where grown.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

(35 U.S.C. 114, 161)

§ 1.167 Examination.

Applications may be submitted by the Patent and Trademark Office to the Department of Agriculture for study and report.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

REISSUES

§ 1.171 Application for reissue.

An application for reissue must contain the same parts required for an application for an original patent, complying with all the rules relating thereto except as otherwise provided, and in addition, must comply with the requirements of the rules relating to reissue applications.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.172 Applicants, assignees.

(a) A reissue oath must be signed and sworn to or declaration made by the inventor or inventors except as otherwise provided (see § § 1.42, 1.43, 1.47), and must be accompanied by the written consent of all assignees, if any, owning an undivided interest in the patent, but a reissue oath may be made and sworn to or declaration made by the assignee of the entire interest if the application does not seek to enlarge the scope of the claims of the original patent. All assignees consenting to the reissue must establish their ownership interest in the patent by filing in the reissue application a submission in accordance with the provisions of § 3.73(b) of this chapter.

(b) A reissue will be granted to the original patentee, his legal representatives or assigns as the interest may appear.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (a), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.173 Reissue specification, drawings, and amendments.

(a) Contents of a reissue application. An application for reissue must contain the entire specification, including the claims, and the drawings of the patent. No new matter shall be introduced into the application. No reissue patent shall be

granted enlarging the scope of the claims of the original patent unless applied for within two years from the grant of the original patent, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 251.

(1) Specification, including claims. The entire specification, including the claims, of the patent for which reissue is requested must be furnished in the form of a copy of the printed patent, in double column format, each page on only one side of a single sheet of paper. If an amendment of the reissue application is to be included, it must be made pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section. The formal requirements for papers making up the reissue application other than those set forth in this section are set out in § 1.52. Additionally, a copy of any disclaimer (§ 1.321), certificate of correction (§ § 1.322 through 1.324), or reexamination certificate (§ 1.570) issued in the patent must be included. (See also § 1.178).

(2) Drawings. Applicant must submit a clean copy of each drawing sheet of the printed patent at the time the reissue application is filed. If such copy complies with § 1.84, no further drawings will be required. Where a drawing of the reissue application is to include any changes relative to the patent being reissued, the changes to the drawing must be made in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section. The Office will not transfer the drawings from the patent file to the reissue application.

(b) Making amendments in a reissue application. An amendment in a reissue application is made either by physically incorporating the changes into the specification when the application is filed, or by a separate amendment paper. If amendment is made by incorporation, markings pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section must be used. If amendment is made by an amendment paper, the paper must direct that specified changes be made.

(1) Specification other than the claims. Changes to the specification, other than to the claims, must be made by submission of the entire text of an added or rewritten paragraph, including markings pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section, except that an entire paragraph may be deleted by a statement deleting the paragraph without presentation of the text of the paragraph. The precise point in the specification must be identified where any added or rewritten paragraph is located. This paragraph applies whether the amendment is submitted on paper or compact disc (see § § 1.52(e)(1) and 1.821(c), but not for discs submitted under § 1.821(e)).

(2) Claims. An amendment paper must include the entire text of each claim being changed by such amendment paper and of each claim being added by such amendment paper. For any claim changed by the amendment paper, a parenthetical expression "amended," "twice amended," etc., should follow the claim number. Each changed patent claim and each added claim must include markings pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section, except that a patent claim or added claim should be canceled by a statement canceling the claim without presentation of the text of the claim.

(3) Drawings. Any change to the patent drawings must be submitted as a sketch on a separate paper showing the proposed changes in red for approval by the examiner. Upon approval by the examiner, new drawings in compliance with § 1.84 including the approved changes must be filed. Amended figures must be identified as "Amended," and any added figure must be identified as "New." In the event that a figure is canceled, the figure must be surrounded by brackets and identified as "Canceled."

(c) Status of claims and support for claim changes. Whenever there is an amendment to the claims pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, there must also be supplied, on pages separate from the pages containing the changes, the status (i.e., pending or canceled), as of the date of the amendment, of all patent claims and of all added claims, and an explanation of the support in the disclosure of the patent for the changes made to the claims.

(d) Changes shown by markings. Any changes relative to the patent being reissued which are made to the specification, including the claims, upon filing, or by an amendment paper in the reissue application, must include the following markings:

(1) The matter to be omitted by reissue must be enclosed in brackets; and

(2) The matter to be added by reissue must be underlined, except for amendments submitted on compact discs (§ § 1.96 and 1.821(c)). Matter added by reissue on compact discs must be preceded with "<U>" and end with "</U>" to properly identify the material being added.

(e) Numbering of patent claims preserved. Patent claims may not be renumbered. The numbering of any claim added in the reissue application must follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim.

(f) Amendment of disclosure may be required. The disclosure must be amended, when required by the Office, to correct inaccuracies of description and definition, and to secure substantial correspondence between the claims, the remainder of the specification, and the drawings.

(g) Amendments made relative to the patent. All amendments must be made relative to the patent specification, including the claims, and drawings, which are in effect as of the date of filing of the reissue application.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 65 FR 54604, 54675, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54675, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.174 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.

(a) The reissue oath or declaration in addition to complying with the requirements of § 1.63, must also state that:

(1) The applicant believes the original patent to be wholly or partly inoperative or invalid by reason of a defective specification or drawing, or by reason of the patentee claiming more or less than the patentee had the right to claim in the patent, stating at least one error being relied upon as the basis for reissue; and

(2) All errors being corrected in the reissue application up to the time of filing of the oath or declaration under this paragraph arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the applicant.

(b)(1) For any error corrected, which is not covered by the oath or declaration submitted under paragraph (a) of this section, applicant must submit a supplemental oath or declaration stating that every such error arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the applicant. Any supplemental oath or declaration required by this paragraph must be submitted before allowance and may be submitted:

(i) With any amendment prior to allowance; or

(ii) In order to overcome a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 251 made by the examiner where it is indicated that the submission of a supplemental oath or declaration as required by this paragraph will overcome the rejection.

(2) For any error sought to be corrected after allowance, a supplemental oath or declaration must accompany the requested correction stating that the error(s) to be corrected arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the applicant.

(c) Having once stated an error upon which the reissue is based, as set forth in paragraph (a)(1), unless all errors previously stated in the oath or declaration are no longer being corrected, a subsequent oath or declaration under paragraph (b) of this section need not specifically identify any other error or errors being corrected.

(d) The oath or declaration required by paragraph (a) of this section may be submitted under the provisions of § 1.53(f).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 29 FR 18503, Dec. 29, 1964; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982; 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 59 FR 18300, April 18, 1994; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.176 Examination of reissue.

(a) A reissue application will be examined in the same manner as a non-reissue, non-provisional application, and will be subject to all the requirements of the rules related to non-reissue applications. Applications for reissue will be acted on by the examiner in advance of other applications.

(b) Restriction between subject matter of the original patent claims and previously unclaimed subject matter may be required (restriction involving only subject matter of the original patent claims will not be required). If restriction is required, the subject matter of the original patent claims will be held to be constructively elected unless a disclaimer of all the patent claims is filed in the reissue application, which disclaimer cannot be withdrawn by applicant.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.177 Issuance of multiple reissue patents.

(a) The Office may reissue a patent as multiple reissue patents. If applicant files more than one application for the reissue of a single patent, each such application must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification a notice stating that more than one reissue application has been filed and identifying each of the reissue applications by relationship, application number and filing date. The Office may correct by certificate of correction under § 1.322 any reissue patent resulting from an application to which this paragraph applies that does not contain the required notice.

(b) If applicant files more than one application for the reissue of a single patent, each claim of the patent being reissued must be presented in each of the reissue applications as an amended, unamended, or canceled (shown in brackets) claim, with each such claim bearing the same number as in the patent being reissued. The same claim of the patent being reissued may not be presented in its original unamended form for examination in more than one of such multiple reissue applications. The numbering of any added claims in any of the multiple reissue applications must follow the number of the highest numbered original patent claim.

(c) If any one of the several reissue applications by itself fails to correct an error in the original patent as required by 35 U.S.C. 251 but is otherwise in condition for allowance, the Office may suspend action in the allowable application until all issues are resolved as to at least one of the remaining reissue applications. The Office may also merge two or more of the multiple reissue applications into a single reissue application. No reissue application containing only unamended patent claims and not correcting an error in the original patent will be passed to issue by itself.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 54 FR 9432, Mar. 7, 1989; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.178 Original patent; continuing duty of applicant.

(a) The application for a reissue should be accompanied by either an offer to surrender the original patent, or the original patent itself, or if the original is lost or inaccessible, by a statement to that effect. The application may be accepted for examination in the absence of the original patent or the statement, but one or the other must be supplied before the application is allowed. If a reissue application is refused, the original patent, if surrendered, will be returned to applicant upon request.

(b) In any reissue application before the Office, the applicant must call to the attention of the Office any prior or concurrent proceedings in which the patent (for which reissue is requested) is or was involved, such as interferences, reissues, reexaminations, or litigations and the results of such proceedings (see also § 1.173(a)(1)).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.179 Notice of reissue application.

When an application for a reissue is filed, there will be placed in the file of the original patent a notice stating that an application for reissue has been filed. When the reissue is granted or the reissue application is otherwise terminated, the fact will be added to the notice in the file of the original patent.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER

§ 1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

(1) From any action or requirement of any examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application, or in the ex parte or inter partes prosecution of a reexamination proceeding which is not subject to appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or to the court;

(2) In cases in which a statute or the rules specify that the matter is to be determined directly by or reviewed by the Commissioner; and

(3) To invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances. For petitions in interferences, see § 1.644.

(b) Any such petition must contain a statement of the facts involved and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support thereof should accompany or be embodied in the petition; and where facts are to be proven, the proof in the form of affidavits or declarations (and exhibits, if any) must accompany the petition.

(c) When a petition is taken from an action or requirement of an examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application, or in the ex parte or inter partes prosecution of a reexamination proceeding, it may be required that there have been a proper request for reconsideration (§ 1.111) and a repeated action by the examiner. The examiner may be directed by the Commissioner to furnish a written statement, within a specified time, setting forth the reasons for his or her decision upon the matters averred in the petition, supplying a copy to the petitioner.

(d) Where a fee is required for a petition to the Commissioner the appropriate section of this part will so indicate. If any required fee does not accompany the petition, the petition will be dismissed.

(e) Oral hearing will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(f) The mere filing of a petition will not stay any period for reply that may be running against the application, nor act as a stay of other proceedings. Any petition under this part not filed within two months of the mailing date of the action or notice from which relief is requested may be dismissed as untimely, except as otherwise provided. This two-month period is not extendable.

(g) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials the determination of petitions.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982; 49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000]

35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (f), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) and (c), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.182 Questions not specifically provided for.

All situations not specifically provided for in the regulations of this part will be decided in accordance with the merits of each situation by or under the authority of the Commissioner, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed, and such decision will be communicated to the interested parties in writing. Any petition seeking a decision under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.183 Suspension of rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations in this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, sua sponte, or on petition of the interested party, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed. Any petition under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982]

35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123.

§ 1.184 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

§ 1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) Every applicant for a patent or for reissue of a patent, and every owner of a patent under ex parte reexamination filed under § 1.510 for a patent that issued from an original application filed in the United States before November 29, 1999, any of whose claims has been twice or finally (§ 1.113) rejected, may appeal from the decision of the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences by filing a notice of appeal and the fee set forth in § 1.17(b) within the time period provided under § § 1.134 and 1.136 for reply. Notwithstanding the above, for an ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510 for a patent that issued from an original application filed in the United States on or after November 29, 1999, no appeal may be filed until the claims have been finally rejected (§ 1.113). Appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in inter partes reexamination proceedings filed under § 1.913 are controlled by § § 1.959 through 1.981. Sections 1.191 through 1.198 are not applicable to appeals in inter partes reexamination proceedings filed under § 1.913.

(b) The signature requirement of § 1.33 does not apply to a notice of appeal filed under this section.

(c) An appeal when taken must be taken from the rejection of all claims under rejection which the applicant or patent owner proposes to contest. Questions relating to matters not affecting the merits of the invention may be required to be settled before an appeal can be considered.

(d) The time periods set forth in § § 1.191 and 1.192 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136 for patent applications and § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. The time periods set forth in § § 1.193, 1.194, 1.196 and 1.197 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136(b) for patent applications or § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(e) Jurisdiction over the application or patent under reexamination passes to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon transmittal of the file, including all briefs and examiner's answers, to the Board. Prior to the entry of a decision on the appeal, the Commissioner may sua sponte order the application remanded to the examiner.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984; 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.192 Appellant's brief.

(a) Appellant must, within two months from the date of the notice of appeal under § 1.191 or within the time allowed for reply to the action from which the appeal was taken, if such time is later, file a brief in triplicate. The brief must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(c) and must set forth the authorities and arguments on which appellant will rely to maintain the appeal. Any arguments or authorities not included in the brief will be refused consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, unless good cause is shown.

(b) On failure to file the brief, accompanied by the requisite fee, within the time allowed, the appeal shall stand dismissed.

(c) The brief shall contain the following items under appropriate headings and in the order indicated below unless the brief is filed by an applicant who is not represented by a registered practitioner:

(1) Real party in interest. A statement identifying the real party in interest, if the party named in the caption of the brief is not the real party in interest.

(2) Related appeals and interferences. A Statement identifying by number and filing date all other appeals or interferences known to appellant, the appellant's legal representative, or assignee which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

(3) Status of claims. A statement of the status of all the claims, pending or cancelled, and identifying the claims appealed.

(4) Status of amendments. A statement of the status of any amendment filed subsequent to final rejection.

(5) Summary of invention. A concise explanation of the invention defined in the claims involved in the appeal, which shall refer to the specification by page and line number, and to the drawing, if any, by reference characters.

(6) Issues. A concise statement of the issues presented for review.

(7) Grouping of claims. For each ground of rejection which appellant contests and which applies to a group of two or more claims, the Board shall select a single claim from the group and shall decide the appeal as to the ground of rejection on the basis of that claim alone unless a statement is included that the claims of the group do not stand or fall together and, in the argument under paragraph (c)(8) of this section, appellant explains why the claims of the group are believed to be separately patentable. Merely pointing out differences in what the claims cover is not an argument as to why the claims are separately patentable.

(8) Argument. The contentions of appellant with respect to each of the issues presented for review in paragraph (c)(6) of this section, and the basis therefor, with citations of the authorities, statutes, and parts of the record relied on. Each issue should be treated under a separate heading.

(i) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112 is complied with, including, as appropriate, how the specification and drawings, if any,

(A) Describe the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims,

(B) Enable any person skilled in the art to make and use the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims, and

(C) Set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his or her invention.

(ii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the claims particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention.

(iii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and why the rejected claims are patentable under 35 U.S.C. 102, including any specific limitations in the rejected claims which are not described in the prior art relied upon in the rejection.

(iv) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and, if appropriate, the specific limitations in the rejected claims which are not described in the prior art relied on in the rejection, and shall explain how such limitations render the claimed subject matter unobvious over the prior art. If the rejection is based upon a combination of references, the argument shall explain why the references, taken as a whole, do not suggest the claimed subject matter, and shall include, as may be appropriate, an explanation of why features disclosed in one reference may not properly be combined with features disclosed in another reference. A general argument that all the limitations are not described in a single reference does not satisfy the requirements of this paragraph.

(v) For any rejection other than those referred to in paragraphs (c)(8) (i) to (iv) of this section, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and the specific limitations in the rejected claims, if appropriate, or other reasons, which cause the rejection to be in error.

(9) Appendix. An appendix containing a copy of the claims involved in the appeal.

(d) If a brief is filed which does not comply with all the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, appellant will be notified of the reasons for non-compliance and provided with a period of one month within which to file an amended brief. If appellant does not file an amended brief during the one-month period, or files an amended brief which does not overcome all the reasons for non-compliance stated in the notification, the appeal will stand dismissed.

**Legislative History**

[36 FR 5850, March 30, 1971, as amended at 53 FR 23734, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 14518, March 17, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53196, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (a), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.193 Examiner's answer and reply brief.

(a)(1) The primary examiner may, within such time as may be directed by the Commissioner, furnish a written statement in answer to appellant's brief including such explanation of the invention claimed and of the references and grounds of rejection as may be necessary, supplying a copy to appellant. If the primary examiner finds that the appeal is not regular in form or does not relate to an appealable action, the primary examiner shall so state.

(2) An examiner's answer must not include a new ground of rejection, but if an amendment under § 1.116 proposes to add or amend one or more claims and appellant was advised that the amendment under § 1.116 would be entered for purposes of appeal and which individual rejection(s) set forth in the action from which the appeal was taken would be used to reject the added or amended claim(s), then the appeal brief must address the rejection(s) of the claim(s) added or amended by the amendment under § 1.116 as appellant was so advised and the examiner's answer may include the rejection(s) of the claim(s) added or amended by the amendment under § 1.116 as appellant was so advised. The filing of an amendment under § 1.116 which is entered for purposes of appeal represents appellant's consent that when so advised any appeal proceed on those claim(s) added or amended by the amendment under § 1.116 subject to any rejection set forth in the action from which the appeal was taken.

(b)(1) Appellant may file a reply brief to an examiner's answer or a supplemental examiner's answer within two months from the date of such examiner's answer or supplemental examiner's answer. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for filing a reply brief in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time for filing a reply brief in a reexamination proceeding. The primary examiner must either acknowledge receipt and entry of the reply brief or withdraw the final rejection and reopen prosecution to respond to the reply brief. A supplemental examiner's answer is not permitted, unless the application has been remanded by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences for such purpose.

(2) Where prosecution is reopened by the primary examiner after an appeal or reply brief has been filed, appellant must exercise one of the following two options to avoid abandonment of the application:

(i) File a reply under § 1.111, if the Office action is not final, or a reply under § 1.113, if the Office action is final; or

(ii) Request reinstatement of the appeal. If reinstatement of the appeal is requested, such request must be accompanied by a supplemental appeal brief, but no new amendments, affidavits (§ § 1.130, 1.131 or 1.132) or other evidence are permitted.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982; 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53197, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000]

This section also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b)(1), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.194 Oral hearing.

(a) An oral hearing should be requested only in those circumstances in which appellant considers such a hearing necessary or desirable for a proper presentation of the appeal. An appeal decided without an oral hearing will receive the same consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as appeals decided after oral hearing.

(b) If appellant desires an oral hearing, appellant must file, in a separate paper, a written request for such hearing accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(d) within two months from the date of the examiner's answer. If appellant requests an oral hearing and submits therewith the fee set forth in § 1.17(d), an oral argument may be presented by, or on behalf of, the primary examiner if considered desirable by either the primary examiner or the Board. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for requesting an oral hearing in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time for requesting an oral hearing in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) If no request and fee for oral hearing have been timely filed by appellant, the appeal will be assigned for consideration and decision. If appellant has requested an oral hearing and has submitted the fee set forth in § 1.17(d), a day of hearing will be set, and due notice thereof given to appellant and to the primary examiner. A hearing will be held as stated in the notice, and oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes for appellant and fifteen minutes for the primary examiner unless otherwise ordered before the hearing begins. If the Board decides that a hearing is not necessary, the Board will so notify appellant.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982; 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53197, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53197, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.

Affidavits, declarations, or exhibits submitted after the case has been appealed will not be admitted without a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they were not earlier presented.

**Legislative History**

[34 FR 18858, Nov. 26, 1969]

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

§ 1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, in its decision, may affirm or reverse the decision of the examiner in whole or in part on the grounds and on the claims specified by the examiner or remand the application to the examiner for further consideration. The affirmance of the rejection of a claim on any of the grounds specified constitutes a general affirmance of the decision of the examiner on that claim, except as to any ground specifically reversed.

(b) Should the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences have knowledge of any grounds not involved in the appeal for rejecting any pending claim, it may include in the decision a statement to that effect with its reasons for so holding, which statement constitutes a new ground of rejection of the claim. A new ground of rejection shall not be considered final for purposes of judicial review. When the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences makes a new ground of rejection, the appellant, within two months from the date of the decision, must exercise one of the following two options with respect to the new ground of rejection to avoid termination of proceedings (§ 1.197(c)) as to the rejected claims:

(1) Submit an appropriate amendment of the claims so rejected or a showing of facts relating to the claims so rejected, or both, and have the matter reconsidered by the examiner, in which event the application will be remanded to the examiner. The new ground of rejection is binding upon the examiner unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record be made which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the new ground of rejection stated in the decision. Should the examiner reject the claims, appellant may again appeal pursuant to § § 1.191 through 1.195 to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(2) Request that the application be reheard under § 1.197(b) by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon the same record. The request for rehearing must address the new ground of rejection and state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which rehearing is sought. Where request for such rehearing is made, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall rehear the new ground of rejection and, if necessary, render a new decision which shall include all grounds of rejection upon which a patent is refused. The decision on rehearing is deemed to incorporate the earlier decision for purposes of appeal, except for those portions specifically withdrawn on rehearing, and is final for the purpose of judicial review, except when noted otherwise in the decision.

(c) Should the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences include an explicit statement that a claim may be allowed in amended form, appellant shall have the right to amend in conformity with such statement which shall be binding on the examiner in the absence of new references or grounds of rejection.

(d) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may require appellant to address any matter that is deemed appropriate for a reasoned decision on the pending appeal. Appellant will be given a non-extendable time period within which to respond to such a requirement.

(e) Whenever a decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences includes or allows a remand, that decision shall not be considered a final decision. When appropriate, upon conclusion of proceedings on remand before the examiner, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may enter an order otherwise making its decision final.

(f) See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time to take action under this section in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53197, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53197, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (b) and (d), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.197 Action following decision.

(a) After decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, the application will be returned to the examiner, subject to appellant's right of appeal or other review, for such further action by appellant or by the examiner, as the condition of the application may require, to carry into effect the decision.

(b) Appellant may file a single request for rehearing within two months from the date of the original decision, unless the original decision is so modified by the decision on rehearing as to become, in effect, a new decision, and the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences so states. The request for rehearing must state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which rehearing is sought. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for seeking rehearing in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time for seeking rehearing in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) Termination of proceedings. Proceedings are considered terminated by the dismissal of an appeal or the failure to timely file an appeal to the court or a civil action (§ 1.304) except:

(1) Where claims stand allowed in an application or

(2) Where the nature of the decision requires further action by the examiner.

The date of termination of proceedings is the date on which the appeal is dismissed or the date on which the time for appeal to the court or review by civil action (§ 1.304) expires. If an appeal to the court or a civil action has been filed, proceedings are considered terminated when the appeal or civil action is terminated. An appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit is terminated when the mandate is received by the Office. A civil action is terminated when the time to appeal the judgment expires.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29184, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct, 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

This section is also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (a) and (b), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.198 Reopening after decision.

Cases which have been decided by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will not be reopened or reconsidered by the primary examiner except under the provisions of § 1.114 or § 1.196 without the written authority of the Commissioner, and then only for the consideration of matters not already adjudicated, sufficient cause being shown.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective May 29, 2000.]

PUBLICATION OF APPLICATIONS

§ 1.211 Publication of applications.

(a) Each U.S. national application for patent filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) and each international application in compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371 will be published promptly after the expiration of a period of eighteen months from the earliest filing date for which a benefit is sought under title 35, United States Code, unless:

(1) The application is recognized by the Office as no longer pending;

(2) The application is national security classified (see § 5.2(c)), subject to a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, or under national security review;

(3) The application has issued as a patent in sufficient time to be removed from the publication process; or

(4) The application was filed with a nonpublication request in compliance with § 1.213(a).

(b) Provisional applications under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) shall not be published, and design applications under 35 U.S.C. chapter 16 and reissue applications under 35 U.S.C. chapter 25 shall not be published under this section.

(c) An application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) will not be published until it includes the basic filing fee (§ 1.16(a) or 1.16(g)), any English translation required by § 1.52(d), and an executed oath or declaration under § 1.63. The Office may delay publishing any application until it includes a specification having papers in compliance with § 1.52 and an abstract (§ 1.72(b)), drawings in compliance with § 1.84, and a sequence listing in compliance with § § 1.821 through 1.825 (if applicable), and until any petition under § 1.47 is granted.

(d) The Office may refuse to publish an application, or to include a portion of an application in the patent application publication (§ 1.215), if publication of the application or portion thereof would violate Federal or state law, or if the application or portion thereof contains offensive or disparaging material.

(e) The publication fee set forth in § 1.18(d) must be paid in each application published under this section before the patent will be granted. If an application is subject to publication under this section, the sum specified in the notice of allowance under § 1.311 will also include the publication fee which must be paid within three months from the date of mailing of the notice of allowance to avoid abandonment of the application. This three-month period is not extendable. If the application is not published under this section, the publication fee (if paid) will be refunded.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.213 Nonpublication request.

(a) If the invention disclosed in an application has not been and will not be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication of applications eighteen months after filing, the application will not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and § 1.211 provided:

(1) A request (nonpublication request) is submitted with the application upon filing;

(2) The request states in a conspicuous manner that the application is not to be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b);

(3) The request contains a certification that the invention disclosed in the application has not been and will not be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing; and

(4) The request is signed in compliance with § 1.33(b).

(b) The applicant may rescind a nonpublication request at any time. A request to rescind a nonpublication request under paragraph (a) of this section must:

(1) Identify the application to which it is directed;

(2) State in a conspicuous manner that the request that the application is not to be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) is rescinded; and

(3) Be signed in compliance with § 1.33(b).

(c) If an applicant who has submitted a nonpublication request under paragraph (a) of this section subsequently files an application directed to the invention disclosed in the application in which the nonpublication request was submitted in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication of applications eighteen months after filing, the applicant must notify the Office of such filing within forty-five days after the date of the filing of such foreign or international application. The failure to timely notify the Office of the filing of such foreign or international application shall result in abandonment of the application in which the nonpublication request was submitted (35 U.S.C. 122(b)(2)(B)(iii)).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57058, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.215 Patent application publication.

(a) The publication of an application under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) shall include a patent application publication. The date of publication shall be indicated on the patent application publication. The patent application publication will be based upon the application papers deposited on the filing date of the application, as well as the executed oath or declaration submitted to complete the application, and any application papers or drawings submitted in reply to a preexamination notice requiring a title and abstract in compliance with § 1.72, application papers in compliance with § 1.52, drawings in compliance with § 1.84, or a sequence listing in compliance with § § 1.821 through 1.825, except as otherwise provided in this section. The patent application publication will not include any amendments, including preliminary amendments, unless applicant supplies a copy of the application containing the amendment pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) If applicant wants the patent application publication to include assignee information, the applicant must include the assignee information on the application transmittal sheet or the application data sheet (§ 1.76). Assignee information may not be included on the patent application publication unless this information is provided on the application transmittal sheet or application data sheet included with the application on filing. Providing this information on the application transmittal sheet or the application data sheet does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of this chapter to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

(c) At applicant's option, the patent application publication will be based upon the copy of the application (specification, drawings, and oath or declaration) as amended during examination, provided that applicant supplies such a copy in compliance with the Office electronic filing system requirements within one month of the actual filing date of the application or fourteen months of the earliest filing date for which a benefit is sought under title 35, United States Code, whichever is later.

(d) If the copy of the application submitted pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section does not comply with the Office electronic filing system requirements, the Office will publish the application as provided in paragraph (a) of this section. If, however, the Office has not started the publication process, the Office may use an untimely filed copy of the application supplied by the applicant under paragraph (c) of this section in creating the patent application publication.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.217 Publication of a redacted copy of an application.

(a) If an applicant has filed applications in one or more foreign countries, directly or through a multilateral international agreement, and such foreign-filed applications or the description of the invention in such foreign-filed applications is less extensive than the application or description of the invention in the application filed in the Office, the applicant may submit a redacted copy of the application filed in the Office for publication, eliminating any part or description of the invention that is not also contained in any of the corresponding applications filed in a foreign country. The Office will publish the application as provided in § 1.215(a) unless the applicant files a redacted copy of the application in compliance with this section within sixteen months after the earliest filing date for which a benefit is sought under title 35, United States Code.

(b) The redacted copy of the application must be submitted in compliance with the Office electronic filing system requirements. The title of the invention in the redacted copy of the application must correspond to the title of the application at the time the redacted copy of the application is submitted to the Office. If the redacted copy of the application does not comply with the Office electronic filing system requirements, the Office will publish the application as provided in § 1.215(a).

(c) The applicant must also concurrently submit in paper (§ 1.52(a)) to be filed in the application:

(1) A certified copy of each foreign-filed application that corresponds to the application for which a redacted copy is submitted;

(2) A translation of each such foreign-filed application that is in a language other than English, and a statement that the translation is accurate;

(3) A marked-up copy of the application showing the redactions in brackets; and

(4) A certification that the redacted copy of the application eliminates only the part or description of the invention that is not contained in any application filed in a foreign country, directly or through a multilateral international agreement, that corresponds to the application filed in the Office.

(d) The Office will provide a copy of the complete file wrapper and contents of an application for which a redacted copy was submitted under this section to any person upon written request pursuant to § 1.14(c)(2), unless applicant complies with the requirements of paragraphs (d)(1), (d)(2), and (d)(3) of this section.

(1) Applicant must accompany the submission required by paragraph (c) of this section with the following:

(i) A copy of any Office correspondence previously received by applicant including any desired redactions, and a second copy of all Office correspondence previously received by applicant showing the redacted material in brackets; and

(ii) A copy of each submission previously filed by the applicant including any desired redactions, and a second copy of each submission previously filed by the applicant showing the redacted material in brackets.

(2) In addition to providing the submission required by paragraphs (c) and (d)(1) of this section, applicant must:

(i) Within one month of the date of mailing of any correspondence from the Office, file a copy of such Office correspondence including any desired redactions, and a second copy of such Office correspondence showing the redacted material in brackets; and

(ii) With each submission by the applicant, include a copy of such submission including any desired redactions, and a second copy of such submission showing the redacted material in brackets.

(3) Each submission under paragraph (d)(1) or (d)(2) of this paragraph must also be accompanied by the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and a certification that the redactions are limited to the elimination of material that is relevant only to the part or description of the invention that was not contained in the redacted copy of the application submitted for publication.

(e) The provisions of § 1.8 do not apply to the time periods set forth in this section.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.219 Early publication.

(a) Applications that will be published under § 1.211 may be published earlier than as set forth in § 1.211(a) at the request of the applicant. Any request for early publication must be accompanied by the publication fee set forth in § 1.18(d). If the applicant does not submit a copy of the application in compliance with the Office electronic filing system requirements pursuant to § 1.215(c), the Office will publish the application as provided in § 1.215(a). No consideration will be given to requests for publication on a certain date, and such requests will be treated as a request for publication as soon as possible.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57059, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.221 Voluntary publication or republication of patent application publication.

(a) Any request for publication of an application filed before, but pending on, November 29, 2000, and any request for republication of an application previously published under § 1.211, must include a copy of the application in compliance with the Office electronic filing system requirements and be accompanied by the publication fee set forth in § 1.18(d) and the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i). If the request does not comply with the requirements of this paragraph or the copy of the application does not comply with the Office electronic filing system requirements, the Office will not publish the application and will refund the publication fee.

(b) The Office will grant a request for a corrected or revised patent application publication other than as provided in paragraph (a) of this section only when the Office makes a material mistake which is apparent from Office records. Any request for a corrected or revised patent application publication other than as provided in paragraph (a) of this section must be filed within two months from the date of the patent application publication. This period is not extendable.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

(a) Service of papers must be on the attorney or agent of the party if there be such or on the party if there is no attorney or agent, and may be made in any of the following ways:

(1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;

(2) By leaving a copy at the usual place of business of the person served with someone in his employment;

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy at the person's residence, with some person of suitable age and discretion who resides there;

(4) Transmission by first class mail. When service is by mail the date of mailing will be regarded as the date of service;

(5) Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the Official Gazette.

(b) Papers filed in the Patent and Trademark Office which are required to be served shall contain proof of service. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to papers filed. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service, proof of service shall also include the name of any person served, certified by the person who made service. Proof of service may be made by: (1) An acknowledgement of service by or on behalf of the person served or (2) a statement signed by the attorney or agent containing the information required by this section.

(c) See § 1.646 for service of papers in interferences.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29184, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.251 Unlocatable file.

(a) In the event that the Office cannot locate the file of an application, patent, or other patent-related proceeding after a reasonable search, the Office will notify the applicant or patentee and set a time period within which the applicant or patentee must comply with the notice in accordance with one of paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(2), or (a)(3) of this section.

(1) Applicant or patentee may comply with a notice under this section by providing:

(i) A copy of the applicant's or patentee's record (if any) of all of the correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding (except for U.S. patent documents);

(ii) A list of such correspondence; and

(iii) A statement that the copy is a complete and accurate copy of the applicant's or patentee's record of all of the correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding (except for U.S. patent documents), and whether applicant or patentee is aware of any correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding that is not among applicant's or patentee's records.

(2) Applicant or patentee may comply with a notice under this section by:

(i) Producing the applicant's or patentee's record (if any) of all of the correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding for the Office to copy (except for U.S. patent documents); and

(ii) Providing a statement that the papers produced by applicant or patentee are applicant's or patentee's complete record of all of the correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding (except for U.S. patent documents), and whether applicant or patentee is aware of any correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding that is not among applicant's or patentee's records.

(3) If applicant or patentee does not possess any record of the correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding, applicant or patentee must comply with a notice under this section by providing a statement that applicant or patentee does not possess any record of the correspondence between the Office and the applicant or patentee for such application, patent, or other proceeding.

(b) With regard to a pending application, failure to comply with one of paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(2), or (a)(3) of this section within the time period set in the notice will result in abandonment of the application.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 69446, 69451, Nov. 17, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 69446, 69451, Nov. 17, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 17, 2000.]

PROTESTS AND PUBLIC USE PROCEEDINGS

§ 1.291 Protests by the public against pending applications.

(a) Protests by a member of the public against pending applications will be referred to the examiner having charge of the subject matter involved. A protest specifically identifying the application to which the protest is directed will be entered in the application file if:

(1) The protest is submitted prior to the date the application was published or the mailing of a notice of allowance under § 1.311, whichever occurs first; and

(2) The protest is either served upon the applicant in accordance with § 1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible.

(b) Protests raising fraud or other inequitable conduct issues will be entered in the application file, generally without comment on those issues. Protests which do not adequately identify a pending patent application will be returned to the protestor and will not be further considered by the Office. A protest submitted in accordance with the second sentence of paragraph (a) of this section will be considered by the Office if the application is still pending when the protest and application file are brought before the examiner and it includes:

(1) A listing of the patents, publications, or other information relied upon;

(2) A concise explanation of the relevance of each listed item;

(3) A copy of each listed patent or publication or other item of information in written form or at least the pertinent portions thereof; and

(4) An English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent, publication, or other item of information in written form relied upon.

(c) A member of the public filing a protest in an application under paragraph (a) of this section will not receive any communications from the Office relating to the protest, other than the return of a self-addressed postcard which the member of the public may include with the protest in order to receive an acknowledgment by the Office that the protest has been received. In the absence of a request by the Office, an applicant has no duty to, and need not, reply to a protest. The limited involvement of the member of the public filing a protest pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section ends with the filing of the protest, and no further submission on behalf of the protestor will be considered, except for additional prior art, or unless such submission raises new issues which could not have been earlier presented.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, as amended at 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 61 FR 42790, 42806, Aug. 19, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (a)(1), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.292 Public use proceedings.

(a) When a petition for the institution of public use proceedings, supported by affidavits or declarations is found, on reference to the examiner, to make a prima facie showing that the invention claimed in an application believed to be on file had been in public use or on sale more than one year before the filing of the application, a hearing may be had before the Commissioner to determine whether a public use proceeding should be instituted. If instituted, the Commissioner may designate an appropriate official to conduct the public use proceeding, including the setting of times for taking testimony, which shall be taken as provided by § § 1.671 through 1.685. The petitioner will be heard in the proceedings but after decision therein will not be heard further in the prosecution of the application for patent.

(b) The petition and accompanying papers, or a notice that such a petition has been filed, shall be entered in the application file if:

(1) The petition is accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(j);

(2) The petition is served on the applicant in accordance with § 1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible; and

(3) The petition is submitted prior to the date the application was published or the mailing of a notice of allowance under § 1.311, whichever occurs first.

(c) A petition for institution of public use proceedings shall not be filed by a party to an interference as to an application involved in the interference. Public use and on sale issues in an interference shall be raised by a preliminary motion under § 1.633(a).

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 61 FR 42790, 42806, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (b)(3), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.293 Statutory invention registration.

(a) An applicant for an original patent may request, at any time during the pendency of applicant's pending complete application, that the specification and drawings be published as a statutory invention registration. Any such request must be signed by (1) the applicant and any assignee of record or (2) an attorney or agent of record in the application.

(b) Any request for publication of a statutory invention registration must include the following parts:

(1) A waiver of the applicant's right to receive a patent on the invention claimed effective upon the date of publication of the statutory invention registration;

(2) The required fee for filing a request for publication of a statutory invention registration as provided for in § 1.17 (n) or (o);

(3) A statement that, in the opinion of the requester, the application to which the request is directed meets the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112; and

(4) A statement that, in the opinion of the requester, the application to which the request is directed complies with the formal requirements of this part for printing as a patent.

(c) A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will be effective, upon publication of the statutory invention registration, to waive the inventor's right to receive a patent on the invention claimed in the statutory invention registration, in any application for an original patent which is pending on, or filed after, the date of publication of the statutory invention registration. A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will not affect the rights of any other inventor even if the subject matter of the statutory invention registration and an application of another inventor are commonly owned. A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will not affect any rights in a patent to the inventor which issued prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration unless a reissue application is filed seeking to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent. See also § 1.104(c)(5).

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0018)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9382, March 7, 1985; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (c), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.294 Examination of request for publication of a statutory invention registration and patent application to which the request is directed.

(a) Any request for a statutory invention registration will be examined to determine if the requirements of § 1.293 have been met. The application to which the request is directed will be examined to determine (1) if the subject matter of the application is appropriate for publication, (2) if the requirements for publication are met, and (3) if the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and § 1.293 of this part are met.

(b) Applicant will be notified of the results of the examination set forth in paragraph (a) of this section. If the requirements of § 1.293 and this section are not met by the request filed, the notification to applicant will set a period of time within which to comply with the requirements in order to avoid abandonment of the application. If the application does not meet the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, the notification to applicant will include a rejection under the appropriate provisions of 35 U.S.C. 112. The periods for reply established pursuant to this section are subject to the extension of time provisions of § 1.136. After reply by the applicant, the application will again be considered for publication of a statutory invention registration. If the requirements of § 1.293 and this section are not timely met, the refusal to publish will be made final. If the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 are not met, the rejection pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 will be made final.

(c) If the examination pursuant to this section results in approval of the request for a statutory invention registration the applicant will be notified of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9382, March 7, 1985; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (b), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.

(a) Any requester who is dissatisfied with the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112 may obtain review of the refusal to publish the statutory invention registration by filing a petition to the Commissioner accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) within one month or such other time as is set in the decision refusing publication. Any such petition should comply with the requirements of § 1.181(b). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112 is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any requester who is dissatisfied with a decision finally rejecting claims pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 may obtain review of the decision by filing an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.191. If the decision rejecting claims pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 is reversed, the request for a statutory invention registration will be approved and the registration published if all of the other provisions of § 1.293 and this section are met.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0018)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985]

§ 1.296 Withdrawal of request for publication of statutory invention registration.

A request for a statutory invention registration, which has been filed, may be withdrawn prior to the date of the notice of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration issued pursuant to § 1.294(c) by filing a request to withdraw the request for publication of a statutory invention registration. The request to withdraw may also include a request for a refund of any amount paid in excess of the application filing fee and a handling fee of $ 130.00 which will be retained. Any request to withdraw the request for publication of a statutory invention registration filed on or after the date of the notice of intent to publish issued pursuant to § 1.294(c) must be in the form of a petition pursuant to § 1.183 accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991]

§ 1.297 Publication of statutory invention registration.

(a) If the request for a statutory invention registration is approved the statutory invention registration will be published. The statutory invention registration will be mailed to the requester at the correspondence address as provided for in § 1.33(a). A notice of the publication of each statutory invention registration will be published in the Official Gazette.

(b) Each statutory invention registration published will include a statement relating to the attributes of a statutory invention registration. The statement will read as follows:

A statutory invention registration is not a patent. It has the defensive attributes of a patent but does not have the enforceable attributes of a patent. No article or advertisement or the like may use the term patent, or any term suggestive of a patent, when referring to a statutory invention registration. For more specific information on the rights associated with a statutory invention registration see 35 U.S.C. 157.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985]

REVIEW OF PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE DECISIONS BY COURT

§ 1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in any ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510, dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party to an interference dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal: In the U. S. Patent and Trademark Office, file a written notice of appeal directed to the Commissioner (see § § 1.302 and 1.304); and in the Court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal as provided by the rules of the Court. For inter partes reexamination proceedings filed under § 1.913, § 1.983 is controlling.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.302 Notice of appeal.

(a) When an appeal is taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the appellant shall give notice thereof to the Commissioner within the time specified in § 1.304.

(b) In interferences, the notice must be served as provided in § 1.646.

(c) A notice of appeal, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 16414, May 9, 1988]

§ 1.303 Civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145, 146, 306.

(a) Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in an ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510 for a patent that issues from an original application filed in the United States before November 29, 1999, dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party to an interference dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may, instead of appealing to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§ 1.301), have remedy by civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146, as appropriate. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in § 1.304.

(b) If an applicant in an ex parte case or an owner of a patent involved in an ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510 for a patent that issues from an original application filed in the United States before November 29, 1999, has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, he or she thereby waives his or her right to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(c) If any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an interference proceeding files notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party's notice of appeal to the court (§ 1.302), that he or she elects to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in 35 U.S.C. 146, the notice of election must be served as provided in § 1.646.

(d) For an ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510 for a patent that issues from an original application filed in the United States on or after November 29, 1999, and for an inter partes reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.913, no remedy by civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 is available.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraphs (a), and (b), and added paragraph (d), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

(a)(1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§ 1.302) or for commencing a civil action (§ 1.303) is two months from the date of the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. If a request for rehearing or reconsideration of the decision is filed within the time period provided under § 1.197(b), § 1.658(b), or § 1.979(a), the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In interferences the time for filing a cross-appeal or cross-action expires:

(i) Fourteen days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint; or

(ii) Two months after the date of decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, whichever is later.

(2) The time periods set forth in this section are not subject to the provisions of § 1.136, § 1.550(c), § 1.956, or § 1.645(a) or (b).

(3) The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action:

(i) For good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action, or

(ii) Upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.

(b) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The times specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of the time specified for appeal or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither a Saturday, Sunday nor a Federal holiday.

(c) If a defeated party to an interference has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under 35 U.S.C. 141 electing to have all further proceedings conducted under 35 U.S.C. 146 (§ 1.303(c)), the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in 35 U.S.C. 141. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the summons and complaint.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct, 22, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE OF PATENT

§ 1.311 Notice of allowance.

a) If, on examination, it appears that the applicant is entitled to a patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to the applicant at the correspondence address indicated in § 1.33. The notice of allowance shall specify a sum constituting the issue fee which must be paid within three months from the date of mailing of the notice of allowance to avoid abandonment of the application. The sum specified in the notice of allowance may also include the publication fee, in which case the issue fee and publication fee (§ 1.211(e)) must both be paid within three months from the date of mailing of the notice of allowance to avoid abandonment of the application. This three-month period is not extendable.

(b) An authorization to charge the issue or other post-allowance fees set forth in § 1.18 to a deposit account may be filed in an individual application only after mailing of the notice of allowance. The submission of either of the following after the mailing of a notice of allowance will operate as a request to charge the correct issue fee to any deposit account identified in a previously filed authorization to charge fees:

(1) An incorrect issue fee; or

(2) A completed Office-provided issue fee transmittal form (where no issue fee has been submitted).

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41279, Sept. 17, 1982; 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000; 66 FR 67087, 67096, Dec. 28, 2001]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54676, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.312 Amendments after allowance.

No amendment may be made as a matter of right in an application after the mailing of the notice of allowance. Any amendment filed pursuant to this section must be filed before or with the payment of the issue fee, and may be entered on the recommendation of the primary examiner, approved by the Commissioner, without withdrawing the application from issue.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982; 58 FR 54510, Oct, 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective May 29, 2000.]

§ 1.313 Withdrawal from issue.

(a) Applications may be withdrawn from issue for further action at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. To request that the Office withdraw an application from issue, applicant must file a petition under this section including the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why withdrawal of the application from issue is necessary. A petition under this section is not required if a request for continued examination under § 1.114 is filed prior to payment of the issue fee. If the Office withdraws the application from issue, the Office will issue a new notice of allowance if the Office again allows the application.

(b) Once the issue fee has been paid, the Office will not withdraw the application from issue at its own initiative for any reason except:

(1) A mistake on the part of the Office;

(2) A violation of § 1.56 or illegality in the application;

(3) Unpatentability of one or more claims; or

(4) For interference.

(c) Once the issue fee has been paid, the application will not be withdrawn from issue upon petition by the applicant for any reason except:

(1) Unpatentability of one of more claims, which petition must be accompanied by an unequivocal statement that one or more claims are unpatentable, an amendment to such claim or claims, and an explanation as to how the amendment causes such claim or claims to be patentable;

(2) Consideration of a request for continued examination in compliance with § 1.114; or

(3) Express abandonment of the application. Such express abandonment may be in favor of a continuing application.

(d) A petition under this section will not be effective to withdraw the application from issue unless it is actually received and granted by the appropriate officials before the date of issue. Withdrawal of an application from issue after payment of the issue fee may not be effective to avoid publication of application information.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982; as amended at 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 54 FR 9432, Mar. 7, 1989; 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995; 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000; 65 FR 50092, 50105, Aug. 16, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 14865, 14873, Mar. 20, 2000, revised this section, effective May 29, 2000; 65 FR 50092, 50105, Aug. 16, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) and (c)(2), effective Aug. 16, 2000.]

§ 1.314 Issuance of patent.

If applicant timely pays the issue fee, the Office will issue the patent in regular course unless the application is withdrawn from issue (§ 1.313) or the Office defers issuance of the patent. To request that the Office defer issuance of a patent, applicant must file a petition under this section including the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why it is necessary to defer issuance of the patent.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.315 Delivery of patent.

The patent will be delivered or mailed upon issuance to the correspondence address of record. See § 1.33(a).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 61 FR 42790, 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 42790, 42807, Aug. 19, 1996, which revised this section, became effective Sept. 23, 1996.]

§ 1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.

If the issue fee is not paid within three months from the date of the notice of allowance, the application will be regarded as abandoned. Such an abandoned application will not be considered as pending before the Patent and Trademark Office.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982; 58 FR 44281, Aug. 20, 1993; 60 FR 20228, April 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.

If the issue fee paid is the amount specified in the notice of allowance, but a higher amount is required at the time the issue fee is paid, any remaining balance of the issue fee is to be paid within three months from the date of notice thereof and, if not paid, the patent will lapse at the termination of the three-month period.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982; 58 FR 44281, Aug. 20, 1993; 60 FR 20228, April 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53198, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.318 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

DISCLAIMER

§ 1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

(a) A patentee owning the whole or any sectional interest in a patent may disclaim any complete claim or claims in a patent. In like manner any patentee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of the patent granted. Such disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. A notice of the disclaimer is published in the Official Gazette and attached to the printed copies of the specification. The disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

(1) Be signed by the patentee, or an attorney or agent of record;

(2) Identify the patent and complete claim or claims, or term being disclaimed. A disclaimer which is not a disclaimer of a complete claim or claims, or term will be refused recordation;

(3) State the present extent of patentee's ownership interest in the patent; and

(4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.20(d).

(b) An applicant or assignee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of a patent to be granted. Such terminal disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. The terminal disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

(1) Be signed:

(i) By the applicant, or

(ii) If there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest, by the applicant and such assignee, or

(iii) If there is an assignee of record of the entire interest, by such assignee, or

(iv) By an attorney or agent of record;

(2) Specify the portion of the term of the patent being disclaimed;

(3) State the present extent of applicant's or assignee's ownership interest in the patent to be granted; and

(4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.20(d).

(c) A terminal disclaimer, when filed to obviate a judicially created double patenting rejection in a patent application or in a reexamination proceeding, must:

(1) Comply with the provisions of paragraphs (b)(2) through (b)(4) of this section;

(2) Be signed in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section if filed in a patent application or in accordance with paragraph (a)(1) of this section if filed in a reexamination proceeding; and

(3) Include a provision that any patent granted on that application or any patent subject to the reexamination proceeding shall be enforceable only for and during such period that said patent is commonly owned with the application or patent which formed the basis for the rejection.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 41281, Sept. 17, 1982; 58 FR 54510, Oct, 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 61 FR 42790, 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 42790, 42807, Aug. 19, 1996, which revised paragraph (c), became effective Sept. 23, 1996.]

CORRECTION OF ERRORS IN PATENT

§ 1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.

(a)(1) The Commissioner may issue a certificate of correction pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 254 to correct a mistake in a patent, incurred through the fault of the Office, which mistake is clearly disclosed in the records of the Office:

(i) At the request of the patentee or the patentee's assignee;

(ii) Acting sua sponte for mistakes that the Office discovers; or

(iii) Acting on information about a mistake supplied by a third party.

(2)(i) There is no obligation on the Office to act on or respond to a submission of information or request to issue a certificate of correction by a third party under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section.

(ii) Papers submitted by a third party under this section will not be made of record in the file that they relate to nor be retained by the Office.

(3) If the request relates to a patent involved in an interference, the request must comply with the requirements of this section and be accompanied by a motion under § 1.635.

(4) The Office will not issue a certificate of correction under this section without first notifying the patentee (including any assignee of record) at the correspondence address of record as specified in § 1.33(a) and affording the patentee or an assignee an opportunity to be heard.

(b) If the nature of the mistake on the part of the Office is such that a certificate of correction is deemed inappropriate in form, the Commissioner may issue a corrected patent in lieu thereof as a more appropriate form for certificate of correction, without expense to the patentee.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 254)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant's mistake.

The Office may issue a certificate of correction under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 255 at the request of the patentee or the patentee's assignee, upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.20(a). If the request relates to a patent involved in an interference, the request must comply with the requirements of this section and be accompanied by a motion under § 1.635.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 256.

(a) Whenever through error a person is named in an issued patent as the inventor, or through error an inventor is not named in an issued patent and such error arose without any deceptive intention on his or her part, the Commissioner may, on petition, or on order of a court before which such matter is called in question, issue a certificate naming only the actual inventor or inventors. A petition to correct inventorship of a patent involved in an interference must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634.

(b) Any petition pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must be accompanied by:

(1) Where one or more persons are being added, a statement from each person who is being added as an inventor that the inventorship error occurred without any deceptive intention on his or her part;

(2) A statement from the current named inventors who have not submitted a statement under paragraph (b)(1) of this section either agreeing to the change of inventorship or stating that they have no disagreement in regard to the requested change;

(3) A statement from all assignees of the parties submitting a statement under paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section agreeing to the change of inventorship in the patent, which statement must comply with the requirements of § 3.73(b) of this chapter; and

(4) The fee set forth in § 1.20(b).

(c) For correction of inventorship in an application see § § 1.48 and 1.497, and in an interference see § 1.634.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985; 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

Mistakes other than those provided for in § § 1.322, 1.323, 1.324, and not affording legal grounds for reissue or for reexamination, will not be corrected after the date of the patent.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

ARBITRATION AWARDS

§ 1.331--1.334 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

(a) Written notice of any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office by the patentee, or the patentee's assignee or licensee. If the award involves more than one patent a separate notice must be filed for placement in the file of each patent. The notice must set forth the patent number, the names of the inventor and patent owner, and the names and addresses of the parties to the arbitration. The notice must also include a copy of the award.

(b) If an award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 is modified by a court, the party requesting the modification must file in the Patent and Trademark Office, a notice of the modification for placement in the file of each patent to which the modification applies. The notice must set forth the patent number, the names of the inventor and patent owner, and the names and addresses of the parties to the arbitration. The notice must also include a copy of the court's order modifying the award.

(c) Any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 shall be unenforceable until any notices required by paragraph (a) or (b) of this section are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. If any required notice is not filed by the party designated in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, any party to the arbitration proceeding may file such a notice.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

AMENDMENT OF RULES

§ 1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.

All amendments to the regulations in this part will be published in the Official Gazette and in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

MAINTENANCE FEES

§ 1.352 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.

(a) Maintenance fees as set forth in § § 1.20 (e) through (g) are required to be paid in all patents based on applications filed on or after December 12, 1980, except as noted in paragraph (b) of this section, to maintain a patent in force beyond 4, 8 and 12 years after the date of grant.

(b) Maintenance fees are not required for any plant patents or for any design patents. Maintenance fees are not required for a reissue patent if the patent being reissued did not require maintenance fees.

(c) The application filing dates for purposes of payment of maintenance fees are as follows:

(1) For an application not claiming benefit of an earlier application, the actual United States filing date of the application.

(2) For an application claiming benefit of an earlier foreign application under 35 U.S.C. 119, the United States filing date of the application.

(3) For a continuing (continuation, division, continuation-in-part) application claiming the benefit of a prior patent application under 35 U.S.C. 120, the actual United States filing date of the continuing application.

(4) For a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application claiming the benefit of a reissue application under 35 U.S.C. 120, United States filing date of the original non-reissue application on which the patent reissued is based.

(5) For an international application which has entered the United States as a Designated Office under 35 U.S.C. 371, the international filing date granted under Article 11(1) of the Patent Cooperation Treaty which is considered to be the United States filing date under 35 U.S.C. 363.

(d) Maintenance fees may be paid in patents without surcharge during the periods extending respectively from:

(1) 3 years through 3 years and 6 months after grant for the first maintenance fee,

(2) 7 years through 7 years and 6 months after grant for the second maintenance fee, and

(3) 11 years through 11 years and 6 months after grant for the third maintenance fee.

(e) Maintenance fees may be paid with the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(h) during the respective grace periods after:

(1) 3 years and 6 months and through the day of the 4th anniversary of the grant for the first maintenance fee.

(2) 7 years and 6 months and through the day of the 8th anniversary of the grant for the second maintenance fee, and

(3) 11 years and 6 months and through the day of the 12th anniversary of the grant for the third maintenance fee.

(f) If the last day for paying a maintenance fee without surcharge set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, or the last day for paying a maintenance fee with surcharge set forth in paragraph (e) of this section, falls on a Saturday, Sunday,

or a federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge may be paid under paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) respectively on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or federal holiday.

(g) Unless the maintenance fee and any applicable surcharge is paid within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (d), (e) or (f) of this section, the patent will expire as of the end of the grace period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section. A patent which expires for the failure to pay the maintenance fee will expire at the end of the same date (anniversary date) the patent was granted in the 4th, 8th, or 12th year after grant.

(h) The periods specified in § § 1.362 (d) and (e) with respect to a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application thereof, are counted from the date of grant of the original non-reissue application on which the reissued patent is based.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991; 58 FR 54511, Oct, 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993]

§ 1.363 Fee address for maintenance fee purposes.

(a) All notices, receipts, refunds, and other communications relating to payment or refund of maintenance fees will be directed to the correspondence address used during prosecution of the application as indicated in § 1.33(a) unless:

(1) A fee address for purposes of payment of maintenance fees is set forth when submitting the issue fee, or

(2) A change in the correspondence address for all purposes is filed after payment of the issue fee, or

(3) A fee address or a change in the "fee address" is filed for purposes of receiving notices, receipts and other correspondence relating to the payment of maintenance fees after the payment of the issue fee, in which instance, the latest such address will be used.

(b) An assignment of a patent application or patent does not result in a change of the "correspondence address" or "fee address" for maintenance fee purposes.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984]

§ 1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.

(a) The patentee may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, or any person or organization may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of a patentee. Authorization by the patentee need not be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office to pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of the patentee.

(b) A maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge submitted for a patent must be submitted in the amount due on the date the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge are paid. A maintenance fee or surcharge may be paid in the manner set forth in § 1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account established pursuant to § 1.25. Payment of a maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge or the authorization to charge a deposit account must be submitted within the periods set forth in § 1.362 (d), (e), or (f). Any payment or authorization of maintenance fees and surcharges

filed at any other time will not be accepted and will not serve as a payment of the maintenance fee except insofar as a delayed payment of the maintenance fee is accepted by the Commissioner in an expired patent pursuant to a petition filed under § 1.378. Any authorization to charge a deposit account must authorize the immediate charging of the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge to the deposit account. Payment of less than the required amount, payment in a manner other than that set forth § 1.23, or in the filing of an authorization to charge a deposit account having insufficient funds will not constitute payment of a maintenance fee or surcharge on a patent. The procedures set forth in § 1.8 or § 1.10 may be utilized in paying maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges.

(c) In submitting maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, identification of the patents for which maintenance fees are being paid must include the patent number, and the application number of the United States application for the patent on which the maintenance fee is being paid. If the payment includes identification of only the patent number (i.e., does not identify the application number of the United States application for the patent on which the maintenance fee is being paid), the Office may apply the payment to the patent identified by patent number in the payment or may return the payment.

(d) Payment of maintenance fees and any surcharges should identify the fee being paid for each patent as to whether it is the 3 1/2 -, 7 1/2 -, or 11 1/2 -year fee, whether small entity status is being changed or claimed, the amount of the maintenance fee and any surcharge being paid, and any assigned customer number. If the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge is being paid on a reissue patent, the payment must identify the reissue patent by reissue patent number and reissue application number as required by paragraph (c) of this section and should also include the original patent number.

(e) Maintenance fee payments and surcharge payments relating thereto must be submitted separate from any other payments for fees or charges, whether submitted in the manner set forth in § 1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account. If maintenance fee and surcharge payments for more than one patent are submitted together, they should be submitted on as few sheets as possible with the patent numbers listed in increasing patent number order. If the payment submitted is insufficient to cover the maintenance fees and surcharges for all the listed patents, the payment will be applied in the order the patents are listed, beginning at the top of the listing.

(f) Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in a patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate. See § 1.27(g).

(g) Maintenance fees and surcharges relating thereto will not be refunded except in accordance with § § 1.26 and 1.28(a).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (c), effective Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraph (f), effective Dec. 18, 2000.]

§ 1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent.

(a) Any patentee who is dissatisfied with the refusal of the Patent and Trademark Office to accept and record a maintenance fee which was filed prior to the expiration of the patent may petition the Commissioner to accept and record the maintenance fee.

(b) Any petition under this section must be filed within 2 months of the action complained of, or within such other time as may be set in the action complained of, and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) Any petition filed under this section must comply with the requirements of § 1.181(b) and must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (c), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

(a) The Commissioner may accept the payment of any maintenance fee due on a patent after expiration of the patent if, upon petition, the delay in payment of the maintenance fee is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been unavoidable (paragraph (b) of this section) or unintentional (paragraph (c) of this section) and if the surcharge required by § 1.20(i) is paid as a condition of accepting payment of the maintenance fee. If the Commissioner accepts payment of the maintenance fee upon petition, the patent shall be considered as not having expired, but will be subject to the conditions set forth in 35 U.S.C. 41(c)(2).

(b) Any petition to accept an unavoidably delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must include:

(1) The required maintenance fee set forth in § 1.20 (e) through (g);

(2) The surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i)(1); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable since reasonable care was taken to ensure that the maintenance fee would be paid timely and that the petition was filed promptly after the patentee was notified of, or otherwise became aware of, the expiration of the patent. The showing must enumerate the steps taken to ensure timely payment of the maintenance fee, the date and the manner in which patentee became aware of the expiration of the patent, and the steps taken to file the petition promptly.

(c) Any petition to accept an unintentionally delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must be filed within twenty-four months after the six-month grace period provided in § 1.362(e) and must include:

(1) The required maintenance fee set forth in § 1.20 (e) through (g);

(2) The surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i)(2); and

(3) A statement that the delay in payment of the maintenance fee was unintentional.

(d) Any petition under this section must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest.

(e) Reconsideration of a decision refusing to accept a maintenance fee upon petition filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section may be obtained by filing a petition for reconsideration within two months of, or such other time as set in, the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment of the maintenance fee. Any such petition for reconsideration must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h). After decision on the petition for reconsideration, no further reconsideration or review of the matter will be undertaken by the Commissioner. If the delayed payment of the maintenance fee is not accepted, the maintenance fee and the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i) will be refunded following the decision on the petition for reconsideration, or after the expiration of the time for filing such a petition for

reconsideration, if none is filed. Any petition fee under this section will not be refunded unless the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 34726, Aug. 31, 1984, as amended at 50 FR 9383, March 7, 1985; 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991; 57 FR 56450, Nov. 30, 1992; 58 FR 44282, Aug. 20, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (d), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

## SUBPART C --INTERNATIONAL PROCESSING PROVISIONS
## GENERAL INFORMATION

### § 1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(a) The abbreviation PCT and the term Treaty mean the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(b) International Bureau means the World Intellectual Property Organization located in Geneva, Switzerland.

(c) Administrative Instructions means that body of instructions for operating under the Patent Cooperation Treaty referred to in PCT Rule 89.

(d) Request, when capitalized, means that element of the international application described in PCT Rules 3 and 4.

(e) International application, as used in this subchapter is defined in § 1.9(b).

(f) Priority date for the purpose of computing time limits under the Patent Cooperation Treaty is defined in PCT Art. 2 (xi). Note also § 1.465.

(g) Demand, when capitalized, means that document filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority which requests an international preliminary examination.

(h) Annexes means amendments made to the claims, description or the drawings before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(i) Other terms and expressions in this Subpart C not defined in this section are to be taken in the sense indicated in PCT Art. 2 and 35 U.S.C. 351.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

### § 1.412 The United States Receiving Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office is a Receiving Office only for applicants who are residents or nationals of the United States of America.

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Receiving Office, will be identified by the full title "United States Receiving Office" or by the abbreviation "RO/US."

(c) The major functions of the Receiving Office include:

(1) According of international filing dates to international applications meeting the requirements of PCT Art. 11(1), and PCT Rule 20;

(2) Assuring that international applications meet the standards for format and content of PCT Art. 14(1), PCT Rule 9, 26, 29.1, 37, 38, 91, and portions of PCT Rules 3 through 11;

(3) Collecting and, when required, transmitting fees due for processing international applications (PCT Rule 14, 15, 16);

(4) Transmitting the record and search copies to the International Bureau and International Searching Authority, respectively (PCT Rules 22 and 23); and

(5) Determining compliance with applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter.

(6) Reviewing and, unless prescriptions concerning national security prevent the application from being so transmitted (PCT Rule 19.4), transmitting the international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a Receiving Office:

(i) Where the United States Receiving Office is not the competent Receiving Office under PCT Rule 19.1 or 19.2 and § 1.421(a); or

(ii) Where the international application is not in English but is in a language accepted under PCT Rule 12.1(a) by the International Bureau as a Receiving Office; or

(iii) Where there is agreement and authorization in accordance with PCT Rule 19.4(a)(iii).

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 60 FR 21439, May 2, 1995; 63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (c)(6), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Searching Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau (PCT Art. 16(3)(b)).

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Searching Authority, will be identified by the full title "United States International Searching Authority" or by the abbreviation "ISA/US."

(c) The major functions of the International Searching Authority include:

(1) Approving or establishing the title and abstract;

(2) Considering the matter of unity of invention;

(3) Conducting international and international-type searches and preparing international and international-type search reports (PCT Art. 15, 17 and 18, and PCT Rules 25, 33 to 45 and 47); and

(4) Transmitting the international search report to the applicant and the International Bureau.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Office as a Designated Office or Elected Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as a Designated Office or Elected Office for international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected as a State in which patent protection is desired.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Designated Office or Elected Office during international processing will be identified by the full title "United States Designated Office" or by the abbreviation "DO/US" or by the full title "United States Elected Office" or by the abbreviation "EO/US".

(c) The major functions of the United States Designated Office or Elected Office in respect to international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected, include:

(1) Receiving various notifications throughout the international stage and

(2) Accepting for national stage examination international applications which satisfy the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

§ 1.415 The International Bureau.

(a) The International Bureau is the World Intellectual Property Organization located at Geneva, Switzerland. It is the international intergovernmental organization which acts as the coordinating body under the Treaty and the Regulations (PCT Art. 2 (xix) and 35 U.S.C. 351 (h)).

(b) The major functions of the International Bureau include:

(1) Publishing of international applications and the International Gazette;

(2) Transmitting copies of international applications to Designated Offices;

(3) Storing and maintaining record copies; and

(4) Transmitting information to authorities pertinent to the processing of specific international applications.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Preliminary Examining Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority, will be identified by the full title "United States International Preliminary Examining Authority" or by the abbreviation "IPEA/US."

(c) The major functions of the International Preliminary Examining Authority include:

(1) Receiving and checking for defects in the Demand;

(2) Forwarding Demands in accordance with PCT Rule 59.3;

(3) Collecting the handling fee for the International Bureau and the preliminary examination fee for the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority;

(4) Informing applicant of receipt of the Demand;

(5) Considering the matter of unity of invention;

(6) Providing an international preliminary examination report which is a non-binding opinion on the questions of whether the claimed invention appears: to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be nonobvious), and to be industrially applicable; and

(7) Transmitting the international preliminary examination report to applicant and the International Bureau.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; 63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (c), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.417 Submission of translation of international application.

The submission of the international publication or an English language translation of an international application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4) must clearly identify the international application to which it pertains (§ 1.5(a)) and, unless it is being submitted pursuant to § 1.495, be clearly identified as a submission pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4). Otherwise, the submission will be treated as a filing under 35 U.S.C. 111(a). Such submissions should be marked "Box PCT."

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, added this section, effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 1.419 Display of currently valid control number under the Paperwork Reduction Act.

(a) Pursuant to the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.), the collection of information in this subpart has been reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0021.

(b) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person is required to respond to nor shall a person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection of information subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act unless that collection of information displays a currently valid Office of Management and Budget control number. This section constitutes the display required by 44 U.S.C. 3512(a) and 5 CFR 1320.5(b)(2)(i) for the collection of information under Office of Management and Budget control number 0651-0021 (see 5 CFR 1320.5(b)(2)(ii)(D)).

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29617, June 1, 1998, added this section, effective July 1, 1998.]

WHO MAY FILE AN INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

§ 1.421 Applicant for international application.

(a) Only residents or nationals of the United States of America may file international applications in the United States Receiving Office. If an international application does not include an applicant who is indicated as being a resident or national of the United States of America, and at least one applicant:

(1) Has indicated a residence or nationality in a PCT Contracting State, or

(2) Has no residence or nationality indicated; applicant will be so notified and, if the international application includes a fee amount equivalent to that required by § 1.445(a)(5), the international application will be forwarded for processing to the International Bureau acting as a Receiving Office. (See also § 1.412(c)(6)).

(b) Although the United States Receiving Office will accept international applications filed by any resident or national of the United States of America for international processing, an international application designating the United States of America will be accepted by the Patent and Trademark Office for the national stage only if filed by the inventor or as provided in § § 1.422, 1.423 or § 1.425.

(c) International applications which do not designate the United States of America may be filed by the assignee or owner.

(d) The attorney or agent of the applicant may sign the international application Request and file the international application for the applicant if the international application when filed is accompanied by a separate power of attorney to that attorney or agent from the applicant. The separate power of attorney from the applicant may be submitted after filing if sufficient cause is shown for not submitting it at the time of filing. Note that paragraph (b) of this section requires that the applicant be the inventor if the United States of America is designated.

(e) Any indication of different applicants for the purpose of different Designated Offices must be shown on the Request portion of the international application.

(f) Changes in the person, name, or address of the applicant of an international application shall be made in accordance with PCT Rule 92bis.

(g) The wording of PCT Rule 92bis is as follows:

PCT Rule 92bis -- Recording of Changes in Certain Indications in the Request or the Demand

92bis Recording of Changes by the International Bureau

(a) The International Bureau shall, on the request of the applicant or the receiving Office, record changes in the following indications appearing in the request or demand:

(i) person name, residence, nationality or address of the applicant,

(ii) person, name or address of the agent, the common representative or the inventor.

(b) The International Bureau shall not record the requested change if the request for recording is received by it after the expiration:

(i) Of the time limit referred to in Article 22(1), where Article 39(1) is not applicable with respect to any Contracting State;

(ii) Of the time limit referred to in Article 39(1)(a), where Article 39(1) is applicable with respect to at least one Contracting State.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 60 FR 21440, May 2, 1995]

§ 1.422 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.424 Joint inventors.

Joint inventors must jointly file an international application which designates the United States of America; the signature of either of them alone, or less than the entire number will be insufficient for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in § 1.425.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.425 Filing by other than inventor.

Where an international application which designates the United States of America is filed and where one or more inventors refuse to sign the Request for the international application or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the Request need not be signed by such inventor if it is signed by another applicant. Such international application must be accompanied by a statement explaining to the satisfaction of the Commissioner the lack of the signature concerned.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

§ 1.431 International application requirements.

(a) An international application shall contain, as specified in the Treaty and the Regulations, a Request, a description, one or more claims, an abstract, and one or more drawings (where required). (PCT Art. 3(2) and section 207 of the Administrative Instructions.)

(b) An international filing date will be accorded by the United States Receiving Office, at the time to receipt of the international application, provided that:

(1) At least one applicant (§ 1.421) is a United States resident or national and the papers filed at the time of receipt of the international application so indicate (35 U.S.C. 361(a), PCT Art. 11(1)(i)).

(2) The international application is in the English language (35 U.S.C. 361(c), PCT Art. 11(1)(ii)).

(3) The international application contains at least the following elements (PCT Art. 11(1)(iii)):

(i) An indication that it is intended as an international application (PCT Rule 4.2);

(ii) The designation of at least one Contracting State of the International Patent Cooperation Union (§ 1.432);

(iii) The name of the applicant, as prescribed (note § § 1.421-1.424);

(iv) A part which on the face of it appears to be a description; and

(v) A part which on the face of it appears to be a claim.

(c) Payment of the basic portion of the international fee (PCT Rule 15.2) and the transmittal and search fees (§ 1.445) may be made in full at the time the international application papers required by paragraph (b) of this section are deposited or within one month thereafter. The basic, transmittal, and search fee payable is the basic, transmittal, and search fee in effect on the receipt date of the international application.

(1) If the basic, transmittal and search fees are not paid within one month from the date of receipt of the international application and prior to the sending of a notice of deficiency, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of:

(i) Fifty percent of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee; or

(ii) An amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis).

(2) The one-month time limit set pursuant to this paragraph to pay deficient fees may not be extended.

(d) If the payment needed to cover the transmittal fee, the basic fee, the search fee, one designation fee and the late payment fee pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is not timely made in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(e), the Receiving Office will declare the international application withdrawn under PCT Article 14(3)(a).

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985; 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; 58 FR 4344, Jan. 14, 1993; 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, revised paragraphs (c) and (d), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation and confirmation fees.

(a) The designation of States including an indication that applicant wishes to obtain a regional patent, where applicable, shall appear in the Request upon filing and must be indicated as set forth in PCT Rule 4.9 and section 115 of the Administrative Instructions. Applicant must specify at least one national or regional designation on filing of the international application for a filing date to be granted.

(b) If the fees necessary to cover all the national and regional designations specified in the Request are not paid by the applicant within one year from the priority date or within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient designation fees plus a late payment fee. The late payment fee shall be equal to the greater of fifty percent of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee, or an amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis). The one-month time limit set in the notification of deficient designation fees may not be extended. Failure to timely pay at least one designation fee will result in the withdrawal of the international application.

(1) The one designation fee must be paid:

(i) Within one year from the priority date;

(ii) Within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date; or

(iii) With the late payment fee defined in this paragraph within the time set in the notification of the deficient designation fees or in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(e).

(2) If after a notification of deficient designation fees the applicant makes timely payment, but the amount paid is not sufficient to cover the late payment fee and all designation fees, the Receiving Office will, after allocating payment for the basic, search, transmittal and late payment fees, allocate the amount paid in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(c) and withdraw the unpaid designations. The notification of deficient designation fees pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to § 1.431(c).

(c) The amount payable for the designation fee set forth in paragraph (b) is:

(1) The designation fee in effect on the filing date of the international application, if such fee is paid in full within one month from the date of receipt of the international application;

(2) The designation fee in effect on the date such fee is paid in full, if such fee is paid in full later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application but within one year from the priority date;

(3) The designation fee in effect on the date one year from the priority date, if the fee was due one year from the priority date, and such fee is paid in full later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application and later than one year from the priority date; or

(4) The designation fee in effect on the international filing date, if the fee was due one month from the international filing date and after one year from the priority date, and such fee is paid in full later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application and later than one year from the priority date.

(d) On filing the international application, in addition to specifying at least one national or regional designation under PCT Rule 4.9(a), applicant may also indicate under PCT Rule 4.9(b) that all other designations permitted under the Treaty are made.

(1) Indication of other designations permitted by the Treaty under PCT Rule 4.9(b) must be made in a statement on the Request that any designation made under this paragraph is subject to confirmation (PCT Rule 4.9(c)) not later than the expiration of 15 months from the priority date by:

(i) Filing a written notice with the United States Receiving Office specifying the national and/or regional designations being confirmed;

(ii) Paying the designation fee for each designation being confirmed; and

(iii) Paying the confirmation fee specified in § 1.445(a)(4).

(2) Unconfirmed designations will be considered withdrawn. If the amount submitted is not sufficient to cover the designation fee and the confirmation fee for each designation being confirmed, the Receiving Office will allocate the amount paid in accordance with any priority of designations specified by applicant. If applicant does not specify any priority of designations, the allocation of the amount paid will be made in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(c).

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 4344, Jan. 14, 1993; 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, amended this section, effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.433 Physical requirements of international application.

(a) The international application and each of the documents that may be referred to in the check list of the Request (PCT Rule 3.3(a)(ii)) shall be filed in one copy only.

(b) All sheets of the international application must be on A4 size paper (21.0 x 29.7 cm.).

(c) Other physical requirements for international applications are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and sections 201-207 of the Administrative Instructions.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.434 The request.

(a) The request shall be made on a standardized form (PCT Rules 3 and 4). Copies of printed Request forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed forms should be marked "Box PCT."

(b) The Check List portion of the Request form should indicate each document accompanying the international application on filing.

(c) All information, for example, addresses, names of States and dates, shall be indicated in the Request as required by PCT Rule 4 and Administrative Instructions 110 and 201.

(d) International applications which designate the United States of America:

(1) Shall include the name, address and signature of the inventor, except as provided by § § 1.421(d), 1.422, 1.423 and 1.425;

(2) A reference to any prior-filed national application or international application designating the United States of America, if the benefit of the filing date for the prior-filed application is to be claimed.

(3) May include in the Request a declaration of the inventors as provided for in PCT Rule 4.17(iv).

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001; 66 FR 67087, 67096, Dec. 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which revised paragraph (d), effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

§ 1.435 The description.

(a) The application must meet the requirements as to the content and form of the description set forth in PCT Rules 5, 9, 10, and 11 and sections 204 and 208 of the Administrative Instructions.

(b) In international applications designating the United States the description must contain upon filing an indication of the best mode contemplated by the inventor for carrying out the claimed invention.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.436 The claims.

The requirements as to the content and format of claims are set forth in PCT Art. 6 and PCT Rules 6, 9, 10 and 11 and shall be adhered to. The number of the claims shall be reasonable, considering the nature of the invention claimed.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.437 The drawings.

(a) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, when drawings are necessary for the understanding of the invention, or are mentioned in the description, they must be part of an international application as originally filed in the United States Receiving Office in order to maintain the international filing date during the national stage (PCT Art. 7).

(b) Drawings missing from the application upon filing will be accepted if such drawings are received within 30 days of the date of first receipt of the incomplete papers. If the missing drawings are received within the 30-day period, the international filing date shall be the date on which such drawings are received. If such drawings are not timely received, all references to drawings in the international application shall be considered non-existent (PCT Art. 14(2), Administrative Instruction 310).

(c) The physical requirements for drawings are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and shall be adhered to.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

§ 1.438 The abstract.

(a) Requirements as to the content and form of the abstract are set forth in PCT Rule 8, and shall be adhered to.

(b) Lack of an abstract upon filing of an international application will not affect the granting of a filing date. However, failure to furnish an abstract within one month from the date of the notification by the Receiving Office will result in the international application being declared withdrawn.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

FEES

§ 1.445 International application filing, processing and search fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international applications are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

(1) A transmittal fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 14) -- $ 240.00

(2) A search fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 16):

(i) Where a corresponding prior United States National application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) with the filing fee under § 1.16(a) has been filed -- 450.00

(ii) For all situations not provided for in paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section -- 700.00

(3) A supplemental search fee when required, per additional invention -- 210.00

(4) A confirmation fee (PCT Rule 96) equal to fifty percent of the sum of designation fees for the national and regional designations being confirmed (§ 1.432(d)).

(5) A fee equivalent to the transmittal fee in paragraph (a)(1) of this section for transmittal of an international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a Receiving Office (PCT Rule 19.4).

(b) The basic fee and designation fee portions of the international fee shall be prescribed in PCT Rule 15.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 54 FR 9432, Mar. 7, 1989; 56 FR 65154, Dec, 13, 1991; 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993; 59 FR 43741, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 21440, May 2, 1995; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39588, July 30, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997, revised paragraph (a), effective Oct. 1, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29618, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

(a) Money paid for international application fees, where paid by actual mistake or in excess, such as a payment not required by law or treaty and its regulations, may be refunded. A mere change of purpose after the payment of a fee will not entitle a party to a refund of such fee. The Office will not refund amounts of twenty-five dollars or less unless a refund is specifically requested and will not notify the payor of such amounts. If the payor or party requesting a refund does not provide the banking information necessary for making refunds by electronic funds transfer, the Office may use the banking information provided on the payment instrument to make any refund by electronic funds transfer.

(b) Any request for refund under paragraph (a) of this section must be filed within two years from the date the fee was paid. If the Office charges a deposit account by an amount other than an amount specifically indicated in an authorization under § 1.25(b), any request for refund based upon such charge must be filed within two years from the

date of the deposit account statement indicating such charge and include a copy of that deposit account statement. The time periods set forth in this paragraph are not extendable.

(c) Refund of the supplemental search fees will be made if such refund is determined to be warranted by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee acting under PCT Rule 40.2(c).

(d) The international and search fees will be refunded if no international filing date is accorded or if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the record copy to the International Bureau (PCT Rules 15.6 and 16.2). The search fee will be refunded if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the search copy to the International Searching Authority. The transmittal fee will not be refunded.

(e) The handling fee (§ 1.482(b)) will be refunded (PCT Rule 57.6) only if:

(1) The Demand is withdrawn before the Demand has been sent by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to the International Bureau, or

(2) The Demand is considered not to have been submitted (PCT Rule 54.4(a)).

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (a) and added paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

PRIORITY

§ 1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

(a) The claim for priority must, subject to paragraph (d) of this section, be made on the Request (PCT Rule 4.10) in a manner complying with sections 110 and 115 of the Administrative Instructions.

(b) Whenever the priority of an earlier United States national application or international application filed with the United States Receiving Office is claimed in an international application, the applicant may request in the Request or in a letter of transmittal accompanying the international application upon filing with the United States Receiving Office or in a separate letter filed in the United States Receiving Office not later than 16 months after the priority date, that the United States Patent and Trademark Office prepare a certified copy of the prior application for transmittal to the International Bureau (PCT Article 8 and PCT Rule 17). The fee for preparing a certified copy is set forth in § 1.19(b)(1).

(c) If a certified copy of the priority document is not submitted together with the international application on filing, or, if the priority application was filed in the United States and a request and appropriate payment for preparation of such a certified copy do not accompany the international application on filing or are not filed within 16 months of the priority date, the certified copy of the priority document must be furnished by the applicant to the International Bureau or to the United States Receiving Office within the time limit specified in PCT Rule 17.1(a).

(d) The applicant may correct or add a priority claim in accordance with PCT Rule 26bis.1.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985; 50 FR 11366, Mar. 21, 1985; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993; 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which revised paragraph (b), effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

REPRESENTATION

§ 1.455 Representation in international applications.

(a) Applicants of international applications may be represented by attorneys or agents registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office or by an applicant appointed as a common representative (PCT Art. 49, Rules 4.8 and 90 and § 10.10). If applicants have not appointed an attorney or agent or one of the applicants to represent them, and there is more than one applicant, the applicant first named in the request and who is entitled to file in the U.S. Receiving Office shall be considered to be the common representative of all the applicants. An attorney or agent having the right to practice before a national office with which an international application is filed and for which the United States is an International Searching Authority or International Preliminary Examining Authority may be appointed to represent the applicants in the international application before that authority. An attorney or agent may appoint an associate attorney or agent who shall also then be of record (PCT Rule 90.1(d)). The appointment of an attorney or agent, or of a common representative, revokes any earlier appointment unless otherwise indicated (PCT Rule 90.6 (b) and (c)).

(b) Appointment of an agent, attorney or common representative (PCT Rule 4.8) must be effected either in the Request form, signed by all applicants, or in a separate power of attorney submitted either to the United States Receiving Office or to the International Bureau.

(c) Powers of attorney and revocations thereof should be submitted to the United States Receiving Office until the issuance of the international search report.

(d) The addressee for correspondence will be as indicated in section 108 of the Administrative Instructions.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

§ 1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

(a) Transmittal of the record copy of the international application to the International Bureau shall be made by the United States Receiving Office or as provided by PCT Rule 19.4.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) No copy of an international application may be transmitted to the International Bureau, a foreign Designated Office, or other foreign authority by the United States Receiving Office or the applicant, unless the applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter have been satisfied.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985; 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1998.]

TIMING

§ 1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.

(a) For the purpose of computing time limits under the Treaty, the priority date shall be defined as in PCT Art. 2(xi).

(b) When a claimed priority date is corrected or added under PCT Rule 26bis.1(a), or withdrawn under PCT Rule 90bis.3, or considered not to have been made under PCT Rule 26bis.2, the priority date for the purposes of computing any non-expired time limits will be the date of the earliest valid remaining priority claim of the international application, or if none, the international filing date.

(c) When corrections under PCT Art. 11(2), Art. 14(2) or PCT Rule 20.2(a) (i) or (iii) are timely submitted, and the date of receipt of such corrections falls later than one year from the claimed priority date or dates, the Receiving Office shall proceed under PCT Rule 26bis.2.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, revised paragraphs (b) and (c), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

Delays in meeting time limits during international processing of international applications may only be excused as provided in PCT Rule 82. For delays in meeting time limits in a national application, see § 1.137.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978]

AMENDMENTS

§ 1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, all corrections submitted to the United States Receiving Office or United States International Searching Authority must be in English, in the form of replacement sheets in compliance with PCT Rules 10 and 11, and accompanied by a letter that draws attention to the differences between the replaced sheets and the replacement sheets. Replacement sheets are not required for the deletion of lines of text, the correction of simple typographical errors, and one addition or change of not more than five words per sheet. These changes may be stated in a letter and, if appropriate, the United States Receiving Office will make the deletion or transfer the correction to the international application, provided that such corrections do not adversely affect the clarity and direct reproducibility of the application (PCT Rule 26.4). Amendments that do not comply with PCT Rules 10 and 11.1 to 11.13 may not be entered.

(b) Amendments of claims submitted to the International Bureau shall be as prescribed by PCT Rule 46.

(c) Corrections or additions to the Request of any declarations under PCT Rule 4.17 should be submitted to the International Bureau as prescribed by PCT Rule 26ter.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which added paragraph (c), effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

§ 1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.

All requests for a change in person, name or address of applicants and inventor be sent to the United States Receiving Office until the time of issuance of the international search report. Thereafter requests for such changes should be submitted to the International Bureau.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978. Redesignated at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

UNITY OF INVENTION

§ 1.475 Unity of invention before the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority and during the national stage.

(a) An international and a national stage application shall relate to one invention only or to a group of inventions so linked as to form a single general inventive concept ("requirement of unity of invention"). Where a group of inventions is claimed in an application, the requirement of unity of invention shall be fulfilled only when there is a technical relationship among those inventions involving one or more of the same or corresponding special technical features. The expression "special technical features" shall mean those technical features that define a contribution which each of the claimed inventions, considered as a whole, makes over the prior art.

(b) An international or a national stage application containing claims to different categories of invention will be considered to have unity of invention if the claims are drawn only to one of the following combinations of categories:

(1) A product and a process specially adapted for the manufacture of said product; or

(2) A product and a process of use of said product; or

(3) A product, a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and a use of the said product; or

(4) A process and an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process; or

(5) A product, a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process.

(c) If an application contains claims to more or less than one of the combinations of categories of invention set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, unity of invention might not be present.

(d) If multiple products, processes of manufacture or uses are claimed, the first invention of the category first mentioned in the claims of the application and the first recited invention of each of the other categories related thereto will be considered as the main invention in the claims, see PCT Article 17(3)(a) and § 1.476(c).

(e) The determination whether a group of inventions is so linked as to form a single general inventive concept shall be made without regard to whether the inventions are claimed in separate claims or as alternatives within a single claim.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

§ 1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) Before establishing the international search report, the International Searching Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in § 1.475.

(b) If the International Searching Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it shall inform the applicant accordingly and invite the payment of additional fees (note § 1.445 and PCT Art. 17(3)(a) and PCT Rule 40). The applicant will be given a time period in accordance with PCT Rule 40.3 to pay the additional fees due.

(c) In the case of non-compliance with unity of invention and where no additional fees are paid, the international search will be performed on the invention first mentioned ("main invention") in the claims.

(d) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Searching Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978. Redesignated and amended at 52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§ 1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Searching Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international search report when forwarded to the Designated Offices, may notify the International Searching Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international search report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978. Redesignated and amended at 52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987]

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION

§ 1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.

(a) On the filing of a proper Demand in an application for which the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority is competent and for which the fees have been paid, the international application shall be the subject of an international preliminary examination. The preliminary examination fee (§ 1.482(a)(1)) and the handling fee (§ 1.482(b)) shall be due at the time of filing the Demand.

(b) The Demand shall be made on a standardized form. Copies of printed Demand forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed Demand forms should be marked "Box PCT".

(c) If the Demand is made prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date and the United States of America is elected, the provisions of § 1A1.495 shall apply rather than § 1.494.

(d) Withdrawal of a proper Demand prior to the start of the international preliminary examination will entitle applicant to a refund of the preliminary examination fee minus the amount of the transmittal fee set forth in § 1.445(a)(1).

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.481 Payment of international preliminary examination fees.

(a) The handling and preliminary examination fees shall be paid within the time period set in PCT Rule 57.3. The handling fee or preliminary examination fee payable is the handling fee or preliminary examination fee in effect on the

date of receipt of the Demand except under PCT Rule 59.3(a) where the fee payable is the fee in effect on the date of arrival of the Demand at the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(1) If the handling and preliminary fees are not paid within the time period set in PCT Rule 57.3, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of:

(i) Fifty percent of the amount of the deficient fees, but not exceeding an amount equal to double the handling fee; or

(ii) An amount equal to the handling fee (PCT Rule 58bis.2).

(2) The one-month time limit set in this paragraph to pay deficient fees may not be extended.

(b) If the payment needed to cover the handling and preliminary examination fees, pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, is not timely made in accordance with PCT Rule 58bis.1(d), the United States International Preliminary Examination Authority will declare the Demand to be considered as if it had not been submitted.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, added this section, effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.482 International preliminary examination fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international preliminary examination are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

(1) A preliminary examination fee is due on filing the Demand:

(i) Where an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority, a preliminary examination fee of _____ $ 490.00

(ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office, a preliminary examination fee of _____ $ 750.00

(2) An additional preliminary examination fee when required, per additional invention:

(i) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was the United States Patent and Trademark Office _____ 140.00

(ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office _____ $ 270.00

(b) The handling fee is due on filing the Demand.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987; 54 FR 6904, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991; 57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 59 FR 43741, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39588, July 30, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997]

(35 U.S.C. 6, 376)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997, revised paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii), and (a)(2)(ii), effective Oct. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.

(a) An international preliminary examination will be conducted to formulate a non-binding opinion as to whether the claimed invention has novelty, involves an inventive step (is non-obvious) and is industrially applicable.

(b) International preliminary examination will begin promptly upon receipt of a proper Demand in an application for which the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority is competent, for which the fees for international preliminary examination (§ 1.482) have been paid, and which requests examination based on the application as filed or as amended by an amendment which has been received by the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 19 amendment which has not been received, examination may begin at 20 months without receipt of the PCT Article 19 amendment. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 34 amendment which has not been received, applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to submit the amendment.

(1) Examination will begin after the earliest of:

(i) Receipt of the amendment;

(ii) Receipt of applicant's statement that no amendment will be made; or

(iii) Expiration of the time period set in the notification.

(2) No international preliminary examination report will be established prior to issuance of an international search report.

(c) No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(d) The International Preliminary Examining Authority will establish a written opinion if any defect exists or if the claimed invention lacks novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability and will set a non-extendable time limit in the written opinion for the applicant to reply.

(e) If no written opinion under paragraph (d) of this section is necessary, or after any written opinion and the reply thereto or the expiration of the time limit for reply to such written opinion, an international preliminary examination report will be established by the International Preliminary Examining Authority. One copy will be submitted to the International Bureau and one copy will be submitted to the applicant.

(f) An applicant will be permitted a personal or telephone interview with the examiner, which must be conducted during the non-extendable time limit for reply by the applicant to a written opinion. Additional interviews may be conducted where the examiner determines that such additional interviews may be helpful to advancing the international preliminary examination procedure. A summary of any such personal or telephone interview must be filed by the applicant as a part of the reply to the written opinion or, if applicant files no reply, be made of record in the file by the examiner.

(g) If the application whose priority is claimed in the international application is in a language other than English, the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority may, where the validity of the priority claim is relevant for the formulation of the opinion referred to in Article 33(1), invite the applicant to furnish an English translation of the priority document within two months from the date of the invitation. If the translation is not furnished within that time limit, the international preliminary examination report may be established as if the priority had not been claimed.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53199, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29619, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which added paragraph (g), effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

§ 1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.

(a) The applicant may make amendments at the time of filing the Demand. The applicant may also make amendments within the time limit set by the International Preliminary Examining Authority for reply to any notification under § 1.484(b) or to any written opinion. Any such amendments must:

(1) Be made by submitting a replacement sheet in compliance with PCT Rules 10 and 11.1 to 11.13 for every sheet of the application which differs from the sheet it replaces unless an entire sheet is cancelled; and

(2) Include a description of how the replacement sheet differs from the replaced sheet. Amendments that do not comply with PCT Rules 10 and 11.1 to 11.13 may not be entered.

(b) If an amendment cancels an entire sheet of the international application, that amendment shall be communicated in a letter.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29620, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29614, 29620, June 1, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Before establishing any written opinion or the international preliminary examination report, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in § 1.475.

(b) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it may:

(1) Issue a written opinion and/or an international preliminary examination report, in respect of the entire international application and indicate that unity of invention is lacking and specify the reasons therefor without extending an invitation to restrict or pay additional fees. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(2) Invite the applicant to restrict the claims or pay additional fees, pointing out the categories of invention found, within a set time limit which will not be extended. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority, or

(3) If applicant fails to restrict the claims or pay additional fees within the time limit set for reply, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will issue a written opinion and/or establish an international preliminary examination report on the main invention and shall indicate the relevant facts in the said report. In case of any doubt as to which invention is the main invention, the invention first mentioned in the claims and previously searched by an International Searching Authority shall be considered the main invention.

(c) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Preliminary Examining Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (b)(3), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Preliminary Examining Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both.

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international preliminary examination report when forwarded to the Elected Offices, may notify the International Preliminary Examining Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international preliminary examination report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987]

NATIONAL STAGE

§ 1.491 National Stage commencement and entry.

(a) Subject to 35 U.S.C. 371(f), the national stage shall commence with the expiration of the applicable time limit under PCT Article 22 (1) or (2), or under PCT Article 39(1)(a). (b) An international application enters the national stage when the applicant has filed the documents and fees required by 35 U.S.C. 371(c) within the period set in 1.495. 11. Section 1.492 is amended by revising paragraphs (e) and (f) to read as follows:

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987; 67 FR 520,523, Jan. 4, 2002]]

§ 1.492 National stage fees.

The following fees and charges are established for international applications entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371:

(a) The basic national fee:

(1) Where an international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 355.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 710.00 |

(2) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, but an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 370.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 740.00 |

(3) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid and no international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 520.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 1,040.00 |

(4) Where the international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office and the international preliminary examination report states that the criteria of novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness), and industrial applicability, as defined in PCT Article 33(1) to (4) have been satisfied for all the claims presented in the application entering the national stage (see § 1.496(b)):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 50.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 100.00 |

(5) Where a search report on the international application has been prepared by the European Patent Office or the Japanese Patent Office:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 445.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 890.00 |

(b) In addition to the basic national fee, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of 3:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 42.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 84.00 |

(c) In addition to the basic national fee, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes.):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 9.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 18.00 |

(d) In addition to the basic national fee, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 140.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 280.00 |

(e) Surcharge for filing the oath or declaration later than 20 months from the priority date pursuant to § 1.494(c) or later than 30 months from the priority date pursuant to § 1.495(c):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By a small entity (§ 1.27(a))-- | $ | 65.00 |
| By other than a small entity -- | $ | 130.00 |

(f) For filing an English translation of an international application later than 20 months after the priority date (Sec. 1.494(c)) or filing an English translation of the international application or of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report later than 30 months after the priority date (§ § 1.495 (c) and (e)) -- $ 130.00

(g) If the additional fees required by paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section are not paid on presentation of the claims for which the additional fees are due, they must be paid or the claims cancelled by amendment, prior to the expiration of the time period set for reply by the Office in any notice of fee deficiency.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991; as amended at 57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 59 FR 43742, Aug. 25, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 47082, Sept. 14, 1994; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39585, 39588, July 30, 1996; 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 39731, 39734, July 24, 1998, as corrected at 63 FR 46891, 46892, Sept. 3, 1998; 63 FR 52609, 52610, Oct. 1, 1998; 63 FR 67578, 67580, Dec. 1, 1998; 64 FR 67774, 67777, Dec. 3, 1999; 65 FR 49193, 49195, Aug. 11, 2000; 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39450, July 31, 2001; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 78958, 78960, Dec. 18, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) through (e), effective Dec. 18, 2000; 66 FR 39447, 39450, July 31, 2001, revised paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3), (a)(5), (b), and (d), effective Oct. 1, 2001.]

§ 1.494 [Removed and Reserved]

[Reserved]

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29620, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, as corrected at 66 FR 28053, 28054, May 22, 2001; 67 FR 520, 523, Jan. 4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (f), effective Nov. 29, 2000; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which revised paragraph (c)(2), effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

§ 1.495 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.

(a) The applicant in an international application must fulfill the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. The thirty-month time period set forth in paragraphs (b), (c), (d), (e) and (h) of this section may not be extended. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America. (b) To avoid abandonment of the application, the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of thirty months from the priority date: (1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and (2) The basic national fee (see § 1.492(a)). (c) If applicant complies with paragraph (b) of this section before expiration of thirty months from the priority date but omits either a translation of the international application, as filed, into the English language, if it was originally filed in another language (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)), or the oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) and 1.497), if a declaration of inventorship in compliance with 1.497 has not been previously submitted in the international application under PCT Rule 4.17(iv) within the time limits provided for in PCT Rule 26 ter.1, applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the translation and/or oath or declaration in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The payment of the processing fee set forth in 1.492(f) is required for acceptance of an English translation later than the expiration of thirty months after the priority date. The payment of the surcharge set forth in 1.492(e) is required for acceptance of the oath or declaration of the inventor later than the expiration of thirty months after the priority date. A "Sequence Listing" need not be translated if the "Sequence Listing" complies with PCT Rule 12.1(d) and the description complies with PCT Rule 5.2(b). (d) A copy of any amendments to the claims made under PCT Article 19, and a translation of those amendments into English, if they were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of thirty months from the priority date. Amendments under PCT Article 19 which are not received by the expiration of thirty months from the priority date will be considered to be canceled. (e) A translation into English of any annexes to an international preliminary examination report (if applicable), if the annexes were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of thirty months from the priority date. Translations of the annexes which are not received by the expiration of thirty months from the priority date may be submitted within any period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section accompanied by the processing fee set forth in 1.492(f). Annexes for which translations are not timely received will be considered canceled.

(f) Verification of the translation of the international application or any other document pertaining to an international application may be required where it is considered necessary, if the international application or other document was filed in a language other than English.

(g) The documents and fees submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section must, except for a copy of the international publication or translation of the international application that is identified as provided in § 1.417, be clearly identified as a submission to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371. Otherwise, the submission will be considered as being made under 35 U.S.C. 111(a).

(h) An international application becomes abandoned as to the United States thirty months from the priority date if the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section have not been complied with within thirty months from the priority date. If the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are complied with within thirty months from the priority date

but either of any required translation of the international application as filed or the oath or declaration are not timely filed, an international application will become abandoned as to the United States upon expiration of the time period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20051, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4347, Jan. 14, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 29614, 29620, June 1, 1998, as confirmed at 63 FR 66040, 66041, Dec. 1, 1998; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, as corrected at 66 FR 28053, 28054, May 22, 2001; 67 FR 520, 524, Jan. 4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (g), effective Nov. 29, 2000; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which revised paragraph (c)(2), effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

§ 1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.

(a) International applications which have complied with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371(c) will be taken up for action based on the date on which such requirements were met. However, unless an express request for early processing has been filed under 35 U.S.C. 371(f), no action may be taken prior to one month after entry into the national stage.

(b) A national stage application filed under 35 U.S.C. 371 may have paid therein the basic national fee as set forth in § 1.492(a)(4) if it contains, or is amended to contain, at the time of entry into the national stage, only claims which have been indicated in an international preliminary examination report prepared by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as satisfying the criteria of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) as to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability. Such national stage applications in which the basic national fee as set forth in § 1.492(a)(4) has been paid may be amended subsequent to the date of entry into the national stage only to the extent necessary to eliminate objections as to form or to cancel rejected claims. Such national stage applications in which the basic national fee as set forth in § 1.492(a)(4) has been paid will be taken up out of order.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20051, May 28, 1987]

§ 1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).

(a) When an applicant of an international application desires to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 pursuant to § 1.495, and a declaration in compliance with this section has not been previously submitted in the international application under PCT Rule 4.17(iv) within the time limits provided for in PCT Rule 26 ter.1, he or she must file an oath or declaration that:

(1) Is executed in accordance with either § § 1.66 or 1.68;

(2) Identifies the application to which it is directed;

(3) Identifies each inventor and the country of citizenship of each inventor; and

(4) States that the person making the oath or declaration believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought.

(b)(1) The oath or declaration must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in § § 1.42, 1.43 or 1.47.

(2) If the person making the oath or declaration or any supplemental oath or declaration is not the inventor (§ § 1.42, 1.43, or § 1.47), the oath or declaration shall state the relationship of the person to the inventor, and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor would have been required to state. If the person signing the oath or declaration is the legal representative of a deceased inventor, the oath or declaration shall also state that the person is a legal representative and the citizenship, residence and mailing address of the legal representative.

(c) Subject to paragraph (f) of this section, if the oath or declaration meets the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the oath or declaration will be accepted as complying with 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) and § 1.495(c). However, if the oath or declaration does not also meet the requirements of § 1.63, a supplemental oath or declaration in compliance with § 1.63 or an application date sheet will be required in accordance with § 1.67.

(d) If the oath or declaration filed pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) and this section names an inventive entity different from the inventive entity set forth in the international application, or if a change to the inventive entity has been effected under PCT Rule 92 bis subsequent to the execution of any oath or declaration which was filed in the application under PCT Rule 4.17(iv) or this section and the inventive entity thus changed is different from the inventive entity identified in any such oath or declaration, applicant must submit:

(1) A statement from each person being added as an inventor and from each person being deleted as an inventor that any error in inventorship in the international application occurred without deceptive intention on his or her part;

(2) The processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i);

(3) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see § 3.73(b) of this chapter); and

(4) Any new oath or declaration required by paragraph (f) of this section.

(e) The Office may require such other information as may be deemed appropriate under the particular circumstances surrounding the correction of inventorship.

(f) A new oath or declaration in accordance with this section must be filed to satisfy 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) if the declaration was filed under PCT Rule 4.17(iv), and:

(1) There was a change in the international filing date pursuant to PCT Rule 20.2 after the declaration was executed; or

(2) A change in the inventive entity was effected under PCT Rule 92 bis after the declaration was executed and no declaration which sets forth and is executed by the inventive entity as so changed has been filed in the application.

(g) If a priority claim has been corrected or added pursuant to PCT Rule 26 bis during the international stage after the declaration of inventorship was executed in the international application under PCT Rule 4.17(iv), applicant will be required to submit either a new oath or declaration or an application data sheet as set forth in § 1.76 correctly identifying the application upon which priority is claimed.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 20052, May 28, 1987; 61 FR 42790, 42807, Aug. 19, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, as corrected at 66 FR 28053, 28054, May 22, 2001; 67 FR 520, 524, Jan. 4, 2002]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54677, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 66 FR 16004, 16006, Mar. 22, 2001, which amended this section, effective Mar. 1, 2001, also provides: "Applicability Date: The changes to § § 1.434, 1.451, 1.471, and 1.484 apply to all international applications filed before, on, or after March 1, 2001. The changes to § § 1.494, 1.495, and 1.497 apply to international applications entering the national phase on or after March 1, 2001 (irrespective of their filing date)."]

§ 1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

If the examiner find that a national stage application lacks unity of invention under § 1.475, the examiner may in an Office action require the applicant in the response to that action to elect the invention to which the claims shall be restricted. Such requirement may be made before any action on the merits but may be made at any time before the final action at the discretion of the examiner. Review of any such requirement is provided under § § 1.143 and 1.144.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 4347, Jan. 14, 1993]

SUBPART D --EX PARTE REEXAMINATION OF PATENTS

CITATION OF PRIOR ART

§ 1.501 Citation of prior art in patent files.

(a) At any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, any person may cite, to the Office in writing, prior art consisting of patents or printed publications which that person states to be pertinent and applicable to the patent and believes to have a bearing on the patentability of any claim of the patent. If the citation is made by the patent owner, the explanation of pertinency and applicability may include an explanation of how the claims differ from the prior art. Such citations shall be entered in the patent file except as set forth in § § 1.502 and 1.902.

(b) If the person making the citation wishes his or her identity to be excluded from the patent file and kept confidential, the citation papers must be submitted without any identification of the person making the submission.

(c) Citation of patents or printed publications by the public in patent files should either: (1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c); or in the event service is not possible (2) be filed with the Office in duplicate.

(1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c); or in the event service is not possible

(2) Be filed with the Office in duplicate.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76774, Dec. 7, 2000, revised paragraph (a), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.502 Processing of prior art citations during an ex parte reexamination proceeding.

Citations by the patent owner under § 1.555 and by an ex parte reexamination requester under either § 1.510 or § 1.535 will be entered in the reexamination file during a reexamination proceeding. The entry in the patent file of citations submitted after the date of an order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525 by persons other than the patent owner, or an ex parte reexamination requester under either § 1.510 or § 1.535, will be delayed until the reexamination proceeding has been terminated. See § 1.902 for processing of prior art citations in patent and reexamination files during an inter partes reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.913.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000, added this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

REQUEST FOR EX PARTE REEXAMINATION

§ 1.510 Request for ex parte reexamination.

(a) Any person may, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, file a request for an ex parte reexamination by the Office of any claim of the patent on the basis of prior art patents or printed publications cited under § 1.501. The request must be accompanied by the fee for requesting reexamination set in § 1.20(c)(1).

(b) Any request for reexamination must include the following parts:

(1) A statement pointing out each substantial new question of patentability based on prior patents and printed publications.

(2) An identification of every claim for which reexamination is requested, and a detailed explanation of the pertinency and manner of applying the cited prior art to every claim for which reexamination is requested. If appropriate the party requesting reexamination may also point out how claims distinguish over cited prior art.

(3) A copy of every patent or printed publication relied upon or referred to in paragraph (b) (1) and (2) of this section accompanied by an English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent or printed publication.

(4) A copy of the entire patent including the front face, drawings, and specification/claims (in double column format) for which reexamination is requested, and a copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent. All copies must have each page plainly written on only one side of a sheet of paper.

(5) A certification that a copy of the request filed by a person other than the patent owner has been served in its entirety on the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c). The name and address of the party served must be indicated. If service was not possible, a duplicate copy must be supplied to the Office.

(c) If the request does not include the fee for requesting reexamination or all of the parts required by paragraph (b) of this section, the person identified as requesting reexamination will be so notified and given an opportunity to complete the request within a specified time. If the fee for requesting reexamination has been paid but the defect in the request is not corrected within the specified time, the determination whether or not to institute reexamination will be made on the

request as it then exists. If the fee for requesting reexamination has not been paid, no determination will be made and the request will be placed in the patent file as a citation if it complies with the requirements of § 1.501(a).

(d) The filing date of the request is:

(1) The date on which the request including the entire fee for requesting reexamination is received in the Patent and Trademark Office; or

(2) the date on which the last portion of the fee for requesting reexamination is received.

(e) A request filed by the patent owner may include a proposed amendment in accordance with § 1.530.

(f) If a request is filed by an attorney or agent identifying another party on whose behalf the request is being filed, the attorney or agent must have a power of attorney from that party or be acting in a representative capacity pursuant to § 1.34(a).

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54678, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54678, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (b)(4) and (e), effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000, revised the section heading and paragraph (a), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.515 Determination of the request for ex parte reexamination.

(a) Within three months following the filing date of a request for an ex parte reexamination, an examiner will consider the request and determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of the patent is raised by the request and the prior art cited therein, with or without consideration of other patents or printed publications. The examiner's determination will be based on the claims in effect at the time of the determination, will become a part of the official file of the patent, and will be mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c) and to the person requesting reexamination.

(b) Where no substantial new question of patentability has been found, a refund of a portion of the fee for requesting ex parte reexamination will be made to the requester in accordance with § 1.26(c).

(c) The requester may seek review by a petition to the Commissioner under § 1.181 within one month of the mailing date of the examiner's determination refusing ex parte reexamination. Any such petition must comply with § 1.181(b). If no petition is timely filed or if the decision on petition affirms that no substantial new question of patentability has been raised, the determination shall be final and nonappealable.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.520 Ex parte reexamination at the initiative of the Commissioner.

The Commissioner, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, may determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability is raised by patents or printed publications which have been discovered by the Commissioner or which have been brought to the Commissioner's attention, even though no request for reexamination has been filed in accordance with § 1.510 or § 1.913. The Commissioner may initiate ex parte reexamination without a request for reexamination pursuant to § 1.510 or § 1.913. Normally requests from outside the Office that the Commissioner undertake reexamination on his own initiative will not be considered. Any determination to initiate ex parte reexamination under this section will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c).

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

EX PARTE REEXAMINATION

§ 1.525 Order for ex parte reexamination.

(a) If a substantial new question of patentability is found pursuant to § 1.515 or § 1.520, the determination will include an order for ex parte reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question. If the order for ex parte reexamination resulted from a petition pursuant to § 1.515(c), the ex parte reexamination will ordinarily be conducted by an examiner other than the examiner responsible for the initial determination under § 1.515(a).

(b) The notice published in the Official Gazette under § 1.11(c) will be considered to be constructive notice and ex parte reexamination will proceed.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.530 Statement by patent owner in ex parte reexamination; amendment by patent owner in ex parte or inter partes reexamination; inventorship change in ex parte or inter partes reexamination.

(a) Except as provided in § 1.510(e), no statement or other response by the patent owner in an ex parte reexamination proceeding shall be filed prior to the determinations made in accordance with § 1.515 or § 1.520. If a premature statement or other response is filed by the patent owner, it will not be acknowledged or considered in making the determination.

(b) The order for ex parte reexamination will set a period of not less than two months from the date of the order within which the patent owner may file a statement on the new question of patentability, including any proposed amendments the patent owner wishes to make.

(c) Any statement filed by the patent owner shall clearly point out why the subject matter as claimed is not anticipated or rendered obvious by the prior art patents or printed publications, either alone or in any reasonable combinations. Where the reexamination request was filed by a third party requester, any statement filed by the patent owner must be served upon the ex parte reexamination requester in accordance with § 1.248.

(d) Making amendments in a reexamination proceeding. A proposed amendment in an ex parte or an inter partes reexamination proceeding is made by filing a paper directing that proposed specified changes be made to the patent specification, including the claims, or to the drawings. An amendment paper directing that proposed specified changes be made in a reexamination proceeding may be submitted as an accompaniment to a request filed by the patent owner in accordance with § 1.510(e), as part of a patent owner statement in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, or, where permitted, during the prosecution of the reexamination proceeding pursuant to § 1.550(a) or § 1.937.

(1) Specification other than the claims. Changes to the specification, other than to the claims, must be made by submission of the entire text of an added or rewritten paragraph including markings pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, except that an entire paragraph may be deleted by a statement deleting the paragraph, without presentation of the text of the paragraph. The precise point in the specification must be identified where any added or rewritten paragraph is located. This paragraph applies whether the amendment is submitted on paper or compact disc (see § § 1.96 and 1.825).

(2) Claims. An amendment paper must include the entire text of each patent claim which is being proposed to be changed by such amendment paper and of each new claim being proposed to be added by such amendment paper. For any claim changed by the amendment paper, a parenthetical expression "amended," "twice amended," etc., should follow the claim number. Each patent claim proposed to be changed and each proposed added claim must include markings pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, except that a patent claim or proposed added claim should be canceled by a statement canceling the claim, without presentation of the text of the claim.

(3) Drawings. Any change to the patent drawings must be submitted as a sketch on a separate paper showing the proposed changes in red for approval by the examiner. Upon approval of the changes by the examiner, only new sheets of drawings including the changes and in compliance with § 1.84 must be filed. Amended figures must be identified as "Amended," and any added figure must be identified as "New." In the event a figure is canceled, the figure must be surrounded by brackets and identified as "Canceled."

(4) The formal requirements for papers making up the reexamination proceeding other than those set forth in this section are set out in § 1.52.

(e) Status of claims and support for claim changes. Whenever there is an amendment to the claims pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section, there must also be supplied, on pages separate from the pages containing the changes, the status (i.e., pending or canceled), as of the date of the amendment, of all patent claims and of all added claims, and an explanation of the support in the disclosure of the patent for the changes to the claims made by the amendment paper.

(f) Changes shown by markings. Any changes relative to the patent being reexamined which are made to the specification, including the claims, must include the following markings:

(1) The matter to be omitted by the reexamination proceeding must be enclosed in brackets; and

(2) The matter to be added by the reexamination proceeding must be underlined.

(g) Numbering of patent claims preserved. Patent claims may not be renumbered. The numbering of any claims added in the reexamination proceeding must follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim.

(h) Amendment of disclosure may be required. The disclosure must be amended, when required by the Office, to correct inaccuracies of description and definition, and to secure substantial correspondence between the claims, the remainder of the specification, and the drawings.

(i) Amendments made relative to patent. All amendments must be made relative to the patent specification, including the claims, and drawings, which are in effect as of the date of filing the request for reexamination.

(j) No enlargement of claim scope. No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent or introduce new matter. No amendment may be proposed for entry in an expired patent. Moreover, no amendment, other than the cancellation of claims, will be incorporated into the patent by a certificate issued after the expiration of the patent.

(k) Amendments not effective until certificate. Although the Office actions will treat proposed amendments as though they have been entered, the proposed amendments will not be effective until the reexamination certificate is issued.

(l) Correction of inventorship in an ex parte or inter partes reexamination proceeding.

(1) When it appears in a patent being reexamined that the correct inventor or inventors were not named through error without deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, the Commissioner may, on petition of all the parties set forth in § 1.324(b)(1)-(3), including the assignees, and satisfactory proof of the facts and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.20(b), or on order of a court before which such matter is called in question, include in the reexamination certificate to be issued under § 1.570 or § 1.977 an amendment naming only the actual inventor or inventors. The petition must be submitted as part of the reexamination proceeding and must satisfy the requirements of § 1.324.

(2) Notwithstanding the preceding paragraph (1)(1) of this section, if a petition to correct inventorship satisfying the requirements of § 1.324 is filed in a reexamination proceeding, and the reexamination proceeding is terminated other than by a reexamination certificate under § 1.570 or § 1.977, a certificate of correction indicating the change of inventorship stated in the petition will be issued upon request by the patentee.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 62 FR 53132, 53200, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54678, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54678, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76775, Dec. 7, 2000, amended this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.535 Reply by third party requester in ex parte reexamination.

A reply to the patent owner's statement under § 1.530 may be filed by the ex parte reexamination requester within two months from the date of service of the patent owner's statement. Any reply by the ex parte requester must be served upon the patent owner in accordance with § 1.248. If the patent owner does not file a statement under § 1.530, no reply or other submission from the ex parte reexamination requester will be considered.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.540 Consideration of responses in ex parte reexamination.

The failure to timely file or serve the documents set forth in § 1.530 or in § 1.535 may result in their being refused consideration. No submissions other than the statement pursuant to § 1.530 and the reply by the ex parte reexamination requester pursuant to § 1.535 will be considered prior to examination.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.550 Conduct of ex parte reexamination proceedings.

(a) All ex parte reexamination proceedings, including any appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, will be conducted with special dispatch within the Office. After issuance of the ex parte reexamination order and expiration of the time for submitting any responses, the examination will be conducted in accordance with § § 1.104 through 1.116 and will result in the issuance of an ex parte reexamination certificate under § 1.570.

(b) The patent owner in an ex parte reexamination proceeding will be given at least thirty days to respond to any Office action. In response to any rejection, such response may include further statements and/or proposed amendments or new claims to place the patent in a condition where all claims, if amended as proposed, would be patentable.

(c) The time for taking any action by a patent owner in an ex parte reexamination proceeding will be extended only for sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the patent owner is due, but in no case will the mere filing of a request effect any extension. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U. S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(d) If the patent owner fails to file a timely and appropriate response to any Office action or any written statement of an interview required under § 1.560(b), the ex parte reexamination proceeding will be terminated, and the Commissioner will proceed to issue a certificate under § 1.570 in accordance with the last action of the Office.

(e) If a response by the patent owner is not timely filed in the Office,

(1) The delay in filing such response may be excused if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable; a petition to accept an unavoidably delayed response must be filed in compliance with § 1.137(a); or

(2) The response may nevertheless be accepted if the delay was unintentional; a petition to accept an unintentionally delayed response must be filed in compliance with § 1.137(b).

(f) The reexamination requester will be sent copies of Office actions issued during the ex parte reexamination proceeding. After filing of a request for ex parte reexamination by a third party requester, any document filed by either the patent owner or the third party requester must be served on the other party in the reexamination proceeding in the manner provided by § 1.248. The document must reflect service or the document may be refused consideration by the Office.

(g) The active participation of the ex parte reexamination requester ends with the reply pursuant to § 1.535, and no further submissions on behalf of the reexamination requester will be acknowledged or considered. Further, no submissions on behalf of any third parties will be acknowledged or considered unless such submissions are:

(1) in accordance with § 1.510 or § 1.535; or

(2) entered in the patent file prior to the date of the order for ex parte reexamination pursuant to § 1.525.

(h) Submissions by third parties, filed after the date of the order for ex parte reexamination pursuant to § 1.525, must meet the requirements of and will be treated in accordance with § 1.501(a).

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984; 49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 62 FR 53132, 53201, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54678, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.552 Scope of reexamination in ex parte reexamination proceedings.

(a) Claims in an ex parte reexamination proceeding will be examined on the basis of patents or printed publications and, with respect to subject matter added or deleted in the reexamination proceeding, on the basis of the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112.

(b) Claims in an ex parte reexamination proceeding will not be permitted to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent.

(c) Issues other than those indicated in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section will not be resolved in a reexamination proceeding. If such issues are raised by the patent owner or third party requester during a reexamination proceeding, the existence of such issues will be noted by the examiner in the next Office action, in which case the patent owner may consider the advisability of filing a reissue application to have such issues considered and resolved.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.555 Information material to patentability in ex parte reexamination and inter partes reexamination proceedings.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective reexamination occurs when, at the time a reexamination proceeding is being conducted, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. Each individual associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. The individuals who have a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to them to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding are the patent owner, each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner, and every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose the information exists with respect to each claim pending in the reexamination proceeding until the claim is cancelled. Information material to the patentability of a cancelled claim need not be submitted if the information is not material to patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim in the patent after issuance of the reexamination certificate was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in an information disclosure statement. However, the duties of candor, good faith, and disclosure have not been complied with if any fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct by, or on behalf of, the patent owner in the reexamination proceeding. Any information disclosure statement must be filed with the items listed in § 1.98(a) as applied to individuals associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, and should be filed within two months of the date of the order for reexamination, or as soon thereafter as possible.

(b) Under this section, information is material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding when it is not cumulative to information of record or being made of record in the reexamination proceeding, and

(1) It is a patent or printed publication that establishes, by itself or in combination with other patents or printed publications, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or

(2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the patent owner takes in:

(i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or

(ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim pending in a reexamination proceeding is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

(c) The responsibility for compliance with this section rests upon the individuals designated in paragraph (a) of this section and no evaluation will be made by the Office in the reexamination proceeding as to compliance with this section. If questions of compliance with this section are raised by the patent owner or the third party requester during a reexamination proceeding, they will be noted as unresolved questions in accordance with § 1.552(c).

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 2036, Jan 17, 1992; 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000, revised the section heading and paragraph (c), effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.560 Interviews in ex parte reexamination proceedings.

(a) Interviews in ex parte reexamination proceedings pending before the Office between examiners and the owners of such patents or their attorneys or agents of record must be conducted in the Office at such times, within Office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of claims in patents involved in ex parte reexamination proceedings will not be conducted prior to the first official action. Interviews should be arranged in advance. Requests that reexamination requesters participate in interviews with examiners will not be granted.

(b) In every instance of an interview with an examiner in an ex parte reexamination proceeding, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the patent owner. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in § 1.111. Patent owner's response to an outstanding Office action after the interview does not remove the necessity for filing the written statement. The written statement must be filed as a separate part of a response to an Office action outstanding at the time of the interview, or as a separate paper within one month from the date of the interview, whichever is later.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981; 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76776, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.565 Concurrent office proceedings which include an ex parte reexamination proceeding.

(a) In an ex parte reexamination proceeding before the Office, the patent owner must inform the Office of any prior or concurrent proceedings in which the patent is or was involved such as interferences, reissues, ex parte reexaminations, inter partes reexaminations, or litigation and the results of such proceedings. See § 1.985 for notification of prior or concurrent proceedings in an inter partes reexamination proceeding.

(b) If a patent in the process of ex parte reexamination is or becomes involved in litigation, the Commissioner shall determine whether or not to suspend the reexamination. See § 1.987 for inter partes reexamination proceedings.

(c) If ex parte reexamination is ordered while a prior ex parte reexamination proceeding is pending and prosecution in the prior ex parte reexamination proceeding has not been terminated, the ex parte reexamination proceedings will be consolidated and result in the issuance of a single certificate under § 1.570. For merger of inter partes reexamination proceedings, see § 1.989(a). For merger of ex parte reexamination and inter partes reexamination proceedings, see § 1.989(b).

(d) If a reissue application and an ex parte reexamination proceeding on which an order pursuant to § 1.525 has been mailed are pending concurrently on a patent, a decision will normally be made to merge the two proceedings or to suspend one of the two proceedings. Where merger of a reissue application and an ex parte reexamination proceeding is ordered, the merged examination will be conducted in accordance with § § 1.171 through 1.179, and the patent owner will be required to place and maintain the same claims in the reissue application and the ex parte reexamination proceeding during the pendency of the merged proceeding. The examiner's actions and responses by the patent owner in a merged proceeding will apply to both the reissue application and the ex parte reexamination proceeding and be physically entered into both files. Any ex parte reexamination proceeding merged with a reissue application shall be terminated by the grant of the reissued patent. For merger of a reissue application and an inter partes reexamination, see § 1.991.

(e) If a patent in the process of ex parte reexamination is or becomes involved in an interference, the Commissioner may suspend the reexamination or the interference. The Commissioner will not consider a request to suspend an interference unless a motion (§ 1.635) to suspend the interference has been presented to, and denied by, an administrative patent judge, and the request is filed within ten (10) days of a decision by an administrative patent judge denying the motion for suspension or such other time as the administrative patent judge may set. For concurrent inter partes reexamination and interference of a patent, see § 1.993.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 21753, May 19, 1982; 49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985; 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 76756, 76777, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76777, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

EX PARTE REEXAMINATION CERTIFICATE

§ 1.570 Issuance of ex parte reexamination certificate after ex parte reexamination proceedings.

(a) Upon the conclusion of ex parte reexamination proceedings, the Commissioner will issue an ex parte reexamination certificate in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 307 setting forth the results of the ex parte reexamination proceeding and the content of the patent following the ex parte reexamination proceeding.

(b) An ex parte reexamination certificate will be issued in each patent in which an ex parte reexamination proceeding has been ordered under § 1.525 and has not been merged with any inter partes reexamination proceeding pursuant to § 1.989(a). Any statutory disclaimer filed by the patent owner will be made part of the ex parte reexamination certificate.

(c) The ex parte reexamination certificate will be mailed on the day of its date to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c). A copy of the ex parte reexamination certificate will also be mailed to the requester of the ex parte reexamination proceeding.

(d) If an ex parte reexamination certificate has been issued which cancels all of the claims of the patent, no further Office proceedings will be conducted with that patent or any reissue applications or any reexamination requests relating thereto.

(e) If the ex parte reexamination proceeding is terminated by the grant of a reissued patent as provided in § 1.565(d), the reissued patent will constitute the ex parte reexamination certificate required by this section and 35 U.S.C. 307.

(f) A notice of the issuance of each ex parte reexamination certificate under this section will be published in the Official Gazette on its date of issuance.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 21753, May 19, 1982; 65 FR 76756, 76777, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76777, Dec. 7, 2000, revised this section, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

SUBPART E --INTERFERENCES

§ 1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.

This subpart governs the procedure in patent interferences in the Patent and Trademark Office. This subpart shall be construed to secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of every interference. For the meaning of terms in the Federal Rules of Evidence as applied to interferences, see § 1.671(c). Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this subpart:

(a) Additional discovery is discovery to which a party may be entitled under § 1.687 in addition to discovery to which the party is entitled as a matter of right under § 1.673 (a) and (b).

(b) Affidavit means affidavit, declaration under § 1.68, or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746. A transcript of an ex parte deposition may be used as an affidavit.

(c) Board means the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(d) Case-in-chief means that portion of a party's case where the party has the burden of going forward with evidence.

(e) Case-in-rebuttal means that portion of a party's case where the party presents evidence in rebuttal to the case-in-chief of another party.

(f) A count defines the interfering subject matter between two or more applications or between one or more applications and one or more patents. When there is more than one count, each count shall define a separate patentable invention. Any claim of an application or patent that is designated to correspond to a count is a claim involved in the interference within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 135(a). A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count and is identical to the count is said to correspond exactly to the count. A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count but is not identical to the count is said to correspond substantially to the count. When a count is broader in scope than all claims which correspond to the count, the count is a phantom count.

(g) The effective filing date of an application is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the application under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application. The effective filing date of a patent is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the patent under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application which issued as the patent.

(h) In the case of an application, filing date means the filing date assigned to the application. In the case of a patent, "filing date" means the filing date assigned to the application which issued as the patent.

(i) An interference is a proceeding instituted in the Patent and Trademark Office before the Board to determine any question of patentability and priority of invention between two or more parties claiming the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between two or more pending applications naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, the applications contain claims for the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between one or more pending applications and one or more unexpired patents naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, any application and any unexpired patent contain claims for the same patentable invention.

(j) An interference-in-fact exists when at least one claim of a party that is designated to correspond to a count and at least one claim of an opponent that is designated to correspond to the count define the same patentable invention.

(k) A lead attorney or agent is a registered attorney or agent of record who is primarily responsible for prosecuting an interference on behalf of a party and is the attorney or agent whom an administrative patent judge may contact to set times and take other action in the interference.

(l) A party is an applicant or patentee involved in the interference or a legal representative or an assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of an applicant or patentee involved in an interference. Where acts of party are normally performed by an attorney or agent, "party" may be construed to mean the attorney or agent. An inventor is the individual named as inventor in an application involved in an interference or the individual named as inventor in a patent involved in an interference.

(m) A senior party is the party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts or, if there is no party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts, the party with the earliest filing date. A junior party is any other party.

(n) Invention "A" is the same patentable invention as an invention "B" when invention "A" is the same as (35 U.S.C. 102) or is obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention "B" assuming invention "B" is prior art with respect to invention "A". Invention "A" is a separate patentable invention with respect to invention "B" when invention "A" is new (35 U.S.C. 102) and non-obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention "B" assuming invention "B" is prior art with respect to invention "A".

(o) Sworn means sworn or affirmed.

(p) United States means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

(q) A final decision is a decision awarding judgment as to all counts. An interlocutory order is any other action taken by an administrative patent judge or the Board in an interference, including the notice declaring an interference.

(r) NAFTA country means NAFTA country as defined in section 2(4) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act, Pub. L. 103-182, 107 Stat. 2060 (19 U.S.C. 3301).

(s) WTO member country means WTO member country as defined in section 2(10) of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Pub. L. 103-465, 108 Stat. 4813 (19 U.S.C. 3501).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985; 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995; 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000; 65 FR 70489, 70490, Nov. 24, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 70489, 70490, Nov. 24, 2000, revised paragraph (f), effective Dec. 26, 2000.]

§ 1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.

(a) Unless good cause is shown, an interference shall not be declared or continued between (1) applications owned by a single party or (2) applications and an unexpired patent owned by a single party.

(b) The parties, within 20 days after an interference is declared, shall notify the Board of any and all right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference unless the right, title, and interest is set forth in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) If a change of any right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference occurs after notice is given declaring the interference and before the time expires for seeking judicial review of a final decision of the Board, the parties shall notify the Board of the change within 20 days after the change.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between two or more applications, the examiner must be of the opinion that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the applications which is patentable to each applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter shall be defined by one or more counts. Each application must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. All claims in the applications which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.

(a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared with an application of another by,

(1) Suggesting a proposed count and presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim in its application that corresponds to the proposed count,

(2) Identifying the other application and, if known, a claim in the other application which corresponds to the proposed count, and

(3) Explaining why an interference should be declared.

(b) When an applicant presents a claim known to the applicant to define the same patentable invention claimed in a pending application of another, the applicant shall identify that pending application, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where it appears an applicant may have failed to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.

(a) If no claim in an application is drawn to the same patentable invention claimed in another application or patent, the examiner may suggest that an applicant present a claim drawn to an invention claimed in another application or patent for the purpose of an interference with another application or a patent. The applicant to whom the claim is suggested shall amend the application by presenting the suggested claim within a time specified by the examiner, not less than one month. Failure or refusal of an applicant to timely present the suggested claim shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by the applicant of the invention defined by the suggested claim. At the time the suggested claim is presented, the applicant may also call the examiner's attention to other claims already in the application or presented with the suggested claim and explain why the other claims would be more appropriate to be designated to correspond to a count in any interference which may be declared.

(b) The suggestion of a claim by the examiner for the purpose of an interference will not stay the period for response to any outstanding Office action. When a suggested claim is timely presented, ex parte proceedings in the application will be stayed pending a determination of whether an interference will be declared.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.606 Interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between an application and an unexpired patent, an examiner must determine that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter will be defined by one or more counts. The application must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. The claim in the application need not be, and most often will not be, identical to a claim in the patent. All claims in the application and patent which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995; 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000; 65 FR 70489, 70490, Nov. 24, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 70489, 70490, Nov. 24, 2000, revised this section, effective Dec. 26, 2000.]

§ 1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.

(a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared between an application and an unexpired patent by,

(1) Identifying the patent,

(2) Presenting a proposed count,

(3) Identifying at least one claim in the patent corresponding to the proposed count,

(4) Presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim already pending in its application that corresponds to the proposed count, and, if any claim of the patent or application identified as corresponding to the proposed count does not correspond exactly to the proposed count, explaining why each such claim corresponds to the proposed count, and

(5) Applying the terms of any application claim,

(i) Identified as corresponding to the count, and

(ii) Not previously in the application to the disclosure of the application.

(6) Explaining how the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 135(b) are met, if the claim presented or identified under paragraph (a)(4) of this section was not present in the application until more than one year after the issue date of the patent.

(b) When an applicant seeks an interference with a patent, examination of the application, including any appeal to the Board, shall be conducted with special dispatch within the Patent and Trademark Office. The examiner shall determine whether there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in an interference. If the examiner determines that there is any interfering subject matter, an interference will be declared. If the examiner determines that there is no interfering subject matter, the examiner shall state the reasons why an interference is not being declared and otherwise act on the application.

(c) When an applicant presents a claim which corresponds exactly or substantially to a claim of a patent, the applicant shall identify the patent and the number of the patent claim, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where an applicant fails to identify the patent.

(d) A notice that an applicant is seeking to provoke an interference with a patent will be placed in the file of the patent and a copy of the notice will be sent to the patentee. The identity of the applicant will not be disclosed unless an interference is declared. If a final decision is made not to declare an interference, a notice to that effect will be placed in the patent file and will be sent to the patentee.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 54511, Oct, 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; prima facie showing by applicant.

(a) When the effective filing date of an application is three months or less after the effective filing date of a patent, before an interference will be declared, either the applicant or the applicant's attorney or agent of record shall file a statement alleging that there is a basis upon which the applicant is entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee.

(b) When the effective filing date of an application is more than three months after the effective filing date of a patent, the applicant, before an interference will be declared, shall file evidence which may consist of patents or printed publications, other documents, and one or more affidavits which demonstrate that applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee and an explanation stating with particularity the basis upon which the applicant is prima facie entitled to the judgment. Where the basis upon which an applicant is entitled to judgment relative to a patentee is priority of invention, the evidence shall include affidavits by the applicant, if possible, and one or more corroborating witnesses, supported by documentary evidence, if available, each setting out a factual description of acts and circumstances performed or observed by the affiant, which collectively would prima facie entitle the applicant to

judgment on priority with respect to the effective filing date of the patent. To facilitate preparation of a record (§ 1.653(g)) for final hearing, an applicant should file affidavits on paper which is 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 x 11 inches). The significance of any printed publication or other document which is self-authenticating within the meaning of Rule 902 of the Federal Rules of Evidence or § 1.671(d) and any patent shall be discussed in an affidavit or the explanation. Any printed publication or other document which is not self-authenticating shall be authenticated and discussed with particularity in an affidavit. Upon a showing of good cause, an affidavit may be based on information and belief. If an examiner finds an application to be in condition for declaration of an interference, the examiner will consider the evidence and explanation only to the extent of determining whether a basis upon which the application would be entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee is alleged and, if a basis is alleged, an interference may be declared.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.609 [This section was removed and reserved. See 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000.]

§ 1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.

(a) Each interference will be declared by an administrative patent judge who may enter all interlocutory orders in the interference, except that only the Board shall hear oral argument at final hearing, enter a decision under § § 1.617, 1.640(e), 1.652, 1.656(i) or 1.658, or enter any other order which terminates the interference.

(b) As necessary, another administrative patent judge may act in place of the one who declared the interference. At the discretion of the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference, a panel consisting of two or more members of the Board may enter interlocutory orders.

(c) Unless otherwise provided in this subpart, times for taking action by a party in the interference will be set on a case-by-case basis by the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference. Times for taking action shall be set and the administrative patent judge shall exercise control over the interference such that the pendency of the interference before the Board does not normally exceed two years.

(d) An administrative patent judge may hold a conference with the parties to consider simplification of any issues, the necessity or desirability of amendments to counts, the possibility of obtaining admissions of fact and genuineness of documents which will avoid unnecessary proof, any limitations on the number of expert witnesses, the time and place for conducting a deposition (§ 1.673(g)), and any other matter as may aid in the disposition of the interference. After a conference, the administrative patent judge may enter any order which may be appropriate.

(e) The administrative patent judge may determine a proper course of conduct in an interference for any situation not specifically covered by this part.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.611 Declaration of interference.

(a) Notice of declaration of an interference will be sent to each party.

(b) When a notice of declaration is returned to the Patent and Trademark Office undelivered, or in any other circumstance where appropriate, an administrative patent judge may send a copy of the notice to a patentee named in a patent involved in an interference or the patentee's assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office or order publication of an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette.

(c) The notice of declaration shall specify:

(1) The name and residence of each party involved in the interference;

(2) The name and address of record of any attorney or agent of record in any application or patent involved in the interference;

(3) The name of any assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office;

(4) The identity of any application or patent involved in the interference;

(5) Where a party is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier application, the identity of the earlier application;

(6) The count or counts and, if there is more than one count, the examiner's explanation why the counts define different patentable inventions;

(7) The claim or claims of any application or any patent which correspond to each count;

(8) The examiner's explanation as to why each claim designated as corresponding to a count is directed to the same patentable invention as the count and why each claim designated as not corresponding to any count is not directed to the same patentable invention as any count; and

(9) The order of the parties.

(d) The notice of declaration may also specify the time for:

(1) Filing a preliminary statement as provided in § 1.621(a);

(2) Serving notice that a preliminary statement has been filed as provided in § 1.621(b); and

(3) Filing preliminary motions authorized by § 1.633.

(e) Notice may be given in the Official Gazette that an interference has been declared involving a patent.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14521 Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.612 Access to applications.

(a) After an interference is declared, each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of the files of any application set out in the notice declaring the interference, except for affidavits filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation under § 1.608 filed separate from an amendment. A party seeking access to any abandoned or pending application referred to in the opponent's involved application or access to any pending application referred to in the opponent's patent must file a motion under § 1.635. See § 1.11(e) concerning public access to interference files.

(b) After preliminary motions under § 1.633 are decided (§ 1.640(b)), each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of any affidavit filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation filed under § 1.608 in any application set out in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) Any evidence and explanation filed under § 1.608 in the file of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference shall be served when required by § 1.617(b).

(d) The parties at any time may agree to exchange copies of papers in the files of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.

(a) Each party may be required to designate one attorney or agent of record as the lead attorney or agent.

(b) The same attorney or agent or members of the same firm of attorneys or agents may not represent two or more parties in an interference except as may be permitted under this Chapter.

(c) An administrative patent judge may make necessary inquiry to determine whether an attorney or agent should be disqualified from representing a party in an interference. If an administrative patent judge is of the opinion that an attorney or agent should be disqualified, the administrative patent judge shall refer the matter to the Commissioner. The Commissioner will make a final decision as to whether any attorney or agent should be disqualified.

(d) No attorney or agent of record in an interference may withdraw as attorney or agent of record except with the approval of an administrative patent judge and after reasonable notice to the party on whose behalf the attorney or agent has appeared. A request to withdraw as attorney or agent of record in an interference shall be made by motion (§ 1.635).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.

(a) The Board acquires jurisdiction over an interference when the interference is declared under § 1.611.

(b) When the interference is declared the interference is a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24.

(c) The examiner shall have jurisdiction over any pending application until the interference is declared. An administrative patent judge may for a limited purpose restore jurisdiction to the examiner over any application involved in the interference.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.

(a) When an interference is declared, ex parte prosecution of an application involved in the interference is suspended. Amendments and other papers related to the application received during pendency of the interference will not be entered or considered in the interference without the consent of an administrative patent judge.

(b) Ex parte prosecution as to specified matters may be continued concurrently with the interference with the consent of the administrative patent judge.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose an appropriate sanction against a party who fails to comply with the regulations of this part or any order entered by an administrative patent judge or the Board. An appropriate sanction may include among others entry of an order:

(1) Holding certain facts to have been established in the interference;

(2) Precluding a party from filing a paper;

(3) Precluding a party from presenting or contesting a particular issue;

(4) Precluding a party from requesting, obtaining, or opposing discovery;

(5) Awarding compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees; or

(6) Granting judgment in the interference.

(b) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose a sanction, including a sanction in the form of compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees, against a party for taking and maintaining a frivolous position in papers filed in the interference.

(c) To the extent that an administrative patent judge or the Board has authorized a party to compel the taking of testimony or the production of documents or things from an individual or entity located in a NAFTA country or a WTO member country concerning knowledge, use, or other activity relevant to proving or disproving a date of invention (§ 1.671(h)), but the testimony, documents or things have not been produced for use in the interference to the same extent as such information could be made available in the United States, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall draw such adverse inferences as may be appropriate under the circumstances, or take such other action permitted by statute, rule, or regulation, in favor of the party that requested the information in the interference, including imposition of appropriate sanctions under paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) A party may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order imposing sanctions, the drawing of adverse inferences or other action under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section. Where an administrative patent judge or the Board on its own initiative determines that a sanction, adverse inference or other action against a party may be appropriate under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall enter an order for the party to show cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action is not appropriate. The Board shall take action in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party files a paper which shows good cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action would not be appropriate.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.

(a) An administrative patent judge shall review any evidence filed by an applicant under § 1.608(b) to determine if the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the administrative patent judge determines that the evidence shows the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the interference shall proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this part. If in the opinion of the administrative patent judge the evidence fails to show that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the administrative patent judge shall, concurrently with the notice declaring the interference, enter an order stating the reasons for the opinion and directing the applicant, within a time set in the order, to show cause why summary judgment should not be entered against the applicant.

(b) The applicant may file a response to the order, which may include an appropriate preliminary motion under § 1.633 (c), (f) or (g), and state any reasons why summary judgment should not be entered. Any request by the applicant for a hearing before the Board shall be made in the response. Additional evidence shall not be presented by the applicant or considered by the Board unless the applicant shows good cause why any additional evidence was not initially presented with the evidence filed under § 1.608(b). At the time an applicant files a response, the applicant shall serve a copy of any evidence filed under § 1.608(b) and this paragraph.

(c) If a response is not timely filed by the applicant, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant.

(d) If a response is timely filed by the applicant, all opponents may file a statement and may oppose any preliminary motion filed under § 1.633 (c), (f) or (g) by the applicant within a time set by the administrative patent judge. The statement may set forth views as to why summary judgment should be granted against the applicant, but the statement shall be limited to discussing why all the evidence presented by the applicant does not overcome the reasons given by the administrative patent judge for issuing the order to show cause. Except as required to oppose a motion under § 1.633 (c), (f) or (g) by the applicant, evidence shall not be filed by any opponent. An opponent may not request a hearing.

(e) Within a time authorized by the administrative patent judge, an applicant may file a reply to any statement or opposition filed by any opponent.

(f) When more than two parties are involved in an interference, all parties may participate in summary judgment proceedings under this section.

(g) If a response by the applicant is timely filed, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall decide whether the evidence submitted under § 1.608(b) and any additional evidence properly submitted under paragraphs (b) and (e) of this section shows that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the applicant is not prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant. Otherwise, an interlocutory order shall be entered authorizing the interference to proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this subpart.

(h) Only an applicant who filed evidence under § 1.608(b) may request a hearing. If that applicant requests a hearing, the Board may hold a hearing prior to entry of a decision under paragraph (g) of this section. The administrative patent judge shall set a date and time for the hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by the administrative patent judge or the Board, the applicant and any opponent will each be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at the hearing.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board shall return to a party any paper presented by the party when the filing of the paper is not authorized by, or is not in compliance with the requirements of, this subpart. Any paper returned will not thereafter be considered in the interference. A party may be permitted to file a corrected paper under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by an administrative patent judge or the Board.

(b) When presenting a paper in an interference, a party shall not submit with the paper a copy of a paper previously filed in the interference.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.621 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.

(a) Within the time set for filing preliminary motions under § 1.633, each party may file a preliminary statement. The preliminary statement may be signed by any individual having knowledge of the facts recited therein or by an attorney or agent of record.

(b) When a party files a preliminary statement, the party shall also simultaneously file and serve on all opponents in the interference a notice stating that a preliminary statement has been filed. A copy of the preliminary statement need not be served until ordered by the administrative patent judge.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.622 Preliminary statement; who made invention; where invention made.

(a) A party's preliminary statement must identify the inventor who made the invention defined by each count and must state on behalf of the inventor the facts required by paragraph (a) of § § 1.623, 1.624, and 1.625 as may be appropriate. When an inventor identified in the preliminary statement is not an inventor named in the party's application or patent, the party shall file a motion under § 1.634 to correct inventorship.

(b) The preliminary statement shall state whether the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country (and, if so, which NAFTA country), a WTO member country (and, if so, which WTO member country), or in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement shall state whether the party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.623 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, or a party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2), the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.

(2) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.

(3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.

(4) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.

(5) The date on which the invention was first actually reduced to practice. If the invention was not actually reduced to practice by or on behalf of the inventor prior to the party's filing date, the preliminary statement shall so state.

(6) The date after the inventor's conception of the invention when active exercise of reasonable diligence toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.624 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country and a party intends to rely on introduction of the invention into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The date on which a drawing of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(2) The date on which a written description of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed to another person in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(4) The date on which the inventor's conception of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(5) The date on which an actual reduction to practice of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If an actual reduction to practice of the invention was not introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary amendment shall so state.

(6) The date after introduction of the inventor's conception into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country when active exercise of reasonable diligence in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, a copy of that drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, a copy of that written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or first written description introduced in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.625 Preliminary statement; derivation by an opponent.

(a) When a party intends to prove derivation by an opponent from the party, the preliminary statement must state the following as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The name of the opponent.

(2) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.

(3) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.

(4) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.

(5) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.

(6) The date on which the invention was first communicated to the opponent.

(b) If a party intends to prove priority, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.623 or § 1.624.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(3) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a first drawing or first written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.626 Preliminary statement; earlier application.

When a party does not intend to present evidence to prove a conception or an actual reduction to practice and the party intends to rely solely on the filing date of an earlier filed application to prove a constructive reduction to practice, the preliminary statement may so state and identify the earlier filed application with particularity.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.627 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.

(a) The preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description shall be filed in a sealed envelope bearing only the name of the party filing the statement and the style (e.g., Jones v. Smith) and number of the interference. The sealed envelope should contain only the preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description. If the preliminary statement is filed through the mail, the sealed envelope should be enclosed in an outer envelope addressed to the Commission of Patents and Trademarks in accordance with § 1.1(e).

(b) A preliminary statement may be opened only at the direction of an administrative patent judge.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.628 Preliminary statement; correction of error.

(a) A material error arising through inadvertence or mistake in connection with a preliminary statement or drawings or a written description submitted therewith or omitted therefrom may be corrected by a motion (§ 1.635) for leave to file a corrected statement. The motion shall be supported by an affidavit stating the date the error was first discovered, shall be accompanied by the corrected statement and shall be filed as soon as practical after discovery of the error. If filed on or after the date set by the administrative patent judge for service of preliminary statements, the motion shall also show that correction of the error is essential to the interest of justice.

(b) When a party cannot attach a copy of a drawing or written description to the party's preliminary statement as required by § 1.623(c), § 1.624(c) or § 1.625(c), the party shall show good cause and explain in the preliminary statement why a copy of the drawing or written description cannot be attached to the preliminary statement and shall attach to the preliminary statement the earliest drawing or written description made in or introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country which is available. The party shall file a motion (§ 1.635) to amend its preliminary statement promptly after the first drawing, first written description, or drawing or written description first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country becomes available. A copy of the drawing or written description may be obtained, where appropriate, by a motion (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687 or during a testimony period.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.629 Effect of preliminary statement.

(a) A party shall be strictly held to any date alleged in the preliminary statement. Doubts as to definiteness or sufficiency of any allegation in a preliminary statement or compliance with formal requirements will be resolved against the party filing the statement by restricting the party to its effective filing date or to the latest date of a period alleged in the preliminary statement, as may be appropriate. A party may not correct a preliminary statement except as provided by § 1.628.

(b) Evidence which shows that an act alleged in the preliminary statement occurred prior to the date alleged in the statement shall establish only that the act occurred as early as the date alleged in the statement.

(c) If a party does not file a preliminary statement, the party:

(1) Shall be restricted to the party's effective filing date and

(2) Will not be permitted to prove that:

(i) The party made the invention prior to the party's filing date or

(ii) Any opponent derived the invention from the party.

(d) If a party files a preliminary statement which contains an allegation of a date of first drawing or first written description and the party does not file a copy of the first drawing or written description with the preliminary statement as required by § 1.623(c), § 1.624(c), or § 1.625(c), the party will be restricted to the party's effective filing date as to that allegation unless the party complies with § 1.628(b). The content of any drawing or written description submitted with a preliminary statement will not normally be evaluated or considered by the Board.

(e) A preliminary statement shall not be used as evidence on behalf of the party filing the statement.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.630 Reliance on earlier application.

A party shall not be entitled to rely on the filing date of an earlier filed application unless the earlier application is identified (§ 1.611(c)(5)) in the notice declaring the interference or the party files a preliminary motion under § 1.633 seeking the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.631 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, concurrently with entry of a decision on preliminary motions filed under § 1.633 any preliminary statement filed under § 1.621(a) shall be opened to inspection by the senior party and any junior party who filed a preliminary statement. Within a time set by the administrative

patent judge, a party shall serve a copy of its preliminary statement on each opponent who served a notice under § 1.621(b).

(b) A junior party who does not file a preliminary statement shall not have access to the preliminary statement of any other party.

(c) If an interference is terminated before the preliminary statements have been opened, the preliminary statements will remain sealed and will be returned to the respective parties who submitted the statements.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.632 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression or concealment by opponent.

A notice shall be filed by a party who intends to argue that an opponent has abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice (35 U.S.C. 102(g)). A party will not be permitted to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by an opponent unless the notice is timely filed. Unless authorized otherwise by an administrative patent judge, a notice is timely when filed within ten (10) days after the close of the testimony-in-chief of the opponent.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.633 Preliminary motions.

A party may file the following preliminary motions:

(a) A motion for judgment against an opponent's claim designated to correspond to a count on the ground that the claim is not patentable to the opponent. The motion shall separately address each claim alleged to be unpatentable. In deciding an issue raised in a motion filed under this paragraph (a), a claim will be construed in light of the specification of the application or patent in which it appears. A motion under this paragraph shall not be based on:

(1) Priority of invention by the moving party as against any opponent or

(2) Derivation of the invention by an opponent from the moving party. See § 1.637(a).

(b) A motion for judgment on the ground that there is no interference-in-fact. A motion under this paragraph is proper only if the interference involves a design application or patent or a plant application or patent or no claim of a party which corresponds to a count is identical to any claim of an opponent which corresponds to that count. See § 1.637(a). When claims of different parties are presented in "means plus function" format, it may be possible for the claims of the different parties not to define the same patentable invention even though the claims contain the same literal wording.

(c) A motion to redefine the interfering subject matter by (1) adding or substituting a count, (2) amending an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim in the moving party's application to be designated to correspond to a count, (3) designating an application or patent claim to correspond to a count, (4) designating an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count, or (5) requiring an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and to designate the claim to correspond to a count. See § 1.637 (a) and (c).

(d) A motion to substitute a different application owned by a party for an application involved in the interference. See § 1.637 (a) and (d).

(e) A motion to declare an additional interference (1) between an additional application not involved in the interference and owned by a party and an opponent's application or patent involved in the interference or (2) when an interference involves three or more parties, between less than all applications and any patent involved in the interference. See § 1.637 (a) and (e).

(f) A motion to be accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application. See § 1.637(a) and (f).

(g) A motion to attack the benefit accorded an opponent in the notice declaring the interference of the filing date of an earlier filed application. See § 1.637(a) and (g).

(h) When a patent is involved in an interference and the patentee has on file or files an application for reissue under § 1.171, a motion to add the application for reissue to the interference. See § 1.637 (a) and (h).

(i) When a motion is filed under paragraph (a), (b), or (g) of this section, an opponent, in addition to opposing the motion, may file a motion to redefine the interfering subject matter under paragraph (c) of this section, a motion to substitute a different application under paragraph (d) of this section, or a motion to add a reissue application to the interference under paragraph (h) of this section.

(j) When a motion is filed under paragraph (c)(1) of this section an opponent, in addition to opposing the motion, may file a motion for benefit under paragraph (f) of this section as to the count to be added or substituted.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.634 Motion to correct inventorship.

A party may file a motion to (a) amend its application involved in an interference to correct inventorship as provided by § 1.48 or (b) correct inventorship of its patent involved in an interference as provided in § 1.324. See § 1.637(a).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.635 Miscellaneous motions.

A party seeking entry of an order relating to any matter other than a matter which may be raised under § 1.633 or § 1.634 may file a motion requesting entry of the order. See § 1.637 (a) and (b).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.636 Motions, time for filing.

(a) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(a) through (h) shall be filed within a time period set by an administrative patent judge.

(b) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(i) or (j) shall be filed within 20 days of the service of the preliminary motion under § 1.633(a), (b), (c)(1), or (g) unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(c) A motion under § 1.634 shall be diligently filed after an error is discovered in the inventorship of an application or patent involved in an interference unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(d) A motion under § 1.635 shall be filed as specified in this subpart or when appropriate unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.637 Content of motions.

(a) A party filing a motion has the burden of proof to show that it is entitled to the relief sought in the motion. Each motion shall include a statement of the precise relief requested, a statement of the material facts in support of the motion, in numbered paragraphs, and a full statement of the reasons why the relief requested should be granted. If a party files a motion for judgment under § 1.633(a) against an opponent based on the ground of unpatentability over prior art, and the dates of the cited prior art are such that the prior art appears to be applicable to the party, it will be presumed, without regard to the dates alleged in the preliminary statement of the party, that the cited prior art is applicable to the party unless there is included with the motion an explanation, and evidence if appropriate, as to why the prior art does not apply to the party.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, a motion under § 1.635 shall contain a certificate by the moving party stating that the moving party has conferred with all opponents in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion. The certificate shall indicate whether any opponent plans to oppose the motion. The provisions of this paragraph do not apply to a motion to suppress evidence (§ 1.656(h)).

(c) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(c) shall explain why the interfering subject matter should be redefined.

(1) A preliminary motion seeking to add or substitute a count shall:

(i) Propose each count to be added or substituted.

(ii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.

(iii) Identify all claims in an opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claims to the opponent and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(iv) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.

(v) Show that each proposed count defines a separate patentable invention from every other count proposed to remain in the interference.

(vi) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit of the earlier filed application is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(vii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(2) A preliminary motion seeking to amend an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim to be designated to correspond to a count shall:

(i) Propose an amended or added claim.

(ii) Show that the claim proposed to be amended or added defines the same patentable invention as the count.

(iii) Show the patentability to the applicant of each claim proposed to be amended or added and apply the terms of the claim proposed to be amended or added to the disclosure of the application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion a proposed amendment to the application amending the claim corresponding to the count or adding the proposed additional claim to the application.

(3) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim to correspond to a count shall:

(i) Identify the claim and the count.

(ii) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as another claim whose designation as corresponding to the count the moving party does not dispute.

(4) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count shall:

(i) Identify the claim and the count.

(ii) Show that the claim does not defined the same patentable invention as any other claim whose designation in the notice declaring the interference as corresponding to the count the party does not dispute.

(5) A preliminary motion seeking to require an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and designate the claim as corresponding to a count shall:

(i) Propose a claim to be added by the opponent.

(ii) Show the patentability to the opponent of the claim and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(iii) Identify the count to which the claim shall be designated to correspond.

(iv) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as the count to which it will be designated to correspond.

(d) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(d) to substitute a different application of the moving party shall:

(1) Identify the different application.

(2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the different application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.

(3) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the different application which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the different application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding a claim to the different application.

(e) A preliminary motion to declare an additional interference under § 1.633(e) shall explain why an additional interference is necessary.

(1) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(1), the motion shall:

(i) Identify the additional application.

(ii) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the additional application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.

(iii) Propose a count for the additional interference.

(iv) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the additional application which correspond to each proposed count for the additional interference and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the additional application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any claim to the additional application.

(v) When the opponent is an applicant, show the patentability to the opponent of any claims in, or proposed to be added to, the opponent's application which correspond to the proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(vi) Identify all claims in the opponent's application or patent which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if the opponent's application does not contain any such claim, the motion shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application.

(vii) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts of the interference in which the motion is filed.

(viii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(ix) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(2) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(2), the motion shall:

(i) Identify any application or patent to be involved in the additional interference.

(ii) Propose a count for the additional interference.

(iii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.

(iv) Identify all claims in any opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claim to the opponent and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(v) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.

(vi) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts in the interference in which the motion is filed.

(vii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(viii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(f) A preliminary motion for benefit under § 1.633(f) shall:

(1) Identify the earlier application.

(2) When an earlier application is an application filed in the United States, certify that a complete copy of the file of the earlier application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents. When the earlier application is an application filed in a foreign country, certify that a copy of the application has been served on all opponents. If the earlier filed application is not in English, the requirements of § 1.647 must also be met.

(3) Show that the earlier application constitutes a constructive reduction to practice of each count.

(g) A preliminary motion to attack benefit under § 1.633(g) shall explain, as to each count, why an opponent should not be accorded the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

(h) A preliminary motion to add an application for reissue under § 1.633(h) shall:

(1) Identify the application for reissue.

(2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the application for reissue has been served on all opponents.

(3) Show the patentability of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the application for reissue which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the application for reissue; when necessary a moving applicant for reissue shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application for reissue.

(4) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit is desired.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any opposition to any motion shall be filed within 20 days after service of the motion. An opposition shall identify any material fact set forth in the motion which is in dispute and include an argument why the relief requested in the motion should be denied.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any reply shall be filed within 15 days after service of the opposition. A reply shall be directed only to new points raised in the opposition.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14525, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (c) through (g) of this section, proof of any material fact alleged in a motion, opposition, or reply must be filed and served with the motion, opposition, or reply unless the proof relied upon is part of the interference file or the file of any patent or application involved in the interference or any earlier application filed in the United States of which a party has been accorded or seeks to be accorded benefit.

(b) Proof may be in the form of patents, printed publications, and affidavits. The pages of any affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers, which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits in the event they are included in the party's record (§ 1.653). Any patents and printed publications submitted under this paragraph and any exhibits identified in affidavits submitted under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers in the event the patents, printed publications and exhibits are filed with the party's record (§ 1.653).

(c) If a party believes that additional evidence in the form of testimony that is unavailable to the party is necessary to support or oppose a preliminary motion under § 1.633 or a motion to correct inventorship under § 1,634, the party shall describe the nature of any proposed testimony as specified in paragraphs (d) through (g) of this section. If the administrative patent judge finds that testimony is needed to decide the motion, the administrative patent judge may grant appropriate interlocutory relief and enter an order authorizing the taking of testimony and deferring a decision on the motion to final hearing.

(d) When additional evidence in the form of expert-witness testimony is needed in support of or opposition to a preliminary motion, the moving party or opponent should:

(1) Identify the person whom it expects to use as an expert;

(2) State the field in which the person is alleged to be an expert; and

(3) State:

(i) The subject matter on which the person is expected to testify;

(ii) The facts and opinions to which the person is expected to testify; and

(iii) A summary of the grounds and basis for each opinion.

(e) When additional evidence in the form of fact-witness testimony is necessary, state the facts to which the witness is expected to testify.

(f) If the opponent is to be called, or if evidence in the possession of the opponent is necessary, explain the evidence sought, what it will show, and why it is needed.

(g) When inter partes tests are to be performed, describe the tests stating what they will be expected to show.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14525, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, redeclaration of interference, order to show cause.

(a) A hearing on a motion may be held in the discretion of the administrative patent judge. The administrative patent judge shall set the date and time for any hearing. The length of oral argument at a hearing on a motion is a matter within the discretion of the administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may direct that a hearing take place by telephone.

(b) Unless an administrative patent judge or the Board is of the opinion that an earlier decision on a preliminary motion would materially advance the resolution of the interference, decision on a preliminary motion shall be deferred to final hearing. Motions not deferred to final hearing will be decided by an administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may consult with an examiner in deciding motions. An administrative patent judge may take up motions for decisions in any order, may grant, deny, or dismiss any motion, and may take such other action which will secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of the interference. A matter raised by a party in support of or in opposition to a motion that is deferred to final hearing will not be entitled to consideration at final hearing unless the matter is raised in the party's brief at final hearing. If the administrative patent judge determines that the interference shall proceed to final hearing on the issue of priority or derivation, a time shall be set for each party to file a paper identifying any decisions on motions or on matters raised sua sponte by the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed at final hearing as well as identifying any deferred motions that the party wishes to have considered at final hearing. Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered with respect to the decisions and deferred motions identified by the party or by an opponent for consideration or review at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under § 1,671(e) during the testimony-in-chief period of the party.

(1) When appropriate after the time expires for filing replies to oppositions to preliminary motions, the administrative patent judge will set a time for filing any amendment to an application involved in the interference and for filing a supplemental preliminary statement as to any new counts which may become involved in the interference if a preliminary motion to amend or substitute a count has been filed. Failure or refusal of a party to timely present an amendment required by an administrative patent judge shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by that party of the invention involved. A supplemental preliminary statement shall meet the requirements specified in § § 1.623, 1.624, 1.625, or 1.626, but need not be filed if a party states that it intends to rely on a preliminary statement previously filed under § 1.621(a). At an appropriate time in the interference, and when necessary, an order will be entered redeclaring the interference.

(2) After the time expires for filing preliminary motions, a further preliminary motion under § 1.633 will not be considered except as provided by § 1.645(b).

(c) When a decision on any motion under § § 1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 or on any matter raised sua sponte by an administrative patent judge is entered which does not result in the issuance of an order to show cause under paragraph (d) of this section, a party may file a request for reconsideration within 14 days after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall be filed and served by hand or Express Mail. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not stay any time period set by the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. A decision ordinarily will not be modified unless an opposition has been requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. The request for reconsideration normally will be acted on by the administrative patent judge or the panel of the Board which issued the decision.

(d) An administrative patent judge may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against a party when:

(1) A decision on a motion or on a matter raised sua sponte by an administrative patent judge is entered which is dispositive of the interference against the party as to any count;

(2) The party is a junior party who fails to file a preliminary statement; or

(3) The party is a junior party whose preliminary statement fails to overcome the effective filing date of another party.

(e) When an order to show cause is issued under paragraph (d) of this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party against whom the order issued files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order.

(1) If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the paper may:

(i) Request that final hearing be set to review any decision which is the basis for the order as well as any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at final hearing or

(ii) Fully explain why judgment should not be entered.

(2) Any opponent may file a response to the paper within 20 days of the date of service of the paper. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the party's paper includes a request for final hearing, the opponent's response must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the paper does not include a request for final hearing, the opponent's response may include a request for final hearing, which must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. Where only the opponent's response includes a request for a final hearing, the party filing the paper shall, within 14 days from the date of service of the opponent's response, file a reply identifying any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing.

(3) The paper or the response should be accompanied by a motion (§ 1.635) requesting a testimony period if either party wishes to introduce any evidence to be considered at final hearing (§ 1.671). Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered with respect to the decisions and deferred motions identified for consideration or review at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under § 1.671(e) during the testimony period of the party. A request for a testimony period shall be construed as including a request for final hearing.

(4) If the paper contains an explanation of why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order, and if no party has requested a final hearing, the decision that is the basis for the order shall be reviewed based on the contents of the paper and the response. If the paper fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment against the party against whom the order issued.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14525, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.

(a) During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of a reason why a claim designated to correspond to a count may not be patentable, the administrative patent judge may enter an order notifying the parties of the reason and set a time within which each party may present its views, including any argument and any supporting evidence, and, in the case of the party whose claim may be unpatentable, any appropriate preliminary motions under § § 1.633(c), (d) and (h).

(b) If a party timely files a preliminary motion in response to the order of the administrative patent judge, any opponent may file an opposition (§ 1.638(a)). If an opponent files an opposition, the party may reply (§ 1.638(b)).

(c) After considering any timely filed views, including any timely filed preliminary motions under § 1.633, oppositions and replies, the administrative patent judge shall decide how the interference shall proceed.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14526, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.

During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of an application or a patent not involved in the interference which claims the same patentable invention as a count in the interference, the administrative patent judge may add the application or patent to the interference on such terms as may be fair to all parties.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14526, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.

(a) An assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of the entire interest in an application or patent involved in an interference is entitled to conduct prosecution of the interference to the exclusion of the inventor.

(b) An assignee of a part interest in an application or patent involved in an interference may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order authorizing it to prosecute the interference. The motion shall show the inability or refusal of the inventor to prosecute the interference or other cause why it is in the interest of justice to permit the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference. The administrative patent judge may allow the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference upon such terms as may be appropriate.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.644 Petitions in interferences.

(a) There is no appeal to the Commissioner in an interference from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board. The Commissioner will not consider a petition in an interference unless:

(1) The petition is from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board and the administrative patent judge or the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision involves a controlling question of procedure or an interpretation of a rule as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and that an immediate decision on petition by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the interference;

(2) The petition seeks to invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner and does not relate to the merits of priority of invention or patentability or the admissibility of evidence under the Federal Rules of Evidence; or

(3) The petition seeks relief under § 1.183.

(b) A petition under paragraph (a)(1) of this section filed more than 15 days after the date of the decision of the administrative patent judge or the Board may be dismissed as untimely. A petition under paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall not be filed prior to the party's brief for final hearing (see § 1.656). Any petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be timely if it is filed simultaneously with a proper motion under § § 1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 when granting the motion would require waiver of a rule. Any opposition to a petition under paragraphs (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition. Any opposition to a petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition or the date an opposition to the motion is due, whichever is earlier.

(c) The filing of a petition shall not stay the proceeding unless a stay is granted in the discretion of the administrative patent judge, the Board, or the Commissioner.

(d) Any petition must contain a statement of the facts involved, in numbered paragraphs, and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the administrative patent judge or the Board, and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record in the interference shall not be submitted with the petition or opposition.

(e) Any petition under paragraph (a) of this section shall be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

(f) Any request for reconsideration of a decision by the Commissioner shall be filed within 14 days of the decision of the Commissioner and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h). No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by the Commissioner. The decision will not ordinarily be modified unless such an opposition has been requested by the Commissioner.

(g) Where reasonably possible, service of any petition, opposition, or request for reconsideration shall be such that delivery is accomplished within one working day. Service by hand or Express Mail complies with this paragraph.

(h) An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(i) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office employees the determination of petitions under this section.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.645 Extension of time, late papers, stay of proceedings.

(a) Except to extend the time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action, a party may file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking an extension of time to take action in an interference. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action. The motion shall be filed within sufficient time to actually reach the administrative patent judge before expiration of the time for taking action. A moving party should not assume that the motion will be granted even if there is no objection by any other party. The motion will be denied unless the moving party shows good cause why an extension should be granted. The press of other business arising after an administrative patent judge sets a time for taking action will not normally constitute good cause. A motion seeking additional time to take testimony because a party has not been able to procure the testimony of a witness shall set forth the name of the witness, any steps taken to procure the testimony of the witness, the dates on which the steps were taken, and the facts expected to be proved through the witness.

(b) Any paper belatedly filed will not be considered except upon notion (§ 1.635) which shows good cause why the paper was not timely filed, or where an administrative patent judge or the Board, sua sponte, is of the opinion that it would be in the interest of justice to consider the paper. See § 1.304(a) for exclusive procedures relating to belated filing of a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or belated commencement of a civil action.

(c) The provisions of § 1.136 do not apply to time periods in interferences.

(d) An administrative patent judge may stay proceedings in an interference.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.

(a) A copy of every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in an interference or an application or patent involved in the interference shall be served upon all other parties except:

(1) Preliminary statements when filed under § 1.621; preliminary statements shall be served when service is ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(2) Certified transcripts and exhibits which accompany the transcripts filed under § 1.676; copies of transcripts shall be served as part of a party's record under § 1.653(c).

(b) Service shall be on an attorney or agent for a party. If there is no attorney or agent for the party, service shall be on the party. An administrative patent judge may order additional service or waive service where appropriate.

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, or except as otherwise provided by this subpart, service of a paper shall be made as follows:

(1) By handing a copy of the paper or causing a copy of the paper to be handed to the person served.

(2) By leaving a copy of the paper with someone employed by the person at the person's usual place of business.

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy of the paper at the person's residence with someone of suitable age and discretion then residing therein.

(4) By mailing a copy of the paper by first class mail; when service is by first class mail the date of mailing is regarded as the date of service.

(5) By mailing a copy of the paper by Express Mail; when service is by Express Mail the date of deposit with the U.S. Postal Service is regarded as the date of service.

(6) When it is shown to the satisfaction of an administrative patent judge that none of the above methods of obtaining or serving the copy of the paper was successful, the administrative patent judge may order service by publication of an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette.

(d) An administrative patent judge may order that a paper be served by hand or Express Mail.

(e) The due date for serving a paper is the same as the due date for filing the paper in the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of service must be made before a paper will be considered in an interference. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to the paper. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service under paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(3) of this section, proof of service shall include the names of any person served and the person who made the service. Proof of service may be made by an acknowledgment of service by or on behalf of the person served or a statement signed by the party or the party's attorney or agent containing the information required by this section. A statement of an attorney or agent attached to, or appearing in, the paper stating the date and manner of service will be accepted as prima facie proof of service.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.

When a party relies on a document or is required to produce a document in a language other than English, a translation of the document into English and an affidavit attesting to the accuracy of the translation shall be filed with the document.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.651 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.

(a) At an appropriate stage in an interference, an administrative patent judge shall set a time for filing motions (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687(c) and testimony periods for taking any necessary testimony.

(b) Where appropriate, testimony periods will be set to permit a party to:

(1) Present its case-in-chief and/or case-in-rebuttal and/or

(2) Cross-examine an opponent's case-in-chief and/or a case-in-rebuttal.

(c) A party is not entitled to take testimony to present a case-in-chief unless:

(1) The administrative patent judge orders the taking of testimony under § 1.639(c);

(2) The party alleges in its preliminary statement a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the senior party;

(3) A testimony period has been set to permit an opponent to prove a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the party and the party has filed a preliminary statement alleging a date of invention prior to that date; or

(4) A motion (§ 1.635) is filed showing good cause why a testimony period should be set.

(d) Testimony, including any testimony to be taken in a place outside the United States, shall be taken and completed during the testimony periods set under paragraph (a) of this section. A party seeking to extend the period for taking testimony must comply with § § 1.635 and 1.645(a).

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 42529, Aug. 28, 1991; 56 FR 46823, Sept. 16, 1991; 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.652 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.

If a junior party fails to timely take testimony authorized under § 1.651, or file a record under § 1.653(c), an administrative patent judge, with or without a motion (§ 1.635) by another party, may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against the junior party. When an order is issued under this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 15 days after the date of the order, the junior party files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order. Any other party may

file a response to the paper within 15 days of the date of service of the paper. If the party against whom the order was issued fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment against the party.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.653 Record and exhibits.

(a) Testimony shall consist of affidavits under § § 1.672 (b), (c) and (g), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) and 1.688(b), transcripts of depositions under § § 1.671(g) and 1.672(a) when a deposition is authorized by an administrative patent judge, transcripts of depositions under § § 1.672(d), 1.682(d), 1.683(c) and 1.688(c), agreed statements under § 1.672(h), transcripts of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories, and recorded answers and copies of written interrogatories and answers and written requests for admissions and answers under § 1.688(a).

(b) An affidavit shall be filed as set forth in § 1.677. A certified transcript of a deposition, including a deposition cross-examining an affiant, shall be filed as set forth in § § 1.676, 1.677 and 1.678. An original agreed statement shall be filed as set forth in § 1.672(h).

(c) In addition to the items specified in paragraph (b) of this section and within a time set by an administrative patent judge, each party shall file three copies and serve one copy of a record consisting of:

(1) An index of the names of the witnesses for the party, giving the pages of the record where the direct testimony and cross-examination of each witness begins.

(2) An index of exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the page of the record where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(3) The count or counts.

(4) Each affidavit by a witness for the party, transcript, including transcripts of cross-examination of any affiant who testified for the party and transcripts of compelled deposition testimony by a witness for the party, agreed statement relied upon by the party, and transcript of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories and recorded answers.

(5) [Removed and reserved. See 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995.]

(6) Any evidence from another interference, proceeding, or action relied upon by the party under § 1.683.

(7) Each request for an admission and the admission and each written interrogatory and the answer upon which a party intends to rely under § 1.688.

(d) The pages of the record shall be consecutively numbered to the extent possible.

(e) The name of each witness shall appear at the top of each page of each affidavit or transcript.

(f) [Removed and reserved. See 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995.]

(g) The record may be produced by standard typographical printing or by any other process capable of producing a clear black permanent image. All printed matter except on covers must appear in at least 11 point type on opaque, unglazed paper. Footnotes may not be printed in type smaller than 9 point. The page size shall be 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inches) (letter size) with printed matter 16.5 by 24.1 cm. (6 1/2 by 9 1/2 inches). The record shall be bound with covers at their left edges in such manner as to lie flat when open to any page and in one or more volumes of convenient size (approximately 100 pages per volume is suggested). When there is more than one volume, the numbers of the pages contained in each volume shall appear at the top of the cover for each volume.

(h) [Removed and reserved. See 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995.]

(i) Each party shall file its exhibits with the record specified in paragraph (c) of this section. Exhibits include documents and things identified in affidavits or on the record during the taking of oral depositions as well as official records and publications filed by the party under § 1.682(a). One copy of each documentary exhibit shall be served. Documentary exhibits shall be filed in an envelope or folder and shall not be bound as part of the record. Physical exhibits, if not filed by an officer under § 1.676(d), shall be filed with the record. Each exhibit shall contain a label which identifies the party submitting the exhibit and an exhibit number, the style of the interference (e.g., Jones v. Smith), and the interference number. Where possible, the label should appear at the bottom right-hand corner of each documentary exhibit. Upon termination of an interference, an administrative patent judge may return an exhibit to the party filing the exhibit. When any exhibit is returned, an order shall be entered indicating that the exhibit has been returned.

(j) Any testimony, record, or exhibit which does not comply with this section may be returned under § 1.618(a).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.654 Final hearing.

(a) At an appropriate stage of the interference, the parties will be given an opportunity to appear before the Board to present oral argument at a final hearing. An administrative patent judge may set a date and time for final hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, each party will be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at final hearing. A party who does not file a brief for final hearing (§ 1.656(a)) shall not be entitled to appear at final hearing.

(b) The opening argument of a junior party shall include a fair statement of the junior party's case and the junior party's position with respect to the case presented on behalf of any other party. A junior party may reserve a portion of its time for rebuttal.

(c) A party shall not be entitled to argue that an opponent abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice unless a notice under § 1.632 was timely filed.

(d) After final hearing, the interference shall be taken under advisement by the Board. No further paper shall be filed except under § 1.658(b) or as authorized by an administrative patent judge or the Board. No additional oral argument shall be had unless ordered by the Board.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.655 Matters considered in rendering a final decision.

(a) In rendering a final decision, the Board may consider any properly raised issue, including priority of invention, derivation by an opponent from a party who filed a preliminary statement under § 1.625, patentability of the invention, admissibility of evidence, any interlocutory matter deferred to final hearing, and any other matter necessary to resolve the interference. The Board may also consider whether an interlocutory order should be modified. The burden of showing that an interlocutory order should be modified shall be on the party attacking the order. The abuse of discretion standard shall apply only to procedural matters.

(b) A party shall not be entitled to raise for consideration at final hearing any matter which properly could have been raised by a motion under § § 1.633 or 1.634 unless the matter was properly raised in a motion that was timely filed by the party under § § 1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was denied or deferred to final hearing, the matter was properly raised by the party in a timely filed opposition to a motion under § § 1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was granted over the opposition or deferred to final hearing, or the party shows good cause why the issue was not properly raised by a timely filed motion or opposition. A party that fails to contest, by way of a timely filed preliminary motion under § 1.633(c), the designation of a claim as corresponding to a count, or fails to timely argue the separate patentability of a particular claim when the ground for unpatentability is first raised, may not subsequently argue to an administrative patent judge or the Board the separate patentability of claims designated to correspond to the count with respect to that ground.

(c) In the interest of justice, the Board may exercise its discretion to consider an issue even though it would not otherwise be entitled to consideration under this section.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995; 64 FR 12900, 12901, Mar. 16, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 12900, 12901, Mar. 16, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective Mar. 16, 1999.]

§ 1.656 Briefs for final hearing.

(a) Each party shall be entitled to file briefs for final hearing. The administrative patent judge shall determine the briefs needed and shall set the time and order for filing briefs.

(b) The opening brief of a junior party shall contain under appropriate headings and in the order indicated:

(1) A statement of interest indicating the full name of every party represented by the attorney in the interference and the name of the real party in interest if the party named in the caption is not the real party in interest.

(2) A statement of related cases indicating whether the interference was previously before the Board for final hearing and the name and number of any related appeal or interference which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the Board, or which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a district court in a proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 146. A related appeal or interference is one which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending interference.

(3) A table of contents, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), statutes, and other authorities cited, with references to the pages of the brief where they are cited.

(4) A statement of the issues presented for decision in the interference.

(5) A statement of the facts, in numbered paragraphs, relevant to the issues presented for decision with appropriate references to the record.

(6) An argument, which may be preceded by a summary, which shall contain the contentions of the party with respect to the issues it is raising for consideration at final hearing, and the reasons therefor, with citations to the cases, statutes, other authorities, and parts of the record relied on.

(7) A short conclusion stating the precise relief requested.

(8) An appendix containing a copy of the counts.

(c) The opening brief of the senior party shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section except:

(1) A statement of the issues and of the facts need not be made unless the party is dissatisfied with the statement in the opening brief of the junior party and

(2) An appendix containing a copy of the counts need not be included if the copy of the counts in the opening brief of the junior party is correct.

(d) Unless ordered otherwise by an administrative patent judge, briefs shall be double-spaced (except for footnotes, which may be single-spaced) and shall comply with the requirements of § 1.653(g) for records except the requirement for binding.

(e) An original and four copies of each brief must be filed.

(f) Any brief which does not comply with the requirements of this section may be returned under § 1.618(a).

(g) Any party, separate from its opening brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file an original and four copies of concise proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law. Any proposed findings of fact shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by specific references to the record. Any proposed conclusions of law shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by citation of cases, statutes, or other authority. Any opponent, separate from its opening or reply brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file a paper accepting or objecting to any proposed findings of fact or conclusions of law; when objecting, a reason must be given. The Board may adopt the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law in whole or in part.

(h) If a party wants the Board in rendering its final decision to rule on the admissibility of any evidence, the party shall file with its opening brief an original and four copies of a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the evidence. The provisions of § 1.637(b) do not apply to a motion to suppress under this paragraph. Any objection previously made to the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent is waived unless the motion required by this paragraph is filed. A party that failed to challenge the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under § 1.672(c), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) or 1.688(b) may not move under this paragraph to suppress the evidence on that ground at final hearing. An original and four copies of an opposition to the motion may be filed with an opponent's opening brief or reply brief as may be appropriate.

(i) When a junior party fails to timely file an opening brief, an order may issue requiring the junior party to show cause why the Board should not treat failure to file the brief as a concession of priority. If the junior party fails to show good cause within a time period set in the order, judgment may be entered against the junior party.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.657 Burden of proof as to date of invention.

(a) A rebuttable presumption shall exist that, as to each count, the inventors made their invention in the chronological order of their effective filing dates. The burden of proof shall be upon a party who contends otherwise.

(b) In an interference involving copending applications or involving a patent and an application having an effective filing date on or before the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by a preponderance of the evidence.

(c) In an interference involving an application and a patent and where the effective filing date of the application is after the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by clear and convincing evidence.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.658 Final decision.

(a) After final hearing, the Board shall enter a decision resolving the issues raised at final hearing. The decision may enter judgment, in whole or in part, remand the interference to an administrative patent judge for further proceedings, or take further action not inconsistent with law. A judgment as to a count shall state whether or not each party is entitled to a patent containing the claims in the party's patent or application which correspond to the count. When the Board enters a decision awarding judgment as to all counts, the decision shall be regarded as a final decision for the purpose of judicial review (35 U.S.C. 141-144, 146) unless a request for reconsideration under paragraph (b) of this section is timely filed.

(b) Any request for reconsideration of a decision under paragraph (a) of this section shall be filed within one month after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. Any opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed within 14 days of the date of service of the request for reconsideration. Service of the request for reconsideration shall be by hand or Express Mail. The Board shall enter a decision on the request for reconsideration. If the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision on the request for reconsideration significantly modifies its original decision under paragraph (a) of this section, the Board may designate the decision on the request for reconsideration as a new decision. A decision on reconsideration is a final decision for the purpose of judicial review (35 U.S.C. 141-144, 146).

(c) A judgment in an interference settles all issues which (1) were raised and decided in the interference, (2) could have been properly raised and decided in the interference by a motion under § 1.633 (a) through (d) and (f) through (j) or § 1.634 and (3) could have been properly raised and decided in an additional interference with a motion under § 1.633(e). A losing party who could have properly moved, but failed to move, under § § 1.633 or 1.634, shall be estopped to take ex parte or inter partes action in the Patent and Trademark Office after the interference which is inconsistent with that party's failure to properly move, except that a losing party shall not be estopped with respect to any claims which correspond, or properly could have corresponded, to a count as to which that party was awarded a favorable judgment.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.659 Recommendation.

(a) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for rejecting any application claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommended rejection of the claim. Upon resumption of ex parte prosecution of the application, the examiner shall be bound by the recommendation and shall enter and maintain the recommended rejection unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record is filed which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the recommended rejection.

(b) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for reexamination of a patent involved in the interference as to a patent claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommendation to the Commissioner that the patent be reexamined. The Commissioner will determine whether reexamination will be ordered.

(c) The Board may make any other recommendation to the examiner or the Commissioner as may be appropriate.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.660 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.

(a) When a request for reexamination of a patent involved in an interference is filed, the patent owner shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the request was filed.

(b) When an application for reissue is filed by a patentee involved in an interference, the patentee shall notify the Board within 10 days of the day the application for reissue is filed.

(c) When a protest under § 1.291 is filed against an application involved in an interference, the applicant shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the protest was filed.

(d) A party in an interference shall notify the Board promptly of any litigation related to any patent or application involved in an interference, including any civil action commenced under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(e) The notice required by this section is designed to assist the administrative patent judge and the Board in efficiently handling interference cases. Failure of a party to comply with the provisions of this section may result in sanctions under § 1.616. Knowledge by, or notice to, an employee of the Office other than an employee of the Board, of the existence of the reexamination, application for reissue, protest, or litigation shall not be sufficient. The notice contemplated by this section is notice addressed to the administrative patent judge in charge of the interference in which the application or patent is involved.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.661 Termination of interference after judgment.

After a final decision is entered by the Board, an interference is considered terminated when no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.662 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.

(a) A party may, at any time during an interference, request and agree to entry of an adverse judgment. The filing by a party of a written disclaimer of the invention defined by a count, concession of priority or unpatentability of the subject matter of a count, abandonment of the invention defined by a count, or abandonment of the contest as to a count will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant or patentee as to all claims which correspond to the count. Abandonment of an application, other than an application for reissue having a claim of the patent sought to be reissued involved in the interference, will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant as to all claims corresponding to all counts. Upon the filing by a party of a request for entry of an adverse judgment, the Board may enter judgment against the party.

(b) If a patentee involved in an interference files an application for reissue during the interference and the reissue application does not include a claim that corresponds to a count, judgment may be entered against the patentee. A patentee who files an application for reissue which includes a claim that corresponds to a count shall, in addition to complying with the provisions of § 1.660(b), timely file a preliminary motion under § 1.633(h) or show good cause why the motion could not have been timely filed or would not be appropriate.

(c) The filing of a statutory disclaimer under 35 U.S.C. 253 by a patentee will delete any statutorily disclaimed claims from being involved in the interference. A statutory disclaimer will not be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the patentee unless it results in the deletion of all patent claims corresponding to a count.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.663 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.

Whenever an adverse judgment is entered as to a count against an applicant from which no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had, the claims of the application corresponding to the count stand finally disposed of without further action by the examiner. Such claims are not open to further ex parte prosecution.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.664 Action after interference.

(a) After termination of an interference, the examiner will promptly take such action in any application previously involved in the interference as may be necessary. Unless entered by order of an administrative patent judge, amendments presented during the interference shall not be entered, but may be subsequently presented by the applicant subject to the provisions of this subpart provided prosecution of the application is not otherwise closed.

(b) After judgment, the application of any party may be held subject to further examination, including an interference with another application.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.665 Second interference.

A second interference between the same parties will not be declared upon an application not involved in an earlier interference for an invention defined by a count of the earlier interference. See § 1.658(c).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.666 Filing of interference settlement agreements.

(a) Any agreement or understanding between parties to an interference, including any collateral agreements referred to therein, made in connection with or in contemplation of the termination of the interference, must be in writing and a true copy thereof must be filed before the termination of the interference (§ 1.661) as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.

(b) If any party filing the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section so requests, the copy will be kept separate from the file of the interference, and made available only to Government agencies on written request, or to any person upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and on a showing of good cause.

(c) Failure to file the copy of the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section will render permanently unenforceable such agreement or understanding and any patent of the parties involved in the interference or any patent subsequently issued on any application of the parties so involved. The Commissioner may, however, upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and on a showing of good cause for failure to file within the time prescribed, permit the filing of the agreement or understanding during the six month period subsequent to the termination of the interference as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 6904, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995; 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.671 Evidence must comply with rules.

(a) Evidence consists of affidavits, transcripts of depositions, documents and things.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, the Federal Rules of Evidence shall apply to interference proceedings. Those portions of the Federal Rules of Evidence relating to criminal actions, juries, and other matters not relevant to interferences shall not apply.

(c) Unless the context is otherwise clear, the following terms of the Federal Rules of Evidence shall be construed as follows:

(1) Courts of the United States, U.S. Magistrate, court, trial court, or trier of fact means administrative patent judge or Board as may be appropriate.

(2) Judge means administrative patent judge.

(3) Judicial notice means official notice.

(4) Civil action, civil proceeding, action, or trial, mean interference.

(5) Appellate court means United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a United States district court when judicial review is under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(6) Before the hearing in Rule 703 of the Federal Rules of Evidence means before giving testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(7) The trial or hearing in Rules 803(24) and 804(5) of the Federal Rules of Evidence means the taking of testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(d) Certification is not necessary as a condition to admissibility when the record is a record of the Patent and Trademark Office to which all parties have access.

(e) A party may not rely on an affidavit (including exhibits), patent, or printed publication previously submitted by the party under § 1.639(b) unless a copy of the affidavit, patent, or printed publication has been served and a written notice is filed prior to the close of the party's relevant testimony period stating that the party intends to rely on the affidavit, patent, or printed publication. When proper notice is given under this paragraph, the affidavit, patent, or printed publication shall be deemed as filed under § 1.640(b), § 1.640(e)(3), or § 1.672, as appropriate.

(f) The significance of documentary and other exhibits identified by a witness in an affidavit or during oral deposition shall be discussed with particularity by a witness.

(g) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things under 35 U.S.C. 24 or from an opposing party. The motion shall describe the general nature and the relevance of the testimony, document, or thing. If permission is granted, the party shall notice a deposition under § 1.673 and may proceed to take testimony.

(h) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things in a foreign country.

(1) In the case of testimony, the motion shall:

(i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the testimony;

(ii) Identify the witness by name or title;

(iii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes the witness can be compelled to testify in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel the testimony in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain the testimony; and

(iv) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to secure the agreement of the witness to testify in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining the agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of the witness to travel to and testify in the United States.

(2) In the case of production of a document or thing, the motion shall:

(i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the document or thing;

(ii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes production of the document or thing can be compelled in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel production of the document or thing in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain production of the document or thing; and

(iii) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to obtain the agreement of the individual or entity having possession, custody, or control of the document to produce the document or thing in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining that agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of producing the document or thing in the United States.

(i) Evidence which is not taken or sought and filed in accordance with this subpart shall not be admissible.

(j) The weight to be given deposition testimony taken in a foreign country will be determined in view of all the circumstances, including the laws of the foreign country governing the testimony. Little, if any, weight may be given to

deposition testimony taken in a foreign country unless the party taking the testimony proves by clear and convincing evidence, as a matter of fact, that knowingly giving false testimony in that country in connection with an interference proceeding in the United States Patent and Trademark Office is punishable under the laws of that country and that the punishment in that country for such false testimony is comparable to or greater than the punishment for perjury committed in the United States. The administrative patent judge and the Board, in determining foreign law, may consider any relevant material or source, including testimony, whether or not submitted by a party or admissible under the Federal Rules of Evidence.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995; 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000; 65 FR 70489, 70490, Nov. 24, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 70489, 70490, Nov. 24, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) and (e), effective Dec. 26, 2000.]

§ 1.672 Manner of taking testimony.

(a) Unless testimony must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country, testimony of a witness shall be taken by affidavit in accordance with this subpart. Testimony which must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country shall be taken by oral deposition.

(b) A party presenting testimony of a witness by affidavit shall, within the time set by the administrative patent judge for serving affidavits, file a copy of the affidavit or, if appropriate, notice under § 1.671(e). If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-chief. If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-rebuttal. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any document referred to in the affidavit unless a copy of the document is filed with the affidavit. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any thing mentioned in the affidavit unless the opponent is given reasonable access to the thing. A thing is something other than a document. The pages of affidavits filed under this paragraph and of any other testimony filed therewith under § § 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits and other testimony in the party's record to be filed under § 1.653. Exhibits identified in the affidavits or in any other testimony filed under § § 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) and any official records and printed publications filed under § 1.682(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The affidavits, testimony filed under § § 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where the testimony of each witness begins, and by an index of the exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the number of the page where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(c) If an opponent objects to the admissibility of any evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit filed under paragraph (b) of this section, the opponent must, no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for filing objections under this paragraph, file objections stating with particularity the nature of each objection. An opponent that fails to object to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files objections, the party may, within 20 days of the due date for filing objections, file one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications to overcome the objections. No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's testimony submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The page numbers assigned to the supplemental affidavits shall also serve as the record page numbers for the supplemental affidavits in the party's record filed under § 1.653. Additional exhibits identified in

supplemental affidavits and any supplemental official records and printed publications shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The exhibit numbers shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The supplemental affidavits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) After the time expires for filing objections and supplemental affidavits, or earlier when appropriate, the administrative patent judge shall set a time within which any opponent may file a request to cross-examine an affiant on oral deposition. If any opponents requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall notice a deposition at a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of the transcripts served under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's supplemental affidavits submitted under paragraph (c) of this section. The numbers assigned to the transcript pages shall also serve as the record page numbers for the transcripts in the party's record filed under § 1.653. Additional exhibits identified in the transcripts, shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. The exhibit numbers assigned to the additional exhibits shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when those exhibits are filed with the party's record. The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(e) [Reserved]

(f) When a deposition is authorized to be taken within the United States under this subpart and if the parties agree in writing, the deposition may be taken in any place within the United States, before any person authorized to administer oaths, upon any notice, and in any manner, and when so taken may be used like other depositions.

(g) If the parties agree in writing, the affidavit testimony of any witness may be submitted without opportunity for cross-examination.

(h) If the parties agree in writing, testimony may be submitted in the form of an agreed statement setting forth how a particular witness would testify, if called, or the facts in the case of one or more of the parties. The agreed statement shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. See § 1.653(a).

(i) In an unusual circumstance and upon a showing that testimony cannot be taken in accordance with the provisions of this subpart, an administrative patent judge upon motion (§ 1.635) may authorize testimony to be taken in another manner.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14531, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.673 Notice of examination of witness.

(a) A party authorized to take testimony of a witness by deposition shall, after complying with paragraphs (b) and (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each deposition to be taken. Depositions to be taken in the United States may be noticed for a reasonable time and place in the United States. A deposition may not be noticed for any other place without approval of an administrative patent judge. The notice shall

specify the name and address of each witness and the general nature of the testimony to be given by the witness. If the name of a witness is not known, a general description sufficient to identify the witness or a particular class or group to which the witness belongs may be given instead.

(b) Unless the parties agree or an administrative patent judge or the Board determine otherwise, a party shall serve, but not file, at least three working days prior to the conference required by paragraph (g) of this section, if service is made by hand or Express Mail, or at least 14 days prior to the conference if service is made by any other means, the following:

(1) A list and copy of each document in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition and

(2) A list of and a proffer of reasonable access to things in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition.

(c) A party shall not be permitted to rely on any witness not listed in the notice, or any document not served or any thing not listed as required by paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) Unless all opponents agree in writing or on the record to permit the party to rely on the witness, document or thing, or

(2) Except upon a motion (§ 1.635) promptly filed which is accompanied by any proposed notice, additional documents, or lists and which shows good cause why the notice, documents, or lists were not served in accordance with this section.

(d) Each opponent shall have a full opportunity to attend a deposition and cross-examine.

(e) A party who has presented testimony by affidavit and is required to notice depositions for the purpose of cross-examination under § 1.672(b), shall, after complying with paragraph (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each cross-examination deposition to be taken.

(f) The parties shall not take depositions in more than one place at the same time or so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity to travel from one place of deposition to another cannot be had.

(g) Before serving a notice of deposition and after complying with paragraph (b) of this section, a party shall have an oral conference with all opponents to attempt to agree on a mutually acceptable time and place for conducting the deposition. A certificate shall appear in the notice stating that the oral conference took place or explaining why the conference could not be had. If the parties cannot agree to a mutually acceptable place and time for conducting the deposition at the conference, the parties shall contact an administrative patent judge who shall then designate the time and place for conducting the deposition.

(h) A copy of the notice of deposition shall be attached to the certified transcript of the deposition filed under § 1.676(a).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14532, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.674 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.

(a) A deposition shall be taken before an officer authorized to administer oaths by the laws of the United States or of the place where the examination is held.

(b) Unless the parties agree in writing, the following persons shall not be competent to serve as an officer: (1) A relative or employee of a party, (2) a relative or employee of an attorney or agent of a party, or (3) a person interested, directly or indirectly, in the interference either as counsel, attorney, agent, or otherwise.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.675 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.

(a) Each witness before giving an oral deposition shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(b) The testimony shall be taken in answer to interrogatories with any questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer or by some other person, who shall be subject to the provisions of § 1.674(b), in the presence of the officer unless the presence of the officer is waived on the record by agreement of all parties.

(c) All objections made at the time of the deposition to the qualifications of the officer taking the deposition, the manner of taking it, the evidence presented, the conduct of any party, or any other objection to the proceeding shall be noted on the record by the officer. Evidence objected to shall be taken subject to any objection.

(d) Unless the parties agree in writing or waive reading and signature by the witness on the record at the deposition, when the testimony has been transcribed a transcript of the deposition shall, unless the witness refuses to read and/or sign the transcript of the deposition, be read by the witness and then signed by the witness in the form of:

(1) An affidavit in the presence of any notary or

(2) A declaration.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.676 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.

(a) The officer shall prepare a certified transcript of the deposition by attaching to a transcript of the deposition a copy of the notice of deposition, any exhibits to be annexed to the certified transcript, and a certificate signed and sealed by the officer and showing:

(1) The witness was duly sworn by the officer before commencement of testimony by the witness.

(2) The transcript is a true record of the testimony given by the witness.

(3) The name of the person by whom the testimony was recorded and, if not recorded by the officer, whether the testimony was recorded in the presence of the officer.

(4) The presence or absence of any opponent.

(5) The place where the deposition was taken and the day and hour when the deposition began and ended.

(6) The officer is not disqualified under § 1.674.

(b) If the parties waived any of the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the certificate shall so state.

(c) The officer shall note on the certificate the circumstances under which a witness refuses to sign a transcript.

(d) Unless the parties agree otherwise in writing or on the record at the deposition, the officer shall securely seal the certified transcript in an envelope endorsed with the style of the interference (e.g., Smith v. Jones), the interference number, the name of the witness, and the date of sealing and shall promptly forward the envelope to BOX INTERFERENCE, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231. Documents and things produced for inspection during the examination of a witness, shall, upon request of a party, be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript, and may be inspected and copied by any party, except that if the person producing the documents and things desires to retain them, the person may: (1) Offer copies to be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript and to serve thereafter as originals if the person affords to all parties fair opportunity to verify the copies by comparison with the originals or (2) offer the originals to be marked for identification, after giving to each party an opportunity to inspect and copy them, in which event the documents and things may be used in the same manner as if annexed to the certified transcript. The exhibits shall then be filed as specified in § 1.653(i). If the weight or bulk of a document or thing shall reasonably prevent the document or thing from being annexed to the certified transcript, it shall, unless waived on the record at the deposition by all parties, be authenticated by the officer and forwarded to the Commissioner in a separate package marked and addressed as provided in this paragraph.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.677 Form of an affidavit or a transcript of deposition.

(a) An affidavit or a transcript of a deposition must be on opaque, unglazed, durable paper approximately 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inches) in size (letter size). The printed matter shall be double-spaced on one side of the paper in not smaller than 11 point type with a margin of 3.8 cm. (1 1/2 inches) on the left-hand side of the page. The pages of each transcript must be consecutively numbered and the name of the witness shall appear at the top of each page (§ 1.653(e)). In transcripts of depositions, the questions propounded to each witness must be consecutively numbered unless paper with numbered lines is used and each question must be followed by its answer.

(b) Exhibits must be numbered consecutively to the extent possible and each must be marked as required by § 1.653(i).

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.678 Time for filing transcript of deposition.

Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, a certified transcript of a deposition must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within one month after the date of deposition. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, the administrative patent judge or the Board may take appropriate action under § 1.616. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, any opponent may move for leave to file the certified transcript and include a copy of the transcript as part of the opponent's record.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.679 Inspection of transcript.

A certified transcript of a deposition filed in the Patent and Trademark Office may be inspected by any party. The certified transcript may not be removed from the Patent and Trademark Office unless authorized by an administrative patent judge upon such terms as may be appropriate.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.682 [This section was removed and reserved. See 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000.]

§ 1.683 [This section was removed and reserved. See 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000.]

§ 1.684 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 1.685 Errors and irregularities in depositions.

(a) An error in a notice for taking a deposition is waived unless a motion (§ 1.635) to quash the notice is filed as soon as the error is, or could have been, discovered.

(b) An objection to a qualification of an officer taking a deposition is waived unless:

(1) The objection is made on the record of the deposition before a witness begins to testify.

(2) If discovered after the deposition, a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the objection is, or could have been, discovered.

(c) An error or irregularity in the manner in which testimony is transcribed, a certified transcript is signed by a witness, or a certified transcript is prepared, signed, certified, sealed, endorsed, forwarded, filed, or otherwise handled by the officer is waived unless a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the error or irregularity is, or could have been, discovered.

(d) An objection to the deposition on any grounds, such as the competency of a witness, admissibility of evidence, manner of taking the deposition, the form of questions and answers, any oath or affirmation, or conduct of any party at

the deposition, is waived unless an objection is made on the record at the deposition stating the specific ground of objection. Any objection which a party wishes considered by the Board at final hearing shall be included in a motion to suppress under § 1.656(h).

(e) Nothing in this section precludes taking notice of plain errors affecting substantial rights although they were not brought to the attention of an administrative patent judge or the Board.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; 60 FR 14534, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.687 Additional discovery.

(a) A party is not entitled to discovery except as authorized in this subpart.

(b) Where appropriate, a party may obtain production of documents and things during cross-examination of an opponent's witness or during the testimony period of the party's case-in-rebuttal.

(c) Upon a motion (§ 1.635) brought by a party within the time set by an administrative patent judge under § 1.651 or thereafter as authorized by § 1.645 and upon a showing that the interest of justice so requires, an administrative patent judge may order additional discovery, as to matters under the control of a party within the scope of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, specifying the terms and conditions of such additional discovery. See § 1.647 concerning translations of documents in a foreign language.

(d) The parties may agree to discovery among themselves at any time. In the absence of an agreement, a motion for additional discovery shall not be filed except as authorized by this subpart.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.688 [This section was removed and reserved. See 65 FR 56792, 56793, Sept. 20, 2000.]

§ 1.690 Arbitration of interferences.

(a) Parties to a patent interference may determine the interference or any aspect thereof by arbitration. Such arbitration shall be governed by the provisions of Title 9, United States Code. The parties must notify the Board in writing of their intention to arbitrate. An agreement to arbitrate must be in writing, specify the issues to be arbitrated, the name of the arbitrator or a date not more than thirty (30) days after the execution of the agreement for the selection of the arbitrator, and provide that the arbitrator's award shall be binding on the parties and that judgment thereon can be entered by the Board. A copy of the agreement must be filed within twenty (20) days after its execution. The parties shall be solely responsible for the selection of the arbitrator and the rules for conducting proceedings before the arbitrator. Issues not disposed of by the arbitration will be resolved in accordance with the procedures established in this subpart, as determined by the administrative patent judge.

(b) An arbitration proceeding under this section shall be conducted within such time as may be authorized on a case-by-case basis by an administrative patent judge.

(c) An arbitration award will be given no consideration unless it is binding on the parties, is in writing and states in a clear and definite manner the issue or issues arbitrated and the disposition of each issue. The award may include a statement of the grounds and reasoning in support thereof. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, the parties shall give notice to the Board of an arbitration award by filing within twenty (20) days from the date of the award a copy of the award signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. When an award is timely filed, the award shall, as to the parties to the arbitration, be dispositive of the issue or issues to which it relates.

(d) An arbitration award shall not preclude the Office from determining patentability of any invention involved in the interference.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 13838, Apr. 27, 1987; 60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

SUBPART F --ADJUSTMENT AND EXTENSION OF PATENT TERM

ADJUSTMENT OF PATENT TERM DUE TO EXAMINATION DELAY

§ 1.701 Extension of patent term due to examination delay under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act (original applications, other than designs, filed on or after June 8, 1995, and before May 29, 2000).

(a) A patent, other than for designs, issued on an application filed on or after June 8, 1995, is entitled to extension of the patent term if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to:

(1) Interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a); and/or

(2) The application being placed under a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181; and/or

(3) Appellate review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141 or 145, if the patent was issued pursuant to a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability and if the patent is not subject to a terminal disclaimer due to the issuance of another patent claiming subject matter that is not patentably distinct from that under appellate review.

(b) The term of a patent entitled to extension under paragraph (a) of this section shall be extended for the sum of the periods of delay calculated under paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3) and (d) of this section, to the extent that these periods are not overlapping, up to a maximum of five years. The extension will run from the expiration date of the patent.

(c)(1) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(1) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(i) With respect to each interference in which the application was involved, the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date the interference was declared or redeclared to involve the application in the interference and ending on the date that the interference was terminated with respect to the application; and

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date prosecution in the application was suspended by the Patent and Trademark Office due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a) not involving the application and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension.

(2) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(2) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(i) The number of days, if any, the application was maintained in a sealed condition under 35 U.S.C. 181;

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of mailing of an examiner's answer under § 1.193 in the application under secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed;

(iii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date applicant was notified that an interference would be declared but for the secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed; and

(iv) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of notification under § 5.3(c) and ending on the date of mailing of the notice of allowance under § 1.311.

(3) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(3) of this section is the sum of the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and ending on the date of a final decision in favor of the applicant by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 141 or a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(d) The period of delay set forth in paragraph (c)(3) shall be reduced by:

(1) Any time during the period of appellate review that occurred before three years from the filing date of the first national application for patent presented for examination; and

(2) Any time during the period of appellate review, as determined by the Commissioner, during which the applicant for patent did not act with due diligence. In determining the due diligence of an applicant, the Commissioner may examine the facts and circumstances of the applicant's actions during the period of appellate review to determine whether the applicant exhibited that degree of timeliness as may reasonably be expected from, and which is ordinarily exercised by, a person during a period of appellate review.

(e) The provisions of this section apply only to original patents, except for design patents, issued on applications filed on or after June 8, 1995, and before May 29, 2000.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995; 65 FR 56366, 56391, Sept. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 56366, 56391, Sept. 18, 2000, revised the section heading and added paragraph (e), effective Oct. 18, 2000.]

§ 1.702 Grounds for adjustment of patent term due to examination delay under the Patent Term Guarantee Act of 1999 (original applications, other than designs, filed on or after May 29, 2000).

(a) Failure to take certain actions within specified time frames. Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and this subpart, the term of an original patent shall be adjusted if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to the failure of the Office to:

(1) Mail at least one of a notification under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 not later than fourteen months after the date on which the application was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or fulfilled the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371 in an international application;

(2) Respond to a reply under 35 U.S.C. 132 or to an appeal taken under 35 U.S.C. 134 not later than four months after the date on which the reply was filed or the appeal was taken;

(3) Act on an application not later than four months after the date of a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences under 35 U.S.C. 134 or 135 or a decision by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141, 145, or 146 where at least one allowable claim remains in the application; or

(4) Issue a patent not later than four months after the date on which the issue fee was paid under 35 U.S.C. 151 and all outstanding requirements were satisfied.

(b) Failure to issue a patent within three years of the actual filing date of the application. Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and this subpart, the term of an original patent shall be adjusted if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to the failure of the Office to issue a patent within three years after the date on which the application was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or the national stage commenced under 35 U.S.C. 371(b) or (f) in an international application, but not including:

(1) Any time consumed by continued examination of the application under 35 U.S.C. 132(b);

(2) Any time consumed by an interference proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 135(a);

(3) Any time consumed by the imposition of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181;

(4) Any time consumed by review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or a Federal court; or

(5) Any delay in the processing of the application by the Office that was requested by the applicant.

(c) Delays caused by interference proceedings. Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and this subpart, the term of an original patent shall be adjusted if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a).

(d) Delays caused by secrecy order. Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and this subpart, the term of an original patent shall be adjusted if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to the application being placed under a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181.

(e) Delays caused by successful appellate review. Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and this subpart, the term of an original patent shall be adjusted if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences under 35 U.S.C. 134 or by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141 or 145, if the patent was issued pursuant to a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability.

(f) The provisions of this section and § § 1.703 through 1.705 apply only to original applications, except applications for a design patent, filed on or after May 29, 2000, and patents issued on such applications.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 56366, 56391, Sept. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 56366, 56391, Sept. 18, 2000, added this section, effective Oct. 18, 2000.]

§ 1.703 Period of adjustment of patent term due to examination delay.

(a) The period of adjustment under § 1.702(a) is the sum of the following periods:

(1) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is fourteen months after the date on which the application was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or fulfilled the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371 and ending on the date of mailing of either an action under 35 U.S.C. 132, or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151, whichever occurs first;

(2) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is four months after the date a reply under § 1.111 was filed and ending on the date of mailing of either an action under 35 U.S.C. 132, or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151, whichever occurs first;

(3) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is four months after the date a reply in compliance with § 1.113(c) was filed and ending on the date of mailing of either an action under 35 U.S.C. 132, or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151, whichever occurs first;

(4) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is four months after the date an appeal brief in compliance with § 1.192 was filed and ending on the date of mailing of any of an examiner's answer under § 1.193, an action under 35 U.S.C. 132, or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151, whichever occurs first;

(5) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is four months after the date of a final decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 141 or a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146 where at least one allowable claim remains in the application and ending on the date of mailing of either an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151, whichever occurs first; and

(6) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is four months after the date the issue fee was paid and all outstanding requirements were satisfied and ending on the date a patent was issued.

(b) The period of adjustment under § 1.702(b) is the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is three years after the date on which the application was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or the national stage commenced under 35 U.S.C. 371(b) or (f) in an international application and ending on the date a patent was issued, but not including the sum of the following periods:

(1) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which a request for continued examination of the application under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) was filed and ending on the date the patent was issued;

(2)(i) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date an interference was declared or redeclared to involve the application in the interference and ending on the date that the interference was terminated with respect to the application; and

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date prosecution in the application was suspended by the Office due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a) not involving the application and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension;

(3)(i) The number of days, if any, the application was maintained in a sealed condition under 35 U.S.C. 181;

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of mailing of an examiner's answer under § 1.193 in the application under secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order was removed;

(iii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date applicant was notified that an interference would be declared but for the secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order was removed; and

(iv) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of notification under § 5.3(c) of this chapter and ending on the date of mailing of the notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151; and,

(4) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which a notice of appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and § 1.191 and ending on the date of the last decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 141 or a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145, or on the date of mailing of either an action under 35 U.S.C. 132, or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151, whichever occurs first, if the appeal did not result in a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(c) The period of adjustment under § 1.702(c) is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(1) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date an interference was declared or redeclared to involve the application in the interference and ending on the date that the interference was terminated with respect to the application; and

(2) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date prosecution in the application was suspended by the Office due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a) not involving the application and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension.

(d) The period of adjustment under § 1.702(d) is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(1) The number of days, if any, the application was maintained in a sealed condition under 35 U.S.C. 181;

(2) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of mailing of an examiner's answer under § 1.193 in the application under secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order was removed;

(3) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date applicant was notified that an interference would be declared but for the secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order was removed; and

(4) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of notification under § 5.3(c) of this chapter and ending on the date of mailing of the notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

(e) The period of adjustment under § 1.702(e) is the sum of the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which a notice of appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and § 1.191 and ending on the date of a final decision in favor of the applicant by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 141 or a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(f) The adjustment will run from the expiration date of the patent as set forth in 35 U.S.C. 154(a)(2). To the extent that periods of adjustment attributable to the grounds specified in § 1.702 overlap, the period of adjustment granted under this section shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed. The term of a patent entitled to adjustment under § 1.702 and this section shall be adjusted for the sum of the periods calculated under paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, to the extent that such periods are not overlapping, less the sum of the periods calculated under § 1.704. The date indicated on any certificate of mailing or transmission under § 1.8 shall not be taken into account in this calculation.

(g) No patent, the term of which has been disclaimed beyond a specified date, shall be adjusted under § 1.702 and this section beyond the expiration date specified in the disclaimer.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 56366, 56392, Sept. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 56366, 56392, Sept. 18, 2000, added this section, effective Oct. 18, 2000.]

§ 1.704 Reduction of period of adjustment of patent term.

(a) The period of adjustment of the term of a patent under § § 1.703(a) through (e) shall be reduced by a period equal to the period of time during which the applicant failed to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution (processing or examination) of the application.

(b) With respect to the grounds for adjustment set forth in § § 1.702(a) through (e), and in particular the ground of adjustment set forth in § 1.702(b), an applicant shall be deemed to have failed to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of an application for the cumulative total of any periods of time in excess of three

months that are taken to reply to any notice or action by the Office making any rejection, objection, argument, or other request, measuring such three-month period from the date the notice or action was mailed or given to the applicant, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the day after the date that is three months after the date of mailing or transmission of the Office communication notifying the applicant of the rejection, objection, argument, or other request and ending on the date the reply was filed. The period, or shortened statutory period, for reply that is set in the Office action or notice has no effect on the three-month period set forth in this paragraph.

(c) Circumstances that constitute a failure of the applicant to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of an application also include the following circumstances, which will result in the following reduction of the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(1) Suspension of action under § 1.103 at the applicant's request, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the date a request for suspension of action under § 1.103 was filed and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension;

(2) Deferral of issuance of a patent under § 1.314, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the date a request for deferral of issuance of a patent under § 1.314 was filed and ending on the date the patent was issued;

(3) Abandonment of the application or late payment of the issue fee, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the date of abandonment or the date after the date the issue fee was due and ending on the earlier of:

(i) The date of mailing of the decision reviving the application or accepting late payment of the issue fee; or

(ii) The date that is four months after the date the grantable petition to revive the application or accept late payment of the issue fee was filed;

(4) Failure to file a petition to withdraw the holding of abandonment or to revive an application within two months from the mailing date of a notice of abandonment, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the day after the date two months from the mailing date of a notice of abandonment and ending on the date a petition to withdraw the holding of abandonment or to revive the application was filed;

(5) Conversion of a provisional application under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) to a nonprovisional application under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 111(b)(5), in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the date the application was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) and ending on the date a request in compliance with § 1.53(c)(3) to convert the provisional application into a nonprovisional application was filed;

(6) Submission of a preliminary amendment or other preliminary paper less than one month before the mailing of an Office action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 that requires the mailing of a supplemental Office action or notice of allowance, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the lesser of:

(i) The number of days, if any, beginning on the day after the mailing date of the original Office action or notice of allowance and ending on the date of mailing of the supplemental Office action or notice of allowance; or

(ii) Four months;

(7) Submission of a reply having an omission (§ 1.135(c)), in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the day after the date the reply having an omission was filed and ending on the date that the reply or other paper correcting the omission was filed;

(8) Submission of a supplemental reply or other paper, other than a supplemental reply or other paper expressly requested by the examiner, after a reply has been filed, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the number of days, if any, beginning on the day after the date the initial reply was filed and ending on the date that the supplemental reply or other such paper was filed;

(9) Submission of an amendment or other paper after a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, other than a decision designated as containing a new ground of rejection under § 1.196(b) or statement under § 1.196(c), or a decision by a Federal court, less than one month before the mailing of an Office action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 that requires the mailing of a supplemental Office action or supplemental notice of allowance, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the lesser of:

(i) The number of days, if any, beginning on the day after the mailing date of the original Office action or notice of allowance and ending on the mailing date of the supplemental Office action or notice of allowance; or

(ii) Four months;

(10) Submission of an amendment under § 1.312 or other paper after a notice of allowance has been given or mailed, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the lesser of:

(i) The number of days, if any, beginning on the date the amendment under § 1.312 or other paper was filed and ending on the mailing date of the Office action or notice in response to the amendment under § 1.312 or such other paper; or

(ii) Four months; and

(11) Further prosecution via a continuing application, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall not include any period that is prior to the actual filing date of the application that resulted in the patent.

(d) A paper containing only an information disclosure statement in compliance with § § 1.97 and 1.98 will not be considered a failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution (processing or examination) of the application under paragraphs (c)(6), (c)(8), (c)(9), or (c)(10) of this section if it is accompanied by a statement that each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart application and that this communication was not received by any individual designated in § 1.56(c) more than thirty days prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. This thirty-day period is not extendable.

(e) Submission of an application for patent term adjustment under § 1.705(b) (with or without request under § 1.705(c) for reinstatement of reduced patent term adjustment) will not be considered a failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution (processing or examination) of the application under paragraph (c)(10) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 56366, 56393, Sept. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 56366, 56393, Sept. 18, 2000, added this section, effective Oct. 18, 2000.]

§ 1.705 Patent term adjustment determination.

(a) The notice of allowance will include notification of any patent term adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b).

(b) Any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the notice of allowance, except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, and any request for reinstatement of all or part of the term reduced pursuant to

§ 1.704(b) must be by way of an application for patent term adjustment. An application for patent term adjustment under this section must be filed no later than the payment of the issue fee but may not be filed earlier than the date of mailing of the notice of allowance. An application for patent term adjustment under this section must be accompanied by:

(1) The fee set forth in § 1.18(e); and

(2) A statement of the facts involved, specifying:

(i) The correct patent term adjustment and the basis or bases under § 1.702 for the adjustment;

(ii) The relevant dates as specified in § § 1.703(a) through (e) for which an adjustment is sought and the adjustment as specified in § 1.703(f) to which the patent is entitled;

(iii) Whether the patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer and any expiration date specified in the terminal disclaimer; and

(iv)(A) Any circumstances during the prosecution of the application resulting in the patent that constitute a failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of such application as set forth in § 1.704; or

(B) That there were no circumstances constituting a failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of such application as set forth in § 1.704.

(c) Any application for patent term adjustment under this section that requests reinstatement of all or part of the period of adjustment reduced pursuant to § 1.704(b) for failing to reply to a rejection, objection, argument, or other request within three months of the date of mailing of the Office communication notifying the applicant of the rejection, objection, argument, or other request must also be accompanied by:

(1) The fee set forth in § 1.18(f); and

(2) A showing to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that, in spite of all due care, the applicant was unable to reply to the rejection, objection, argument, or other request within three months of the date of mailing of the Office communication notifying the applicant of the rejection, objection, argument, or other request. The Office shall not grant any request for reinstatement for more than three additional months for each reply beyond three months from the date of mailing of the Office communication notifying the applicant of the rejection, objection, argument, or other request.

(d) If the patent is issued on a date other than the projected date of issue and this change necessitates a revision of the patent term adjustment indicated in the notice of allowance, the patent will indicate the revised patent term adjustment. If the patent indicates a revised patent term adjustment due to the patent being issued on a date other than the projected date of issue, any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent must be filed within thirty days of the date the patent issued and must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section.

(e) The periods set forth in this section are not extendable.

(f) No submission or petition on behalf of a third party concerning patent term adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) will be considered by the Office. Any such submission or petition will be returned to the third party, or otherwise disposed of, at the convenience of the Office.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 56366, 56394, Sept. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 56366, 56394, Sept. 18, 2000, added this section, effective Oct. 18, 2000.]

EXTENSION OF PATENT TERM DUE TO REGULATORY REVIEW

§ 1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.

(a) A patent is eligible for extension of the patent term if the patent claims a product as defined in paragraph (b) of this section, either alone or in combination with other ingredients that read on a composition that received permission for commercial marketing or use, or a method of using such a product, or a method of manufacturing such a product, and meets all other conditions and requirements of this subpart.

(b) The term product referred to in paragraph (a) of this section means--

(1) The active ingredient of a new human drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Public Health Service Act) including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or

(2) The active ingredient of a new animal drug or veterinary biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act) that is not primarily manufactured using recombinant DNA, recombinant RNA, hybridoma technology, or other processes including site specific genetic manipulation techniques, including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or

(3) Any medical device, food additive, or color additive subject to regulation under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 30379, July 20, 1989]

§ 1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.

The term of a patent may be extended if:

(a) The patent claims a product or a method of using or manufacturing a product as defined in § 1.710;

(b) The term of the patent has never been previously extended, except for extensions issued pursuant to § § 1.701, 1.760, or § 1.790;

(c) An application for extension is submitted in compliance with § 1.740;

(d) The product has been subject to a regulatory review period as defined in 35 U.S.C. 156(g) before its commercial marketing or use;

(e) The product has received permission for commercial marketing or use and --

(1) The permission for the commercial marketing or use of the product is the first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review occurred, or

(2) In the case of a patent other than one directed to subject matter within § 1.710(b)(2) claiming a method of manufacturing the product that primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the permission for the commercial marketing or use is the first received permission for the commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent, or

(3) In the case of a patent claiming a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals and in food-producing animals, and was not extended on the basis of the regulatory review period for use in non-food-producing animals, the permission for the commercial marketing or use of the drug or product after the regulatory review period for use in food-producing animals is the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal.

(f) The application is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date the product first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provisions of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred; or in the case of a patent claiming a method of manufacturing the product which primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent; or in the case of a patent that claims a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and said drug or product has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal;

(g) The term of the patent, including any interim extension issued pursuant to § 1.790, has not expired before the submission of an application in compliance with § 1.741; and

(h) No other patent term has been extended for the same regulatory review period for the product.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30380, July 20, 1989; 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (b) and (g), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term; signature requirements.

(a) Any application for extension of a patent term must be submitted by the owner of record of the patent or its agent and must comply with the requirements of § 1.740.

(b) If the application is submitted by the patent owner, the application must be signed either by:

(1) The patent owner in compliance with § 3.73(b) of this chapter; or

(2) A registered practitioner on behalf of the patent owner.

(c) If the application is submitted on behalf of the patent owner by an agent of the patent owner (e.g., a licensee of the patent owner), the application must be signed by a registered practitioner on behalf of the agent. The Office may require proof that the agent is authorized to act on behalf of the patent owner.

(d) If the application is signed by a registered practitioner, the Office may require proof that the practitioner is authorized to act on behalf of the patent owner or agent of the patent owner.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.740 Formal requirements for application for extension of patent term; correction of informalities.

(a) An application for extension of patent term must be made in writing to the Commissioner. A formal application for the extension of patent term must include:

(1) A complete identification of the approved product as by appropriate chemical and generic name, physical structure or characteristics;

(2) A complete identification of the Federal statute including the applicable provision of law under which the regulatory review occurred;

(3) An identification of the date on which the product received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred;

(4) In the case of a drug product, an identification of each active ingredient in the product and as to each active ingredient, a statement that it has not been previously approved for commercial marketing or use under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, the Public Health Service Act, or the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act, or a statement of when the active ingredient was approved for commercial marketing or use (either alone or in combination with other active ingredients), the use for which it was approved, and the provision of law under which it was approved.

(5) A statement that the application is being submitted within the sixty day period permitted for submission pursuant to § 1.720(f) and an identification of the date of the last day on which the application could be submitted;

(6) A complete identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought by the name of the inventor, the patent number, the date of issue, and the date of expiration;

(7) A copy of the patent for which an extension is being sought, including the entire specification (including claims) and drawings;

(8) A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, receipt of maintenance fee payment, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent;

(9) A statement that the patent claims the approved product, or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product, and a showing which lists each applicable patent claim and demonstrates the manner in which at least one such patent claim reads on:

(i) The approved product, if the listed claims include any claim to the approved product;

(ii) The method of using the approved product, if the listed claims include any claim to the method of using the approved product; and

(iii) The method of manufacturing the approved product, if the listed claims include any claim to the method of manufacturing the approved product;

(10) A statement beginning on a new page of the relevant dates and information pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 156(g) in order to enable the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture, as appropriate, to determine the applicable regulatory review period as follows:

(i) For a patent claiming a human drug, antibiotic, or human biological product:

(A) The effective date of the investigational new drug (IND) application and the IND number;

(B) The date on which a new drug application (NDA) or a Product License Application (PLA) was initially submitted and the NDA or PLA number; and

(C) The date on which the NDA was approved or the Product License issued;

(ii) For a patent claiming a new animal drug:

(A) The date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated, and any available substantiation of that date, or the date of an exemption under subsection (j) of Section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for such animal drug;

(B) The date on which a new animal drug application (NADA) was initially submitted and the NADA number; and

(C) The date on which the NADA was approved;

(iii) For a patent claiming a veterinary biological product:

(A) The date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective;

(B) The date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and

(C) The date the license issued;

(iv) For a patent claiming a food or color additive:

(A) The date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and any available substantiation of that date;

(B) The date on which a petition for product approval under the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act was initially submitted and the petition number; and

(C) The date on which the FDA published a Federal Register notice listing the additive for use;

(v) For a patent claiming a medical device:

(A) The effective date of the investigational device exemption (IDE) and the IDE number, if applicable, or the date on which the applicant began the first clinical investigation involving the device, if no IDE was submitted, and any available substantiation of that date;

(B) The date on which the application for product approval or notice of completion of a product development protocol under Section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act was initially submitted and the number of the application; and

(C) The date on which the application was approved or the protocol declared to be completed;

(11) A brief description beginning on a new page of the significant activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities;

(12) A statement beginning on a new page that in the opinion of the applicant the patent is eligible for the extension and a statement as to the length of extension claimed, including how the length of extension was determined;

(13) A statement that applicant acknowledges a duty to disclose to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture any information which is material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought (see § 1.765);

(14) The prescribed fee for receiving and acting upon the application for extension (see § 1.20(j)); and

(15) The name, address, and telephone number of the person to whom inquiries and correspondence relating to the application for patent term extension are to be directed.

(b) The application under this section must be accompanied by two additional copies of such application (for a total of three copies).

(c) If an application for extension of patent term is informal under this section, the Office will so notify the applicant. The applicant has two months from the mail date of the notice, or such time as is set in the notice, within which to correct the informality. Unless the notice indicates otherwise, this time period may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30380, July 20, 1989; 56 FR 65155, Dec. 13, 1991; 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54679, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.741 Complete application given a filing date; petition procedure.

(a) The filing date of an application for extension of a patent term is the date on which a complete application is received in the Office or filed pursuant to the procedures set forth in § 1.8 or § 1.10. A complete application must include:

(1) An identification of the approved product;

(2) An identification of each Federal statute under which regulatory review occurred;

(3) An identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought;

(4) An identification of each claim of the patent which claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product;

(5) Sufficient information to enable the Commissioner to determine under subsections (a) and (b) of 35 U.S.C. 156 the eligibility of a patent for extension, and the rights that will be derived from the extension, and information to enable the Commissioner and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture to determine the length of the regulatory review period; and

(6) A brief description of the activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities.

(b) If an application for extension of patent term is incomplete under this section, the Office will so notify the applicant. If applicant requests review of a notice that an application is incomplete, or review of the filing date accorded an application under this section, applicant must file a petition pursuant to this paragraph accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) within two months of the mail date of the notice that the application is incomplete, or the notice according the filing date complained of. Unless the notice indicates otherwise, this time period may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 61 FR 64028, Dec. 3, 1996; 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000, amended paragraph (a) and revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.

A determination as to whether a patent is eligible for extension may be made by the Commissioner solely on the basis of the representations contained in the application for extension filed in compliance with § 1.740 or § 1.790. This determination may be delegated to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials and may be made at any time before the certificate of extension is issued. The Commissioner or other appropriate officials may require from applicant further information or make such independent inquiries as desired before a final determination is made on whether a patent is eligible for extension. In an application for extension filed in compliance with § 1.740, a notice will be mailed to applicant containing the determination as to the eligibility of the patent for extension and the period of time of the extension, if any. This notice shall constitute the final determination as to the eligibility and any period of extension of the patent. A single request for reconsideration of a final determination may be made if filed by the applicant within such time as may be set in the notice of final determination or, if no time is set, within one month from the date of the final determination. The time periods set forth herein are subject to the provisions of § 1.136.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).

An applicant who has filed a formal application for extension in compliance with § 1.740 may request one or more interim extensions for periods of up to one year each pending a final determination on the application pursuant to § 1.750. Any such request should be filed at least three months prior to the expiration date of the patent. The Commissioner may issue interim extensions, without a request by the applicant, for periods of up to one year each until a final determination is made. The patent owner or agent will be notified when an interim extension is granted and notice of the extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the United States Patent and Trademark Office. The notice will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period for extension to which the applicant would be eligible.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995; 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.

(a) A duty of candor and good faith toward the Patent and Trademark Office and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture rests on the patent owner or its agent, on each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner and on every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a patent term extension proceeding. All such individuals who are aware, or become aware, of material information

adverse to a determination of entitlement to the extension sought, which has not been previously made of record in the patent term extension proceeding must bring such information to the attention of the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, as soon as it is practical to do so after the individual becomes aware of the information. Information is material where there is a substantial likelihood that the Office or the Secretary would consider it important in determinations to be made in the patent term extension proceeding.

(b) Disclosures pursuant to this section must be accompanied by a copy of each written document which is being disclosed. The disclosure must be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, unless the disclosure is material to determinations to be made by both the Office and the Secretary, in which case duplicate copies, certified as such, must be filed in the Office and with the Secretary. Disclosures pursuant to this section may be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, through an attorney or agent having responsibility on behalf of the patent owner or its agent for the patent term extension proceeding or through a patent owner acting on his or her own behalf. Disclosure to such an attorney, agent or patent owner shall satisfy the duty of any other individual. Such an attorney, agent or patent owner has no duty to transmit information which is not material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought.

(c) No patent will be determined eligible for extension and no extension will be issued if it is determined that fraud on the Office or the Secretary was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding. If it is established by clear and convincing evidence that any fraud was practiced or attempted on the Office or the Secretary in connection with the patent term extension proceeding or that there was any violation of the duty of disclosure through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding, a final determination will be made pursuant to § 1.750 that the patent is not eligible for extension.

(d) The duty of disclosure pursuant to this section rests on the individuals identified in paragraph (a) of this section and no submission on behalf of third parties, in the form of protests or otherwise, will be considered by the Office. Any such submissions by third parties to the Office will be returned to the party making the submission, or otherwise disposed of, without consideration by the Office.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.

An application for extension of patent term may be expressly withdrawn before a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 by filing in the Office, in duplicate, a written declaration of withdrawal signed by the owner of record of the patent or its agent. An application may not be expressly withdrawn after the date permitted for reply to the final determination on the application. An express withdrawal pursuant to this section is effective when acknowledged in writing by the Office. The filing of an express withdrawal pursuant to this section and its acceptance by the Office does not entitle applicant to a refund of the filing fee (§ 1.20(j)) or any portion thereof.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65155, Dec. 13, 1991; 62 FR 53132, 53201, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53201, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(1)(B), it is the sum of--

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved product and ending on the date the application was initially submitted for such product under those sections or under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved product under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by--

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, or subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and

(i) If no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by--

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, or Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by--

(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989]

§ 1.776 Calculation of patent term extension for a food additive or color additive.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a food additive or color additive is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a food additive or color additive will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a food additive or color additive will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(2)(B), it is the sum of--

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and ending on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product, and ending on the date such regulation became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, ending on the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, ending on the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a food additive or color additive will be determined by

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) The number of days equal to one-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date a regulation for use of the product became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, to the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, to the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and

(i) If no major health or environmental effects test was initiated and no petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted before September 24, 1984, by--

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted by September 24, 1984, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by--

(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987]

§ 1.777 Calculation of patent term extension for a medical device.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a medical device is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date as set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a medical device will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a medical device will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(3)(B), it is the sum of

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun and ending on the date an application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, and ending on the date such application was approved under such Act or the period beginning on the date a notice of completion of a product development protocol was initially submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Act and ending on the date the protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a medical device will be determined by--

(1) Substracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or the date a product development protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and

(i) If no clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or no product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by--

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or a product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by

(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987]

§ 1.778 Calculation of patent term extension for an animal drug product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for an animal drug is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for an animal drug will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the drug as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for an animal drug will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(4)(B), it is the sum of--

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the earlier of the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated or the date an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved animal drug and ending on the date an application was initially submitted for such animal drug under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved animal drug under subsection (b) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for an animal drug will be determined by--

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by--

(i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and

(i) If no major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated and no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before November 16, 1988, by--

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a request for an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the application for commercial marketing or use of the animal drug was not approved before November 16, 1988, by--

(A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989]

§ 1.779 Calculation of patent term extension for a veterinary biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a veterinary biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The

patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a veterinary biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Agriculture, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a veterinary biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Agriculture. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(5)(B), it is the sum of--

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective and ending on the date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an application for a license was initially submitted for approval under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act and ending on the date such license was issued.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a veterinary biological product will be determined by--

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Agriculture to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Agriculture that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of the issuance of a license under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by--

(i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and

(i) If no request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, by--

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before November 16, 1988, by--

(A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30382, July 20, 1989]

§ 1.780 Certificate or order of extension of patent term.

If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent is eligible for extension and that the term of the patent is to be extended, a certificate of extension, under seal, or an order granting interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5), will be issued to the applicant for the extension of the patent term. Such certificate or order will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. Notification of the issuance of the certificate or order of extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Notification of the issuance of the order granting an interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5), including the identity of the product currently under regulatory review, will be published in the Official Gazette of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and in the Federal Register. No certificate of, or order granting, an extension will be issued if the term of the patent cannot be extended, even though the patent is otherwise determined to be eligible for extension. In such situations, the final determination made pursuant to § 1.750 will indicate that no certificate or order will issue.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995; 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.

(a) Only one patent may be extended for a regulatory review period for any product (§ 1.720(h)). If more than one application for extension of the same patent is filed, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued based upon the first filed application for extension.

(b) If more than one application for extension is filed by a single applicant which seeks the extension of the term of two or more patents based upon the same regulatory review period, and the patents are otherwise eligible for extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, in the absence of an election by the applicant, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued upon the application for extension of the patent term having the earliest date of issuance of those patents for which extension is sought.

(c) If an application for extension is filed which seeks the extension of the term of a patent based upon the same regulatory review period as that relied upon in one or more applications for extension pursuant to the requirements of

this subpart, the certificate of extension of patent term will be issued on the application only if the patent owner or its agent is the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period.

(d) An application for extension shall be considered complete and formal regardless of whether it contains the identification of the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period. When an application contains such information, or is amended to contain such information, it will be considered in determining whether an application is eligible for an extension under this section. A request may be made of any applicant to supply such information within a non-extendable period of not less than one month whenever multiple applications for extension of more than one patent are received and rely upon the same regulatory review period. Failure to provide such information within the period for reply set shall be regarded as conclusively establishing that the applicant is not the holder of the regulatory approval.

(e) Determinations made under this section shall be included in the notice of final determination of eligibility for extension of the patent term pursuant to § 1.750 and shall be regarded as part of that determination.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 30382, July 20, 1989; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53201, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53201, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (d), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.790 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5).

(a) An owner of record of a patent or its agent who reasonably expects that the applicable regulatory review period described in paragraph (1)(B)(ii), (2)(B)(ii), (3)(B)(ii), (4)(B) (ii), or (5)(B)(ii) of subsection (g) that began for a product that is the subject of such patent may extend beyond the expiration of the patent term in effect may submit one or more applications for interim extensions for periods of up to one year each. The initial application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 6 months and ending 15 days before the patent term is due to expire. Each subsequent application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 60 days before and ending 30 days before the expiration of the preceding interim extension. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period of extension to which the applicant would be entitled under 35 U.S.C. 156(c).

(b) A complete application for interim extension under this section shall include all of the information required for a formal application under § 1.740 and a complete application under § 1.741. Sections (a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(4), and (a)(6)-(a)(17) of § 1.740 and § 1.741 shall be read in the context of a product currently undergoing regulatory review. Sections (a)(3) and (a)(5) of § 1.740 are not applicable to an application for interim extension under this section.

(c) The content of each subsequent interim extension application may be limited to a request for a subsequent interim extension along with a statement that the regulatory review period has not been completed along with any materials or information required under § 1.740 and § 1.741 that are not present in the preceding interim extension application.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 25619, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.791 Termination of interim extension granted prior to regulatory approval of a product for commercial marketing or use.

Any interim extension granted under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) terminates at the end of the 60-day period beginning on the date on which the product involved receives permission for commercial marketing or use. If within that 60-day period the patent owner or its agent files an application for extension under § 1.740 and § 1.741 including any additional information required under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(1) not contained in the application for interim extension, the patent shall be further extended in accordance with the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 156.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 25619, May 12, 1995]

## SUBPART G --BIOTECHNOLOGY INVENTION DISCLOSURES

## DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL

### § 1.801 Biological material.

For the purposes of these regulations pertaining to the deposit of biological material for purposes of patents for inventions under 35 U.S.C. 101, the term biological material shall include material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly. Representative examples include bacteria, fungi including yeast, algae, protozoa, eukaryotic cells, cell lines, hybridomas, plasmids, viruses, plant tissue cells, lichens and seeds. Viruses, vectors, cell organelles and other non-living material existing in and reproducible from a living cell may be deposited by deposit of the host cell capable of reproducing the non-living material.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989]

### § 1.802 Need or opportunity to make a deposit.

(a) Where an invention is, or relies on, a biological material, the disclosure may include reference to a deposit of such biological material.

(b) Biological material need not be deposited unless access to such material is necessary for the satisfaction of the statutory requirements for patentability under 35 U.S.C. 112. If a deposit is necessary, it shall be acceptable if made in accordance with these regulations. Biological material need not be deposited, inter alia, if it is known and readily available to the public or can be made or isolated without undue experimentation. Once deposited in a depository complying with these regulations, a biological material will be considered to be readily available even though some requirement of law or regulation of the United States or of the country in which the depository institution is located permits access to the material only under conditions imposed for safety, public health or similar reasons.

(c) The reference to a biological material in a specification disclosure or the actual deposit of such material by an applicant or patent owner does not create any presumption that such material is necessary to satisfy 35 U.S.C. 112 or that deposit in accordance with these regulations is or was required.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 1.803 Acceptable depository.

(a) A deposit shall be recognized for the purposes of these regulations if made in

(1) any International Depositary Authority (IDA) as established under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure, or

(2) any other depository recognized to be suitable by the Office. Suitability will be determined by the Commissioner on the basis of the administrative and technical competence, and agreement of the depository to comply with the terms and conditions applicable to deposits for patent purposes. The Commissioner may seek the advice of impartial consultants on the suitability of a depository. The depository must:

(i) Have a continuous existence;

(ii) Exist independent of the control of the depositor;

(iii) Possess the staff and facilities sufficient to examine the viability of a deposit and store the deposit in a manner which ensures that it is kept viable and uncontaminated;

(iv) Provide for sufficient safety measures to minimize the risk of losing biological material deposited with it;

(v) Be impartial and objective;

(vi) Furnish samples of the deposited material in an expeditious and proper manner; and

(vii) Promptly notify depositors of its inability to furnish samples, and the reasons why.

(b) A depository seeking status under paragraph (a)(2) of this section must direct a communication to the Commissioner which shall:

(1) Indicate the name and address of the depository to which the communication relates;

(2) Contain detailed information as to the capacity of the depository to comply with the requirements of paragraph (a)(2) of this section, including information on its legal status, scientific standing, staff and facilities;

(3) Indicate that the depository intends to be available, for the purposes of deposit, to any depositor under these same conditions;

(4) Where the depository intends to accept for deposit only certain kinds of biological material, specify such kinds;

(5) Indicate the amount of any fees that the depository will, upon acquiring the status of suitable depository under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, charge for storage, viability statements and furnishings of samples of the deposit.

(c) A depository having status under paragraph (a)(2) of this section limited to certain kinds of biological material may extend such status to additional kinds of biological material by directing a communication to the Commissioner in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section. If a previous communication under paragraph (b) of this section is of record, items in common with the previous communication may be incorporated by reference.

(d) Once a depository is recognized to be suitable by the Commissioner or has defaulted or discontinued its performance under this section, notice thereof will be published in the Office Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 1.804 Time of making an original deposit.

(a) Whenever a biological material is specifically identified in an application for patent as filed, an original deposit thereof may be made at any time before filing the application for patent or, subject to § 1.809, during pendency of the application for patent.

(b) When the original deposit is made after the effective filing date of an application for patent, the applicant must promptly submit a statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, stating that the biological material which is deposited is a biological material specifically identified in the application as filed.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (b), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.805 Replacement or supplement of deposit.

(a) A depositor, after receiving notice during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, shall notify the Office in writing, in each application for patent or patent affected. In such a case, or where the Office otherwise learns, during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, the need for making a replacement or supplemental deposit will be governed by the same considerations governing the need for making an original deposit under the provisions set forth in § 1.802(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent shall not be accepted unless it meets the requirements for making an original deposit under these regulations, including the requirement set forth under § 1.804(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made in connection with a patent, whether or not made during the pendency of an application for reissue patent or a reexamination proceeding or both, shall not be accepted unless a certificate of correction under § 1.323 is requested by the patent owner which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) A request for certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the certificate identifies:

(1) The accession number for the replacement or supplemental deposit;

(2) The date of the deposit; and

(3) The name and address of the depository.

(c) A request for a certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the request is made promptly after the replacement or supplemental deposit has been made and the request:

(1) Includes a statement of the reason for making the replacement or supplemental deposit;

(2) Includes a statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, and stating that the replacement or supplemental deposit is of a biological material which is identical to that originally deposited;

(3) Includes a showing that the patent owner acted diligently --

(i) In the case of a replacement deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that samples could no longer be furnished from an earlier deposit; or

(ii) In the case of a supplemental deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that the earlier deposit had become contaminated or had lost its capability to function as described in the specification;

(4) Includes a statement that the term of the replacement or supplemental deposit expires no earlier than the term of the deposit being replaced or supplemented; and

(5) Otherwise establishes compliance with these regulations.

(d) A depositor's failure to replace a deposit, or in the case of a patent, to diligently replace a deposit and promptly thereafter request a certificate of correction which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, after being notified that the depository possessing the deposit cannot furnish samples thereof, shall cause the application or patent involved to be treated in any Office proceeding as if no deposit were made.

(e) In the event a deposit is replaced according to these regulations, the Office will apply a rebuttable presumption of identity between the original and the replacement deposit where a patent making reference to the deposit is relied upon during any Office proceeding.

(f) A replacement or supplement deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent may be made for any reason.

(g) In no case is a replacement or supplemental deposit of a biological material necessary where the biological material, in accordance with § 1.802(b), need not be deposited.

(h) No replacement deposit of a biological material is necessary where a depository can furnish samples thereof but the depository for national security, health or environmental safety reasons is unable to provide samples to requesters outside of the jurisdiction where the depository is located.

(i) The Office will not recognize in any Office proceeding a replacement deposit of a biological material made by a patent owner where the depository could furnish samples of the deposit being replaced.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (c), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 1.806 Term of deposit.

A deposit made before or during pendency of an application for patent shall be made for a term of at least thirty (30) years and at least five (5) years after the most recent request for the furnishing of a sample of the deposit was received by the depository. In any case, samples must be stored under agreements that would make them available beyond the enforceable life of the patent for which the deposit was made.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 1.807 Viability of deposit.

(a) A deposit of biological material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly must be viable at the time of deposit and during the term of deposit. Viability may be tested by the depository. The test must conclude only that the deposited material is capable of reproduction. No evidence is necessarily required regarding the ability of the deposited material to perform any function described in the patent application.

(b) A viability statement for each deposit of a biological material defined in paragraph (a) of this section not made under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure must be filed in the application and must contain:

(1) The name and address of the depository;

(2) The name and address of the depositor;

(3) The date of deposit;

(4) The identity of the deposit and the accession number given by the depository;

(5) The date of the viability test;

(6) The procedures used to obtain a sample if the test is not done by the depository; and

(7) A statement that the deposit is capable of reproduction.

(c) If a viability test indicates that the deposit is not viable upon receipt, or the examiner cannot, for scientific or other valid reasons, accept the statement of viability received from the applicant, the examiner shall proceed as if no deposit has been made. The examiner will accept the conclusion set forth in a viability statement issued by a depository recognized under § 1.803(a).

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 1.808 Furnishing of samples.

(a) A deposit must be made under conditions that assure that:

(1) Access to the deposit will be available during pendency of the patent application making reference to the deposit to one determined by the Commissioner to be entitled thereto under § 1.14 and 35 U.S.C. 122, and

(2) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, all restrictions imposed by the depositor on the availability to the public of the deposited material will be irrevocably removed upon the granting of the patent.

(b) The depositor may contract with the depository to require that samples of a deposited biological material shall be furnished only if a request for a sample, during the term of the patent:

(1) Is in writing or other tangible form and dated;

(2) Contains the name and address of the requesting party and the accession number of the deposit; and

(3) Is communicated in writing by the depository to the depositor along with the date on which the sample was furnished and the name and address of the party to whom the sample was furnished.

(c) Upon request made to the Office, the Office will certify whether a deposit has been stated to have been made under conditions which make it available to the public as of the issue date of the patent grant provided the request contains:

(1) The name and address of the depository;

(2) The accession number given to the deposit;

(3) The patent number and issue date of the patent referring to the deposit; and

(4) The name and address of the requesting party.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 1.809 Examination procedures.

(a) The examiner shall determine pursuant to § 1.104 in each application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding if a deposit is needed, and if needed, if a deposit actually made is acceptable for patent purposes. If a deposit is needed and has not been made or replaced or supplemented in accordance with these regulations, the examiner, where appropriate, shall reject the affected claims under the appropriate provision of 35 U.S.C. 112, explaining why a deposit is needed and/or why a deposit actually made cannot be accepted.

(b) The applicant for patent or patent owner shall reply to a rejection under paragraph (a) of this section by --

(1) In the case of an applicant for patent, either making an acceptable original, replacement, or supplemental deposit, or assuring the Office in writing that an acceptable deposit will be made; or, in the case of a patent owner, requesting a certificate of correction of the patent which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 1.805, or

(2) Arguing why a deposit is not needed under the circumstances of the application or patent considered and/or why a deposit actually made should be accepted. Other replies to the examiner's action shall be considered nonresponsive. The rejection will be repeated until either paragraph (b)(1) of this section is satisfied or the examiner is convinced that a deposit is not needed.

(c) If an application for patent is otherwise in condition for allowance except for a needed deposit and the Office has received a written assurance that an acceptable deposit will be made, applicant will be notified and given a period of time within which the deposit must be made in order to avoid abandonment. This time period is not extendable under § 1.136(a) or (b) if set forth in a "Notice of Allowability" or in an Office action having a mail date on or after the mail date of a "Notice of Allowability" (see § 1.136(c)).

(d) For each deposit made pursuant to these regulations, the specification shall contain:

(1) The accession number for the deposit;

(2) The date of the deposit;

(3) A description of the deposited biological material sufficient to specifically identify it and to permit examination; and

(4) The name and address of the depository.

(e) Any amendment required by paragraphs (d)(1), (d)(2) or (d)(4) of this section must be filed before or with the payment of the issue fee (see § 1.312).

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 66 FR 21090, 21092, Apr. 27, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 21090, 21092, Apr. 27, 2001, revised paragraphs (b) and (c), and added paragraph (e), effective May 29, 2001.]

APPLICATION DISCLOSURES CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCES

§ 1.821 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosures in patent applications.

(a) Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as used in § § 1.821 through 1.825 are interpreted to mean an unbranched sequence of four or more amino acids or an unbranched sequence of ten or more nucleotides. Branched sequences are specifically excluded from this definition. Sequences with fewer than four specifically defined nucleotides or amino acids are specifically excluded from this section. "Specifically defined" means those amino acids other than "Xaa" and those nucleotide bases other than "n" defined in accordance with the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) Handbook on Industrial Property Information and Documentation, Standard ST.25: Standard for the Presentation of Nucleotide and Amino Acid Sequence Listings in Patent Applications (1998), including Tables 1 through 6 in Appendix 2, herein incorporated by reference. (Hereinafter "WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998)"). This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998) may be obtained from the World Intellectual Property Organization; 34 chemin des Colombettes; 1211 Geneva 20 Switzerland. Copies of ST.25 may be inspected at the Patent Search Room; Crystal Plaza 3, Lobby Level; 2021 South Clark Place; Arlington, VA 22202. Copies may also be inspected at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW, Suite 700, Washington, DC. Nucleotides and amino acids are further defined as follows:

(1) Nucleotides: Nucleotides are intended to embrace only those nucleotides that can be represented using the symbols set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 1. Modifications, e.g., methylated bases, may be described as set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 2, but shall not be shown explicitly in the nucleotide sequence.

(2) Amino acids: Amino acids are those L-amino acids commonly found in naturally occurring proteins and are listed in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3. Those amino acid sequences containing D-amino acids are not intended to be embraced by this definition. Any amino acid sequence that contains post-translationally modified amino acids may be described as the amino acid sequence that is initially translated using the symbols shown in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3 with the modified positions; e.g., hydroxylations or glycosylations, being described as set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 4, but these modifications shall not be shown explicitly in the amino acid sequence. Any peptide or protein that can be expressed as a sequence using the symbols in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3 in conjunction with a description in the Feature section to describe, for example, modified linkages, cross links and end caps, non-peptidyl bonds, etc., is embraced by this definition.

(b) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, in accordance with the definition in paragraph (a) of this section, shall, with regard to the manner in which the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are presented and described, conform exclusively to the requirements of § § 1.821 through 1.825.

(c) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences must contain, as a separate part of the disclosure, a paper or compact disc copy (see § 1.52(e)) disclosing the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences and associated information using the symbols and format in accordance with the requirements of § § 1.822 and 1.823. This paper or compact disc copy is referred to elsewhere in this subpart as the "Sequence Listing." Each sequence disclosed must appear separately in the "Sequence Listing." Each sequence set forth in the "Sequence Listing" must be assigned a separate sequence identifier. The sequence identifiers must begin with 1 and increase sequentially by integers. If no sequence is present for a sequence identifier, the code "000" must be used in place of the sequence. The response for the numeric identifier <160> must include the total number of SEQ ID NOs, whether followed by a sequence or by the code "000."

(d) Where the description or claims of a patent application discuss a sequence that is set forth in the "Sequence Listing" in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, reference must be made to the sequence by use of the sequence identifier, preceded by "SEQ ID NO:" in the text of the description or claims, even if the sequence is also embedded in the text of the description or claims of the patent application.

(e) A copy of the "Sequence Listing" referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must also be submitted in computer readable form (CRF) in accordance with the requirements of § 1.824. The computer readable form must be a copy of the "Sequence Listing" and may not be retained as a part of the patent application file. If the computer readable form of a new application is to be identical with the computer readable form of another application of the applicant on file in the Office, reference may be made to the other application and computer readable form in lieu of filing a duplicate computer readable form in the new application if the computer readable form in the other application was compliant with all of the requirements of this subpart. The new application must be accompanied by a letter making such reference to the other application and computer readable form, both of which shall be completely identified. In the new application, applicant must also request the use of the compliant computer readable "Sequence Listing" that is already on file for the other application and must state that the paper or compact disc copy of the "Sequence Listing" in the new application is identical to the computer readable copy filed for the other application.

(f) In addition to the paper or compact disc copy required by paragraph (c) of this section and the computer readable form required by paragraph (e) of this section, a statement that the "Sequence Listing" content of the paper or compact disc copy and the computer readable copy are the same must be submitted with the computer readable form, e.g., a statement that "the sequence listing information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written (on paper or compact disc) sequence listing."

(g) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or at the time of entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, applicant will be notified and given a period of time within which to comply with such requirements in order to prevent abandonment of the application. Any submission in reply to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission includes no new matter.

(h) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), which application is to be searched by the United States International Searching Authority or examined by the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority, applicant will be sent a notice necessitating compliance with the requirements within a prescribed time period. Any submission in reply to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission does not include matter which goes beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed. If applicant fails to timely provide the required computer readable form, the United States International Searching Authority shall search only to the extent that a meaningful search can be performed without the computer readable form and the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority shall examine only to the extent that a meaningful examination can be performed without the computer readable form.

**Legislative History**

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990, as amended at 58 FR 4348, Jan. 14, 1993; 63 FR 29620, 29634, June 1, 1998; 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54680, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (c), (e) and (f), effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.822 Symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data.

(a) The symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data shall conform to the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section.

(b) The code for representing the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence characters shall conform to the code set forth in the tables in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 1 and 3. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ST.25 may be obtained from the World Intellectual Property Organization; 34 chemin des Colombettes; 1211 Geneva 20 Switzerland. Copies of ST.25 may be inspected at the Patent Search Room; Crystal Plaza 3, Lobby Level; 2021 South Clark Place; Arlington, VA 22202. Copies may also be inspected at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW, Suite 700, Washington, DC. No code other than that specified in these sections shall be used in nucleotide and amino acid sequences. A modified base or modified or unusual amino acid may be presented in a given sequence as the corresponding unmodified base or amino acid if the modified base or modified or unusual amino acid is one of those listed in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 2 and 4, and the modification is also set forth in the Feature section. Otherwise, each occurrence of a base or amino acid not appearing in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 1 and 3, shall be listed in a given sequence as "n" or "Xaa," respectively, with further information, as appropriate, given in the Feature section, preferably by including one or more feature keys listed in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 5 and 6.

(c) Format representation of nucleotides. (1) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed using the lower-case letter for representing the one-letter code for the nucleotide bases set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 1.

(2) The bases in a nucleotide sequence (including introns) shall be listed in groups of 10 bases except in the coding parts of the sequence. Leftover bases, fewer than 10 in number, at the end of noncoding parts of a sequence shall be grouped together and separated from adjacent groups of 10 or 3 bases by a space.

(3) The bases in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be listed as triplets (codons). The amino acids corresponding to the codons in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be typed immediately below the corresponding codons. Where a codon spans an intron, the amino acid symbol shall be typed below the portion of the codon containing two nucleotides.

(4) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 codons or 60 bases per line, with a space provided between each codon or group of 10 bases.

(5) A nucleotide sequence shall be presented, only by a single strand, in the 5 to 3 direction, from left to right.

(6) The enumeration of nucleotide bases shall start at the first base of the sequence with number 1. The enumeration shall be continuous through the whole sequence in the direction 5 to 3. The enumeration shall be marked in the right margin, next to the line containing the one-letter codes for the bases, and giving the number of the last base of that line.

(7) For those nucleotide sequences that are circular in configuration, the enumeration method set forth in paragraph (c)(6) of this section remains applicable with the exception that the designation of the first base of the nucleotide sequence may be made at the option of the applicant.

(d) Representation of amino acids. (1) The amino acids in a protein or peptide sequence shall be listed using the three-letter abbreviation with the first letter as an upper case character, as in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3.

(2) A protein or peptide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 amino acids per line, with a space provided between each amino acid.

(3) An amino acid sequence shall be presented in the amino to carboxy direction, from left to right, and the amino and carboxy groups shall not be presented in the sequence.

(4) The enumeration of amino acids may start at the first amino acid of the first mature protein, with the number 1. When presented, the amino acids preceding the mature protein, e.g., pre-sequences, pro-sequences, pre-pro-sequences and signal sequences, shall have negative numbers, counting backwards starting with the amino acid next to number 1. Otherwise, the enumeration of amino acids shall start at the first amino acid at the amino terminal as number 1. It shall be marked below the sequence every 5 amino acids. The enumeration method for amino acid sequences that is set forth in this section remains applicable for amino acid sequences that are circular in configuration, with the exception that the designation of the first amino acid of the sequence may be made at the option of the applicant.

(5) An amino acid sequence that contains internal terminator symbols (e.g., "Ter", "*", or ".", etc.) may not be represented as a single amino acid sequence, but shall be presented as separate amino acid sequences.

(e) A sequence with a gap or gaps shall be presented as a plurality of separate sequences, with separate sequence identifiers, with the number of separate sequences being equal in number to the number of continuous strings of sequence data. A sequence that is made up of one or more noncontiguous segments of a larger sequence or segments from different sequences shall be presented as a separate sequence.

**Legislative History**

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 63 FR 29620, 29635, June 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29620, 29635, June 1, 1998, revised this section, effective July 1, 1998.]

§ 1.823 Requirements for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as part of the application.

(a)(1) If the "Sequence Listing" required by § 1.821(c) is submitted on paper: The "Sequence Listing," setting forth the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence and associated information in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, must begin on a new page and must be titled "Sequence Listing." The pages of the "Sequence Listing" preferably should be numbered independently of the numbering of the remainder of the application. Each page of the "Sequence Listing" shall contain no more than 66 lines and each line shall contain no more than 72 characters. A fixed-width font should be used exclusively throughout the "Sequence Listing."

(2) If the "Sequence Listing" required by § 1.821(c) is submitted on compact disc: The "Sequence Listing" must be submitted on a compact disc in compliance with § 1.52(e). The compact disc may also contain table information if the application contains table information that may be submitted on a compact disc (§ 1.52(e)(1)(iii)). The specification must contain an incorporation-by-reference of the Sequence Listing as required by § 1.52(e)(5). The presentation of the "Sequence Listing" and other materials on compact disc under § 1.821(c) does not substitute for the Computer Readable Form that must be submitted on disk, compact disc, or tape in accordance with § 1.824.

(b) The "Sequence Listing" shall, except as otherwise indicated, include the actual nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence, the numeric identifiers and their accompanying information as shown in the following table. The numeric identifier shall be used only in the "Sequence Listing." The order and presentation of the items of information in the "Sequence Listing" shall conform to the arrangement given below. Each item of information shall begin on a new line and shall begin with the numeric identifier enclosed in angle brackets as shown. The submission of those items of information designated with an "M" is mandatory. The submission of those items of information designated with an "O" is optional. Numeric identifiers <110> through <170> shall only be set forth at the beginning of the "Sequence Listing." The following table illustrates the numeric identifiers.

Click here to view image.

**Legislative History**

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 63 FR 29620, 29636, June 1, 1998; 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, amended this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.824 Form and format for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence submissions in computer readable form.

(a) The computer readable form required by § 1.821(e) shall meet the following requirements:

(1) The computer readable form shall contain a single "Sequence Listing" as either a diskette, series of diskettes, or other permissible media outlined in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) The "Sequence Listing" in paragraph (a)(l) of this section shall be submitted in American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) text. No other formats shall be allowed.

(3) The computer readable form may be created by any means, such as word processors, nucleotide/amino acid sequence editors' or other custom computer programs; however, it shall conform to all requirements detailed in this section.

(4) File compression is acceptable when using diskette media, so long as the compressed file is in a self-extracting format that will decompress on one of the systems described in paragraph (b) of this section.

(5) Page numbering must not appear within the computer readable form version of the "Sequence Listing" file.

(6) All computer readable forms must have a label permanently affixed thereto on which has been hand-printed or typed: the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date on which the data were recorded on the computer readable form, the operating system used, a reference number, and an application number and filing date, if known. If multiple diskettes are submitted, the diskette labels must indicate their order (e.g. "1 of X").

(b) Computer readable form submissions must meet these format requirements:

(1) Computer Compatibility: IBM PC/XT/AT or Apple Macintosh;

(2) Operating System Compatibility: MS-DOS, MS-Windows, Unix or Macintosh;

(3) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed; and

(4) Pagination: Continuous file (no "hard page break" codes permitted).

(c) Computer readable form files submitted may be in any of the following media:

(1) Diskette: 3.50 inch, 1.44 Mb storage; 3.50 inch, 720 Kb storage; 5.25 inch, 1.2 Mb storage; 5.25 inch, 360 Kb storage.

(2) Magnetic tape: 0.5 inch, up to 24000 feet; Density: 1600 or 6250 bits per inch, 9 track; Format: Unix tar command; specify blocking factor (not "block size"); Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed.

(3) 8mm Data Cartridge: Format: Unix tar command; specify blocking factor (not "block size"); Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed.

(4) Compact disc: Format: ISO 9660 or High Sierra Format.

(5) Magneto Optical Disk: Size/Storage Specifications: 5.25 inch, 640 Mb.

(d) Computer readable forms that are submitted to the Office will not be returned to the applicant.

**Legislative History**

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 63 FR 29620, 29637, June 1, 1998; 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

§ 1.825 Amendments to or replacement of sequence listing and computer readable copy thereof.

(a) Any amendment to a paper copy of the "Sequence Listing" (§ 1.821(c)) must be made by the submission of substitute sheets and include a statement that the substitute sheets include no new matter. Any amendment to a compact disc copy of the "Sequence Listing" (§ 1.821(c)) must be made by the submission of a replacement compact disc (2 copies) in compliance with § 1.52(e). Amendments must also be accompanied by a statement that indicates support for the amendment in the application, as filed, and a statement that the replacement compact disc includes no new matter.

(b) Any amendment to the paper or compact disc copy of the "Sequence Listing," in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, must be accompanied by a substitute copy of the computer readable form (§ 1.821(e)) including all previously submitted data with the amendment incorporated therein, accompanied by a statement that the copy in computer readable form is the same as the substitute copy of the "Sequence Listing."

(c) Any appropriate amendments to the "Sequence Listing" in a patent; e.g., by reason of reissue or certificate of correction, must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(d) If, upon receipt, the computer readable form is found to be damaged or unreadable, applicant must provide, within such time as set by the Commissioner, a substitute copy of the data in computer readable form accompanied by a statement that the substitute data is identical to that originally filed.

**Legislative History**

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 63 FR 29620, 29638, June 1, 1998; 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, as corrected at 65 FR 78958, Dec. 18, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraphs (a) and (b), effective Sept. 8, 2000.]

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART G -- SAMPLE SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Smith, John
Smith, Jane
<120> Example of a Sequence Listing
<130>01-00001
<140> US 08/999,999
<141> 1998-02-28
<150> EP 91000000
<151>1997-12-31
<160> 2
<170>PatentIn ver. 2.0
<210> 1
<211> 403
<212> DNA

<213> Paramecium aurelia
<220>
<221>CDS
<222> 341..394
<300>
<301> Doe, Richard
<302> Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from Paramecium sp.
<303> Journal of Fictional Genes
<304> 1
<305> 4
<306> 1 - 7
<307> 1998-06-20
<400> 1

ctactctact ctactctcat ctactatctt ctttggatct ctgagtctgc ctgagtggta 60
ctcttgagtc ctggagatct ctcctctcac atgtgatcgt cgagactgac cgatagatcg 120
ctgactgact ctgagatagt cgagcccgta cgagacccgt cgagggtgac agagagtggg 180
cgcgtgcgcg cagagcgccg cgccggtgcg cgcgcgagtg cgcggtgggc cgcgcgaggg 240
ctttcgcggc agcggcggcg ctttccggcg cgcgcccgtc cgcccctaga cctgagaggt 300
cttctcttcc ctcctcttca ctagagaggt ctatatatac atg gtt tca atg ttc 355

Met Val Ser Met Phe
1 5

agc ttg tct tth aaa tgg cct gga ttt tgt ttg ttt gtt tgtttgctc 403
Ser Leu Ser Phe Lys Trp Pro Gly Phe Cys Leu Phe Val
10 15
<210> 2
<211> 18
<212> PRT
<213> Paramecium aurelia
<400> 2

Met Val Ser Met Phe Ser Leu Ser Phe Lys Trp Pro Gly Phe Cys Leu
1 5 10 15
Phe Val

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989; 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990; 63 FR 29620, 29638, June 1, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 29620, 29638, June 1, 1998, revised this section, effective July 1, 1998.]

APPENDIX B TO SUBPART G [This section was removed. See 63 FR 48448, Sept. 10, 1998.]

SUBPART H --Inter Partes Reexamination of Patents That Issued From an Original Application Filed in the United States on or After November 29, 1999

PRIOR ART CITATIONS

§ 1.902 Processing of prior art citations during an inter partes reexamination proceeding.

Citations by the patent owner in accordance with § 1.933 and by an inter partes reexamination third party requester under § 1.915 or § 1.948 will be entered in the inter partes reexamination file. The entry in the patent file of other citations submitted after the date of an order for reexamination pursuant to § 1.931 by persons other than the patent owner, or the third party requester under either § 1.915 or § 1.948, will be delayed until the inter partes reexamination proceeding has been terminated. See § 1.502 for processing of prior art citations in patent and reexamination files during an ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

REQUIREMENTS FOR INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION PROCEEDINGS

§ 1.903 Service of papers on parties in inter partes reexamination.

The patent owner and the third party requester will be sent copies of Office actions issued during the inter partes reexamination proceeding. After filing of a request for inter partes reexamination by a third party requester, any document filed by either the patent owner or the third party requester must be served on every other party in the reexamination proceeding in the manner provided in § 1.248. Any document must reflect service or the document may be refused consideration by the Office. The failure of the patent owner or the third party requester to serve documents may result in their being refused consideration.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.904 Notice of inter partes reexamination in Official Gazette.

A notice of the filing of an inter partes reexamination request will be published in the Official Gazette. The notice published in the Official Gazette under § 1.11(c) will be considered to be constructive notice of the inter partes reexamination proceeding and inter partes reexamination will proceed.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.905 Submission of papers by the public in inter partes reexamination.

Unless specifically provided for, no submissions on behalf of any third parties other than third party requesters as defined in 35 U.S.C. 100(e) will be considered unless such submissions are in accordance with § 1.915 or entered in the patent file prior to the date of the order for reexamination pursuant to § 1.931. Submissions by third parties, other than third party requesters, filed after the date of the order for reexamination pursuant to § 1.931, must meet the requirements of § 1.501 and will be treated in accordance with § 1.902. Submissions which do not meet the requirements of § 1.501 will be returned.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.906 Scope of reexamination in inter partes reexamination proceeding.

(a) Claims in an inter partes reexamination proceeding will be examined on the basis of patents or printed publications and, with respect to subject matter added or deleted in the reexamination proceeding, on the basis of the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112.

(b) Claims in an inter partes reexamination proceeding will not be permitted to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent.

(c) Issues other than those indicated in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section will not be resolved in an inter partes reexamination proceeding. If such issues are raised by the patent owner or the third party requester during a reexamination proceeding, the existence of such issues will be noted by the examiner in the next Office action, in which case the patent owner may desire to consider the advisability of filing a reissue application to have such issues considered and resolved.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76778, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.907 Inter partes reexamination prohibited.

(a) Once an order to reexamine has been issued under § 1.931, neither the third party requester, nor its privies, may file a subsequent request for inter partes reexamination of the patent until an inter partes reexamination certificate is issued under § 1.997, unless authorized by the Commissioner.

(b) Once a final decision has been entered against a party in a civil action arising in whole or in part under 28 U.S.C. 1338 that the party has not sustained its burden of proving invalidity of any patent claim-in-suit, then neither that party nor its privies may thereafter request inter partes reexamination of any such patent claim on the basis of issues which that party, or its privies, raised or could have raised in such civil action, and an inter partes reexamination requested by that party, or its privies, on the basis of such issues may not thereafter be maintained by the Office.

(c) If a final decision in an inter partes reexamination proceeding instituted by a third party requester is favorable to patentability of any original, proposed amended, or new claims of the patent, then neither that party nor its privies may thereafter request inter partes reexamination of any such patent claims on the basis of issues which that party, or its privies, raised or could have raised in such inter partes reexamination proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.913 Persons eligible to file request for inter partes reexamination.

Except as provided for in § 1.907, any person may, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent which issued from an original application filed in the United States on or after November 29, 1999, file a request for inter partes reexamination by the Office of any claim of the patent on the basis of prior art patents or printed publications cited under § 1.501.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.915 Content of request for inter partes reexamination.

(a) The request must be accompanied by the fee for requesting inter partes reexamination set forth in § 1.20(c)(2).

(b) A request for inter partes reexamination must include the following parts:

(1) An identification of the patent by patent number and every claim for which reexamination is requested.

(2) A citation of the patents and printed publications which are presented to provide a substantial new question of patentability.

(3) A statement pointing out each substantial new question of patentability based on the cited patents and printed publications, and a detailed explanation of the pertinency and manner of applying the patents and printed publications to every claim for which reexamination is requested.

(4) A copy of every patent or printed publication relied upon or referred to in paragraphs (b)(1) through (3) of this section, accompanied by an English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language document.

(5) A copy of the entire patent including the front face, drawings, and specification/claims (in double column format) for which reexamination is requested, and a copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent. All copies must have each page plainly written on only one side of a sheet of paper.

(6) A certification by the third party requester that a copy of the request has been served in its entirety on the patent owner at the address provided for in § 1.33(c). The name and address of the party served must be indicated. If service was not possible, a duplicate copy of the request must be supplied to the Office.

(7) A certification by the third party requester that the estoppel provisions of § 1.907 do not prohibit the inter partes reexamination.

(8) A statement identifying the real party in interest to the extent necessary for a subsequent person filing an inter partes reexamination request to determine whether that person is a privy.

(c) If an inter partes request is filed by an attorney or agent identifying another party on whose behalf the request is being filed, the attorney or agent must have a power of attorney from that party or be acting in a representative capacity pursuant to § 1.34(a).

(d) If the inter partes request does not meet all the requirements of subsection 1.915(b), the person identified as requesting inter partes reexamination may be so notified and given an opportunity to complete the formal requirements of the request within a specified time. Failure to comply with the notice may result in the inter partes reexamination proceeding being vacated.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.919 Filing date of request for inter partes reexamination.

(a) The filing date of a request for inter partes reexamination is the date on which the request satisfies the fee requirement of § 1.915(a).

(b) If the request is not granted a filing date, the request will be placed in the patent file as a citation of prior art if it complies with the requirements of § 1.501.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.923 Examiner's determination on the request for inter partes reexamination.

Within three months following the filing date of a request for inter partes reexamination under § 1.919, the examiner will consider the request and determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of the patent is raised by the request and the prior art citation. The examiner's determination will be based on the claims in effect at the time of the determination, will become a part of the official file of the patent, and will be mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c) and to the third party requester. If the examiner determines that no substantial new question of patentability is present, the examiner shall refuse the request and shall not order inter partes reexamination.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.925 Partial refund if request for inter partes reexamination is not ordered.

Where inter partes reexamination is not ordered, a refund of a portion of the fee for requesting inter partes reexamination will be made to the requester in accordance with § 1.26(c).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.927 Petition to review refusal to order inter partes reexamination.

The third party requester may seek review by a petition to the Commissioner under§ 1.181 within one month of the mailing date of the examiner's determination refusing to order inter partes reexamination. Any such petition must comply with § 1.181(b). If no petition is timely filed or if the decision on petition affirms that no substantial new question of patentability has been raised, the determination shall be final and nonappealable.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76779, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION OF PATENTS

§ 1.931 Order for inter partes reexamination.

(a) If a substantial new question of patentability is found, the determination will include an order for inter partes reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question.

(b) If the order for inter partes reexamination resulted from a petition pursuant to § 1.927, the inter partes reexamination will ordinarily be conducted by an examiner other than the examiner responsible for the initial determination under § 1.923.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

§ 1.933 Patent owner duty of disclosure in inter partes reexamination proceedings.

(a) Each individual associated with the patent owner in an inter partes reexamination proceeding has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding as set forth in § 1.555(a) and (b). The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability in an inter partes reexamination proceeding is deemed to be satisfied by filing a paper in compliance with the requirements set forth in § 1.555(a) and (b).

(b) The responsibility for compliance with this section rests upon the individuals designated in paragraph (a) of this section, and no evaluation will be made by the Office in the reexamination proceeding as to compliance with this section. If questions of compliance with this section are raised by the patent owner or the third party requester during a reexamination proceeding, they will be noted as unresolved questions in accordance with § 1.906(c).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

OFFICE ACTIONS AND RESPONSES (BEFORE EXAMINER) IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

§ 1.935 Initial Office action usually accompanies order for inter partes reexamination.

The order for inter partes reexamination will usually be accompanied by the initial Office action on the merits of the reexamination.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.937 Conduct of inter partes reexamination.

(a) All inter partes reexamination proceedings, including any appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, will be conducted with special dispatch within the Office, unless the Commissioner makes a determination that there is good cause for suspending the reexamination proceeding.

(b) The inter partes reexamination proceeding will be conducted in accordance with § § 1.104 through 1.116, the sections governing the application examination process, and will result in the issuance of an inter partes reexamination certificate under § 1.997, except as otherwise provided.

(c) All communications between the Office and the parties to the inter partes reexamination which are directed to the merits of the proceeding must be in writing and filed with the Office for entry into the record of the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.939 Unauthorized papers in inter partes reexamination.

(a) If an unauthorized paper is filed by any party at any time during the inter partes reexamination proceeding it will not be considered and may be returned.

(b) Unless otherwise authorized, no paper shall be filed prior to the initial Office action on the merits of the inter partes reexamination.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.941 Amendments by patent owner in inter partes reexamination.

Amendments by patent owner in inter partes reexamination proceedings are made by filing a paper in compliance with § § 1.530(d)-(k) and 1.943.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.943 Requirements of responses, written comments, and briefs in inter partes reexamination.

(a) The form of responses, written comments, briefs, appendices, and other papers must be in accordance with the requirements of § 1.52.

(b) Responses by the patent owner and written comments by the third party requester shall not exceed 50 pages in length, excluding amendments, appendices of claims, and reference materials such as prior art references.

(c) Appellant's briefs filed by the patent owner and the third party requester shall not exceed thirty pages or 14,000 words in length, excluding appendices of claims and reference materials such as prior art references. All other briefs filed by any party shall not exceed fifteen pages in length or 7,000 words. If the page limit for any brief is exceeded, a certificate is required stating the number of words contained in the brief.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.945 Response to Office action by patent owner in inter partes reexamination.

The patent owner will be given at least thirty days to file a response to any Office action on the merits of the inter partes reexamination.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.947 Comments by third party requester to patent owner's response in inter partes reexamination.

Each time the patent owner files a response to an Office action on the merits pursuant to § 1.945, a third party requester may once file written comments within a period of 30 days from the date of service of the patent owner's response. These comments shall be limited to issues raised by the Office action or the patent owner's response. The time for submitting comments by the third party requester may not be extended. For the purpose of filing the written comments by the third party requester, the comments will be considered as having been received in the Office as of the date of deposit specified in the certificate under § 1.8.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.948 Limitations on submission of prior art by third party requester following the order for inter partes reexamination.

(a) After the inter partes reexamination order, the third party requester may only cite additional prior art as defined under § 1.501 if it is filed as part of a comments submission under § 1.947 or § 1.951(b) and is limited to prior art:

(1) which is necessary to rebut a finding of fact by the examiner;

(2) which is necessary to rebut a response of the patent owner; or

(3) which for the first time became known or available to the third party requester after the filing of the request for inter partes reexamination proceeding. Prior art submitted under paragraph (a)(3) of this section must be accompanied by a statement as to when the prior art first became known or available to the third party requester and must include a discussion of the pertinency of each reference to the patentability of at least one claim.

(b) [Reserved].

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.949 Examiner's Office action closing prosecution in inter partes reexamination.

Upon consideration of the issues a second or subsequent time, or upon a determination of patentability of all claims, the examiner shall issue an Office action treating all claims present in the inter partes reexamination, which may be an action closing prosecution. The Office action shall set forth all rejections and determinations not to make a proposed rejection, and the grounds therefor. An Office action will not usually close prosecution if it includes a new ground of rejection which was not previously addressed by the patent owner, unless the new ground was necessitated by an amendment.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76780, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.951 Options after Office action closing prosecution in inter partes reexamination.

(a) After an Office action closing prosecution in an inter partes reexamination, the patent owner may once file comments limited to the issues raised in the Office action closing prosecution. The comments can include a proposed amendment to the claims, which amendment will be subject to the criteria of § 1.116 as to whether or not it shall be admitted. The comments must be filed within the time set for response in the Office action closing prosecution.

(b) When the patent owner does file comments, a third party requester may once file comments responsive to the patent owner's comments within 30 days from the date of service of patent owner's comments on the third party requester.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.953 Examiner's Right of Appeal Notice in inter partes reexamination.

(a) Upon considering the comments of the patent owner and the third party requester subsequent to the Office action closing prosecution in an inter partes reexamination, or upon expiration of the time for submitting such

comments, the examiner shall issue a Right of Appeal Notice, unless the examiner reopens prosecution and issues another Office action on the merits.

(b) Expedited Right of Appeal Notice: At any time after the patent owner's response to the initial Office action on the merits in an inter partes reexamination, the patent owner and all third party requesters may stipulate that the issues are appropriate for a final action, which would include a final rejection and/or a final determination favorable to patentability, and may request the issuance of a Right of Appeal Notice. The request must have the concurrence of the patent owner and all third party requesters present in the proceeding and must identify all the appealable issues and the positions of the patent owner and all third party requesters on those issues. If the examiner determines that no other issues are present or should be raised, a Right of Appeal Notice limited to the identified issues shall be issued. Any appeal by the parties shall be conducted in accordance with § § 1.959-1.983.

(c) The Right of Appeal Notice shall be a final action, which comprises a final rejection setting forth each ground of rejection and/or final decision favorable to patentability including each determination not to make a proposed rejection, an identification of the status of each claim, and the reasons for decisions favorable to patentability and/or the grounds of rejection for each claim. No amendment can be made in response to the Right of Appeal Notice. The Right of Appeal Notice shall set a one-month time period for either party to appeal. If no notice of appeal is filed, the inter partes reexamination proceeding will be terminated, and the Commissioner will proceed to issue a certificate under § 1.997 in accordance with the Right of Appeal Notice.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

## INTERVIEWS PROHIBITED IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

### § 1.955 Interviews prohibited in inter partes reexamination proceedings.

There will be no interviews in an inter partes reexamination proceeding which discuss the merits of the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

## EXTENSIONS OF TIME, TERMINATION OF PROCEEDINGS, AND PETITIONS TO REVIVE IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

### § 1.956 Patent owner extensions of time in inter partes reexamination.

The time for taking any action by a patent owner in an inter partes reexamination proceeding will be extended only for sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the patent owner is due, but in no case will the mere filing of a request effect any extension. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.957 Failure to file a timely, appropriate or complete response or comment in inter partes reexamination.

(a) If the third party requester files an untimely or inappropriate comment, notice of appeal or brief in an inter partes reexamination, the paper will be refused consideration.

(b) If no claims are found patentable, and the patent owner fails to file a timely and appropriate response in an inter partes reexamination proceeding, the reexamination proceeding will be terminated and the Commissioner will proceed to issue a certificate under § 1.997 in accordance with the last action of the Office.

(c) If claims are found patentable and the patent owner fails to file a timely and appropriate response to any Office action in an inter partes reexamination proceeding, further prosecution will be limited to the claims found patentable at the time of the failure to respond, and to any claims added thereafter which do not expand the scope of the claims which were found patentable at that time.

(d) When action by the patent owner is a bona fide attempt to respond and to advance the prosecution and is substantially a complete response to the Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, an opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.958 Petition to revive terminated inter partes reexamination or claims terminated for lack of patent owner response.

(a) If a response by the patent owner is not timely filed in the Office, the delay in filing such response may be excused if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. A grantable petition to accept an unavoidably delayed response must be filed in compliance with § 1.137(a).

(b) Any response by the patent owner not timely filed in the Office may be accepted if the delay was unintentional. A grantable petition to accept an unintentionally delayed response must be filed in compliance with § 1.137(b).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

§ 1.959 Notice of appeal and cross appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in inter partes reexamination.

(a)(1) Upon the issuance of a Right of Appeal Notice under § 1.953, the patent owner involved in an inter partes reexamination proceeding may appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences with respect to the final rejection of any claim of the patent by filing a notice of appeal within the time provided in the Right of Appeal Notice and paying the fee set forth in § 1.17(b).

(2) Upon the issuance of a Right of Appeal Notice under § 1.953, a third party requester involved in an inter partes reexamination proceeding may appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences with respect to any final decision favorable to the patentability, including any final determination not to make a proposed rejection, of any original, proposed amended, or new claim of the patent by filing a notice of appeal within the time provided in the Right of Appeal Notice and paying the fee set forth in § 1.17(b).

(b)(1) Within fourteen days of service of a third party requester's notice of appeal under paragraph (a)(2) of this section and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(b), a patent owner who has not filed a notice of appeal may file a notice of cross appeal with respect to the final rejection of any claim of the patent.

(2) Within fourteen days of service of a patent owner's notice of appeal under paragraph (a)(1) of this section and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(b), a third party requester who has not filed a notice of appeal may file a notice of cross appeal with respect to any final decision favorable to the patentability, including any final determination not to make a proposed rejection, of any original, proposed amended, or new claim of the patent.

(c) The notice of appeal or cross appeal in an inter partes reexamination proceeding must identify the appealed claim(s) and must be signed by the patent owner, the third party requester, or their duly authorized attorney or agent.

(d) An appeal or cross appeal, when taken, must be taken from all the rejections of the claims in a Right of Appeal Notice which the patent owner proposes to contest or from all the determinations favorable to patentability, including any final determination not to make a proposed rejection, in a Right of Appeal Notice which a third party requester proposes to contest. Questions relating to matters not affecting the merits of the invention may be required to be settled before an appeal is decided.

(e) The times for filing a notice of appeal or cross appeal may not be extended.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76781, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.961 Jurisdiction over appeal in inter partes reexamination.

Jurisdiction over the inter partes reexamination proceeding passes to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon transmittal of the file, including all briefs and examiner's answers, to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. Prior to the entry of a decision on the appeal, the Commissioner may sua sponte order the inter partes reexamination proceeding remanded to the examiner for action consistent with the Commissioner's order.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.962 Appellant and respondent in inter partes reexamination defined.

For the purposes of inter partes reexamination, appellant is any party, whether the patent owner or a third party requester, filing a notice of appeal or cross appeal. If more than one party appeals or cross appeals, each appealing or cross appealing party is an appellant with respect to the claims to which his or her appeal or cross appeal is directed. A respondent is any third party requester responding under § 1.967 to the appellant's brief of the patent owner, or the patent owner responding under § 1.967 to the appellant's brief of any third party requester. No third party requester may be a respondent to the appellant brief of any other third party requester.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.963 Time for filing briefs in inter partes reexamination.

(a) An appellant's brief in an inter partes reexamination must be filed no later than two months from the latest filing date of the last-filed notice of appeal or cross appeal or, if any party to the inter partes reexamination is entitled to file an appeal or cross appeal but fails to timely do so, the expiration of time for filing (by the last party entitled to do so) such notice of appeal or cross appeal. The time for filing an appellant's brief may not be extended.

(b) Once an appellant's brief has been properly filed, any brief must be filed by respondent within one month from the date of service of the appellant's brief. The time for filing a respondent's brief may not be extended.

(c) The examiner will consider both the appellant's and respondent's briefs and may prepare an examiner's answer under § 1.969.

(d) Any appellant may file a rebuttal brief under § 1.971 within one month of the date of the examiner's answer. The time for filing a rebuttal brief may not be extended.

(e) No further submission will be considered and any such submission will be treated in accordance with § 1.939.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.965 Appellant's brief in inter partes reexamination.

(a) Appellant(s) may once, within time limits for filing set forth in § 1.963, file a brief in triplicate and serve the brief on all other parties to the inter partes reexamination proceeding in accordance with § 1.903. The brief must be signed by the appellant, or the appellant's duly authorized attorney or agent and must be accompanied by the requisite

fee set forth in § 1.17(c). The brief must set forth the authorities and arguments on which appellant will rely to maintain the appeal. Any arguments or authorities not included in the brief will be refused consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, unless good cause is shown.

(b) A party's appeal shall stand dismissed upon failure of that party to file an appellant's brief, accompanied by the requisite fee, within the time allowed.

(c) The appellant's brief shall contain the following items under appropriate headings and in the order indicated below, unless the brief is filed by a party who is not represented by a registered practitioner. The brief may include an appendix containing only those portions of the record on which reliance has been made.

(1) Real Party in Interest. A statement identifying the real party in interest.

(2) Related Appeals and Interferences. A statement identifying by number and filing date all other appeals or interferences known to the appellant, the appellant's legal representative, or assignee which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in the pending appeal.

(3) Status of Claims. A statement of the status of all the claims, pending or canceled. If the appellant is the patent owner, the appellant must also identify the rejected claims whose rejection is being appealed. If the appellant is a third party requester, the appellant must identify the claims that the examiner has made a determination favorable to patentability, which determination is being appealed.

(4) Status of Amendments. A statement of the status of any amendment filed subsequent to the close of prosecution.

(5) Summary of Invention. A concise explanation of the invention or subject matter defined in the claims involved in the appeal, which shall refer to the specification by column and line number, and to the drawing(s), if any, by reference characters.

(6) Issues. A concise statement of the issues presented for review. No new ground of rejection can be proposed by a third party requester appellant.

(7) Grouping of Claims. If the appellant is the patent owner, for each ground of rejection in the Right of Appeal Notice which appellant contests and which applies to a group of two or more claims, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall select a single claim from the group and shall decide the appeal as to the ground of rejection on the basis of that claim alone unless a statement is included that the claims of the group do not stand or fall together; and, in the argument under paragraph (c)(8) of this section, appellant explains why the claims of this group are believed to be separately patentable. Merely pointing out differences in what the claims cover is not an argument as to why the claims are separately patentable.

(8) Argument. The contentions of appellant with respect to each of the issues presented for review in paragraph (c)(6) of this section, and the bases therefor, with citations of the authorities, statutes, and parts of the record relied on. Each issue should be treated under a separate, numbered heading.

(i) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, or for each determination favorable to patentability, including a determination not to make a proposed rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, which appellant contests, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection or the determination and how the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112 is complied with, if the appellant is the patent owner, or is not complied with, if the appellant is a third party requester, including, as appropriate, how the specification and drawing(s), if any,

(A) Describe, if the appellant is the patent owner, or fail to describe, if the appellant is a third party requester, the subject matter defined by each of the appealed claims; and

(B) Enable, if the appellant is the patent owner, or fail to enable, if the appellant is a third party requester, any person skilled in the art to make and use the subject matter defined by each of the appealed claims.

(ii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, or for each determination favorable to patentability including a determination not to make a proposed rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, which appellant

contests, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection, if the appellant is the patent owner, or the determination, if the appellant is a third party requester, and how the claims do, if the appellant is the patent owner, or do not, if the appellant is a third party requester, particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which the inventor regards as the invention.

(iii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102 or for each determination favorable to patentability including a determination not to make a proposed rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102 which appellant contests, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection, if the appellant is the patent owner, or determination, if the appellant is a third party requester, and why the appealed claims are, if the appellant is the patent owner, or are not, if the appellant is a third party requester, patentable under 35 U.S.C. 102, including any specific limitations in the appealed claims which are or are not described in the prior art.

(iv) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103 or for each determination favorable to patentability, including a determination not to make a proposed rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103 which appellant contests, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection, if the appellant is the patent owner, or determination, if the appellant is a third party requester. If appropriate, also state the specific limitations in the appealed claims which are or are not described in the prior art and explain how such limitations render the claimed subject matter obvious, if the appellant is a third party requester, or unobvious, if the appellant is the patent owner, over the prior art. If the rejection or determination is based upon a combination of references, the argument shall explain why the references, taken as a whole, do or do not suggest the claimed subject matter. The argument should include, as may be appropriate, an explanation of why features disclosed in one reference may or may not properly be combined with features disclosed in another reference. A general argument that all the limitations are or are not described in a single reference does not satisfy the requirements of this paragraph.

(v) For any rejection other than those referred to in paragraphs (c)(8)(i) to (iv) of this section or for each determination favorable to patentability, including any determination not to make a proposed rejection other than those referred to in paragraphs (c)(8)(i) to (iv) of this section which appellant contests, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection, if the appellant is the patent owner, or determination, if the appellant is a third party requester, and the specific limitations in the appealed claims, if appropriate, or other reasons, which cause the rejection or determination to be in error.

(9) Appendix. An appendix containing a copy of the claims appealed by the appellant.

(10) Certificate of Service. A certification that a copy of the brief has been served in its entirety on all other parties to the reexamination proceeding. The names and addresses of the parties served must be indicated.

(d) If a brief is filed which does not comply with all the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, appellant will be notified of the reasons for non-compliance and provided with a non-extendable period of one month within which to file an amended brief. If the appellant does not file an amended brief during the one-month period, or files an amended brief which does not overcome all the reasons for non-compliance stated in the notification, that appellant's appeal will stand dismissed.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76782, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.967 Respondent's brief in inter partes reexamination.

(a) Respondent(s) in an inter partes reexamination appeal may once, within the time limit for filing set forth in § 1.963, file a respondent brief in triplicate and serve the brief on all parties in accordance with § 1.903. The brief must be signed by the party, or the party's duly authorized attorney or agent, and must be accompanied by the requisite fee set

forth in § 1.17(c). The brief must state the authorities and arguments on which respondent will rely. Any arguments or authorities not included in the brief will be refused consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, unless good cause is shown. The respondent brief shall be limited to issues raised in the appellant brief to which the respondent brief is directed. A third party respondent brief may not address any brief of any other third party.

(b) The respondent brief shall contain the following items under appropriate headings and in the order here indicated, and may include an appendix containing only those portions of the record on which reliance has been made.

(1) Real Party in Interest. A statement identifying the real party in interest.

(2) Related Appeals and Interferences. A statement identifying by number and filing date all other appeals or interferences known to the respondent, the respondent's legal representative, or assignee (if any) which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in the pending appeal.

(3) Status of claims. A statement accepting or disputing appellant's statement of the status of claims. If appellant's statement of the status of claims is disputed, the errors in appellant's statement must be specified with particularity.

(4) Status of amendments. A statement accepting or disputing appellant's statement of the status of amendments. If appellant's statement of the status of amendments is disputed, the errors in appellant's statement must be specified with particularity.

(5) Summary of invention. A statement accepting or disputing appellant's summary of the invention or subject matter defined in the claims involved in the appeal. If appellant's summary of the invention or subject matter defined in the claims involved in the appeal is disputed, the errors in appellant's summary must be specified.

(6) Issues. A statement accepting or disputing appellant's statement of the issues presented for review. If appellant's statement of the issues presented for review is disputed, the errors in appellant's statement must be specified. A counter statement of the issues for review may be made. No new ground of rejection can be proposed by a third party requester respondent.

(7) Argument. A statement accepting or disputing the contentions of the appellant with each of the issues. If a contention of the appellant is disputed, the errors in appellant's argument must be specified, stating the basis therefor, with citations of the authorities, statutes, and parts of the record relied on. Each issue should be treated under a separate heading. An argument may be made with each of the issues stated in the counter statement of the issues, with each counter-stated issue being treated under a separate heading. The provisions of § 1.965 (c)(8)(iii) and (iv) of these regulations shall apply to any argument raised under 35 U.S.C. 102 or sec. 103.

(8) Certificate of Service. A certification that a copy of the respondent brief has been served in its entirety on all other parties to the reexamination proceeding. The names and addresses of the parties served must be indicated.

(c) If a respondent brief is filed which does not comply with all the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section, respondent will be notified of the reasons for non-compliance and provided with a non-extendable period of one month within which to file an amended brief. If the respondent does not file an amended brief during the one-month period, or files an amended brief which does not overcome all the reasons for non-compliance stated in the notification, the respondent brief will not be considered.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76783, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76783, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.969 Examiner's answer in inter partes reexamination.

(a) The primary examiner in an inter partes reexamination appeal may, within such time as directed by the Commissioner, furnish a written statement in answer to the patent owner's and/or third party requester's appellant brief or respondent brief including, as may be necessary, such explanation of the invention claimed and of the references, the grounds of rejection, and the reasons for patentability, including grounds for not adopting a proposed rejection. A copy of the answer shall be supplied to all parties to the reexamination proceeding. If the primary examiner finds that the appeal is not regular in form or does not relate to an appealable action, he or she shall so state.

(b) An examiner's answer may not include a new ground of rejection.

(c) An examiner's answer may not include a new determination not to make a proposed rejection of a claim.

(d) Any new ground of rejection, or any new determination not to make a proposed rejection, must be made in an Office action reopening prosecution.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.971 Rebuttal brief in inter partes reexamination.

Within one month of the examiner's answer in an inter partes reexamination appeal, any appellant may once file a rebuttal brief in triplicate. The rebuttal brief of the patent owner may be directed to the examiner's answer and/or any respondent brief. The rebuttal brief of any third party requester may be directed to the examiner's answer and/or the respondent brief of the patent owner. The rebuttal brief of a third party requester may not be directed to the respondent brief of any other third party requester. No new ground of rejection can be proposed by a third party requester. The time for filing a rebuttal brief may not be extended. The rebuttal brief must include a certification that a copy of the rebuttal brief has been served in its entirety on all other parties to the reexamination proceeding. The names and addresses of the parties served must be indicated.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.973 Oral hearing in inter partes reexamination.

(a) An oral hearing in an inter partes reexamination appeal should be requested only in those circumstances in which an appellant or a respondent considers such a hearing necessary or desirable for a proper presentation of the appeal. An appeal decided without an oral hearing will receive the same consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as an appeal decided after oral hearing.

(b) If an appellant or a respondent desires an oral hearing, he or she must file a written request for such hearing accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(d) within two months after the date of the examiner's answer. The time for requesting an oral hearing may not be extended.

(c) An oral argument may be presented at oral hearing by, or on behalf of, the primary examiner if considered desirable by either the primary examiner or the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(d) If an appellant or a respondent has requested an oral hearing and has submitted the fee set forth in § 1.17(d), a hearing date will be set, and notice given to all parties to the reexamination proceeding, as well as the primary examiner. The notice shall set a non-extendable period within which all requests for oral hearing shall be submitted by any other party to the appeal desiring to participate in the oral hearing. A hearing will be held as stated in the notice, and oral argument will be limited to thirty minutes for each appellant and respondent who has requested an oral hearing, and twenty minutes for the primary examiner unless otherwise ordered before the hearing begins. No appellant or respondent will be permitted to participate in an oral hearing unless he or she has requested an oral hearing and submitted the fee set forth in § 1.17(d).

(e) If no request and fee for oral hearing have been timely filed by an appellant or a respondent, the appeal will be assigned for consideration and decision on the written record.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.975 Affidavits or declarations after appeal in inter partes reexamination.

Affidavits, declarations, or exhibits submitted after the inter partes reexamination has been appealed will not be admitted without a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they were not earlier presented.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.977 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences; remand to examiner in inter partes reexamination.

(a) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, in its decision, may affirm or reverse each decision of the examiner on all issues raised on each appealed claim, or remand the reexamination proceeding to the examiner for further consideration. The reversal of the examiner's determination not to make a rejection proposed by the third party requester constitutes a decision adverse to the patentability of the claims which are subject to that proposed rejection which will be set forth in the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as a new ground of rejection under paragraph (b) of this section. The affirmance of the rejection of a claim on any of the grounds specified constitutes a general affirmance of the decision of the examiner on that claim, except as to any ground specifically reversed.

(b) Should the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences have knowledge of any grounds not raised in the appeal for rejecting any pending claim, it may include in the decision a statement to that effect with its reasons for so holding, which statement shall constitute a new ground of rejection of the claim. A decision which includes a new ground of rejection shall not be considered final for purposes of judicial review. When the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences makes a new ground of rejection, the patent owner, within one month from the date of the decision, must exercise one of the following two options with respect to the new ground of rejection to avoid termination of the appeal proceeding as to the rejected claim:

(1) The patent owner may submit an appropriate amendment of the claim so rejected or a showing of facts relating to the claim, or both.

(2) The patent owner may file a request for rehearing of the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences under § 1.979(a).

(c) Where the patent owner has responded under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, any third party requester, within one month of the date of service of the patent owner response, may once file comments on the response. Such written comments must be limited to the issues raised by the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences and the patent owner's response. Any third party requester that had not previously filed an appeal or cross appeal and is seeking under this subsection to file comments or a reply to the comments is subject to the appeal and brief fees under § 1.17(b) and (c), respectively, which must accompany the comments or reply.

(d) Following any response by the patent owner under paragraph (b)(1) of this section and any written comments from a third party requester under paragraph (c) of this section, the reexamination proceeding will be remanded to the examiner. The statement of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall be binding upon the examiner unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record be made which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the new ground of rejection. The examiner will consider any response under paragraph (b)(1) of this section and any written comments by a third party requester under paragraph (c) of this section and issue a determination that the rejection should be maintained or has been overcome.

(e) Within one month of the examiner's determination pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section, the patent owner or any third party requester may once submit comments in response to the examiner's determination. Within one month of the date of service of comments in response to the examiner's determination, any party may file a reply to the comments. No third party requester reply may address the comments of any other third party requester reply. Any third party requester that had not previously filed an appeal or cross appeal and is seeking under this subsection to file comments or a reply to the comments is subject to the appeal and brief fees under § 1.17(b) and (c), respectively, which must accompany the comments or reply.

(f) After submission of any comments and any reply pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section, or after time has expired, the reexamination proceeding will be returned to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences which shall reconsider the matter and issue a new decision. The new decision will incorporate the earlier decision, except for those portions specifically withdrawn.

(g) The time period set forth in paragraph (b) of this section is subject to the extension of time provisions of § 1.956. The time periods set forth in paragraphs (c) and (e) of this section may not be extended.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76784, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.979 Action following decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or dismissal of appeal in inter partes reexamination.

(a) Parties to the appeal may file a request for rehearing of the decision within one month of the date of:

(1) The original decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences under § 1.977(a),

(2) The original § 1.977(b) decision under the provisions of § 1.977(b)(2),

(3) The expiration of the time for the patent owner to take action under § 1.977(b)(2), or

(4) The new decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences under § 1.977(f).

(b) Within one month of the date of service of any request for rehearing under paragraph (a) of this section, or any further request for rehearing under paragraph (c) of this section, any party to the appeal may once file comments in opposition to the request for rehearing or the further request for rehearing. The comments in opposition must be limited to the issues raised in the request for rehearing or the further request for rehearing.

(c) If a party to an appeal files a request for rehearing under paragraph (a) of this section, or a further request for rehearing under this section, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will issue a decision on rehearing. This decision is deemed to incorporate the earlier decision, except for those portions specifically withdrawn. If the decision on rehearing becomes, in effect, a new decision, and the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences so states, then any party to the appeal may, within one month of the new decision, file a further request for rehearing of the new decision under this subsection.

(d) Any request for rehearing shall state the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which rehearing is sought.

(e) The patent owner may not appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit under § 1.983 until all parties' rights to request rehearing have been exhausted, at which time the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences is final and appealable by the patent owner.

(f) An appeal by a third party requester is considered terminated by the dismissal of the third party requester's appeal, the failure of the third party requester to timely request rehearing under § 1.979(a) or (c), or a final decision under § 1.979(e). The date of such termination is the date on which the appeal is dismissed, the date on which the time for rehearing expires, or the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences is final. An appeal by the patent owner is considered terminated by the dismissal of the patent owner's appeal, the failure of the patent owner to timely request rehearing under § 1.979(a) or (c), or the failure of the patent owner to timely file an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit under § 1.983. The date of such termination is the date on which the appeal is dismissed, the date on which the time for rehearing expires, or the date on which the time for the patent owner's appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit expires. If an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has been filed, the patent owner's appeal is considered terminated when the mandate is received by the Office. Upon termination of an appeal, if no other appeal is present, the reexamination proceeding will be terminated and the Commissioner will issue a certificate under § 1.997.

(g) The times for requesting rehearing under paragraph (a) of this section, for requesting further rehearing under paragraph (c) of this section, and for submitting comments under paragraph (b) of this section may not be extended.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76785, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76785, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.981 Reopening after decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in inter partes reexamination.

Cases which have been decided by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will not be reopened or reconsidered by the primary examiner except under the provisions of § 1.977 without the written authority of the Commissioner, and then only for the consideration of matters not already adjudicated, sufficient cause being shown.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76785, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76785, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

PATENT OWNER APPEAL TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FEDERAL CIRCUIT IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

§ 1.983 Patent owner appeal to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit in inter partes reexamination.

(a) The patent owner in a reexamination proceeding who is dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may, subject to § 1.979(e), appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

(1) In the U. S. Patent and Trademark Office, file a timely written notice of appeal directed to the Commissioner in accordance with § § 1.302 and 1.304; and

(2) In the Court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee, as provided for in the rules of the Court.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

CONCURRENT PROCEEDINGS INVOLVING SAME PATENT IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

§ 1.985 Notification of prior or concurrent proceedings in inter partes reexamination.

(a) In any inter partes reexamination proceeding, the patent owner shall call the attention of the Office to any prior or concurrent proceedings in which the patent is or was involved, including but not limited to interference, reissue, reexamination, or litigation and the results of such proceedings.

(b) Notwithstanding any provision of the rules, any person at any time may file a paper in an inter partes reexamination proceeding notifying the Office of a prior or concurrent proceedings in which the same patent is or was involved, including but not limited to interference, reissue, reexamination, or litigation and the results of such proceedings. Such paper must be limited to merely providing notice of the other proceeding without discussion of issues of the current inter partes reexamination proceeding. Any paper not so limited will be returned to the sender.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.987 Suspension of inter partes reexamination proceeding due to litigation.

If a patent in the process of inter partes reexamination is or becomes involved in litigation, the Commissioner shall determine whether or not to suspend the inter partes reexamination proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.989 Merger of concurrent reexamination proceedings.

(a) If any reexamination is ordered while a prior inter partes reexamination proceeding is pending for the same patent and prosecution in the prior inter partes reexamination proceeding has not been terminated, a decision may be made to merge the two proceedings or to suspend one of the two proceedings. Where merger is ordered, the merged examination will normally result in the issuance of a single reexamination certificate under § 1.997.

(b) An inter partes reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.913 which is merged with an ex parte reexamination proceeding filed under § 1.510 will result in the merged proceeding being governed by § § 1.902 through 1.997, except that the rights of any third party requester of the ex parte reexamination shall be governed by § § 1.510 through 1.560.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.991 Merger of concurrent reissue application and inter partes reexamination proceeding.

If a reissue application and an inter partes reexamination proceeding on which an order pursuant to § 1.931 has been mailed are pending concurrently on a patent, a decision may be made to merge the two proceedings or to suspend one of the two proceedings. Where merger of a reissue application and an inter partes reexamination proceeding is ordered, the merged proceeding will be conducted in accordance with § § 1.171 through 1.179, and the patent owner will be required to place and maintain the same claims in the reissue application and the inter partes reexamination proceeding during the pendency of the merged proceeding. In a merged proceeding the third party requester may participate to the extent provided under § § 1.902 through 1.997, except that such participation shall be limited to issues within the scope of inter partes reexamination. The examiner's actions and any responses by the patent owner or third party requester in a merged proceeding will apply to both the reissue application and the inter partes reexamination proceeding and be physically entered into both files. Any inter partes reexamination proceeding merged with a reissue application shall be terminated by the grant of the reissued patent.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.993 Suspension of concurrent interference and inter partes reexamination proceeding.

If a patent in the process of inter partes reexamination is or becomes involved in an interference, the Commissioner may suspend the inter partes reexamination or the interference. The Commissioner will not consider a request to suspend an interference unless a motion under § 1.635 to suspend the interference has been presented to, and denied by, an administrative patent judge and the request is filed within ten (10) days of a decision by an administrative patent judge denying the motion for suspension or such other time as the administrative patent judge may set.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

§ 1.995 Third party requester's participation rights preserved in merged proceeding.

When a third party requester is involved in one or more proceedings, including an inter partes reexamination proceeding, the merger of such proceedings will be accomplished so as to preserve the third party requester's right to participate to the extent specifically provided for in these regulations. In merged proceedings involving different requesters, any paper filed by one party in the merged proceeding shall be served on all other parties of the merged proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76786, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

REEXAMINATION CERTIFICATE IN INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION

§ 1.997 Issuance of inter partes reexamination certificate.

(a) Upon the conclusion of an inter partes reexamination proceeding, the Commissioner will issue a certificate in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 316 setting forth the results of the inter partes reexamination proceeding and the content of the patent following the inter partes reexamination proceeding.

(b) A certificate will be issued in each patent in which an inter partes reexamination proceeding has been ordered under § 1.931. Any statutory disclaimer filed by the patent owner will be made part of the certificate.

(c) The certificate will be sent to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c). A copy of the certificate will also be sent to the third party requester of the inter partes reexamination proceeding.

(d) If a certificate has been issued which cancels all of the claims of the patent, no further Office proceedings will be conducted with that patent or any reissue applications or any reexamination requests relating thereto.

(e) If the inter partes reexamination proceeding is terminated by the grant of a reissued patent as provided in § 1.991, the reissued patent will constitute the reexamination certificate required by this section and 35 U.S.C. 316.

(f) A notice of the issuance of each certificate under this section will be published in the Official Gazette.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 76756, 76787, Dec. 7, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 76756, 76787, Dec. 7, 2000, added Subpart H, effective Feb. 5, 2001.]

# PART 2 --RULES OF PRACTICE IN TRADEMARK CASES

## § 2.1 Sections of part 1 applicable.

Sections 1.1 to 1.26 of this chapter apply to trademark cases, except those parts that specifically refer to patents, and except § 1.22 to the extent that it is inconsistent with § § 2.85(e), 2.101(d), 2.111(c), 2.164, or 2.185. Other sections of part 1 incorporated by reference in part 2 also apply to trademark cases.

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 28709, Aug. 11, 1986; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

## § 2.2 Definitions.

(a) The Act as used in this part means the Trademark Act of 1946, 60 Stat. 427, as amended, codified in 15 U.S.C. 1051 et seq.

(b) Entity as used in this part includes both natural and juristic persons.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

## § 2.6 Trademark fees.

The Patent and Trademark Office requires the following fees and charges:

(a) Trademark process fees.

(1) For filing an application, per class ... $ 325.00.

(2) For filing an amendment to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, per class ... $ 100.00

(3) For filing a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Act, per class ... $ 100.00

(4) For filing a request under section 1(d)(2) of the Act for a six-month extension of time for filing a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Act, per class ... $ 150.00

(5) For filing an application for renewal of a registration, per class ... $ 400.00

(6) Additional fee for filing a renewal application during the grace period, per class ... $ 100.00

(7) For filing to publish a mark under section 12(c), per class ... $ 100.00

(8) For issuing a new certificate of registration upon request of assignee ... $ 100.00

(9) For a certificate of correction of registrant's error ... $ 100.00

(10) For filing a disclaimer to a registration ... $ 100.00

(11) For filing an amendment to a registration ... $ 100.00

(12) For filing an affidavit under § 8 of the Act, per class ... $ 100.00

(13) For filing an affidavit under § 15 of the Act, per class ... $ 200.00

(14) Additional fee for filing a section 8 affidavit during the grace period, per class... $ 100.00

(15) For petitions to the Commissioner ... $ 100.00

(16) For filing a petition to cancel, per class ... $ 300.00

(17) For filing a notice of opposition, per class ... $ 300.00

(18) For ex parte appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, per class ... $ 100.00

(19) Dividing an application, per new application (file wrapper) created ... $ 100.00

(20) For correcting a deficiency in a section 8 affidavit ... $ 100.00

(21) For correcting a deficiency in a renewal application ... $ 100.00

(b) Trademark service fees.

(1) For printed copy of registered mark, copy only

(i) Regular service, which includes preparation of copies by the PTO within 2-3 business days of receipt and delivery by United States Postal Service, fax, or to a PTO Box ... $ 3.00.

(ii) Delivery on next business day to PTO Box or fax delivery within one business day to U.S./Canada/Mexico ... $ 6.00.

(iii) Expedited delivery by commercial delivery service ... $ 25.00.

(2) Certified or uncertified copy of trademark application as filed:

(i) Regular service ... $ 15.00

(ii) Expedited local service ... $ 30.00

(3) Certified or uncertified copy of a trademark-related file wrapper and contents ... $ 50.00

(4) Certified copy of a registered mark, showing title and/or status:

(i) Regular service ... $ 15.00

(ii) Expedited local service ... $ 30.00

(5) Certified or uncertified copy of trademark records, per document except as otherwise provided in this section ... $ 25.00

(6) For recording each trademark assignment agreement or other paper relating to the property in a registration or application

(i) First property in a document ... $ 40.00

(ii) For each additional property in the same document ... $ 25.00

(7) For assignment records, abstract of title and certification, per registration ... $ 25.00

(8) Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using T-Search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to T-Search upon a showing of need or hardship, and if such waiver is in the public interest ... $ 40.00

(9) Self-service copy charge, per page ... $ 0.25

(10) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof... $ 40.00

(11) For items and services that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service ... Actual Cost

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 65155, Dec. 13, 1991; 56 FR 66670, Dec. 24, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 59 FR 257, Jan. 4, 1994; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 62 FR 40450, 40453, July 29, 1997; 64 FR 48900, 48917, Sept. 8, 1999; 64 FR 67486, Dec. 2, 1999; 64 FR 67774, 67777, Dec. 3, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 67486, Dec. 2, 1999, amended paragraph (b)(1), effective Dec. 2, 1999; 64 FR 67774, 67777, Dec. 3, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective Jan. 10, 2000.]

§ 2.7 Fastener Recordal Fees.

Click here to view image.

**Legislative History**

[61 FR 55223, Oct. 25, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 55223, Oct. 25, 1996, added this section, effective Nov. 25, 1996.]

REPRESENTATION BY ATTORNEYS OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PERSONS

§ 2.11 Applicants may be represented by an attorney.

The owner of a trademark may file and prosecute his or her own application for registration of such trademark, or he or she may be represented by an attorney or other individual authorized to practice in trademark cases under § 10.14 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of an attorney or other representative.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 2.12--2.16 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.17 Recognition for representation.

(a) When an attorney as defined in § 10.1(c) of this subchapter acting in a representative capacity appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in a trademark case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Patent and Trademark Office that, under the provisions of § 10.14 and the law he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) Before any non-lawyer will be allowed to take action of any kind in any application or proceeding, a written authorization from the applicant, party to the proceeding, or other person entitled to prosecute such application or proceeding must be filed therein.

(c) To be recognized as a representative, an attorney as defined in § 10.1(c) of this chapter may file a power of attorney, appear in person, or sign a paper on behalf of an applicant or registrant that is filed with the Office in a trademark case.

(d) A party may file a power of attorney that relates to more than one trademark application or registration, or to all existing and future applications and registrations of that party. A party relying on such a power of attorney must:

(1) Include a copy of the previously filed power of attorney; or

(2) Refer to the power of attorney, specifying the filing date of the previously filed power of attorney; the application serial number (if known), registration number, or inter partes proceeding number for which the original power of attorney was filed; and the name of the party who signed the power of attorney; or, if the application serial number is not known, submit a copy of the application or a copy of the mark, and specify the filing date.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999, added paragraphs (c) and (d), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.18 Correspondence, with whom held.

Correspondence will be sent to the applicant or a party to a proceeding at its address unless papers are transmitted by an attorney at law, or a written power of attorney is filed, or written authorization of other person entitled to be recognized is filed, or the applicant or party designates in writing another address to which correspondence is to be sent, in which event correspondence will be sent to the attorney at law transmitting the papers, or to the attorney at law designated in the power of attorney, or to the other person designated in the written authorization, or to the address designated by the applicant or party for correspondence. Correspondence will continue to be sent to such address until the applicant or party, or the attorney at law or other authorized representative of the applicant or party, indicates in writing that correspondence is to be sent to another address. Correspondence will be sent to the domestic representative of a foreign applicant unless the application is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized, in which event correspondence will be sent to the attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized. Double correspondence will not be undertaken by the Patent and Trademark Office, and if more than one attorney at law or other authorized representative appears or signs a paper, the Office reply will be sent to the address already established in the file until another correspondence address is specified by the applicant or party or by the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant or party.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.19 Revocation of power of attorney or of other authorization to represent; withdrawal.

(a) Authority to represent an applicant or a party to a proceeding may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case upon notification to the Commissioner; and when it is so revoked, the Office will communicate directly with the applicant or party to the proceeding or with such other qualified person as may be authorized. The Patent and Trademark Office will notify the person affected of the revocation of his or her authorization.

(b) An individual authorized to represent an applicant or party in a trademark case may withdraw upon application to and approval by the Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

DECLARATIONS

§ 2.20 Declarations in lieu of oaths.

Instead of an oath, affidavit, verification, or sworn statement, the language of 28 U.S.C. 1746, or the following language, may be used:

The undersigned being warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that such willful false statements and the like may jeopardize the validity of the application or document or any registration resulting therefrom, declares that all statements made of his/her own knowledge are true; and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

**Legislative History**

[31 FR 5261, Apr. 1, 1966; 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

APPLICATION FOR REGISTRATION

§ 2.21 Requirements for receiving a filing date.

(a) The Office will grant a filing date to an application that contains all of the following:

(1) The name of the applicant;

(2) A name and address for correspondence;

(3) A clear drawing of the mark;

(4) A listing of the goods or services; and

(5) The filing fee for at least one class of goods or services, required by § 2.6.

(b) If the applicant does not submit all the elements required in paragraph (a) of this section, the Office may return the papers with an explanation of why the filing date was denied.

(c) The applicant may correct and resubmit the application papers. If the resubmitted papers and fee meet all the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the Office will grant a filing date as of the date the Office receives the corrected papers.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 38695, Sept. 2, 1982, as amended at 51 FR 29921, Aug. 21, 1986; 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.23 Serial number.

Applications will be given a serial number as received, and the applicant will be informed of the serial number and the filing date of the application.

**Legislative History**

[37 FR 931, Jan. 21, 1972]

§ 2.24 Designation of representative by foreign applicant.

If an applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the applicant must designate by a written document filed in the Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of some person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. If this document does not accompany or form part of the application, it will be required and registration refused unless it is supplied. Official communications of the Patent and Trademark Office will be addressed to the domestic representative unless the application is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized, in which event Official communications will be sent to the attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized. The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to prosecute the application unless qualified under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of § 10.14 of this subchapter and authorized under § 2.17(b).

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.25 Papers not returnable.

After an application is filed the papers will not be returned for any purpose whatever; but the Office will furnish copies to the applicant upon request and payment of the fee.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.26 Use of old drawing in new application.

In an application filed in place of an abandoned or rejected application, or in an application for reregistration (§ 2.158), a new complete application is required, but the old drawing, if suitable, may be used. The application must be accompanied by a request for the transfer of the drawing, and by a permanent photographic copy, or an order for such copy, of the drawing to be placed in the original file. A drawing so transferred, or to be transferred, cannot be amended.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.27 Pending trademark application index; access to applications.

(a) An index of pending applications including the name and address of the applicant, a reproduction or description of the mark, the goods or services with which the mark is used, the class number, the dates of use, and the serial number and filing date of the application will be available for public inspection as soon as practicable after filing.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, access to the file of a particular pending application will be permitted prior to publication under § 2.80 upon written request.

(c) Decisions of the Commissioner and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in applications and proceedings relating thereto are published or available for inspection or publication.

(d) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, after a mark has been registered, or published for opposition, the file of the application and all proceedings relating thereto are available for public inspection and copies of the papers may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) Anything ordered to be filed under seal pursuant to a protective order issued or made by any court or by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in any proceeding involving an application or a registration shall be kept confidential and shall not be made available for public inspection or copying unless otherwise ordered by the court or the Board, or unless the party protected by the order voluntarily discloses the matter subject thereto. When possible, only confidential portions of filings with the Board shall be filed under seal.

**Legislative History**

[36 FR 25406, Dec. 31, 1971, as amended at 48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983]

THE WRITTEN APPLICATION

§ 2.31 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.32 Requirements for a complete application.

(a) The application must be in English and include the following:

(1) A request for registration;

(2) The name of the applicant(s);

(3)(i) The citizenship of the applicant(s); or

(ii) If the applicant is a corporation, association, partnership or other juristic person, the jurisdiction (usually state or nation) under the laws of which the applicant is organized; and

(iii) If the applicant is a partnership, the names and citizenship of the general partners;

(4) The address of the applicant;

(5) One or more bases, as required by § 2.34(a);

(6) A list of the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant uses or intends to use the mark. In a United States application filed under section 44 of the Act, the scope of the goods or services covered by the section 44 basis may not exceed the scope of the goods or services in the foreign application or registration; and

(7) The international class of goods or services, if known. See § 6.1 of this chapter for a list of the international classes of goods and services.

(b) The application must include a verified statement that meets the requirements of § 2.33.

(c) The application must include a drawing that meets the requirements of § § 2.51 and 2.52.

(d) The application must include fee required by § 2.6 for each class of goods or services.

(e) For the requirements for a multiple class application, see § 2.86.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.33 Verified statement.

(a) The application must include a statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant. A person who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant is:

(1) A person with legal authority to bind the applicant; or

(2) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant; or

(3) An attorney as defined in § 10.1(c) of this chapter who has an actual or implied written or verbal power of attorney from the applicant.

(b)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the verified statement must allege:

That the applicant has adopted and is using the mark shown in the accompanying drawing; that the applicant believes it is the owner of the mark; that the mark is in use in commerce; that to the best of the declarant's knowledge and belief, no other person has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of the other person, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; that the specimen shows the mark as used on or in connection with the goods or services; and that the facts set forth in the application are true.

(2) In an application under section 1(b) or section 44 of the Act, the verified statement must allege:

That the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark shown in the accompanying drawing in commerce on or in connection with the specified goods or services; that the applicant believes it is entitled to use the mark; that to the best of the declarant's knowledge and belief, no other person has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of the other person, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true.

(c) If the verified statement is not filed within a reasonable time after it is signed, the Office may require the applicant to submit a substitute verification or declaration under § 2.20 of the applicant's continued use or bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.

(d) Where an electronically transmitted filing is permitted, the person who signs the verified statement must either:

(1) Place a symbol comprised of numbers and/or letters between two forward slash marks in the signature block on the electronic submission; and print, sign and date in permanent ink, and maintain a paper copy of the electronic submission; or

(2) Sign the verified statement using some other form of electronic signature specified by the Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 28709, Aug. 11, 1986, as amended at 54 FR 37589, Sept. 11, 1989; 54 FR 46231, Nov. 2, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48918, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.34 Bases for filing.

(a) The application must include one or more of the following four filing bases:

(1) Use in commerce under section 1(a) of the Act. The requirements for an application based on section 1(a) of the Act are:

(i) The trademark owner's verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application as of the application filing date;

(ii) The date of the applicant's first use of the mark anywhere on or in connection with the goods or services;

(iii) The date of the applicant's first use of the mark in commerce as a trademark or service mark; and

(iv) One specimen showing how the applicant actually uses the mark in commerce.

(v) An application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has used the mark on or in connection with all the specified goods or services. The dates of use required by paragraphs (a)(1) (ii) and (iii) of this section may be for only one of the items specified.

(2) Intent-to-use under section 1(b) of the Act. (i) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the trademark owner must verify that it has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the filing date of the application.

(ii) The application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the specified goods or services.

(3) Registration of a mark in a foreign applicant's country of origin under section 44(e) of the Act. The requirements for an application under section 44(e) of the Act are:

(i) The trademark owner's verified statement that it has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the filing date of the application.

(ii) A certification or certified copy of a registration in the applicant's country of origin showing that the mark has been registered in that country, and that the registration is in full force and effect. The certification or certified copy must show the name of the owner, the mark, and the goods or services for which the mark is registered. If the certification or certified copy is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation.

(iii) If the record indicates that the foreign registration will expire before the United States registration will issue, the applicant must submit a certification or certified copy from the country of origin to establish that the registration has

been renewed and will be in force at the time the United States registration will issue. If the certification or certified copy is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation.

(iv) The application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the specified goods or services.

(4) Claim of priority, based upon an earlier-filed foreign application, under section 44(d) of the Act. The requirements for an application under section 44(d) of the Act are:

(i) A claim of priority, filed within six months of the filing date of the foreign application. Before publication or registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must either:

(A) Specify the filing date and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or

(B) State that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority.

(ii) Include the trademark owner's verified statement that it has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the filing date of the application.

(iii) Before the application can be approved for publication, or for registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must establish a basis under section 1(a), section 1(b) or section 44(e) of the Act.

(iv) The application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the specified goods or services.

(b)(1) The applicant may claim more than one basis, provided that the applicant satisfies all requirements for the bases claimed. However, the applicant may not claim both sections 1(a) and 1(b) for the identical goods or services in the same application.

(2) If the applicant claims more than one basis, the applicant must list each basis, followed by the goods or services to which that basis applies. If some or all of the goods or services are covered by more than one basis, this must be stated.

(c) The word "commerce" means commerce that Congress may lawfully regulate, as specified in section 45 of the Act.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 48900, 48919, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48919, Sept. 8, 1999, added this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.35 Adding, deleting, or substituting bases.

(a) Before publication, the applicant may add or substitute a basis, if the applicant meets all requirements for the new basis, as stated in § 2.34. The applicant may delete a basis at any time.

(b) An applicant may amend an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board to add or substitute a basis after the mark has been published for opposition, but

only with the express permission of the Commissioner, after consideration on petition. Republication will be required. The amendment of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Board is governed by § 2.133(a).

(c) When the applicant substitutes one basis for another, the Office will presume that there was a continuing valid basis, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record, and the application will retain the original filing date, including a priority filing date under section 44(d), if appropriate.

(d) If an applicant properly claims a section 44(d) basis in addition to another basis, the applicant will retain the priority filing date under section 44(d) no matter which basis the applicant perfects.

(e) The applicant may add or substitute a section 44(d) basis only within the six-month priority period following the filing date of the foreign application.

(f) When the applicant adds or substitutes a basis, the applicant must list each basis, followed by the goods or services to which that basis applies.

(g) When the applicant deletes a basis, the applicant must also delete any goods or services covered solely by the deleted basis.

(h) Once an applicant claims a section 1(b) basis as to any or all of the goods or services, the applicant may not amend the application to seek registration under section 1(a) of the Act for those goods or services unless the applicant files an allegation of use under section 1(c) or section 1(d) of the Act.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999, added this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.36 Identification of prior registrations.

Prior registrations of the same or similar marks owned by the applicant should be identified in the application.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.37 Description of mark.

A description of the mark, which must be acceptable to the Examiner of Trademarks, may be included in the application, and must be included if required by the examiner. If the mark is displayed in color or a color combination, the colors should be described in the application.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; redesignated at 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999, redesignated this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

[CROSS REFERENCE: This section was formerly § 2.35.]

§ 2.38 Use by predecessor or by related companies.

(a) If the first use of the mark was by a predecessor in title or by a related company (sections 5 and 45 of the Act), and the use inures to the benefit of the applicant, the dates of first use (§ § 2.34(a)(1) (ii) and (iii)) may be asserted with a statement that first use was by the predecessor in title or by the related company, as appropriate.

(b) If the mark is not in fact being used by the applicant but is being used by one or more related companies whose use inures to the benefit of the applicant under section 5 of the Act, such facts must be indicated in the application.

(c) The Office may require such details concerning the nature of the relationship and such proofs as may be necessary and appropriate for the purpose of showing that the use by related companies inures to the benefit of the applicant and does not affect the validity of the mark.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 54 FR 37589, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (a), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.39 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.41 Proof of distinctiveness under section 2(f).

(a) When registration is sought of a mark which would be unregistrable by reason of section 2(e) of the Act but which is said by applicant to have become distinctive in commerce of the goods or services set forth in the application, applicant may, in support of registrability, submit with the application, or in response to a request for evidence or to a refusal to register, affidavits, or declarations in accordance with § 2.20, depositions, or other appropriate evidence showing duration, extent and nature of use in commerce and advertising expenditures in connection therewith (identifying types of media and attaching typical advertisements), and affidavits, or declarations in accordance with § 2.20, letters or statements from the trade or public, or both, or other appropriate evidence tending to show that the mark distinguishes such goods.

(b) In appropriate cases, ownership of one or more prior registrations on the Principal Register or under the Act of 1905 of the same mark may be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. Also, if the mark is said to have become distinctive of applicant's goods by reason of substantially exclusive and continuous use in commerce thereof by applicant for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, a showing by way of statements which are verified or which include declarations in accordance with § 2.20, in the application may, in appropriate cases, be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. In each of these situations, however, further evidence may be required.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.42 Concurrent use.

An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user shall specify and contain all the elements required by the preceding sections. The applicant in addition shall state in the application the area, the goods, and the mode of use for which applicant seeks registration; and also shall state, to the extent of the applicant's knowledge, the concurrent lawful use of the mark by others, setting forth their names and addresses; registrations issued to or applications filed by such others, if any; the areas of such use; the goods on or in connection with which such use is made; the mode of such use; and the periods of such use.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.43 Service mark.

In an application to register a service mark, the application shall specify and contain all the elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall be modified to relate to services instead of to goods wherever necessary.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

(Sec. 3, 60 Stat. 429; 15 U.S.C. 1052)

§ 2.44 Collective mark.

(a) In an application to register a collective mark under section 1(a) of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall, in addition, specify the class of persons entitled to use the mark, indicating their relationship to the applicant, and the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark.

(b) In an application to register a collective mark under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall, in addition, specify the class of persons intended to be entitled to use the mark, indicating what their relationship to the applicant will be, and the nature of the control applicant intends to exercise over the use of the mark.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.45 Certification mark.

(a) In an application to register a certification mark under section 1(a) of the Act, the application shall include all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks. In addition, the application must: Specify the conditions under which the certification mark is used; allege that the applicant exercises legitimate control over the use of the mark; allege that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied; and include a copy of the standards that determine whether others may use the certification mark on their goods and/or in connection with their services.

(b) In an application to register a certification mark under section 1(b) or section 44 of the Act, the application shall include all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks. In addition, the application must: specify the conditions under which the certification mark is intended to be used; allege that the applicant intends to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark; and allege that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied. When the applicant files an amendment to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, or a statement of use under section 1(d) of the Act, the applicant must submit a copy of the standards that determine whether others may use the certification mark on their goods and/or in connection with their services.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.46 Principal Register.

All applications will be treated as seeking registration on the Principal Register unless otherwise stated in the application. Service marks, collective marks, and certification marks, registrable in accordance with the applicable provisions of section 2 of the Act, are registered on the Principal Register.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.47 Supplemental Register.

(a) In an application to register on the Supplemental Register under section 23 of the Act, the application shall so indicate and shall specify that the mark has been in lawful use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, by the applicant.

(b) In an application to register on the Supplemental Register under section 44 of the Act, the application shall so indicate. The statement of lawful use in commerce may be omitted.

(c) A mark in an application to register on the Principal Register under section 1(b) of the Act is eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register only after an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88 has been timely filed.

(d) An application for registration on the Supplemental Register must conform to the requirements for registration on the Principal Register under section 1(a) of the Act, so far as applicable.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

DRAWING

§ 2.51 Drawing required.

(a)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods; or

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used on or in connection with the goods specified in the application, and once an amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods; or

(3) In an application under section 44 of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the applicant.

(b)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used in the sale or advertising of the services; or

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used in the sale or advertising of the services specified in the application and, once an amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed, the drawing of the service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used in the sale or advertising of the services; or

(3) In an application under section 44 of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of applicant.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999, removed paragraphs (c), (d), and (e), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.52 Types of drawings and format for drawings.

(a) A drawing depicts the mark sought to be registered. The drawing must show only one mark. The applicant must include a clear drawing of the mark when the application is filed. There are two types of drawings:

(1) Typed drawing. The drawing may be typed if the mark consists only of words, letters, numbers, common forms of punctuation, or any combination of these elements. In a typed drawing, every word or letter must be typed in uppercase

type. If the applicant submits a typed drawing, the application is not limited to the mark depicted in any special form or lettering.

(2) Special form drawing. A special form drawing is required if the mark has a two or three-dimensional design; or color; or words, letters, or numbers in a particular style of lettering; or unusual forms of punctuation.

(i) Special form drawings must be made with a pen or by a process that will provide high definition when copied. A photolithographic, printer's proof copy, or other high quality reproduction of the mark may be used. Every line and letter, including lines used for shading, must be black. All lines must be clean, sharp, and solid, and must not be fine or crowded. Gray tones or tints may not be used for surface shading or any other purpose.

(ii) If necessary to adequately depict the commercial impression of the mark, the applicant may be required to submit a drawing that shows the placement of the mark by surrounding the mark with a proportionately accurate broken-line representation of the particular goods, packaging, or advertising on which the mark appears. The applicant must also use broken lines to show any other matter not claimed as part of the mark. For any drawing using broken lines to indicate placement of the mark, or matter not claimed as part of the mark, the applicant must include in the body of the application a written description of the mark and explain the purpose of the broken lines.

(iii) If the mark has three-dimensional features, the applicant must submit a drawing that depicts a single rendition of the mark, and the applicant must include a description of the mark indicating that the mark is three-dimensional.

(iv) If the mark has motion, the applicant may submit a drawing that depicts a single point in the movement, or the applicant may submit a square drawing that contains up to five freeze frames showing various points in the movement, whichever best depicts the commercial impression of the mark. The applicant must also submit a written description of the mark.

(v) If the mark has color, the applicant may claim that all or part of the mark consists of one or more colors. To claim color, the applicant must submit a statement explaining where the color or colors appear in the mark and the nature of the color(s).

(vi) If a drawing cannot adequately depict all significant features of the mark, the applicant must also submit a written description of the mark.

(3) Sound, scent, and non-visual marks. The applicant is not required to submit a drawing if the applicant's mark consists only of a sound, a scent, or other completely non-visual matter. For these types of marks, the applicant must submit a detailed written description of the mark.

(b) Recommended format for special form drawings -- (1) Type of paper and ink. The drawing should be on a piece of non-shiny, white paper that is separate from the application. Black ink should be used to depict the mark.

(2) Size of paper and size of mark. The drawing should be on paper that is 8 to 8 1/2 inches (20.3 to 21.6 cm.) wide and 11 to 11.69 inches (27.9 to 29.7 cm.) long. One of the shorter sides of the sheet should be regarded as its top edge. The drawing should be between 2.5 inches (6.1 cm.) and 4 inches (10.3 cm.) high and/or wide. There should be at least a 1 inch (2.5 cm.) margin between the drawing and the edges of the paper, and at least a 1 inch (2.5 cm.) margin between the drawing and the heading.

(3) Heading. Across the top of the drawing, beginning one inch (2.5 cm.) from the top edge, the applicant should type the following: Applicant's name; applicant's address; the goods or services recited in the application, or a typical item of the goods or services if numerous items are recited in the application; the date of first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce in an application under section 1(a) of the Act; the priority filing date of the relevant foreign application in an application claiming the benefit of a prior foreign application under section 44(d) of the Act. If the information in the heading is lengthy, the heading may continue onto a second page, but the mark should be depicted on the first page.

(c) Drawings in electronically transmitted applications. For an electronically transmitted application, if the drawing is in special form, the applicant must attach a digitized image of the mark to the electronic submission.

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 29921, Aug. 21, 1986, as amended at 54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989; 54 FR 46231, Nov. 2, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48920, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

SPECIMENS

§ 2.56 Specimens.

(a) An application under section 1(a) of the Act, an amendment to allege use under § 2.76, and a statement of use under § 2.88 must each include one specimen showing the mark as used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services in commerce.

(b)(1) A trademark specimen is a label, tag, or container for the goods, or a display associated with the goods. The Office may accept another document related to the goods or the sale of the goods when it is not possible to place the mark on the goods or packaging for the goods.

(2) A service mark specimen must show the mark as actually used in the sale or advertising of the services.

(3) A collective trademark or collective service mark specimen must show how a member uses the mark on the member's goods or in the sale or advertising of the member's services.

(4) A collective membership mark specimen must show use by members to indicate membership in the collective organization.

(5) A certification mark specimen must show how a person other than the owner uses the mark to certify regional or other origin, material, mode of manufacture, quality, accuracy, or other characteristics of that person's goods or services; or that members of a union or other organization performed the work or labor on the goods or services.

(c) A photocopy or other reproduction of a specimen of the mark as actually used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services, is acceptable. However, a photocopy of the drawing required by § 2.51 is not a proper specimen.

(d)(1) The specimen should be flat, and not larger than 8 1/2 inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. If a specimen of this size is not available, the applicant may substitute a suitable photograph or other facsimile.

(2) If the applicant files a specimen exceeding these size requirements (a "bulky specimen"), the Office will create a facsimile of the specimen that meets the requirements of the rule (i.e., is flat and no larger than 8 1/2 inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long) and put it in the file wrapper.

(3) In the absence of non-bulky alternatives, the Office may accept an audio or video cassette tape recording, CD-ROM, or other appropriate medium.

(4) For an electronically transmitted application, or other electronic submission, the specimen must be submitted as a digitized image.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48921, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48921, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.57 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.58 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.59 Filing substitute specimen(s).

(a) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may submit substitute specimens of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services. The applicant must verify by an affidavit or declaration under § 2.20 that the substitute specimens were in use in commerce at least as early as the filing date of the application. Verification is not required if the specimen is a duplicate or facsimile of a specimen already of record in the application.

(b) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, after filing either an amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88, the applicant may submit substitute specimens of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services. If the applicant submits substitute specimen(s), the applicant must:

(1) For an amendment to allege use under § 2.76, verify by affidavit or declaration under § 2.20 that the applicant used the substitute specimen(s) in commerce prior to filing the amendment to allege use.

(2) For a statement of use under § 2.88, verify by affidavit or declaration under § 2.20 that the applicant used the substitute specimen(s) in commerce either prior to filing the statement of use or prior to the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48921, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48921, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATION AND ACTION BY APPLICANTS

§ 2.61 Action by examiner.

(a) Applications for registration, including amendments to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, and statements of use under section 1(d) of the Act, will be examined and, if the applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons therefor and of any formal requirements or objections.

(b) The examiner may require the applicant to furnish such information and exhibits as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the application.

(c) Whenever it shall be found that two or more parties whose interests are in conflict are represented by the same attorney, each party and also the attorney shall be notified of this fact.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 37 FR 2880, Feb. 9, 1972; 54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.62 Period for response.

The applicant has six months from the date of mailing of any action by the examiner to respond thereto. Such response may be made with or without amendment and must include such proper action by the applicant as the nature of the action and the condition of the case may require.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.63 Reexamination.

(a) After response by the applicant, the application will be reexamined or reconsidered. If registration is again refused or any formal requirement[s] is repeated, but the examiner's action is not stated to be final, the applicant may respond again.

(b) After reexamination the applicant may respond by filing a timely petition to the Commissioner for relief from a formal requirement if: (1) The requirement is repeated, but the examiner's action is not made final, and the subject matter of the requirement is appropriate for petition to the Commissioner (see § 2.146(b)); or (2) the examiner's action is made final and such action is limited to subject matter appropriate for petition to the Commissioner. If the petition is denied, the applicant shall have until six months from the date of the Office action which repeated the requirement or made it final or thirty days from the date of the decision on the petition, whichever date is later, to comply with the requirement. A formal requirement which is the subject of a petition decided by the Commissioner may not subsequently be the subject of an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.64 Final action.

(a) On the first or any subsequent reexamination or reconsideration the refusal of the registration or the insistence upon a requirement may be stated to be final, whereupon applicant's response is limited to an appeal, or to a compliance with any requirement, or to a petition to the Commissioner if permitted by § 2.63(b).

(b) During the period between a final action and expiration of the time for filing an appeal, the applicant may request the examiner to reconsider the final action. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not extend the time for filing an appeal or petitioning the Commissioner, but normally the examiner will reply to a request for reconsideration before the end of the six-month period if the request is filed within three months after the date of the final action. Amendments accompanying requests for reconsideration after final action will be entered if they comply with the rules of practice in trademark cases and the Act of 1946.

(c)(1) If an applicant in an application under section 1(b) of the Act files an amendment to allege use under § 2.76 during the six-month response period after issuance of a final action, the examiner shall examine the amendment. The filing of such an amendment will not extend the time for filing an appeal or petitioning the Commissioner.

(2) If the amendment to allege use under § 2.76 is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance.

(3) If, as a result of the examination of the amendment to allege use under § 2.76, the applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason not previously stated, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The Trademark Examining Attorney shall withdraw the final action previously issued and shall incorporate all unresolved refusals or requirements previously stated in the new non-final action.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.65 Abandonment.

(a) If an applicant fails to respond, or to respond completely, within six months after the date an action is mailed, the application shall be deemed to have been abandoned. A timely petition to the Commissioner pursuant to § § 2.63(b) and 2.146 is a response which avoids abandonment of an application.

(b) When action by the applicant filed within the six-month response period is a bona fide attempt to advance the examination of the application and is substantially a complete response to the examiner's action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

(c) If an applicant in an application under section 1(b) of the Act fails to timely file a statement of use under § 2.88, the application shall be deemed to be abandoned.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.66 Revival of abandoned applications.

(a) The applicant may file a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to an Office action or notice of allowance, if the delay was unintentional. The applicant must file the petition:

(1) Within two months of the mailing date of the notice of abandonment; or

(2) Within two months of actual knowledge of the abandonment, if the applicant did not receive the notice of abandonment, and the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application. To be diligent, the applicant must check the status of the application within one year of the last filing or receipt of a notice from the Office for which further action by the Office is expected.

(b) The requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to an Office action are:

(1) The petition fee required by § 2.6;

(2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the response on or before the due date was unintentional; and

(3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the Office action, the proposed response.

(c) The requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to a notice of allowance are:

(1) The petition fee required by § 2.6;

(2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the statement of use (or request for extension of time to file a statement of use) on or before the due date was unintentional;

(3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, the required fees for the number of requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use that the applicant should have filed under § 2.89 if the application had never been abandoned;

(4) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, either a statement of use under § 2.88 or a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use under § 2.89; and

(5) Unless a statement of use is filed with or before the petition, or the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, the applicant must file any further requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use under § 2.89 that become due while the petition is pending, or file a statement of use under § 2.88.

(d) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the Commissioner will not grant the petition if this would permit the filing of a statement of use more than 36 months after the mailing date of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act.

(e) The Commissioner will grant the petition to revive if the applicant complies with the requirements listed above and establishes that the delay in responding was unintentional.

(f) If the Commissioner denies a petition, the applicant may request reconsideration, if the applicant:

(1) Files the request within two months of the mailing date of the decision denying the petition; and

(2) Pays a second petition fee under § 2.6.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48921, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48921, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.67 Suspension of action by the Patent and Trademark Office.

Action by the Patent and Trademark Office may be suspended for a reasonable time for good and sufficient cause. The fact that a proceeding is pending before the Patent and Trademark Office or a court which is relevant to the issue of registrability of the applicant's mark, or the fact that the basis for registration is, under the provisions of section 44(e) of the Act, registration of the mark in a foreign country and the foreign application is still pending, will be considered prima facie good and sufficient cause. An applicant's request for a suspension of action under this section filed within the 6-month response period (see § 2.62) may be considered responsive to the previous Office action. The first suspension is within the discretion of the Examiner of Trademarks and any subsequent suspension must be approved by the Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[37 FR 3898, Feb. 24, 1972]

§ 2.68 Express abandonment (withdrawal) of application.

An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written statement of abandonment or withdrawal of the application signed by the applicant, or the attorney or other person representing the applicant. Except as provided in § 2.135, the fact that an application has been expressly abandoned shall not, in any proceeding in the Patent and Trademark Office, affect any rights that the applicant may have in the mark which is the subject of the abandoned application.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.69 Compliance with other laws.

When the sale or transportation of any product for which registration of a trademark is sought is regulated under an Act of Congress, the Patent and Trademark Office may make appropriate inquiry as to compliance with such Act for the sole purpose of determining lawfulness of the commerce recited in the application.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

AMENDMENT OF APPLICATION

§ 2.71 Amendments to correct informalities.

The applicant may amend the application during the course of examination, when required by the Office or for other reasons.

(a) The applicant may amend the application to clarify or limit, but not to broaden, the identification of goods and/or services.

(b)(1) If the declaration or verification of an application under § 2.33 is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant may submit a substitute verification or declaration under § 2.20.

(2) If the declaration or verification of a statement of use under § 2.88, or a request for extension of time to file a statement of use under § 2.89, is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification before the expiration of the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use.

(c) The applicant may amend the dates of use, provided that the applicant supports the amendment with an affidavit or declaration under § 2.20, except that the following amendments are not permitted:

(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may not amend the application to specify a date of use that is subsequent to the filing date of the application;

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, after filing a statement of use under § 2.88, the applicant may not amend the statement of use to specify a date of use that is subsequent to the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use.

(d) The applicant may amend the application to correct the name of the applicant, if there is a mistake in the manner in which the name of the applicant is set out in the application. The amendment must be supported by an affidavit or declaration under § 2.20, signed by the applicant. However, the application cannot be amended to set forth a different entity as the applicant. An application filed in the name of an entity that did not own the mark as of the filing date of the application is void.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48922, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48922, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.

(a) In an application based on use in commerce under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The specimens originally filed, or substitute specimens filed under § 2.59(a), support the proposed amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

(b) In an application based on a bona fide intention to use a mark in commerce under section 1(b) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The specimens filed with an amendment to allege use or statement of use, or substitute specimens filed under § 2.59(b), support the proposed amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

(c) In an application based on a claim of priority under section 44(d) of the Act, or on a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the foreign applicant under section 44(e) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The description or drawing of the mark in the foreign registration certificate supports the amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48922, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48922, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.73 Amendment to recite concurrent use.

(a) An application under section 1(a) of the Act may be amended so as to be treated as an application for a concurrent registration, provided the application as amended satisfies the requirements of § 2.42. The examiner will determine whether the application, as amended, is acceptable.

(b) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may not be amended so as to be treated as an application for a concurrent registration until an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed in the application, after which time such an amendment may be made, provided the application as amended satisfies the requirements of § 2.42. The examiner will determine whether the application, as amended, is acceptable.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.74 Form of amendment.

(a) In every amendment the exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted in the application must be specified and the precise point indicated where the deletion or insertion is to be made. Erasures, additions, insertions, or mutilations of the papers and records must not be made by the applicant or his attorney or agent.

(b) When an amendatory clause is amended, it must be wholly rewritten so that no interlineation or erasure will appear in the clause, as finally amended, when the application is passed to registration. If the number or nature of the amendments shall render it otherwise difficult to consider the case or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, or when otherwise desired to clarify the record, the examiner may require the entire statement to be rewritten.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.75 Amendment to change application to different register.

(a) An application for registration on the Principal Register under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act may be changed to an application for registration on the Supplemental Register and vice versa by amending the application to comply with the rules relating to the appropriate register, as the case may be.

(b) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may be amended to change the application to a different register only after submission of an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88. When such an application is changed from the Principal Register to the Supplemental Register, the effective filing date of the application is the date of the filing of the allegation of use under section 1(c) or 1(d) of the Act.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.76 Amendment to allege use.

(a) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may be amended to allege use of the mark in commerce under section 1(c) of the Act at any time between the filing of the application and the date the examiner approves the mark for publication. Thereafter, an allegation of use may be submitted only as a statement of use under § 2.88 after the issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act. If an amendment to allege use is filed outside the time period specified in this paragraph, it will be returned to the applicant.

(b) A complete amendment to allege use must include:

(1) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see § 2.33(a)) that:

(i) The applicant believes it is the owner of the mark; and

(ii) The mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant's first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce, and those goods or services specified in the application on or in connection with which the applicant uses the mark in commerce.

(2) One specimen of the mark as actually used in commerce. See § 2.56 for the requirements for specimens; and

(3) The fee per class required by § 2.6.

(c) An amendment to allege use may be filed only when the applicant has made use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all of the goods or services, as specified in the application, for which applicant will seek registration in that application unless the amendment to allege use is accompanied by a request in accordance with § 2.87 to divide out from the application the goods or services to which the amendment pertains. If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the amendment to allege use, the dates of use required in paragraph (b)(1) of this section need be for only one of the items specified in each class, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(d) The title "Amendment to allege use under § 2.76" should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

(e) The Office will review a timely filed amendment to allege use to determine whether it meets the following minimum requirements:

(1) The fee prescribed in § 2.6;

(2) One specimen or facsimile of the mark as used in commerce; and

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant that the mark is in use in commerce.

(f) A timely filed amendment to allege use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section will be examined in accordance with § § 2.61 through 2.69. If, as a result of the examination of the amendment to allege use, applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason not previously stated, applicant will be so notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The notification shall restate or incorporate by reference all unresolved refusals or requirements previously stated. The amendment to allege use may be amended in accordance with § § 2.59 and 2.71 through 2.75. If the amendment to allege use is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance. The filing of such an amendment shall not constitute a response to any outstanding action by the Trademark Examining Attorney.

(g) If the amendment to allege use is filed within the permitted time period but does not meet the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section, applicant will be notified of the deficiency. The deficiency may be corrected provided the mark has not been approved for publication. If an acceptable amendment to correct the deficiency is not filed prior to approval of the mark for publication, the amendment will not be examined.

(h) An amendment to allege use may be withdrawn for any reason prior to approval of a mark for publication.

(i) If the applicant does not file the amendment to allege use within a reasonable time after it is signed, the Office may require a substitute verification or declaration under § 2.20 stating that the mark is still in use in commerce.

(j) For the requirements for a multiple class application, see § 2.86.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998; 64 FR 48900, 48922, Sept. 8, 1999; as corrected at 64 FR 51244, 51245, Sept. 22, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48922, Sept. 8, 1999, amended this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.77 Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use.

An application under section 1(b) of the Act may not be amended during the period between the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act and the filing of a statement of use under § 2.88, except to delete specified goods or services. Other amendments filed during this period will be placed in the application file and considered when the statement of use is examined.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

PUBLICATION AND POST PUBLICATION

§ 2.80 Publication for opposition.

If, on examination or reexamination of an application for registration on the Principal Register, it appears that the applicant is entitled to have his mark registered, the mark will be published in the Official Gazette for opposition. The mark will also be published in the case of an application to be placed in interference or concurrent use proceedings, if otherwise registrable.

**Legislative History**

[41 FR 758, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.81 Post publication.

(a) Except in an application under section 1(b) of the Act for which no amendment to allege use under § 2.76 has been submitted and accepted, if no opposition is filed within the time permitted or all oppositions filed are dismissed, and if no interference is declared and no concurrent use proceeding is instituted, the application will be prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration as provided in § 2.151.

(b) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act for which no amendment to allege use under § 2.76 has been submitted and accepted, if no opposition is filed within the time permitted or all oppositions filed are dismissed, and if no interference is declared, a notice of allowance will issue. The notice of allowance will state the serial number of the application, the name of the applicant, the correspondence address, the mark, the identification of goods or services, and the issue date of the notice of allowance. The mailing date that appears on the notice of allowance will be the issue date of the notice of allowance. Thereafter, the applicant shall submit a statement of use as provided in § 2.88.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.82 Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration.

In the case of an application for registration on the Supplemental Register the mark will not be published for opposition but if it appears, after examination or reexamination, that the applicant is entitled to have the mark registered, a certificate of registration will issue as provided in § 2.151. The mark will be published in the "Official Gazette" when registered.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.83 Conflicting marks.

(a) Whenever an application is made for registration of a mark which so resembles another mark or marks pending registration as to be likely to cause confusion or mistake or to deceive, the mark with the earliest effective filing date will be published in the "Official Gazette" for opposition if eligible for the Principal Register, or issued a certificate of registration if eligible for the Supplemental Register.

(b) In situations in which conflicting applications have the same effective filing date, the application with the earliest date of execution will be published in the "Official Gazette" for opposition or issued on the Supplemental Register.

(c) Action on the conflicting application which is not published in the Official Gazette for opposition or not issued on the Supplemental Register will be suspended by the Examiner of Trademarks until the published or issued application is registered or abandoned.

**Legislative History**

[37 FR 2880, Feb. 9, 1972, as amended at 54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.84 Jurisdiction over published applications.

(a) The examiner may exercise jurisdiction over an application up to the date the mark is published in the "Official Gazette." After publication of an application under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act the examiner may, with the permission of the Commissioner, exercise jurisdiction over the application. After publication of an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the examiner may exercise jurisdiction over the application after the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act. After publication, and prior to issuance of a notice of allowance in an application under section 1(b), the examiner may, with the permission of the Commissioner, exercise jurisdiction over the application.

(b) After publication, but before the printing of the certificate of registration in an application under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act, or before the printing of the notice of allowance in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, an application which is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may be amended if the amendment does not necessitate republication of the mark or issuance of an Office action. Otherwise, an amendment to such an application may be submitted only upon petition to the Commissioner to restore jurisdiction of the application to the examiner for consideration of the amendment and further examination. The amendment of an application which is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board is governed by § 2.133.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

CLASSIFICATION

§ 2.85 Classification schedules.

(a) Section 6.1 of part 6 of this chapter specifies the system of classification for goods and services which applies for all statutory purposes to trademark applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office on or after September 1, 1973, and to registrations issued on the basis of such applications. It shall not apply to applications filed on or before August 31, 1973, nor to registrations issued on the basis of such applications.

(b) With respect to applications filed on or before August 31, 1973, and registrations issued thereon, including older registrations issued prior to that date, the classification system under which the application was filed will govern for all statutory purposes, including, inter alia, the filing of petitions to revive, appeals, oppositions, petitions for cancellation, affidavits under section 8 and renewals, even though such petitions to revive, appeals, etc., are filed on or after September 1, 1973.

(c) Section 6.2 of part 6 of this chapter specifies the system of classification for goods and services which applies for all statutory purposes to all trademark applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office on or before August 31, 1973, and to registrations issued on the basis of such applications, except when the registration may have been issued under a classification system prior to that set forth in § 6.2. Moreover, this classification will also be utilized for facilitating trademark searches until all pending and registered marks in the search file are organized on the basis of the international system of classification.

(d) Renewals filed on registrations issued under a prior classification system will be processed on the basis of that system.

(e) Where the amount of the fee received on filing an appeal in connection with an application or on an application for renewal is sufficient for at least one class of goods or services but is less than the required amount because multiple classes in an application or registration are involved, the appeal or renewal application will not be refused on the ground that the amount of the fee was insufficient if the required additional amount of the fee is received in the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set forth in the notification of this defect by the Office, or if action is sought only for the number of classes equal to the number of fees submitted.

(f) Sections 6.3 and 6.4 specify the system of classification which applies to certification marks and collective membership marks.

(g) Classification schedules shall not limit or extend the applicant's rights.

**Legislative History**

[38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973, as amended at 39 FR 16885, May 10, 1974; 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraph (e), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.86 Application may include multiple classes.

(a) In a single application, an applicant may apply to register the same mark for goods and/or services in multiple classes. The applicant must:

(1) Specifically identify the goods or services in each class;

(2) Submit an application filing fee for each class; and

(3) Include either dates of use (see § § 2.34(a)(1)(ii) and (iii)) and one specimen for each class, or a statement of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services specified in each class. The applicant may not claim both use in commerce and a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for the identical goods or services in one application.

(b) An amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88 must include, for each class, the required fee, dates of use, and one specimen. The applicant may not file the amendment to allege use or statement of use until the applicant has used the mark on all the goods or services, unless the applicant files a request to divide. See § 2.87 for information regarding requests to divide.

(c) The Office will issue a single certificate of registration for the mark, unless the applicant files a request to divide. See § 2.87 for information regarding requests to divide.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48923, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48923, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.87 Dividing an application.

(a) An application may be physically divided into two or more separate applications upon the payment of a fee for each new application created and submission by the applicant of a request in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) In the case of a request to divide out one or more entire classes from an application, only the fee under paragraph (a) of this section will be required. However, in the case of a request to divide out some, but not all, of the goods or services in a class, an application filing fee for each new separate application to be created by the division must be submitted, together with the fee under paragraph (a) of this section. Any outstanding time period for action by the applicant in the original application at the time of the division will be applicable to each new separate application created by the division.

(c) A request to divide an application may be filed at any time between the filing of the application and the date the Trademark Examining Attorney approves the mark for publication; or during an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, upon motion granted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Additionally, a request to divide an application under section 1(b) of the Act may be filed with a statement of use under § 2.88 or at any time between the filing of a statement of use and the date the Trademark Examining Attorney approves the mark for registration.

(d) A request to divide an application should be made in a separate paper from any other amendment or response in the application. The title "Request to divide application." should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 57 FR 40493, Sept. 3, 1992; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraph (c), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

POST NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE

§ 2.88 Filing statement of use after notice of allowance.

(a) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, a statement of use, required under section 1(d) of the Act, must be filed within six months after issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act, or within an extension of time granted under § 2.89. A statement of use that is filed prior to issuance of a notice of allowance is premature, will not be considered, and will be returned to the applicant.

(b) A complete statement of use must include:

(1) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see § 2.33(a)) that:

(i) The applicant believes it is the owner of the mark; and

(ii) The mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant's first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce, and those goods or services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the applicant uses the mark in commerce;

(2) One specimen of the mark as actually used in commerce. See § 2.56 for the requirements for specimens; and

(3) The fee per class required by § 2.6.

(c) The statement of use may be filed only when the applicant has made use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all of the goods or services, as specified in the notice of allowance, for which applicant will seek registration in that application, unless the statement of use is accompanied by a request in accordance with § 2.87 to divide out from the application the goods or services to which the statement of use pertains. If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the statement of use, the dates of use required in paragraph (b)(1) of this section need be for only one of the items specified in each class, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(d) The title "Statement of use under § 2.88." should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

(e) The Office will review a timely filed statement of use to determine whether it meets the following minimum requirements:

(1) The fee for at least a single class, required by § 2.6;

(2) One specimen of the mark as used in commerce;

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant that the mark is in use in commerce. If the verification or declaration is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification on or before the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use.

(f) A timely filed statement of use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section will be examined in accordance with § § 2.61 through 2.69. If, as a result of the examination of the statement of use, applicant is found not entitled to registration, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The statement of use may be amended in accordance with § § 2.59 and 2.71 through 2.75. If the statement of use is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance.

(g) If the statement of use does not meet the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section, applicant will be notified of the deficiency. If the time permitted for applicant to file a statement of use has not expired, applicant may correct the deficiency. After the filing of a statement of use during a permitted time period for such filing, the applicant may not withdraw the statement to return to the previous status of awaiting submission of a statement of use, regardless of whether it is in compliance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(h) The failure to timely file a statement of use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section shall result in the abandonment of the application.

(i)(1) The goods or services specified in a statement of use must conform to those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance. An applicant may specify the goods or services by stating "those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance" or, if appropriate, "those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance except * * *" followed by an identification of the goods or services to be deleted.

(2) If any goods or services specified in the notice of allowance are omitted from the identification of goods or services in the statement of use, the Trademark Examining Attorney shall inquire about the discrepancy and permit the applicant to amend the statement of use to include any omitted goods or services, provided that the amendment is supported by a

verification that the mark was in use in commerce, on or in connection with each of the goods or services sought to be included, prior to the expiration of the time allowed to applicant for filing a statement of use.

(3) The statement of use may be accompanied by a separate request to amend the identification of goods or services in the application, as stated in the notice of allowance, in accordance with § 2.71(b).

(j) The statement of use may be accompanied by a separate request to amend the drawing in the application, in accordance with § § 2.51 and 2.72.

(k) If the statement of use is not filed within a reasonable time after the date it is signed, the Office may require a substitute verification or declaration under § 2.20 stating that the mark is still in use in commerce.

(l) For the requirements for a multiple class application, see § 2.86.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37595, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48923, Sept. 8, 1999; as corrected at 64 FR 51244, 51245, Sept. 22, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48923, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraphs (b) and (e) and added paragraphs (k) and (l), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.89 Extensions of time for filing a statement of use.

(a) The applicant may request a six-month extension of time to file the statement of use required by § 2.88. The extension request must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act and must include the following:

(1) A written request for an extension of time to file the statement of use;

(2) The fee per class required by § 2.6; and

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see § 2.33(a)) that the applicant still has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, specifying the relevant goods or services. If the verification is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification within six months of the mailing date of the notice of allowance.

(b) Before the expiration of the previously granted extension of time, the applicant may request further six month extensions of time to file the statement of use by submitting the following:

(1) A written request for an extension of time to file the statement of use;

(2) The fee per class required by § 2.6;

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see § 2.33(a)) that the applicant still has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, specifying the relevant goods or services. If the verification is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification before the expiration of the previously granted extension; and

(4) A showing of good cause, as specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) Extensions of time under paragraph (b) of this section will be granted only in six-month increments and may not aggregate more than 24 months.

(d) The showing of good cause must include a statement of the applicant's ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with each of the relevant goods or services. Those efforts may include product or service research or development, market research, manufacturing activities, promotional activities, steps to acquire distributors, steps to obtain governmental approval, or other similar activities. In the alternative, the applicant must submit a satisfactory explanation for the failure to make efforts to use the mark in commerce.

(e)(1) At the time of the filing of a statement of use, or during any time remaining in the existing six-month period in which a statement of use is filed, applicant may file one request, in accordance with paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, for a six-month extension of time for filing a statement of use, provided that the time requested would not extend beyond 36 months from the issuance of the notice of allowance. Thereafter, applicant may not request any further extensions of time.

(2) A request for an extension of time that is filed at the time of the filing of a statement of use, or during any time remaining in the existing six-month period in which a statement of use is filed, must comply with all the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, if it is applicant's first extension request, or paragraph (b) of this section, if it is a second or subsequent extension request. However, in a request under paragraph (b) of this section, applicant may satisfy the requirement for a showing of good cause by asserting that applicant believes that it has made valid use of the mark in commerce, as evidenced by the submitted statement of use, but that if the statement of use is found by the Patent and Trademark Office to be fatally defective, applicant will need additional time in which to file a new statement of use.

(f) The goods or services specified in a request for an extension of time for filing a statement of use must conform to those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance. Any goods or services specified in the notice of allowance which are omitted from the identification of goods or services in the request for extension of time will be presumed to be deleted and the applicant may not thereafter request that the deleted goods or services be reinserted in the application. If appropriate, an applicant may specify the goods or services by stating "those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance" or "those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance except * * *" followed by an identification of the goods or services to be deleted.

(g) The applicant will be notified of the grant or denial of a request for an extension of time, and of the reasons for a denial. Failure to notify the applicant of the grant or denial of the request prior to the expiration of the existing period or requested extension does not relieve the applicant of the responsibility of timely filing a statement of use under § 2.88. If, after denial of an extension request, there is time remaining in the existing six-month period for filing a statement of use, applicant may submit a substitute request for extension of time. Otherwise, the only recourse available after denial of a request for an extension of time is a petition to the Commissioner in accordance with § § 2.66 or 2.146. A petition from the denial of a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use shall be filed within two months of the mailing date of the denial of the request. If the petition is granted, the term of the requested six month extension that was the subject of the petition will run from the date of the expiration of the previously existing six month period for filing a statement of use.

(h) If the extension request is not filed within a reasonable time after it is signed, the Office may require a substitute verification or declaration under § 2.20 stating that the applicant still has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37595, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48923, Sept. 8, 1999, as corrected at 64 FR 51244, 51245, Sept. 22, 1999 and at 65 FR 36633, June 9, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48923, Sept. 8, 1999, amended this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

INTERFERENCES AND CONCURRENT USE PROCEEDINGS

§ 2.91 Declaration of interference.

(a) An interference will not be declared between two applications or between an application and a registration except upon petition to the Commissioner. Interferences will be declared by the Commissioner only upon a showing of extraordinary circumstances which would result in a party being unduly prejudiced without an interference. In ordinary circumstances, the availability of an opposition or cancellation proceeding to the party will be deemed to remove any undue prejudice.

(b) Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register, registrations under the Act of 1920, and registrations of marks the right to use of which has become incontestable are not subject to interference.

**Legislative History**

[37 FR 2881, Feb. 9, 1972, as amended at 54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.92 Preliminary to interference.

An interference which has been declared by the Commissioner will not be instituted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board until the Examiner of Trademarks has determined that the marks which are to form the subject matter of the controversy are registrable, and all of the marks have been published in the Official Gazette for opposition.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.93 Institution of interference.

An interference is instituted by the mailing of a notice of interference to the parties. The notice shall be sent to each applicant, in care of the applicant's attorney or other representative of record, if any, and if one of the parties is a registrant, the notice shall be sent to the registrant or the registrant's assignee of record. The notice shall give the name and address of every adverse party and of the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative, if any, together with the serial number and date of filing and publication of each of the applications, or the registration number and date of issuance of each of the registrations, involved.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ § 2.94--2.95 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.96 Issue; burden of proof.

The issue in an interference between applications is normally priority of use, but the rights of the parties to registration may also be determined. The party whose application involved in the interference has the latest filing date is the junior party and has the burden of proof. When there are more than two parties to an interference, a party shall be a junior party to and shall have the burden of proof as against every other party whose application involved in the interference has an earlier filing date. If the involved applications of any parties have the same filing date, the application with the latest date of execution will be deemed to have the latest filing date and that applicant will be the junior party. The issue in an interference between an application and a registration shall be the same, but in the event the final decision is adverse to the registrant, a registration to the applicant will not be authorized so long as the interfering registration remains on the register.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225 June 14, 1983]

§ 2.97 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.98 Adding party to interference.

A party may be added to an interference only upon petition to the Commissioner by that party. If an application which is or might be the subject of a petition for addition to an interference is not added, the examiner may suspend action on the application pending termination of the interference proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.99 Application to register as concurrent user.

(a) An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user will be examined in the same manner as other applications for registration.

(b) When it is determined that the mark is ready for publication, the applicant may be required to furnish as many copies of his application, specimens and drawing as may be necessary for the preparation of notices for each applicant, registrant or user specified as a concurrent user in the application for registration.

(c) Upon receipt of the copies required by paragraph (b) of this section, the examiner shall forward the application for concurrent use registration for publication in the Official Gazette as provided by § 2.80. If no opposition is filed, or

if all oppositions that are filed are dismissed or withdrawn, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall prepare a notice for the applicant for concurrent use registration and for each applicant, registrant or user specified as a concurrent user in the application. The notices for the specified parties shall state the name and address of the applicant and of the applicant's attorney or other authorized representative, if any, together with the serial number and filing date of the application.

(d)(1) The notices shall be sent to each applicant, in care of his attorney or other authorized representative, if any, to each user, and to each registrant. A copy of the application shall be forwarded with the notice to each party specified in the application.

(2) An answer to the notice is not required in the case of an applicant or registrant whose application or registration is specified as a concurrent user in the application, but a statement, if desired, may be filed within forty days after the mailing of the notice; in the case of any other party specified as a concurrent user in the application, an answer must be filed within forty days after the mailing of the notice.

(3) If an answer, when required, is not filed, judgment will be entered precluding the specified user from claiming any right more extensive than that acknowledged in the application(s) for concurrent use registration, but the applicant(s) will remain with the burden of proving entitlement to registration(s).

(e) The applicant for a concurrent use registration has the burden of proving entitlement thereto. If there are two or more applications for concurrent use registration involved in a proceeding, the party whose application has the latest filing date is the junior party. A party whose application has a filing date between the filing dates of the earliest involved application and the latest involved application is a junior party to every party whose involved application has an earlier filing date. If any applications have the same filing date, the application with the latest date of execution will be deemed to have the latest filing date and that applicant will be the junior party. A person specified as an excepted user in a concurrent use application but who has not filed an application shall be considered a party senior to every party that has an application involved in the proceeding.

(f) When a concurrent use registration is sought on the basis that a court of competent jurisdiction has finally determined that the parties are entitled to use the same or similar marks in commerce, a concurrent use registration proceeding will not be instituted if all of the following conditions are fulfilled:

(1) The applicant is entitled to registration subject only to the concurrent lawful use of a party to the court proceeding; and

(2) The court decree specifies the rights of the parties; and

(3) A true copy of the court decree is submitted to the examiner; and

(4) The concurrent use application complies fully and exactly with the court decree; and

(5) The excepted use specified in the concurrent use application does not involve a registration, or any involved registration has been restricted by the Commissioner in accordance with the court decree.

If any of the conditions specified in this paragraph is not satisfied, a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be prepared and instituted as provided in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section.

(g) Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register and registrations under the Act of 1920 are not subject to concurrent use registration proceedings. Applications to register under section 1(b) of the Act of 1946 are subject to concurrent use registration proceedings only after an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed.

(h) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will consider and determine concurrent use rights only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983; 54 FR 37596, Sept. 11, 1989]

OPPOSITION

§ 2.101 Filing an opposition.

(a) An opposition proceeding is commenced by the filing of an opposition in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any entity which believes that it would be damaged by the registration of a mark on the Principal Register may oppose the same by filing an opposition, which should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The opposition need not be verified, and may be signed by the opposer or the opposer's attorney or other authorized representative.

(c) The opposition must be filed within thirty days after publication (§ 2.80) of the application being opposed or within an extension of time (§ 2.102) for filing an opposition.

(d)(1) The opposition must be accompanied by the required fee for each party joined as opposer for each class in the application for which registration is opposed (see § 2.6). If no fee, or a fee insufficient to pay for one person to oppose the registration of a mark in at least one class, is submitted within thirty days after publication of the mark to be opposed or within an extension of time for filing an opposition, the opposition will not be refused if the required fee(s) is submitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set in the notification of this defect by the Office.

(2) If the fees submitted are sufficient to pay for one person to oppose registration in at least one class but are insufficient for an opposition against all of the classes in the application, and the particular class or classes against which the opposition is filed are not specified, the Office will issue a written notice allowing opposer until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) or to specify the class or classes opposed. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the opposition will be presumed to be against the class or classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class and including the number of classes in the application for which the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each class.

(3) If persons are joined as party opposers, and the fees submitted are sufficient to pay for one person to oppose registration in at least one class but are insufficient for each named party opposer, the Office will issue a written notice allowing the named party opposers until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) or to specify the opposer(s) to which the submitted fees apply. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the first named party will be presumed to be the party opposer and additional parties will be deemed to be party opposers to the extent that the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each party opposer. If persons are joined as party opposers against the registration of a mark in more than one class, the fees submitted are insufficient, and no specification of opposers and classes is made within the time set in the written notice issued by the Office, the fees submitted will be applied first on behalf of the first-named opposer against as many of the classes in the application as the submitted fees are sufficient to pay, and any excess will be applied on behalf of the second-named party to the opposition against the classes in the application in ascending order.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 3976, Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 51 FR 28709, Aug. 11, 1986; 54 FR 37596, Sept. 11, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (d)(1), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.102 Extension of time for filing an opposition.

(a) Any person who believes that he would be damaged by the registration of a mark on the Principal Register may file a written request to extend the time for filing an opposition. The written request may be signed by the potential opposer or by an attorney at law or other person authorized, in accordance with § 2.12 (b) and (c) and § 2.17(b), to represent the potential opposer.

(b) The written request to extend the time for filing an opposition must identify the potential opposer with reasonable certainty. Any opposition filed during an extension of time should be in the name of the person to whom the extension was granted, but an opposition may be accepted if the person in whose name the extension was requested was misidentified through mistake or if the opposition is filed in the name of a person in privity with the person who requested and was granted the extension of time.

(c) The written request to extend the time for filing an opposition must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office before the expiration of thirty days from the date of publication or within any extension of time previously granted, should specify the period of extension desired, and should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. A first extension of time for not more than thirty days will be granted upon request. Further extensions of time may be granted by the Board for good cause. In addition, extensions of time to file an opposition aggregating more than 120 days from the date of publication of the application will not be granted except upon (1) a written consent or stipulation signed by the applicant or its authorized representative, or (2) a written request by the potential opposer or its authorized representative stating that the applicant or its authorized representative has consented to the request, or (3) a showing of extraordinary circumstances, it being considered that a potential opposer has an adequate alternative remedy by a petition for cancellation.

(d) Every request to extend the time for filing a notice of opposition should be submitted in triplicate.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 3976 Jan. 28, 1983; 61 FR 36825, July 15, 1996; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraph (d), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.104 Contents of opposition.

(a) The opposition must set forth a short and plain statement showing why the opposer believes it would be damaged by the registration of the opposed mark and state the grounds for opposition. A duplicate copy of the opposition, including exhibits, shall be filed with the opposition.

(b) Oppositions to different applications owned by the same party may be joined in a consolidated opposition when appropriate, but the required fee must be included for each party joined as opposer for each class in which registration is opposed in each application against which the opposition is filed.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.105 Notification of opposition proceeding[s].

When an opposition in proper form has been filed and the correct fee(s) have been submitted, a notification shall be prepared by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, which shall identify the title and number of the proceeding and the application involved and shall designate a time, not less than thirty days from the mailing date of the notification, within which an answer must be filed. A copy of the notification shall be forwarded to the attorney or other authorized representative of the opposer, if any, or to the opposer. The duplicate copy of the opposition and exhibits shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or to the applicant.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.106 Answer.

(a) If no answer is filed within the time set, the opposition may be decided as in case of default.

(b)(1) An answer shall state in short and plain terms the applicant's defenses to each claim asserted and shall admit or deny the averments upon which the opposer relies. If the applicant is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth of an averment, applicant shall so state and this will have the effect of a denial. Denials may take any of the forms specified in Rule 8(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. An answer may contain any defense, including the affirmative defenses of unclean hands, laches, estoppel, acquiescence, fraud, mistake, prior judgment, or any other matter constituting an avoidance or affirmative defense. When pleading special matters, the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall be followed. A reply to an affirmative defense need not be filed. When a defense attacks the validity of a registration pleaded in the opposition, paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall govern. A pleaded registration is a registration identified by number and date of issuance in an original notice of opposition or in any amendment thereto made under Rule 15, Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2)(i) A defense attacking the validity of any one or more of the registrations pleaded in the opposition shall be a compulsory counterclaim if grounds for such counterclaim exist at the time when the answer is filed. If grounds for a counterclaim are known to the applicant when the answer to the opposition is filed, the counterclaim shall be pleaded with or as part of the answer. If grounds for a counterclaim are learned during the course of the opposition proceeding, the counterclaim shall be pleaded promptly after the grounds therefor are learned. A counterclaim need not be filed if it is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

(ii) An attack on the validity of a registration pleaded by an opposer will not be heard unless a counterclaim or separate petition is filed to seek the cancellation of such registration.

(iii) The provisions of § § 2.111 through 2.115, inclusive, shall be applicable to counterclaims. A time, not less than thirty days, will be designated within which an answer to the counterclaim must be filed.

(iv) The times for pleading, discovery, testimony, briefs or oral argument will be reset or extended when necessary, upon motion by a party, to enable a party fully to present or meet a counterclaim or separate petition for cancellation of a registration.

(c) The opposition may be withdrawn without prejudice before the answer is filed. After the answer is filed, the opposition may not be withdrawn without prejudice except with the written consent of the applicant or the applicant's attorney or other authorized representative.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 46 FR 6940, Jan. 22, 1981; 48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983; 54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.107 Amendment of pleadings in an opposition proceeding.

Pleadings in an opposition proceeding may be amended in the same manner and to the same extent as in a civil action in a United States district court.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

CANCELLATION

§ 2.111 Filing petition for cancellation.

(a) A cancellation proceeding is commenced by the timely filing of a petition for cancellation, together with the required fee, in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any entity which believes that it is or will be damaged by a registration may file a petition, which should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, to cancel the registration in whole or in part. The petition need not be verified, and may be signed by the petitioner or the petitioner's attorney or other authorized representative. The petition may be filed at any time in the case of registrations on the Supplemental Register or under the Act of 1920, or registrations under the Act of 1881 or the Act of 1905 which have not been published under section 12(c) of the Act, or on any ground specified in section 14(3) or (5) of the Act. In all other cases the petition and the required fee must be filed within five years from the date of registration of the mark under the Act or from the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act.

(c)(1) The petition must be accompanied by the required fee for each class in the registration for which cancellation is sought (see § 2.6). If the fee submitted is insufficient for a cancellation against all of the classes in the registration, and the particular class or classes against which the cancellation is filed are not specified, the Office will issue a written notice allowing petitioner a set time in which to submit the required fees(s) (provided that the five-year period, if applicable, has not expired) or to specify the class or classes sought to be cancelled. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the cancellation will be presumed to be against the class or classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class, and including the number of classes in the registration for which the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each class.

(2) If persons are joined as party petitioners, each must submit a fee for each class for which cancellation is sought. If the fees submitted are insufficient for each named party petitioner, the Office will issue a written notice allowing the named party petitioners until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) (provided that the five-year period, if applicable, has not expired) or to specify the petitioner(s) to which the submitted fees apply. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the first named party will be presumed to be the party petitioner and additional parties will be deemed to be party petitioners to the extent that the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each party petitioner. If persons are joined as party petitioners against a registration sought to be cancelled in more than one class, the fees submitted are insufficient, and no specification of parties and classes is made within the time set in the written notice issued by the Office, the fees submitted will be applied first on behalf of the first-named petitioner against as many of the classes in the registration as the submitted fees are sufficient to pay, and any excess will be applied on behalf of the second-named party to the petition against the classes in the registration in ascending order.

(3) The filing date of the petition is the date of receipt in the Patent and Trademark Office of the petition together with the required fee. If the amount of the fee filed with the petition is sufficient to pay for at least one person to petition to cancel one class of goods or services but is less than the required amount because multiple party petitioners and/or multiple classes in the registration for which cancellation is sought are involved, and the required additional amount of the fee is filed within the time limit set in the notification of the defect by the Office, the filing date of the petition with respect to the additional party petitioners and/or classes is the date of receipt in the Patent and Trademark Office of the additional fees.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 3976 Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37596, Sept. 11, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (c)(1), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.112 Contents of petition for cancellation.

(a) The petition to cancel must set forth a short and plain statement showing why the petitioner believes it is or will be damaged by the registration, state the grounds for cancellation, and indicate, to the best of petitioner's knowledge, the name and address of the current owner of the registration. A duplicate copy of the petition, including exhibits, shall be filed with the petition.

(b) Petitions to cancel different registrations owned by the same party may be joined in a consolidated petition when appropriate, but the required fee must be included for each party joined as petitioner for each class sought to be cancelled in each registration against which the petition to cancel is filed.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 3977 Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986; 54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.113 Notification of cancellation proceeding.

When a petition for cancellation has been filed in proper form (see § § 2.111 and 2.112), a notification shall be prepared by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, which shall identify the title and number of the proceeding and the registration or registrations involved and shall designate a time, not less than thirty days from the mailing date of the notification, within which an answer must be filed. A copy of the notification shall be forwarded to the attorney or other authorized representative of the petitioner, if any, or to the petitioner. The duplicate copy of the petition for cancellation and exhibits shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the respondent (see § 2.118), who shall be the party shown by the records of the Patent and Trademark Office to be the current owner of the registration or registrations sought to be cancelled, except that the Board, in its discretion, may join or substitute as respondent a party who makes a showing of a current ownership interest in such registration or registrations. When the party identified by the petitioner, pursuant to § 2.112(a), as the current owner of the registration or registrations is not the record owner thereof, a courtesy copy of the petition for cancellation shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the alleged current owner, which may file a motion to be joined or substituted as respondent. If the petition is found to be defective as to form, the party filing the petition shall be so advised and allowed a reasonable time for correcting the informality.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989]

§ 2.114 Answer.

(a) If no answer is filed within the time set, the petition may be decided as in case of default.

(b)(1) An answer shall state in short and plain terms the respondent's defenses to each claim asserted and shall admit or deny the averments upon which the petitioner relies. If the respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth of an averment, respondent shall so state and this will have the effect of a denial. Denials may take any of the forms specified in Rule 8(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. An answer may contain any defense, including the affirmative defenses of unclean hands, laches, estoppel, acquiescence, fraud, mistake, prior judgment, or any other matter constituting an avoidance or affirmative defense. When pleading special matters, the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall be followed. A reply to an affirmative defense need not be filed. When a defense attacks the validity of a registration pleaded in the petition, paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall govern. A pleaded registration is a registration identified by number and date of issuance in an original petition for cancellation or in any amendment thereto made under Rule 15, Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2)(i) A defense attacking the validity of any one or more of the registrations pleaded in the petition shall be a compulsory counterclaim if grounds for such counterclaim exist at the time when the answer if filed. If grounds for a counterclaim are known to respondent when the answer to the petition is filed, the counterclaim shall be pleaded with or as part of the answer. If grounds for a counterclaim are learned during the course of the cancellation proceeding, the counterclaim shall be pleaded promptly after the grounds therefor are learned. A counterclaim need not be filed if it is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

(ii) An attack on the validity of a registration pleaded by a petitioner for cancellation will not be heard unless a counterclaim or separate petition is filed to seek the cancellation of such registration.

(iii) The provisions of § § 2.111 through 2.115, inclusive, shall be applicable to counterclaims. A time, not less than thirty days, will be designated within which an answer to the counterclaim must be filed.

(iv) The times for pleading, discovery, testimony, briefs, or oral argument will be reset or extended when necessary, upon motion by a party, to enable a party fully to present or meet a counterclaim or separate petition for cancellation of a registration.

(c) The petition for cancellation may be withdrawn without prejudice before the answer is filed. After the answer is filed, the petition may not be withdrawn without prejudice except with the written consent of the registrant or the registrant's attorney or other authorized representative.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 46 FR 6940, Jan. 22, 1981; 46 FR 11548, Feb. 9, 1981; 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986; 54 FR 34898, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.115 Amendment of pleadings in a cancellation proceeding.

Pleadings in a cancellation proceeding may be amended in the same manner and to the same extent as in a civil action in a United States district court.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

PROCEDURE IN INTER PARTES PROCEEDINGS

§ 2.116 Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(a) Except as otherwise provided, and wherever applicable and appropriate, procedure and practice in inter partes proceedings shall be governed by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b) The opposer in an opposition proceeding or the petitioner in a cancellation proceeding shall be in the position of plaintiff, and the applicant in an opposition proceeding or the respondent in a cancellation proceeding shall be in the position of defendant. A party that is a junior party in an interference proceeding or in a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be in the position of plaintiff against every party that is senior, and the party that is a senior party in an interference proceeding or in a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be a defendant against every party that is junior.

(c) The opposition or the petition for cancellation and the answer correspond to the complaint and answer in a court proceeding.

(d) The assignment of testimony periods corresponds to setting a case for trial in court proceedings.

(e) The taking of depositions during the assigned testimony periods corresponds to the trial in court proceedings.

(f) Oral hearing corresponds to oral summation in court proceedings.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965. Redesignated and amended at 37 FR 7606, Apr. 18, 1972; 48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.117 Suspension of proceedings.

(a) Whenever it shall come to the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that a party or parties to a pending case are engaged in a civil action or another Board proceeding which may have a bearing on the case, proceedings before the Board may be suspended until termination of the civil action or the other Board proceeding.

(b) Whenever there is pending before the Board both a motion to suspend and a motion which is potentially dispositive of the case, the potentially dispositive motion may be decided before the question of suspension is considered regardless of the order in which the motions were filed.

(c) Proceedings may also be suspended, for good cause, upon motion or a stipulation of the parties approved by the Board.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraphs (a) and (b), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.118 Undelivered Office notices.

When the notices sent by the Patent and Trademark Office to any registrant are returned to the Office undelivered, or when one of the parties resides abroad and his representative in the United States is unknown, additional notice may be given by publication in the Official Gazette for such period of time as the Commissioner may direct.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.119 Service and signing of papers.

(a) Every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in inter partes cases, including notice of appeal, must be served upon the other parties except the notice of interference (§ 2.93), the notification of opposition (§ 2.105), the petition for cancellation (§ 2.113), and the notice of a concurrent use proceeding (§ 2.99), which are mailed by the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of such service must be made before the paper will be considered by the Office. A statement signed by the attorney or other authorized representative, attached to or appearing on the original paper when filed, clearly stating the date and manner in which service was made will be accepted as prima facie proof of service.

(b) Service of papers must be on the attorney or other authorized representative of the party if there be such or on the party if there is no attorney or other authorized representative, and may be made in any of the following ways:

(1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;

(2) By leaving a copy at the usual place of business of the person served, with someone in the person's employment;

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy at the person's residence, with a member of the person's family over 14 years of age and of discretion;

(4) Transmission by the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the United States Postal Service or by first-class mail, which may also be certified or registered;

(5) Transmission by overnight courier.

Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining service or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the Official Gazette.

(c) When service is made by first-class mail, "Express Mail," or overnight courier, the date of mailing or of delivery to the overnight courier will be considered the date of service. Whenever a party is required to take some action within a prescribed period after the service of a paper upon the party by another party and the paper is served by first-class mail, "Express Mail," or overnight courier, 5 days shall be added to the prescribed period.

(d) If a party to an inter partes proceeding is not domiciled in the United States and is not represented by an attorney or other authorized representative located in the United States, the party must designate by written document filed in the Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in the proceeding. In such cases, official communications of the Patent and Trademark Office will be addressed to the domestic representative unless the proceeding is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized under § 10.14(c) of this subchapter. The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to prosecute the proceeding unless qualified under § 10.14(a), or qualified under § 10.14(b) and authorized under § 2.17(b).

(e) Every paper filed in an inter partes proceeding, and every request for an extension of time to file an opposition, must be signed by the party filing it, or by the party's attorney or other authorized representative, but an unsigned paper will not be refused consideration if a signed copy is submitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set in the notification of this defect by the Office.

**Legislative History**

[37 FR 7606, Apr. 18, 1972, as amended at 41 FR 760, Jan. 5, 1976; 54 FR 34898, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48097, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraph (d), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.120 Discovery.

(a) In general. Wherever appropriate, the provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure relating to discovery shall apply in opposition, cancellation, interference and concurrent use registration proceedings except as otherwise provided in this section. The provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure relating to automatic disclosure, scheduling conferences, conferences to discuss settlement and to develop a discovery plan, and transmission to the court of a written report outlining the discovery plan, are not applicable to Board proceedings. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will specify the opening and closing dates for the taking of discovery. The trial order setting these dates will be mailed with the notice of institution of the proceeding. The discovery period will be set for a period of 180 days. The parties may stipulate to a shortening of the discovery period. The discovery period may be extended upon stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the discovery period may remain as originally set or as reset. Discovery depositions must be taken, and interrogatories, requests for production of documents and things, and requests for admission must be served, on or before the closing date of the discovery period as originally set or as reset. Responses to interrogatories, requests for production of documents and things, and requests for admission must be served within 30 days from the date of service of such discovery requests. The time to respond may be extended upon stipulation of the parties, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. The resetting of a party's time to respond to an outstanding request for discovery will not result in the automatic rescheduling of the discovery and/or testimony periods; such dates will be rescheduled only upon stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board.

(b) Discovery deposition within the United States. The deposition of a natural person shall be taken in the Federal judicial district where the person resides or is regularly employed or at any place on which the parties agree by stipulation. The responsibility rests wholly with the party taking discovery to secure the attendance of a proposed deponent other than a party or anyone who, at the time set for the taking of the deposition, is an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. See 35 U.S.C. 24.

(c) Discovery deposition in foreign countries. (1) The discovery deposition of a natural person residing in a foreign country who is a party or who, at the time set for the taking of the deposition, is an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, shall, if taken in a foreign country, be taken in the manner prescribed by § 2.124 unless the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, upon motion for good cause, orders or the parties stipulate, that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(2) Whenever a foreign party is or will be, during a time set for discovery, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, such party may be deposed by oral examination upon notice by the party seeking discovery. Whenever a foreign party has or will have, during a time set for discovery, an officer, director, managing agent, or other person who consents to testify on its behalf, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, such officer, director, managing agent, or other person who consents to testify in its behalf may be deposed by oral examination upon notice by the party

seeking discovery. The party seeking discovery may have one or more officers, directors, managing agents, or other persons who consent to testify on behalf of the adverse party, designated under Rule 30(b)(6) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. The deposition of a person under this paragraph shall be taken in the Federal judicial district where the witness resides or is regularly employed, or, if the witness neither resides nor is regularly employed in a Federal judicial district, where the witness is at the time of the deposition. This paragraph does not preclude the taking of a discovery deposition of a foreign party by any other procedure provided by paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(d) Interrogatories; request for production. (1) The total number of written interrogatories which a party may serve upon another party pursuant to Rule 33 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, in a proceeding, shall not exceed seventy-five, counting subparts, except that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in its discretion, may allow additional interrogatories upon motion therefor showing good cause, or upon stipulation of the parties. A motion for leave to serve additional interrogatories must be filed and granted prior to the service of the proposed additional interrogatories; and must be accompanied by a copy of the interrogatories, if any, which have already been served by the moving party, and by a copy of the interrogatories proposed to be served. If a party upon which interrogatories have been served believes that the number of interrogatories served exceeds the limitation specified in this paragraph, and is not willing to waive this basis for objection, the party shall, within the time for (and instead of) serving answers and specific objections to the interrogatories, serve a general objection on the ground of their excessive number. If the inquiring party, in turn, files a motion to compel discovery, the motion must be accompanied by a copy of the set(s) of interrogatories which together are said to exceed the limitation, and must otherwise comply with the requirements of paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) The production of documents and things under the provisions of Rule 34 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure will be made at the place where the documents and things are usually kept, or where the parties agree, or where and in the manner which the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, upon motion, orders.

(e) Motion for an order to compel discovery. (1) If a party fails to designate a person pursuant to Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, or if a party, or such designated person, or an officer, director or managing agent of a party fails to attend a deposition or fails to answer any question propounded in a discovery deposition, or any interrogatory, or fails to produce and permit the inspection and copying of any document or thing, the party seeking discovery may file a motion before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board for an order to compel a designation, or attendance at a deposition, or an answer, or production and an opportunity to inspect and copy. The motion must be filed prior to the commencement of the first testimony period as originally set or as reset. The motion shall include a copy of the request for designation or of the relevant portion of the discovery deposition; or a copy of the interrogatory with any answer or objection that was made; or a copy of the request for production, any proffer of production or objection to production in response to the request, and a list and brief description of the documents or things that were not produced for inspection and copying. The motion must be supported by a written statement from the moving party that such party or the attorney therefor has made a good faith effort, by conference or correspondence, to resolve with the other party or the attorney therefor the issues presented in the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised in the motion are subsequently resolved by agreement of the parties, the moving party should inform the Board in writing of the issues in the motion which no longer require adjudication.

(2) When a party files a motion for an order to compel discovery, the case will be suspended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board with respect to all matters not germane to the motion, and no party should file any paper which is not germane to the motion, except as otherwise specified in the Board's suspension order. The filing of a motion to compel shall not toll the time for a party to respond to any outstanding discovery requests or to appear for any noticed discovery deposition.

(f) Motion for a protective order. Upon motion by a party from whom discovery is sought, and for good cause, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may make any order which justice requires to protect a party from annoyance, embarrassment, oppression, or undue burden or expense, including one or more of the types of orders provided by clauses (1) through (8), inclusive, of Rule 26(c) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. If the motion for a protective order is denied in whole or in part, the Board may, on such conditions (other than an award of expenses to the party prevailing on the motion) as are just, order that any party provide or permit discovery.

(g) Sanctions. (1) If a party fails to comply with an order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board relating to discovery, including a protective order, the Board may make any appropriate order, including any of the orders provided

in Rule 37(b)(2) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, except that the Board will not hold any person in contempt or award any expenses to any party. The Board may impose against a party any of the sanctions provided by this subsection in the event that said party or any attorney, agent, or designated witness of that party fails to comply with a protective order made pursuant to Rule 26(c) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2) If a party, or an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure to testify on behalf of a party, fails to attend the party's or person's discovery deposition, after being served with proper notice, or fails to provide any response to a set of interrogatories or to a set of requests for production of documents and things, and such party or the party's attorney or other authorized representative informs the party seeking discovery that no response will be made thereto, the Board may make any appropriate order, as specified in paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(h) (1) Any motion by a party to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request made by that party for an admission must be filed prior to the commencement of the first testimony period, as originally set or as reset. The motion shall include a copy of the request for admission and any exhibits thereto and of the answer or objection. The motion must be supported by a written statement from the moving party that such party or the attorney therefor has made a good faith effort, by conference or correspondence, to resolve with the other party or the attorney therefor the issues presented in the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised in the motion are subsequently resolved by agreement of the parties, the moving party should inform the Board in writing of the issues in the motion which no longer require adjudication.

(2) When a party files a motion to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request made by that party for an admission, the case will be suspended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board with respect to all matters not germane to the motion, and no party should file any paper which is not germane to the motion, except as otherwise specified in the Board's suspension order. The filing of a motion to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request for admission shall not toll the time for a party to respond to any outstanding discovery requests or to appear for any noticed discovery deposition.

(i) Telephone and pre-trial conferences. (1) Whenever it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that a motion filed in an inter partes proceeding is of such nature that its resolution by correspondence is not practical, the Board may, upon its own initiative or upon request made by one or both of the parties, resolve the motion by telephone conference.

(2) Whenever it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that questions or issues arising during the interlocutory phase of an inter partes proceeding have become so complex that their resolution by correspondence or telephone conference is not practical and that resolution would be likely to be facilitated by a conference in person of the parties or their attorneys with a Member or Attorney-Examiner of the Board, the Board may, upon its own initiative or upon motion made by one or both of the parties, request that the parties or their attorneys, under circumstances which will not result in undue hardship for any party, meet with the Board at its offices for a pre-trial conference.

(j) Use of discovery deposition, answer to interrogatory, or admission. (1) The discovery deposition of a party or of anyone who at the time of taking the deposition was on officer, director or managing agent of a party, or a person designated by a party pursuant to Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, may be offered in evidence by an adverse party.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (j)(1) of this section, the discovery deposition of a witness, whether or not a party, shall not be offered in evidence unless the person whose deposition was taken is, during the testimony period of the party offering the deposition, dead; or out of the United States (unless it appears that the absence of the witness was procured by the party offering the deposition); or unable to testify because of age, illness, infirmity, or imprisonment; or cannot be served with a subpoena to compel attendance at a testimonial deposition; or there is a stipulation by the parties; or upon a showing that such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice, to allow the deposition to be used. The use of a discovery deposition by any party under this paragraph will be allowed only by stipulation of the parties approved by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or by order of the Board on motion, which shall be filed at the time of the purported offer of the deposition in evidence, unless the motion is based upon a claim that such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice, to allow the

deposition to be used, in which case the motion shall be filed promptly after the circumstances claimed to justify use of the deposition became known.

(3)(i) A discovery deposition, an answer to an interrogatory, or an admission to a request for admission, which may be offered in evidence under the provisions of paragraph (j) of this section may be made of record in the case by filing the deposition or any part thereof with any exhibit to the part that is filed, or a copy of the interrogatory and answer thereto with any exhibit made part of the answer, or a copy of the request for admission and any exhibit thereto and the admission (or a statement that the party from which an admission was requested failed to respond thereto), together with a notice of reliance. The notice of reliance and the material submitted thereunder should be filed during the testimony period of the party which files the notice of reliance. An objection made at a discovery deposition by a party answering a question subject to the objection will be considered at final hearing.

(ii) A party which has obtained documents from another party under Rule 34 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure may not make the documents of record by notice of reliance alone, except to the extent that they are admissible by notice of reliance under the provisions of § 2.122(e).

(4) If only part of a discovery deposition is submitted and made part of the record by a party, an adverse party may introduce under a notice of reliance any other part of the deposition which should in fairness be considered so as to make not misleading what was offered by the submitting party. A notice of reliance filed by an adverse party must be supported by a written statement explaining why the adverse party needs to rely upon each additional part listed in the adverse party's notice, failing which the Board, in its discretion, may refuse to consider the additional parts.

(5) An answer to an interrogatory, or an admission to a request for admission, may be submitted and made part of the record by only the inquiring party except that, if fewer than all of the answers to interrogatories, or fewer than all of the admissions, are offered in evidence by the inquiring party, the responding party may introduce under a notice of reliance any other answers to interrogatories, or any other admissions, which should in fairness be considered so as to make not misleading what was offered by the inquiring party. The notice of reliance filed by the responding party must be supported by a written statement explaining why the responding party needs to rely upon each of the additional discovery responses listed in the responding party's notice, failing which the Board, in its discretion, may refuse to consider the additional responses.

(6) Paragraph (j) of this section will not be interpreted to preclude the reading or the use of a discovery deposition, or answer to an interrogatory, or admission as part of the examination or cross-examination of any witness during the testimony period of any party.

(7) When a discovery deposition, or a part thereof, or an answer to an interrogatory, or an admission, has been made of record by one party in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (j)(3) of this section, it may be referred to by any party for any purpose permitted by the Federal Rules of Evidence.

(8) Requests for discovery, responses thereto, and materials or depositions obtained through the discovery process should not be filed with the Board except when submitted with a motion relating to discovery, or in support of or response to a motion for summary judgment, or under a notice of reliance during a party's testimony period. Papers or materials filed in violation of this paragraph may be returned by the Board.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34898, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989; 56 FR 46379, Sept. 12, 1991; 56 FR 54917, Oct. 23, 1991; 63 FR 48081, 48098, Sept. 9, 1998, as corrected and amended at 63 FR 52158, 52159, Sept. 30, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48098, Sept. 9, 1998, amended this section, effective Oct. 9, 1998; 63 FR 52158, 52159, Sept. 30, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective Sept. 30, 1998.]

§ 2.121 Assignment of times for taking testimony.

(a)(1) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will issue a trial order assigning to each party the time for taking testimony. No testimony shall be taken except during the times assigned, unless by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or, upon motion, by order of the Board. Testimony periods may be rescheduled by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. If a motion to reschedule testimony periods is denied, the testimony periods may remain as set. The resetting of the closing date for discovery will result in the rescheduling of the testimony periods without action by any party.

(2) The initial trial order will be mailed by the Board after issue is joined.

(b)(1) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will schedule a testimony period for the plaintiff to present its case in chief, a testimony period for the defendant to present its case and to meet the case of the plaintiff, and a testimony period for the plaintiff to present evidence in rebuttal.

(2) When there is a counterclaim, or when proceedings have been consolidated and one party is in the position of plaintiff in one of the involved proceedings and in the position of defendant in another of the involved proceedings, or when there is an interference or a concurrent use registration proceeding involving more than two parties, the Board will schedule testimony periods so that each party in the position of plaintiff will have a period for presenting its case in chief against each party in the position of defendant, each party in the position of defendant will have a period for presenting its case and meeting the case of each plaintiff, and each party in the position of plaintiff will have a period for presenting evidence in rebuttal.

(c) A testimony period which is solely for rebuttal will be set for fifteen days. All other testimony periods will be set for thirty days. The periods may be extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the testimony periods may remain as set.

(d) When parties stipulate to the rescheduling of testimony periods or to the rescheduling of the closing date for discovery and the rescheduling of testimony periods, a stipulation presented in the form used in a trial order, signed by the parties, or a motion in said form signed by one party and including a statement that every other party has agreed thereto, and submitted in a number of copies equal to the number of parties to the proceeding plus one copy for the Board, will, if approved, be so stamped, signed, and dated, and a copy will be promptly returned to each of the parties.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23138, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27226, June 14, 1983; 54 FR 34899, Aug. 22, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraphs (a)(1), (c), and (d), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.122 Matters in evidence.

(a) Rules of evidence. The rules of evidence for proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board are the Federal Rules of Evidence, the relevant provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the relevant provisions of Title 28 of the United States Code, and the provisions of this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) Application files. (1) The file of each application or registration specified in a notice of interference, of each application or registration specified in the notice of a concurrent use registration proceeding, of the application against which a notice of opposition is filed, or of each registration against which a petition or counterclaim for cancellation is filed forms part of the record of the proceeding without any action by the parties and reference may be made to the file for any relevant and competent purpose.

(2) The allegation in an application for registration, or in a registration, of a date of use is not evidence on behalf of the applicant or registrant; a date of use of a mark must be established by competent evidence. Specimens in the file of an application for registration, or in the file of a registration, are not evidence on behalf of the applicant or registrant unless identified and introduced in evidence as exhibits during the period for the taking of testimony.

(c) Exhibits to pleadings. Except as provided in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, an exhibit attached to a pleading is not evidence on behalf of the party to whose pleading the exhibit is attached unless identified and introduced in evidence as an exhibit during the period for the taking of testimony.

(d) Registrations. (1) A registration of the opposer or petitioner pleaded in an opposition or petition to cancel will be received in evidence and made part of the record if the opposition or petition is accompanied by two copies (originals or photocopies) of the registration prepared and issued by the Patent and Trademark Office showing both the current status of and current title to the registration. For the cost of a copy of a registration showing status and title, see § 2.6(b)(4).

(2) A registration owned by any party to a proceeding may be made of record in the proceeding by that party by appropriate identification and introduction during the taking of testimony or by filing a notice of reliance, which shall be accompanied by a copy (original or photocopy) of the registration prepared and issued by the Patent and Trademark Office showing both the current status of and current title to the registration. The notice of reliance shall be filed during the testimony period of the party that files the notice.

(e) Printed publications and official records. Printed publications, such as books and periodicals, available to the general public in libraries or of general circulation among members of the public or that segment of the public which is relevant under an issue in a proceeding, and official records, if the publication of official record is competent evidence and relevant to an issue, may be introduced in evidence by filing a notice of reliance on the material being offered. The notice shall specify the printed publication (including information sufficient to identify the source and the date of the publication) or the official record and the pages to be read; indicate generally the relevance of the material being offered; and be accompanied by the official record or a copy thereof whose authenticity is established under the Federal Rules of Evidence, or by the printed publication or a copy of the relevant portion thereof. A copy of an official record of the Patent and Trademark Office need not be certified to be offered in evidence. The notice of reliance shall be filed during the testimony period of the party that files the notice.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23138, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34899, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraphs (b)(1), (d)(1), and (d)(2), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by § 2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition,

present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(2) A testimonial deposition taken in a foreign country shall be taken by deposition upon written questions as provided by § 2.124, unless the Board, upon motion for good cause, orders that the deposition be taken by oral examination, or the parties so stipulate.

(b) Stipulations. If the parties so stipulate in writing, depositions may be taken before any person authorized to administer oaths, at any place, upon any notice, and in any manner, and when so taken may be used like other depositions. By written agreement of the parties, the testimony of any witness or witnesses of any party, may be submitted in the form of an affidavit by such witness or witnesses. The parties may stipulate in writing what a particular witness would testify to if called, or the facts in the case of any party may be stipulated in writing.

(c) Notice of examination of witnesses. Before the depositions of witnesses shall be taken by a party, due notice in writing shall be given to the opposing party or parties, as provided in § 2.119(b), of the time when and place where the depositions will be taken, of the cause or matter in which they are to be used, and the name and address of each witness to be examined; if the name of a witness is not known, a general description sufficient to identify the witness or the particular class or group to which the witness belongs, together with a satisfactory explanation, may be given instead. Depositions may be noticed for any reasonable time and place in the United States. A deposition may not be noticed for a place in a foreign country except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section. No party shall take depositions in more than one place at the same time, nor so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity for travel from one place of examination to the other is not available.

(d) Persons before whom depositions may be taken. Depositions may be taken before persons designated by Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(e) Examination of witnesses. (1) Each witness before testifying shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom his deposition is to be taken.

(2) The deposition shall be taken in answer to questions, with the questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer, or by some other person (who shall be subject to the provisions of Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure) in the presence of the officer except when the officer's presence is waived on the record by agreement of the parties. The testimony shall be taken stenographically and transcribed, unless the parties present agree otherwise. In the absence of all opposing parties and their attorneys or other authorized representatives, depositions may be taken in longhand, typewriting, or stenographically. Exhibits which are marked and identified at the deposition will be deemed to have been offered into evidence, without any formal offer thereof, unless the intention of the party marking the exhibits is clearly expressed to the contrary.

(3) Every adverse party shall have full opportunity to cross-examine each witness. If the notice of examination of witnesses which is served pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is improper or inadequate with respect to any witness, an adverse party may cross-examine that witness under protest while reserving the right to object to the receipt of the testimony in evidence. Promptly after the testimony is completed, the adverse party, if he wishes to preserve the objection, shall move to strike the testimony from the record, which motion will be decided on the basis of all of the relevant circumstances. A motion to strike the testimony of a witness for lack of proper or adequate notice of examination must request the exclusion of the entire testimony of that witness and not only a part of that testimony.

(4) All objections made at the time of the examination to the qualifications of the officer taking the deposition, or to the manner of taking it, or to the evidence presented, or to the conduct of any party, and any other objection to the proceedings, shall be noted by the officer upon the deposition. Evidence objected to shall be taken subject to the objections.

(5) When the deposition has been transcribed, the deposition shall be carefully read over by the witness or by the officer to him, and shall then be signed by the witness in the presence of any officer authorized to administer oaths unless the reading and the signature be waived on the record by agreement of all parties.

(f) Certification and filing of deposition. (1) The officer shall annex to the deposition his certificate showing:

(i) Due administration of the oath by the officer to the witness before the commencement of his deposition;

(ii) The name of the person by whom the deposition was taken down, and whether, if not taken down by the officer, it was taken down in his presence;

(iii) The presence or absence of the adverse party;

(iv) The place, day, and hour of commencing and taking the deposition;

(v) The fact that the officer was not disqualified as specified in Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2) If any of the foregoing requirements in paragraph (f)(1) of this section are waived, the certificate shall so state. The officer shall sign the certificate and affix thereto his seal of office, if he has such a seal. Unless waived on the record by an agreement, he shall then securely seal in an envelope all the evidence, notices, and paper exhibits, inscribe upon the envelope a certificate giving the number and title of the case, the name of each witness, and the date of sealing. The officer or the party taking the deposition, or its attorney or other authorized representative, shall then address the package, and forward the same to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. If the weight or bulk of an exhibit shall exclude it from the envelope, it shall, unless waived on the record by agreement of all parties, be authenticated by the officer and transmitted by the officer or the party taking the deposition, or its attorney or other authorized representative, in a separate package marked and addressed as provided in this section.

(g) Form of deposition. (1) The pages of each deposition must be numbered consecutively, and the name of the witness plainly and conspicuously written at the top of each page. The deposition may be written on legal-size or letter-size paper, with a wide margin on the left-hand side of the page, and with the writing on one side only of the sheet. The questions propounded to each witness must be consecutively numbered unless paper with numbered lines is used, and each question must be followed by its answer.

(2) Exhibits must be numbered or lettered consecutively and each must be marked with the number and title of the case and the name of the party offering the exhibit. Entry and consideration may be refused to improperly marked exhibits.

(3) Each deposition must contain an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the pages where their examination and cross-examination begin, and an index of the exhibits, briefly describing their nature and giving the pages at which they are introduced and offered in evidence.

(h) Depositions must be filed. All depositions which are taken must be duly filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. On refusal to file, the Office at its discretion will not further hear or consider the contestant with whom the refusal lies; and the Office may, at its discretion, receive and consider a copy of the withheld deposition, attested by such evidence as is procurable.

(i) Inspection of depositions. After the depositions are filed in the Office, they may be inspected by any party to the case, but they cannot be withdrawn for the purpose of printing. They may be printed by someone specially designated by the Office for that purpose, under proper restrictions.

(j) Effect of errors and irregularities in depositions: Rule 32(d) (1), (2), and (3) (A) and (B) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall apply to errors and irregularities in depositions. Notice will not be taken of merely formal or technical objections which shall not appear to have wrought a substantial injury to the party raising them; and in case of such injury it must be made to appear that the objection was raised at the time specified in said rule.

(k) Objections to admissibility: Subject to the provisions of paragraph (j) of this section, objection may be made to receiving in evidence any deposition, or part thereof, or any other evidence, for any reason which would require the exclusion of the evidence from consideration. Objections to the competency of a witness or to the competency, relevancy, or materiality of testimony must be raised at the time specified in Rule 32(d)(3)(A) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. Such objections will not be considered until final hearing.

(l) Evidence not considered. Evidence not obtained and filed in compliance with these sections will not be considered.

**Legislative History**

[37 FR 7607, Apr. 18, 1972, as amended at 41 FR 760, Jan. 5, 1976; 48 FR 23139, May 23, 1983; 54 FR 34899, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraphs (b) and (f), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.124 Depositions upon written questions.

(a) A deposition upon written questions may be taken before any person before whom depositions may be taken as provided by Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b)(1) A party desiring to take a testimonial deposition upon written questions shall serve notice thereof upon each adverse party within ten days from the opening date of the testimony period of the party who serves the notice. The notice shall state the name and address of the witness. A copy of the notice, but not copies of the questions, shall be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(2) A party desiring to take a discovery deposition upon written questions shall serve notice thereof upon each adverse party and shall file a copy of the notice, but not copies of the questions, with the Board. The notice shall state the name and address, if known, of the person whose deposition is to be taken. If the name of the person is not known, a general description sufficient to identify him or the particular class or group to which he belongs shall be stated in the notice, and the party from whom the discovery deposition is to be taken shall designate one or more persons to be deposed in the same manner as is provided by Rule 30(b)(6) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(c) Every notice given under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall be accompanied by the name or descriptive title of the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(d)(1) Every notice served on any adverse party under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall be accompanied by the written questions to be propounded on behalf of the party who proposes to take the deposition. Within twenty days from the date of service of the notice, any adverse party may serve cross questions upon the party who proposes to take the deposition; any party who serves cross questions shall also serve every other adverse party. Within ten days from the date of service of the cross questions, the party who proposes to take the deposition may serve redirect questions on every adverse party. Within ten days from the date of service of the redirect questions, any party who served cross questions may serve recross questions upon the party who proposes to take the deposition; any party who serves recross questions shall also serve every other adverse party. Written objections to questions may be served on a party propounding questions; any party who objects shall serve a copy of the objections on every other adverse party. In response to objections, substitute questions may be served on the objecting party within ten days of the date of service of the objections; substitute questions shall be served on every other adverse party.

(2) Upon motion for good cause by any party, or upon its own initiative, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may extend any of the time periods provided by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. Upon receipt of written notice that one or more testimonial depositions are to be taken upon written questions, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall suspend or reschedule other proceedings in the matter to allow for the orderly completion of the depositions upon written questions.

(e) Within ten days after the last date when questions, objections, or substitute questions may be served, the party who proposes to take the deposition shall mail a copy of the notice and copies of all the questions to the officer designated in the notice; a copy of the notice and of all the questions mailed to the officer shall be served on every adverse party. The officer designated in the notice shall take the testimony of the witness in response to the questions and shall record each answer immediately after the corresponding question. The officer shall then certify the transcript and mail the transcript and exhibits to the party who took the deposition.

(f) The party who took the deposition shall promptly serve a copy of the transcript, copies of documentary exhibits, and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits on every adverse party. It is the responsibility of the party who takes the deposition to assure that the transcript is correct (see § 2.125(b)). If the deposition is a discovery deposition, it may be made of record as provided by § 2.120(j). If the deposition is a testimonial deposition, the original, together with copies of documentary exhibits and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits, shall be filed promptly with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(g) Objections to questions and answers in depositions upon written questions may be considered at final hearing.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23139, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.125 Filing and service of testimony.

(a) One copy of the transcript of testimony taken in accordance with § 2.123, together with copies of documentary exhibits and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits, shall be served on each adverse party within thirty days after completion of the taking of that testimony. If the transcript with exhibits is not served on each adverse party within thirty days or within an extension of time for the purpose, any adverse party which was not served may have remedy by way of a motion to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board to reset such adverse party's testimony and/or briefing periods, as may be appropriate. If the deposing party fails to serve a copy of the transcript with exhibits on an adverse party after having been ordered to do so by the Board, the Board, in its discretion, may strike the deposition, or enter judgment as by default against the deposing party, or take any such other action as may be deemed appropriate.

(b) The party who takes testimony is responsible for having all typographical errors in the transcript and all errors of arrangement, indexing and form of the transcript corrected, on notice to each adverse party, prior to the filing of one certified transcript with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The party who takes testimony is responsible for serving on each adverse party one copy of the corrected transcript or, if reasonably feasible, corrected pages to be inserted into the transcript previously served.

(c) One certified transcript and exhibits shall be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Notice of such filing shall be served on each adverse party and a copy of each notice shall be filed with the Board.

(d) Each transcript shall comply with § 2.123(g) with respect to arrangement, indexing and form.

(e) Upon motion by any party, for good cause, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may order that any part of a deposition transcript or any exhibits that directly disclose any trade secret or other confidential research, development, or commercial information may be filed under seal and kept confidential under the provisions of § 2.27(e). If any party or any attorney or agent of a party fails to comply with an order made under this paragraph, the Board may impose any of the sanctions authorized by § 2.120(g).

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23140, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraph (c), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.126 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.127 Motions.

(a) Every motion shall be made in writing, shall contain a full statement of the grounds, and shall embody or be accompanied by a brief. Except as provided in paragraph (e)(1) of this section, a brief in response to a motion shall be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the motion unless another time is specified by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the time is extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or upon order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the time for responding to the motion may remain as specified under this section. The Board may, in its discretion, consider a reply brief. Except as provided in paragraph (e)(1) of this section, a reply brief, if filed, shall be filed within 15 days from the date of service of the brief in response to the motion. The time for filing a reply brief will not be extended. No further papers in support of or in opposition to a motion will be considered by the Board. Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. The brief in support of the motion and the brief in response to the motion shall not exceed 25 pages in length; and a reply brief shall not exceed 10 pages in length. Exhibits submitted in support of or in opposition to the motion shall not be deemed to be part of the brief for purposes of determining the length of the brief. When a party fails to file a brief in response to a motion, the Board may treat the motion as conceded. An oral hearing will not be held on a motion except on order by the Board.

(b) Any request for reconsideration or modification of an order or decision issued on a motion must be filed within one month from the date thereof. A brief in response must be filed within 15 days from the date of service of the request.

(c) Interlocutory motions, requests, and other matters not actually or potentially dispositive of a proceeding may be acted upon by a single Member of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or by an Attorney-Examiner of the Board to whom authority so to act has been delegated.

(d) When any party files a motion to dismiss, or a motion for judgment on the pleadings, or a motion for summary judgment, or any other motion which is potentially dispositive of a proceeding, the case will be suspended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board with respect to all matters not germane to the motion and no party should file any paper which is not germane to the motion except as otherwise specified in the Board's suspension order. If the case is not disposed of as a result of the motion, proceedings will be resumed pursuant to an order of the Board when the motion is decided.

(e)(1) A motion for summary judgment may not be filed until notification of the proceeding has been sent to the parties by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. A motion for summary judgment, if filed, should be filed prior to the commencement of the first testimony period, as originally set or as reset, and the Board, in its discretion, may deny as untimely any motion for summary judgment filed thereafter. A motion under Rule 56(f) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, if filed in response to a motion for summary judgment, shall be filed within 30 days from the date of service of the summary judgment motion. The time for filing a motion under Rule 56(f) will not be extended. If no motion under Rule 56(f) is filed, a brief in response to the motion for summary judgment shall be filed within 30 days from the date of service of the motion unless the time is extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or upon order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the time for responding to the motion for summary judgment may remain as specified under this section. The Board may, in its discretion, consider a reply brief. A reply brief, if filed, shall be filed within 15 days from the date of service of the brief in response to the motion. The time for filing a reply brief will not be extended. No further papers in support of or in opposition to a motion for summary judgment will be considered by the Board.

(2) For purposes of summary judgment only, a discovery deposition, or an answer to an interrogatory, or a document or thing produced in response to a request for production, or an admission to a request for admission, will be considered by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board if any party files, with the party's brief on the summary judgment motion, the deposition or any part thereof with any exhibit to the part that is filed, or a copy of the interrogatory and answer thereto with any exhibit made part of the answer, or a copy of the request for production and the documents or things produced

in response thereto, or a copy of the request for admission and any exhibit thereto and the admission (or a statement that the party from which an admission was requested failed to respond thereto).

(f) The Board will not hold any person in contempt, or award attorneys' fees or other expenses to any party.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23140, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998, as corrected and amended at 63 FR 52158, 52159, Sept. 30, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48099, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraphs (a), (b), (d), (e)(1), and (f), effective Oct. 9, 1998; 63 FR 52158, 52159, Sept. 30, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective Sept. 30, 1998.]

§ 2.128 Briefs at final hearing.

(a)(1) The brief of the party in the position of plaintiff shall be due not later than sixty days after the date set for the close of rebuttal testimony. The brief of the party in the position of defendant, if filed, shall be due not later than thirty days after the due date of the first brief. A reply brief by the party in the position of plaintiff, if filed, shall be due not later than fifteen days after the due date of the defendant's brief.

(2) When there is a counterclaim, or when proceedings have been consolidated and one party is in the position of plaintiff in one of the involved proceedings and in the position of defendant in another of the involved proceedings, or when there is an interference or a concurrent use registration proceeding involving more than two parties, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will set the due dates for the filing of the main brief, and the answering brief, and the rebuttal brief by the parties.

(3) When a party in the position of plaintiff fails to file a main brief, an order may be issued allowing plaintiff until a set time, not less than fifteen days, in which to show cause why the Board should not treat such failure as a concession of the case. If plaintiff fails to file a response to the order, or files a response indicating that he has lost interest in the case, judgment may be entered against plaintiff.

(b) Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. Each brief shall contain an alphabetical index of cases cited therein. Without prior leave of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a main brief on the case shall not exceed fifty-five pages in length in its entirety, including the table of contents, index of cases, description of the record, statement of the issues, recitation of facts, argument, and summary; and a reply brief shall not exceed twenty-five pages in its entirety. Three legible copies, on good quality paper, of each brief shall be filed.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23140, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27226, June 14, 1983; 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.129 Oral argument; reconsideration.

(a) If a party desires to have an oral argument at final hearing, the party shall request such argument by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for the filing of the last reply brief in the proceeding. Oral arguments will be heard by at least three Members of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board at the time specified in the notice of hearing. If any party appears at the specified time, that party will be heard. If the Board is prevented from

hearing the case at the specified time, a new hearing date will be set. Unless otherwise permitted, oral arguments in an inter partes case will be limited to thirty minutes for each party. A party in the position of plaintiff may reserve part of the time allowed for oral argument to present a rebuttal argument.

(b) The date or time of a hearing may be reset, so far as is convenient and proper, to meet the wishes of the parties and their attorneys or other authorized representatives.

(c) Any request for rehearing or reconsideration or modification of a decision issued after final hearing must be filed within one month from the date of the decision. A brief in response must be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the request. The times specified may be extended by order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board on motion for good cause.

(d) When a party to an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board cannot prevail without establishing constructive use pursuant to section 7(c) of the Act in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will enter a judgment in favor of that party, subject to the party's establishment of constructive use. The time for filing an appeal or for commencing a civil action under section 21 of the Act shall run from the date of the entry of the judgment.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983; 54 FR 29554, July 13, 1989; 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.130 New matter suggested by Examiner of Trademarks.

If, during the pendency of an inter partes case, facts appear which, in the opinion of the Examiner of Trademarks, render the mark of any applicant involved unregistrable, the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall be called thereto. The Board may suspend the proceeding and refer the application to the Examiner of Trademarks for his determination of the question of registrability, following the final determination of which the application shall be returned to the Board for such further inter partes action as may be appropriate. The consideration of such facts by the Examiner of Trademarks shall be ex parte, but a copy of the action of the examiner will be furnished to the parties to the inter partes proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.131 Remand after decision in inter partes proceeding.

If, during an inter partes proceeding, facts are disclosed which appear to render the mark of an applicant unregistrable, but such matter has not been tried under the pleadings as filed by the parties or as they might be deemed to be amended under Rule 15(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure to conform to the evidence, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in lieu of determining the matter in the decision on the proceeding, may refer the application to the examiner for reexamination in the event the applicant ultimately prevails in the inter partes proceeding. Upon receiving the application, the examiner shall withhold registration pending reexamination of the application in the light of the reference by the Board. If, upon reexamination, the examiner finally refuses registration to the applicant, an appeal may be taken as provided by § § 2.141 and 2.142.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.132 Involuntary dismissal for failure to take testimony.

(a) If the time for taking testimony by any party in the position of plaintiff has expired and that party has not taken testimony or offered any other evidence, any party in the position of defendant may, without waiving the right to offer evidence in the event the motion is denied, move for dismissal on the ground of the failure of the plaintiff to prosecute. The party in the position of plaintiff shall have fifteen days from the date of service of the motion to show cause why judgment should not be rendered against him. In the absence of a showing of good and sufficient cause, judgment may be rendered against the party in the position of plaintiff. If the motion is denied, testimony periods will be reset for the party in the position of defendant and for rebuttal.

(b) If no evidence other than a copy or copies of Patent and Trademark Office records is offered by any party in the position of plaintiff, any party in the position of defendant may, without waiving the right to offer evidence in the event the motion is denied, move for dismissal on the ground that upon the law and the facts the party in the position of plaintiff has shown no right to relief. The party in the position of plaintiff shall have fifteen days from the date of service of the motion to file a brief in response to the motion. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may render judgment against the party in the position of plaintiff, or the Board may decline to render judgment until all of the evidence is in the record. If judgment is not rendered, testimony periods will be reset for the party in the position of defendant and for rebuttal.

(c) A motion filed under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section must be filed before the opening of the testimony period of the moving party, except that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may in its discretion grant a motion under paragraph (a) even if the motion was filed after the opening of the testimony period of the moving party.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986]

§ 2.133 Amendment of application or registration during proceedings.

(a) An application involved in a proceeding may not be amended in substance nor may a registration be amended or disclaimed in part, except with the consent of the other party or parties and the approval of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or except upon motion.

(b) If, in an inter partes proceeding, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board finds that a party whose application or registration is the subject of the proceeding is not entitled to registration in the absence of a specified restriction to the involved application or registration, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will allow the party time in which to file a request that the application or registration be amended to conform to the findings of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, failing which judgment will be entered against the party.

(c) Geographic limitations will be considered and determined by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding.

(d) A plaintiff's pleaded registration will not be restricted in the absence of a counterclaim to cancel the registration in whole or in part, except that a counterclaim need not be filed if the registration is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.134 Surrender or voluntary cancellation of registration.

(a) After the commencement of a cancellation proceeding, if the respondent applies for cancellation of the involved registration under section 7(e) of the Act of 1946 without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the respondent. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative.

(b) After the commencement of a cancellation proceeding, if it comes to the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that the respondent has permitted his involved registration to be cancelled under section 8 of the Act of 1946 or has failed to renew his involved registration under section 9 of the Act of 1946, an order may be issued allowing respondent until a set time, not less than fifteen days, in which to show cause why such cancellation or failure to renew should not be deemed to be the equivalent of a cancellation by request of respondent without the consent of the adverse party and should not result in entry of judgment against respondent as provided by paragraph (a) of this section. In the absence of a showing of good and sufficient cause, judgment may be entered against respondent as provided by paragraph (a) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989; 63 FR 48081, 48100, Sept. 9, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 48081, 48100, Sept. 9, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective Oct. 9, 1998.]

§ 2.135 Abandonment of application or mark.

After the commencement of an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, if the applicant files a written abandonment of the application or of the mark without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the applicant. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.136 Status of application on termination of proceeding.

On termination of a proceeding involving an application, the application, if the judgment is not adverse, returns to the status it had before the institution of the proceedings. If the judgment is adverse to the applicant, the application stands refused without further action and all proceedings thereon are considered terminated.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

APPEALS

§ 2.141 Ex parte appeals from the Examiner of Trademarks.

Every applicant for the registration of a mark may, upon final refusal by the Examiner of Trademarks, appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon payment of the prescribed fee for each class in the application for which an appeal is taken. An appeal which includes insufficient fees to cover all classes in the application should specify the particular class or classes in which an appeal is taken. A second refusal on the same grounds may be considered as final by the applicant for purpose of appeal.

**Legislative History**

[41 FR 760, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.142 Time and manner of ex parte appeals.

(a) Any appeal filed under the provisions of § 2.141 must be filed within six months from the date of final refusal or the date of the action from which the appeal is taken. An appeal is taken by filing a notice of appeal and paying the appeal fee.

(b)(1) The brief of appellant shall be filed within sixty days from the date of appeal. If the brief is not filed within the time allowed, the appeal may be dismissed. The examiner shall, within sixty days after the brief of appellant is sent to the examiner, file with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board a written brief answering the brief of appellant and shall mail a copy of the brief to the appellant. The appellant may file a reply brief within twenty days from the date of mailing of the brief of the examiner.

(2) Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. Without prior leave of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a brief shall not exceed twenty-five pages in length in its entirety.

(c) All requirements made by the examiner and not the subject of appeal shall be complied with prior to the filing of an appeal.

(d) The record in the application should be complete prior to the filing of an appeal. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will ordinarily not consider additional evidence filed with the Board by the appellant or by the examiner after the appeal is filed. After an appeal is filed, if the appellant or the examiner desires to introduce additional evidence, the appellant or the examiner may request the Board to suspend the appeal and to remand the application for further examination.

(e)(1) If the appellant desires an oral hearing, a request therefor should be made by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for a reply brief. Oral argument will be heard by at least three Members of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board at the time specified in the notice of hearing, which may be reset if the Board is prevented from hearing the argument at the specified time or, so far as is convenient and proper, to meet the wish of the appellant or his attorney or other authorized representative.

(2) If the appellant requests an oral argument, the examiner who issued the refusal of registration or the requirement from which the appeal is taken, or in lieu thereof another examiner from the same examining division as designated by

the supervisory attorney thereof, shall present an oral argument. If no request for an oral hearing is made by the appellant, the appeal will be decided on the record and briefs.

(3) Oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes by the appellant and ten minutes by the examiner. The appellant may reserve part of the time allowed for oral argument to present a rebuttal argument.

(f)(1) If, during an appeal from a refusal of registration, it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that an issue not previously raised may render the mark of the appellant unregistrable, the Board may suspend the appeal and remand the application to the examiner for further examination to be completed within thirty days.

(2) If the further examination does not result in an additional ground for refusal of registration, the examiner shall promptly return the application to the Board, for resumption of the appeal, with a written statement that further examination did not result in an additional ground for refusal of registration.

(3) If the further examination does result in an additional ground for refusal of registration, the examiner and appellant shall proceed as provided by § § 2.61, 2.62, 2.63 and 2.64. If the ground for refusal is made final, the examiner shall return the application to the Board, which shall thereupon issue an order allowing the appellant sixty days from the date of the order to file a supplemental brief limited to the additional ground for the refusal of registration. If the supplemental brief is not filed by the appellant within the time allowed, the appeal may be dismissed.

(4) If the supplemental brief of the appellant is filed, the examiner shall, within sixty days after the supplemental brief of the appellant is sent to the examiner, file with the Board a written brief answering the supplemental brief of appellant and shall mail a copy of the brief to the appellant. The appellant may file a reply brief within twenty days from the date of mailing of the brief of the examiner.

(5) If an oral hearing on the appeal had been requested prior to the remand of the application but not yet held, an oral hearing will be set and heard as provided in paragraph (e) of this section. If an oral hearing had been held prior to the remand or had not been previously requested by the appellant, an oral hearing may be requested by the appellant by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for a reply brief on the additional ground for refusal of registration. If the appellant files a request for an oral hearing, one will be set and heard as provided in paragraph (e) of this section.

(6) If, during an appeal from a refusal of registration, it appears to the examiner that an issue not involved in the appeal may render the mark of the appellant unregistrable, the examiner may, by written request, ask the Board to suspend the appeal and to remand the application to the examiner for further examination. If the request is granted, the examiner and appellant shall proceed as provided by § § 2.61, 2.62, 2.63 and 2.64. After the additional ground for refusal of registration has been withdrawn or made final, the examiner shall return the application to the Board, which shall resume proceedings in the appeal and take further appropriate action with respect thereto.

(g) An application which has been considered and decided on appeal will not be reopened except for the entry of a disclaimer under section 6 of the Act of 1946 or upon order of the Commissioner, but a petition to the Commissioner to reopen an application will be considered only upon a showing of sufficient cause for consideration of any matter not already adjudicated.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34901, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.144 Reconsideration of decision on ex parte appeal.

Any request for rehearing or reconsideration, or modification of the decision, must be filed within one month from the date of the decision. Such time may be extended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon a showing of sufficient cause.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 29554, July 13, 1989]

§ 2.145 Appeal to court and civil action.

(a) Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. An applicant for registration, or any party to an interference, opposition, or cancellation proceeding or any party to an application to register as a concurrent user, hereinafter referred to as inter partes proceedings, who is dissatisfied with the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board and any registrant who has filed an affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act or who has filed an application for renewal and is dissatisfied with the decision of the Commissioner (§ § 2.165, 2.184), may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

(1) In the Patent and Trademark Office give written notice of appeal to the Commissioner (see paragraphs (b) and (d) of this section);

(2) In the court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal, as provided by the rules of the Court.

(b) Notice of appeal. (1) When an appeal is taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the appellant shall give notice thereof in writing to the Commissioner, which notice shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, within the time specified in paragraph (d) of this section. The notice shall specify the party or parties taking the appeal and shall designate the decision or part thereof appealed from.

(2) In inter partes proceedings, the notice must be served as provided in § 2.119.

(3) The notice, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

(c) Civil action. (1) Any person who may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (paragraph (a) of this section), may have remedy by civil action under section 21(b) of the Act. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Any applicant or registrant in an ex parte case who takes an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit waives any right to proceed under section 21(b) of the Act.

(3) Any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an inter partes proceeding may file a notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party's notice of appeal to the court (paragraph (b) of this section), electing to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in section 21(b) of the Act. The notice of election must be served as provided in § 2.119.

(4) A party to a proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board which commences a civil action, pursuant to section 21(b) of the Act, seeking review of a decision of the Board should file written notice thereof in the Patent and Trademark Office, addressed to the Board, within one month after the expiration of the time for appeal or civil action, in order to avoid premature termination of the Board proceeding.

(d) Time for appeal or civil action. (1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (paragraph (b) of this section), or for commencing a civil action (paragraph (c) of this section), is two months from the date of the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the Commissioner, as the case may be. If a request for rehearing or reconsideration or modification of the decision is filed within the time specified in § § 2.127(b), 2.129(c) or 2.144, or within any extension of time granted thereunder, the time for filing an appeal or

commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In inter partes cases, the time for filing a cross-action or a notice of a cross-appeal expires

(i) 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint; or

(ii) Two months from the date of the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the Commissioner, whichever is later.

(2) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The times specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of time specified for an appeal, or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither a Saturday, Sunday nor a Federal holiday.

(3) If a party to an inter partes proceeding has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under section 21(a)(1) of the Act electing to have all further proceedings conducted under section 21(b) of the Act, the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in section 21(a)(1) of the Act. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the summons and complaint.

(e) Extensions of time to commence judicial review. The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action (1) for good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action, or (2) upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 47382, Oct. 26, 1982, as amended at 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986; 53 FR 16414, May 9, 1988; 54 FR 29554, July 13, 1989; 54 FR 34901, Aug. 22, 1989; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993]

PETITIONS AND ACTIONS BY THE COMMISSIONER

§ 2.146 Petitions to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

(1) From any repeated or final formal requirement of the examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application if permitted by § 2.63(b);

(2) In any case for which the Act of 1946, or Title 35 of the United States Code, or this part of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations specifies that the matter is to be determined directly or reviewed by the Commissioner;

(3) to invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances;

(4) In any case not specifically defined and provided for by this part of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations;

(5) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, to request a suspension or waiver of any requirement of the rules not being a requirement of the Act of 1946.

(b) Questions of substance arising during the ex parte prosecution of applications, including, but not limited to, questions arising under sections 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 23 of the Act of 1946, are not considered to be appropriate subject matter for petitions to the Commissioner.

(c) Every petition to the Commissioner shall include a statement of the facts relevant to the petition, the points to be reviewed, the action or relief that is requested, and the requisite fee (see § 2.6). Any brief in support of the petition shall be embodied in or accompany the petition. When facts are to be proved in ex parte cases (as in a petition to revive an abandoned application), the proof in the form of affidavits or declarations in accordance with § 2.20, and any exhibits, shall accompany the petition.

(d) A petition must be filed within two months of the mailing date of the action from which relief is requested, unless a different deadline is specified elsewhere in this chapter.

(e)(1) A petition from the grant or denial of a request for an extension of time to file a notice of opposition shall be filed within fifteen days from the date of mailing of the grant or denial of the request. A petition from the grant of a request shall be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the potential opposer, if any, or on the potential opposer. A petition from the denial of a request shall be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or on the applicant. Proof of service of the petition shall be made as provided by § 2.119(a). The potential opposer or the applicant, as the case may be, may file a response within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition and shall serve a copy of the response on the petitioner, with proof of service as provided by § 2.119(a). No further paper relating to the petition shall be filed.

(2) A petition from an interlocutory order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall be filed within thirty days after the date of mailing of the order from which relief is requested. Any brief in response to the petition shall be filed, with any supporting exhibits, within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition. Petitions and responses to petitions, and any papers accompanying a petition or response, under this subsection shall be served on every adverse party pursuant to § 2.119(a).

(f) An oral hearing will not be held on a petition except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(g) The mere filing of a petition to the Commissioner will not act as a stay in any appeal or inter partes proceeding that is pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board nor stay the period for replying to an Office action in an application except when a stay is specifically requested and is granted or when § § 2.63(b) and 2.65 are applicable to an ex parte application.

(h) Authority to act on petitions, or on any petition, may be delegated by the Commissioner.

(i) Where a petitioner seeks to reactivate an application or registration that was abandoned or cancelled because papers were lost or mishandled, the Commissioner may deny the petition if the petitioner was not diligent in checking the status of the application or registration. To be considered diligent, the applicant must check the status of the application or registration within one year of the last filing or receipt of a notice from the Office for which further action by the Office is expected.

(j) If the Commissioner denies a petition, the petitioner may request reconsideration, if the petitioner:

(1) Files the request within two months of the mailing date of the decision denying the petition; and

(2) Pays a second petition fee under § 2.6.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23142, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27226, June 14, 1983; 63 FR 48081, 48100, Sept. 9, 1998; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (d), and added paragraphs (i) and (j), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.147 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.148 Commissioner may suspend certain rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, any requirement of the rules in this part not being a requirement of the statute may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

CERTIFICATE

§ 2.151 Certificate.

When the Office determines that a mark is registrable, a certificate will be issued stating that the applicant is entitled to registration on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register. The certificate will state the date on which the application for registration was filed in the Office, the act under which the mark is registered, the date of issue, and the number of the registration. A reproduction of the mark and pertinent data from the application will be sent with the certificate. A notice of the requirements of section 8 of the Act will accompany the certificate.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

PUBLICATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER 1905 ACT

§ 2.153 Publication requirements.

A registrant of a mark registered under the provisions of the Acts of 1881 or 1905 may at any time prior to the expiration of the period for which the registration was issued or renewed, upon the payment of the prescribed fee, file an affidavit or declaration in accordance with § 2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

**Legislative History**

[31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§ 2.154 Publication in Official Gazette.

A notice of the claim of benefits under the Act of 1946 and a reproduction of the mark will then be published in the Official Gazette as soon as practicable. The published mark will retain its original registration number.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.155 Notice of publication.

The Office will send the registrant a notice of publication of the mark and of the requirement for filing the affidavit or declaration required by section 8 of the Act.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.156 Not subject to opposition; subject to cancellation.

The published mark is not subject to opposition, but is subject to petitions to cancel as specified in § 2.111 and to cancellation for failure to file the affidavit or declaration required by section 8 of the Act.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

REREGISTRATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER PRIOR ACTS

§ 2.158 Reregistration of marks registered under Acts of 1881, 1905, and 1920.

Trademarks registered under the Act of 1881, the Act of 1905 or the Act of 1920 may be reregistered under the Act of 1946, either on the Principal Register, if eligible, or on the Supplemental Register, but a new complete application for registration must be filed complying with the rules relating thereto, and such application will be subject to examination and other proceedings in the same manner as other applications filed under the Act of 1946. See § 2.26 for use of old drawing.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.160 Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.

(a) During the following time periods, the owner of the registration must file an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, or the registration will be cancelled:

(1)(i) For registrations issued under the Trademark Act of 1946, on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of registration; or

(ii) For registrations issued under prior Acts, on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act; and

(2) For all registrations, within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration.

(3) The affidavit or declaration may be filed within a grace period of six months after the end of the deadline set forth in paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, with payment of the grace period surcharge required by section 8(c)(1) of the Act and § 2.6.

(b) For the requirements for the affidavit or declaration, see § 2.161.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, added this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR

§ 2.161 Requirements for a complete affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse.

A complete affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act must:

(a) Be filed by the owner within the period set forth in § 2.160(a);

(b) Include a statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner, attesting to the continued use or excusable nonuse of the mark within the period set forth in section 8 of the Act. The verified statement must be executed on or after the beginning of the filing period specified in § 2.160(a). A person who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner is:

(1) A person with legal authority to bind the owner; or

(2) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or

(3) An attorney as defined in § 10.1(c) of this chapter who has an actual or implied written or verbal power of attorney from the owner.

(c) Include the registration number;

(d)(1) Include the fee required by § 2.6 for each class of goods or services that the affidavit or declaration covers;

(2) If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period under section 8(c)(1) of the Act, include the late fee per class required by § 2.6;

(3) If at least one fee is submitted for a multi-class registration, but the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will issue a notice requiring either the submission of additional fee(s) or an indication of the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied. Additional fee(s) may be submitted if the requirements of § 2.164 are met. If the required fee(s) are not submitted and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class;

(e)(1) Specify the goods or services for which the mark is in use in commerce, and/or the goods or services for which excusable nonuse is claimed under § 2.161(f)(2);

(2) If the affidavit or declaration covers less than all the goods or services, or less than all the classes in the registration, specify the goods or services being deleted from the registration;

(f)(1) State that the registered mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services in the registration; or

(2) If the registered mark is not in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services in the registration, set forth the date when use of the mark in commerce stopped and the approximate date when use is expected to resume; and recite facts to show that nonuse as to those goods or services is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse and is not due to an intention to abandon the mark;

(g) Include a specimen showing current use of the mark for each class of goods or services, unless excusable nonuse is claimed under § 2.161(f)(2). The specimen must:

(1) Show the mark as actually used on or in connection with the goods or in the sale or advertising of the services. A photocopy or other reproduction of the specimen showing the mark as actually used is acceptable. However, a photocopy that merely reproduces the registration certificate is not a proper specimen;

(2) Be flat and no larger than 8 1/2 inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. If a specimen exceeds these size requirements (a "bulky specimen"), the Office will create a facsimile of the specimen that meets the requirements of the rule (i.e., is flat and no larger than 8 1/2 inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long) and put it in the file wrapper;

(h) If the registrant is not domiciled in the United States, the registrant must list the name and address of a United States resident upon whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48924, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.162 Notice to registrant.

When a certificate of registration is originally issued, the Office includes a notice of the requirement for filing the affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse under section 8 of the Act. However the affidavit or declaration must be filed within the time period required by section 8 of the Act even if this notice is not received.

**Legislative History**

[41 FR 761, Jan. 5, 1976, as amended at 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982; 48 FR 3977, Jan. 28, 1983; 54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.163 Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration.

The Office will issue a notice as to whether an affidavit or declaration is acceptable, or the reasons for refusal.

(a) If the owner of the registration filed the affidavit or declaration within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected if the requirements of § 2.164 are met.

(b) A response to the refusal must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the Office action, or before the end of the filing period set forth in section 8(a) or section 8(b) of the Act, whichever is later. If no response is filed within this time period, the registration will be cancelled.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.164 Correcting deficiencies in affidavit or declaration.

(a) If the owner of the registration files an affidavit or declaration within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected, as follows:

(1) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations timely filed within the periods set forth in sections 8(a) and 8(b) of the Act. If the owner timely files the affidavit or declaration within the relevant filing period set forth in section 8(a) or section 8(b) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the end of this filing period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the end of this filing period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 8(c)(2) of the Act and § 2.6.

(2) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations filed during the grace period. If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the six-month grace period provided by section 8(c)(1) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 8(c)(2) of the Act and § 2.6.

(b) If the affidavit or declaration is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, or if it is filed within that period by someone other than the owner, the registration will be cancelled. These deficiencies cannot be cured.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.165 Petition to Commissioner to review refusal.

(a) A response to the examiner's initial refusal to accept an affidavit or declaration is required before filing a petition to the Commissioner, unless the examiner directs otherwise. See § 2.163(b) for the deadline for responding to an examiner's Office action.

(b) If the examiner maintains the refusal of the affidavit or declaration, a petition to the Commissioner to review the action may be filed. The petition must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the action maintaining the refusal, or the Office will cancel the registration and issue a notice of the cancellation.

(c) A decision by the Commissioner is necessary before filing an appeal or commencing a civil action in any court.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23143, May 23, 1983; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993; 61 FR 56439, 56448, Nov. 1, 1996; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.166 Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse combined with renewal application.

An affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act and a renewal application under section 9 of the Act may be combined into a single document, provided that the document meets the requirements of both sections 8 and 9 of the Act.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION UNDER SECTION 15

§ 2.167 Affidavit or declaration under section 15.

The affidavit or declaration in accordance with § 2.20 provided by section 15 of the Act for acquiring incontestability for a mark registered on the Principal Register or a mark registered under the Act of 1881 or 1905 and published under section 12(c) of the Act (§ 2.153) must:

(a) Be signed by the registrant;

(b) Identify the certificate of registration by the certificate number and date of registration;

(c) Recite the goods or services stated in the registration on or in connection with which the mark has been in continuous use in commerce for a period of five years after the date of registration or date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act, and is still in use in commerce;

(d) Specify that there has been no final decision adverse to registrant's claim of ownership of such mark for such goods or services, or to registrant's right to register the same or to keep the same on the register;

(e) Specify that there is no proceeding involving said rights pending in the Patent and Trademark Office or in a court and not finally disposed of;

(f) Be filed within one year after the expiration of any five-year period of continuous use following registration or publication under section 12(c).

The registrant will be notified of the receipt of the affidavit or declaration.

(g) Include the required fee for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains in the registration. If no fee, or a fee insufficient to cover at least one class, is filed at an appropriate time, the affidavit or declaration will not be refused if the required fee(s) (See § 2.6) are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set forth in the notification of this defect by the Office. If insufficient fees are included to cover all classes in the registration, the particular class or classes to which the affidavit or declaration pertains should be specified.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (c), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.168 Affidavit or declaration under section 15 combined with affidavit or declaration under section 8, or with renewal application.

(a) The affidavit or declaration filed under section 15 of the Act may also be used as the affidavit or declaration required by section 8, if the affidavit or declaration meets the requirements of both sections 8 and 15.

(b) The affidavit or declaration filed under section 15 of the Act may be combined with an application for renewal of a registration under section 9 of the Act, if the requirements of both sections 9 and 15 are met.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48925, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

CORRECTION, DISCLAIMER, SURRENDER, ETC.

§ 2.171 New certificate on change of ownership.

In case of change of ownership of a registered mark, upon request of the assignee, a new certificate of registration may be issued in the name of the assignee for the unexpired part of the original period. The assignment must be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the request for the new certificate must be signed by the assignee and accompanied by the required fee. The original certificate of registration, if available, must also be submitted.

**Legislative History**

[31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§ 2.172 Surrender for cancellation.

Upon application by the registrant, the Commissioner may permit any registration to be surrendered for cancellation. Application for such action must be signed by the registrant and must be accompanied by the original certificate of registration, if not lost or destroyed. When there is more than one class in a registration, one or more entire class but less than the total number of classes may be surrendered as to the specified class or classes. Deletion of less than all of the goods or services in a single class constitutes amendment of registration as to that class (see § 2.173).

**Legislative History**

[41 FR 761, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.173 Amendment of registration.

(a) The registrant may apply to amend the registration or to disclaim part of the mark in the registration. A written request specifying the amendment or disclaimer must be submitted. The request must be signed by the registrant and verified or supported by a declaration under § 2.20, and accompanied by the required fee. If the amendment involves a change in the mark, a new specimen showing the mark as used on or in connection with the goods or services, and a new drawing of the amended mark, must be submitted. The certificate of registration or, if the certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy of the certificate, must also be submitted. The registration as amended must still contain registrable matter, and the mark as amended must be registrable as a whole. An amendment or disclaimer must not materially alter the character of the mark.

(b) No amendment in the identification of goods or services in a registration will be permitted except to restrict the identification or otherwise to change it in ways that would not require republication of the mark. No amendment seeking the elimination of a disclaimer will be permitted.

(c) A printed copy of the amendment or disclaimer shall be attached to each printed copy of the registration.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966; 48 FR 23143, May 23, 1983; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, revised the section heading and paragraph (a), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.174 Correction of Office mistake.

Whenever a material mistake in a registration, incurred through the fault of the Patent and Trademark Office, is clearly disclosed by the records of the Office, a certificate stating the fact and nature of such mistake, signed by the Commissioner or by an employee designated by the Commissioner and sealed with the seal of the Patent and Trademark Office, shall be issued without charge and recorded, and a printed copy thereof shall be attached to each printed copy of the registration certificate. Such corrected certificate shall thereafter have the same effect as if the same had been originally issued in such corrected form, or in the discretion of the Commissioner a new certificate of registration may be issued without charge. The certificate of registration or, if said certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy thereof, must be submitted in order that the Commissioner may make appropriate entry thereon.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

§ 2.175 Correction of mistake by registrant.

(a) Whenever a mistake has been made in a registration and a showing has been made that such mistake occurred in good faith through the fault of the applicant, the Commissioner may issue a certificate of correction, or in his discretion, a new certificate upon the payment of the required fee, provided that the correction does not involve such changes in the registration as to require republication of the mark.

(b) Application for such action must specify the mistake for which correction is sought and the manner in which it arose, show that it occurred in good faith, be signed by the applicant and verified or include a declaration in accordance with § 2.20, and be accompanied by the required fee. The certificate of registration or, if said certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy thereof, must also be submitted in order that the Commissioner may make appropriate entry thereon.

(c) A printed copy of the certificate of correction shall be attached to each printed copy of the registration.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§ 2.176 Consideration of above matters.

The matters in § § 2.171 to 2.175 will be considered in the first instance by the Examiner of Trademarks. If the action of the Examiner of Trademarks is adverse, registrant may request the Commissioner to review the action under § 2.146. If response to an adverse action of the Examiner is not made by the registrant within six months, the matter will be considered abandoned.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965]

TERM AND RENEWAL

§ 2.181 Term of original registrations and renewals.

(a)(1) Subject to the provisions of section 8 of the Act requiring an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, registrations issued or renewed prior to November 16, 1989, whether on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, remain in force for twenty years from their date of issue or the date of renewal, and may be further renewed for periods of ten years, unless previously cancelled or surrendered.

(2) Subject to the provisions of section 8 of the Act requiring an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, registrations issued or renewed on or after November 16, 1989, whether on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, remain in force for ten years from their date of issue or the date of renewal, and may be further renewed for periods of ten years, unless previously cancelled or surrendered.

(b) Registrations issued under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 remain in force for their unexpired terms and may be renewed in the same manner as registrations under the Act of 1946.

(c) Registrations issued under the Act of 1920 cannot be renewed unless renewal is required to support foreign registrations and in such case may be renewed on the Supplemental Register in the same manner as registrations under the Act of 1946.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, revised paragraph (a), effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.182 Time for filing renewal application.

An application for renewal must be filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, or within the six-month grace period after the expiration date of the registration. If no renewal application is filed within this period, the registration will expire.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.183 Requirements for a complete renewal application.

A complete renewal application must include:

(a) A request for renewal of the registration, signed by the registrant or the registrant's representative;

(b) The fee required by § 2.6 for each class;

(c) The additional fee required by § 2.6 for each class if the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period set forth in section 9(a) of the Act;

(d) If the registrant is not domiciled in the United States, the name and address of a United States resident on whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served; and

(e) If the renewal application covers less than all the goods or services in the registration, a list of the particular goods or services to be renewed.

(f) If at least one fee is submitted for a multi-class registration, but the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will issue a notice requiring either the submission of additional fee(s) or an indication of the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied. Additional fee(s) may be submitted if the requirements of § 2.185 are met. If the required fee(s) are not submitted and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966; 41 FR 761, Jan. 5, 1976; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.184 Refusal of renewal.

(a) If the renewal application is not acceptable, the Office will issue a notice stating the reason(s) for refusal.

(b) A response to the refusal of renewal must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the Office action, or before the expiration date of the registration, whichever is later, or the registration will expire.

(c) If the renewal application is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, the registration will expire.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 23143, May 23, 1983; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.185 Correcting deficiencies in renewal application.

(a) If the renewal application is filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected, as follows:

(1) Correcting deficiencies in renewal applications filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration. If the renewal application is filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration date of the registration without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration date of the registration with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 9(a) of the Act and § 2.6.

(2) Correcting deficiencies in renewal applications filed during the grace period. If the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 9(a) of the Act and § 2.6.

(b) If the renewal application is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, the registration will expire. This deficiency cannot be cured.

**Legislative History**

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, added this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.186 Petition to Commissioner to review refusal of renewal.

(a) A response to the examiner's initial refusal of the renewal application is required before filing a petition to the Commissioner, unless the examiner directs otherwise. See § 2.184(b) for the deadline for responding to an examiner's Office action.

(b) If the examiner maintains the refusal of the renewal application, a petition to the Commissioner to review the refusal may be filed. The petition must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the Office action maintaining the refusal, or the renewal application will be abandoned and the registration will expire.

(c) A decision by the Commissioner is necessary before filing an appeal or commencing a civil action in any court.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, added this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 2.187 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 2.189 [This section was removed. See 61 FR 55223, Oct. 25, 1996.]

## PART 3 --ASSIGNMENT, RECORDING AND RIGHTS OF ASSIGNEE

§ 3.1 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

Application means a national application for patent, an international application that designates the United States of America, or an application to register a trademark unless otherwise indicated.

Assignment means a transfer by a party of all or part of its right, title and interest in a patent or patent application, or a transfer of its entire right, title and interest in a registered mark or a mark for which an application to register has been filed.

Document means a document which a party requests to be recorded in the Office pursuant to § 3.11 and which affects some interest in an application, patent, or registration.

Office means the Patent and Trademark Office.

Recorded document means a document which has been recorded in the Office pursuant to § 3.11.

Registration means a trademark registration issued by the Office.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING

§ 3.11 Documents which will be recorded.

(a) Assignments of applications, patents, and registrations, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in § § 3.28 and 3.31, will be recorded in the Office. Other documents, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in § § 3.28 and 3.31, affecting title to applications, patents, or registrations, will be recorded as provided in this part or at the discretion of the Commissioner.

(b) Executive Order 9424 of February 18, 1944 (9 FR 1959, 3 CFR 1943-1948 Comp., p. 303) requires the several departments and other executive agencies of the Government, including Government-owned or Government-controlled corporations, to forward promptly to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks for recording all licenses, assignments, or other interests of the Government in or under patents or patent applications. Assignments and other documents affecting title to patents or patent applications and documents not affecting title to patents or patent applications required by Executive Order 9424 to be filed will be recorded as provided in this part.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 3.16 Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of an allegation of use.

Before an allegation of use under either 15 U.S.C. 1051(c) or 15 U.S.C. 1051(d) is filed, an applicant may only assign an application to register a mark under 15 U.S.C. 1051(b) to a successor to the applicant's business, or portion of the business to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48926, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING

§ 3.21 Identification of patents and patent applications.

An assignment relating to a patent must identify the patent by the patent number. An assignment relating to a national patent application must identify the national patent application by the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number, e.g., 07/123,456). An assignment relating to an international patent application which designates the United States of America must identify the international application by the international application number (e.g., PCT/US90/01234). If an assignment of a patent application filed under § 1.53(b) is executed concurrently with, or subsequent to, the execution of the patent application, but before the patent application is filed, it must identify the patent application by its date of execution, name of each inventor, and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the patent application intended. If an assignment of a provisional application under § 1.53(c) is executed before the provisional application is filed, it must identify the provisional application by name of each inventor and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the provisional application intended.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 60 FR 20228, April 25, 1995; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 3.24 Requirements for documents and cover sheets relating to patents and patent applications.

The document and cover sheet must be legible. Either the original document or a true copy of the original document, may be submitted for recording. Only one side of each page shall be used. The paper used should be flexible, strong, white, non-shiny, durable, and preferably no larger than 21.6 x 33.1 cm. (8 1/2 x 14 inches) with a 2.5 cm. (one-inch) margin on all sides.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999, revised the section heading, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 3.25 Recording requirements for trademark applications and registrations.

(a) Documents affecting title. To record documents affecting title to a trademark application or registration, a legible cover sheet (see § 3.31) and one of the following must be submitted:

(1) The original document;

(2) A copy of the document;

(3) A copy of an extract from the document evidencing the effect on title; or

(4) A statement signed by both the party conveying the interest and the party receiving the interest explaining how the conveyance affects title.

(b) Name changes. Only a legible cover sheet is required (See § 3.31).

(c) All documents. All documents submitted to the Office should be on white and non-shiny paper that is no larger than 8 1/2 x 14 inches (21.6 x 33.1 cm.) with a one-inch (2.5 cm) margin on all sides. Only one side of each page should be used.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999, added this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 3.26 English language requirement.

The Office will accept and record non-English language documents only if accompanied by an English translation signed by the individual making the translation.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 3.27 Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.

Documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be addressed to the Commissioner, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Box Assignment, Washington, D.C. 20231, unless they are filed together with new applications or with a request under § 3.81.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54681, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 3.28 Requests for recording.

Each document submitted to the Office for recording must include at least one cover sheet as specified in § 3.31 referring either to those patent applications and patents, or to those trademark applications and registrations, against which the document is to be recorded. If a document to be recorded includes interests in, or transactions involving, both patents and trademarks, separate patent and trademark cover sheets should be submitted. Only one set of documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. If a document to be recorded is not accompanied by a completed cover sheet, the document and the incomplete cover sheet will be returned pursuant to § 3.51 for proper completion. The document and a completed cover sheet should be resubmitted.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999, revised this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS

§ 3.31 Cover sheet content.

(a) Each patent or trademark cover sheet required by § 3.28 must contain:

(1) The name of the party conveying the interest;

(2) The name and address of the party receiving the interest;

(3) A description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded;

(4) Identification of the interests involved:

(i) For trademark assignments and trademark name changes: Each trademark registration number and each trademark application number, if known, against which the Office is to record the document. If the trademark application number is not known, a copy of the application or a reproduction of the trademark must be submitted, along with an estimate of the date that the Office received the application; or

(ii) For any other document affecting title to a trademark or patent application, registration or patent: Each trademark or patent application number or each trademark registration number or patent against which the document is to be recorded, or an indication that the document is filed together with a patent application;

(5) The name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the document should be mailed;

(6) The date the document was executed;

(7) An indication that the assignee of a trademark application or registration who is not domiciled in the United States has designated a domestic representative (see § 3.61); and

(8) The signature of the party submitting the document.

(b) A cover sheet should not refer to both patents and trademarks, since any information, including information about pending patent applications, submitted with a request for recordation of a document against a trademark application or trademark registration will become public record upon recordation.

(c) Each patent cover sheet required by § 3.28 seeking to record a governmental interest as provided by § 3.11(b) must:

(1) Indicate that the document is to be recorded on the Governmental Register, and, if applicable, that the document is to be recorded on the Secret Register (see § 3.58); and

(2) Indicate, if applicable, that the document to be recorded is not a document affecting title (see § 3.41(b)).

(d) Each trademark cover sheet required by § 3.28 seeking to record a document against a trademark application or registration should include, in addition to the serial number or registration number of the trademark, identification of the trademark or a description of the trademark, against which the Office is to record the document.

(e) Each patent or trademark cover sheet required by § 3.28 should contain the number of applications, patents or registrations identified in the cover sheet and the total fee.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997; 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999, amended this section, effective Oct. 30, 1999.]

§ 3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

(a) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to § 3.11 will be corrected only if:

(1) The error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded document to which it pertains, and

(2) A corrected cover sheet is filed for recordation.

(b) The corrected cover sheet must be accompanied by the originally recorded document or a copy of the originally recorded document and by the recording fee as set forth in § 3.41.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

FEES

§ 3.41 Recording fees.

(a) All requests to record documents must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, a fee is required for each application, patent and registration against which the document is recorded

as identified in the cover sheet. The recording fee is set in § 1.21(h) of this chapter for patents and in § 2.6(b)(6) of this chapter for trademarks.

(b) No fee is required for each patent application and patent against which a document required by Executive Order 9424 is to be filed if:

(1) The document does not affect title and is so identified in the cover sheet (see § 3.31(c)(2)); and (2) The document and cover sheet are mailed to the Office in compliance with § 3.27(b).

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53202, Oct. 10, 1997; 63 FR 48081, 48100, Sept. 9, 1998, as corrected and revised at 63 FR 52158, 52159, Sept. 30, 1998]

DATE AND EFFECT OF RECORDING

§ 3.51 Recording date.

The date of recording of a document is the date the document meeting the requirements for recording set forth in this part is filed in the Office. A document which does not comply with the identification requirements of § 3.21 will not be recorded. Documents not meeting the other requirements for recording, for example, a document submitted without a completed cover sheet or without the required fee, will be returned for correction to the sender where a correspondence address is available. The returned papers, stamped with the original date of receipt by the Office, will be accompanied by a letter which will indicate that if the returned papers are corrected and resubmitted to the Office within the time specified in the letter, the Office will consider the original date of filing of the papers as the date of recording of the document. The procedure set forth in § 1.8 or § 1.10 of this chapter may be used for resubmissions of returned papers to have the benefit of the date of deposit in the United States Postal Service. If the returned papers are not corrected and resubmitted within the specified period, the date of filing of the corrected papers will be considered to be the date of recording of the document. The specified period to resubmit the returned papers will not be extended.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997]

§ 3.54 Effect of recording.

The recording of a document pursuant to § 3.11 is not a determination by the Office of the validity of the document or the effect that document has on the title to an application, a patent, or a registration. When necessary, the Office will determine what effect a document has, including whether a party has the authority to take an action in a matter pending before the Office.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

§ 3.56 Conditional assignments.

Assignments which are made conditional on the performance of certain acts or events, such as the payment of money or other condition subsequent, if recorded in the Office, are regarded as absolute assignments for Office purposes until cancelled with the written consent of all parties or by the decree of a court of competent jurisdiction. The Office does not determine whether such conditions have been fulfilled.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

§ 3.58 Governmental registers.

(a) The Office will maintain a Departmental Register to record governmental interests required to be recorded by Executive Order 9424. This Departmental Register will not be open to public inspection but will be available for examination and inspection by duly authorized representatives of the Government. Governmental interests recorded on the Departmental Register will be available for public inspection as provided in § 1.12.

(b) The Office will maintain a Secret Register to record governmental interests required to be recorded by Executive Order 9424. Any instrument to be recorded will be placed on this Secret Register at the request of the department or agency submitting the same. No information will be given concerning any instrument in such record or register, and no examination or inspection thereof or of the index thereto will be permitted, except on the written authority of the head of the department or agency which submitted the instrument and requested secrecy, and the approval of such authority by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. No instrument or record other than the one specified may be examined, and the examination must take place in the presence of a designated official of the Patent and Trademark Office. When the department or agency which submitted an instrument no longer requires secrecy with respect to that instrument, it must be recorded anew in the Departmental Register.

**Legislative History**

[62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997]

ACTION TAKEN BY ASSIGNEE

§ 3.61 Domestic representative.

If the assignee of a trademark application or registration is not domiciled in the United States, the assignee must designate, in writing to the Office, a domestic representative. An assignee of a patent application or patent may designate a domestic representative if the assignee is not residing in the United States. The designation shall state the name and address of a person residing within the United States on whom may be served process or notice of proceedings affecting the application, patent or registration or rights thereunder.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

PROSECUTION BY ASSIGNEE

§ 3.71 Prosecution by assignee.

(a) Patents -- conducting of prosecution. One or more assignees as defined in paragraph (b) of this section may, after becoming of record pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section, conduct prosecution of a national patent application or a reexamination proceeding to the exclusion of either the inventive entity, or the assignee(s) previously entitled to conduct prosecution.

(b) Patents -- Assignee(s) who can prosecute. The assignee(s) who may conduct either the prosecution of a national application for patent or a reexamination proceeding are:

(1) A single assignee. An assignee of the entire right, title and interest in the application or patent being reexamined who is of record, or

(2) Partial assignee(s) together or with inventor(s). All partial assignees, or all partial assignees and inventors who have not assigned their right, title and interest in the application or patent being reexamined, who together own the entire right, title and interest in the application or patent being reexamined. A partial assignee is any assignee of record having less than the entire right, title and interest in the application or patent being reexamined.

(c) Patents -- Becoming of record. An assignee becomes of record either in a national patent application or a reexamination proceeding by filing a statement in compliance with § 3.73(b) that is signed by a party who is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

(d) Trademarks. The assignee of a trademark application or registration may prosecute a trademark application, submit documents to maintain a trademark registration, or file papers against a third party in reliance on the assignee's trademark application or registration, to the exclusion of the original applicant or previous assignee. The assignee must establish ownership in compliance with § 3.73(b).

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 3.73 Establishing right of assignee to take action.

(a) The inventor is presumed to be the owner of a patent application, and any patent that may issue therefrom, unless there is an assignment. The original applicant is presumed to be the owner of a trademark application or registration, unless there is an assignment.

(b)(1) In order to request or take action in a patent or trademark matter, the assignee must establish its ownership of the patent or trademark property of paragraph (a) of this section to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. The establishment of ownership by the assignee may be combined with the paper that requests or takes the action. Ownership is established by submitting to the Office a signed statement identifying the assignee, accompanied by either:

(i) Documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee (e.g., copy of an executed assignment). The documents submitted to establish ownership may be required to be recorded pursuant to § 3.11 in the assignment records of the Office as a condition to permitting the assignee to take action in a matter pending before the Office; or

(ii) A statement specifying where documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee is recorded in the assignment records of the Office (e.g., reel and frame number).

(2) The submission establishing ownership must show that the person signing the submission is a person authorized to act on behalf of the assignee by:

(i) Including a statement that the person signing the submission is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee; or

(ii) Being signed by a person having apparent authority to sign on behalf of the assignee, e.g., an officer of the assignee.

(c) For patent matters only:

(1) Establishment of ownership by the assignee must be submitted prior to, or at the same time as, the paper requesting or taking action is submitted.

(2) If the submission under this section is by an assignee of less than the entire right, title and interest, such assignee must indicate the extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest, or the Office may refuse to accept the submission as an establishment of ownership.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

ISSUANCE TO ASSIGNEE

§ 3.81 Issue of patent to assignee.

(a) With payment of the issue fee: An application may issue in the name(s) of the assignee(s) consistent with the application's assignment where a request for such issuance is submitted with payment of the issue fee, provided the assignment has been previously recorded in the Office. If the assignment has not been previously recorded, the request should be accompanied by the assignment and either a direction to record the assignment in the Office pursuant to § 3.28, or a statement under § 3.73(b).

(b) After payment of the issue fee: An application may issue in the name(s) of the assignee(s) consistent with the application's assignment where a request for such issuance along with the processing fee set forth in § 1.17(i) of this chapter is submitted after the date of payment of the issue fee, but prior to issuance of the patent, provided the assignment has been previously recorded in the Office. If the assignment has not been previously recorded, the request should be accompanied by the assignment and either a direction to record the assignment in the Office pursuant to § 3.28, or a statement under § 3.73(b).

(c) Partial assignees. (1) If one or more assignee(s) together with one or more inventor(s) hold the entire right, title, and interest in the application, the patent may issue in the names of the assignee(s) and the inventor(s).

(2) If multiple assignees hold the entire right, title, and interest to the exclusion of all the inventors, the patent may issue in the names of the multiple assignees.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992; 60 FR 20229, Apr. 25, 1995; 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 3.85 Issue of registration to assignee.

The certificate of registration may be issued to the assignee of the applicant, or in a new name of the applicant, provided that the party files a written request in the trademark application by the time the application is being prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration, and the appropriate document is recorded in the Office. If the assignment or name change document has not been recorded in the Office, then the written request must state that the document has been filed for recordation. The address of the assignee must be made of record in the application file.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

PART 4 --COMPLAINTS REGARDING INVENTION PROMOTERS

§ 4.1 Complaints Regarding Invention Promoters

These regulations govern the Patent and Trademark Office's (Office) responsibilities under the Inventors' Rights Act of 1999, which can be found in the U.S. Code at 35 U.S.C. 297. The Act requires the Office to provide a forum for the publication of complaints concerning invention promoters. The Office will not conduct any independent investigation of the invention promoter. Although the Act provides additional civil remedies for persons injured by invention promoters, those remedies must be pursued by the injured party without the involvement of the Office.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 3127, 3129, Jan. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 3127, 3129, Jan. 20, 2000, added Part 4, effective Jan. 28, 2000.]

§ 4.2 Definitions

(a) Invention Promoter means any person, firm, partnership, corporation, or other entity who offers to perform or performs invention promotion services for, or on behalf of, a customer, and who holds itself out through advertising in any mass media as providing such services, but does not include --

(1) Any department or agency of the Federal Government or of a State or local government;

(2) Any nonprofit, charitable, scientific, or educational organization qualified under applicable State law or described under section 170(b)(1)(A) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986;

(3) Any person or entity involved in the evaluation to determine commercial potential of, or offering to license or sell, a utility patent or a previously filed nonprovisional utility patent application;

(4) Any party participating in a transaction involving the sale of the stock or assets of a business; or

(5) Any party who directly engages in the business of retail sales of products or the distribution of products.

(b) Customer means any individual who enters into a contract with an invention promoter for invention promotion services.

(c) Contract for Invention Promotion Services means a contract by which an invention promoter undertakes invention promotion services for a customer.

(d) Invention Promotion Services means the procurement or attempted procurement for a customer of a firm, corporation, or other entity to develop and market products or services that include the invention of the customer.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 3127, 3129, Jan. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 3127, 3129, Jan. 20, 2000, added Part 4, effective Jan. 28, 2000.]

§ 4.3 Submitting Complaints

(a) A person may submit a complaint concerning an invention promoter with the Office. A person submitting a complaint should understand that the complaint may be forwarded to the invention promoter and may become publicly available. The Office will not accept any complaint that requests that it be kept confidential.

(b) A complaint must be clearly marked, or otherwise identified, as a complaint under these rules. The complaint must include:

(1) The name and address of the complainant;

(2) The name and address of the invention promoter;

(3) The name of the customer;

(4) The invention promotion services offered or performed by the invention promoter;

(5) The name of the mass media in which the invention promoter advertised providing such services;

(6) An explanation of the relationship between the customer and the invention promoter; and

(7) A signature of the complainant.

(c) The complaint should fairly summarize the action of the invention promoter about which the person complains. Additionally, the complaint should include names and addresses of persons believed to be associated with the invention promoter. Complaints, and any replies, must be addressed to Office of Independent Inventor Programs, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, D.C. 20231.

(d) Complaints that do not provide the information requested in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section will be returned. If complainant's address is not provided, the complaint will be destroyed.

(e) No originals of documents should be included with the complaint.

(f) A complaint can be withdrawn by the complainant or the named customer at any time prior to its publication.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 3127, 3129, Jan. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 3127, 3129, Jan. 20, 2000, added Part 4, effective Jan. 28, 2000.]

§ 4.4 Invention Promoter Reply

(a) If a submission appears to meet the requirements of a complaint, the invention promoter named in the complaint will be notified of the complaint and given 30 days to respond. The invention promoter's response will be made available to the public along with the complaint. If the invention promoter fails to reply within the 30-day time period set by the Office, the complaint will be made available to the public. Replies sent after the complaint is made available to the public will also be published.

(b) A response must be clearly marked, or otherwise identified, as a response by an invention promoter. The response must contain:

(1) The name and address of the invention promoter;

(2) A reference to a complaint forwarded to the invention promoter or a complaint previously published;

(3) The name of the individual signing the response; and

(4) The title or authority of the individual signing the response.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 3127, 3130, Jan. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 3127, 3130, Jan. 20, 2000, added Part 4, effective Jan. 28, 2000.]

§ 4.5 Notice by Publication

If the copy of the complaint that is mailed to the invention promoter is returned undelivered, then the Office will publish a Notice of Complaint Received in the Official Gazette, the Federal Register, or on the Office's Internet home page. The invention promoter will be given 30 days from such notice to submit a reply to the complaint. If the Office does not receive a reply from the invention promoter within 30 days, the complaint alone will become publicly available.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 3127, 3130, Jan. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 3127, 3130, Jan. 20, 2000, added Part 4, effective Jan. 28, 2000.]

§ 4.6 Attorneys and Agents

Complaints against registered patent attorneys and agents will not be treated under this section, unless a complaint fairly demonstrates that invention promotion services are involved. Persons having complaints about registered patent attorneys or agents should contact the Office of Enrollment and Discipline at the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Box OED, Washington, D.C. 20231, and the attorney discipline section of the attorney's state licensing bar if an attorney is involved.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 3127, 3130, Jan. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 3127, 3130, Jan. 20, 2000, added Part 4, effective Jan. 28, 2000.]

## PART 5 --SECRECY OF CERTAIN INVENTIONS AND LICENSES TO EXPORT AND FILE APPLICATIONS IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

### SECRECY ORDERS

§ 5.1 Applications and correspondence involving national security.

(a) All correspondence in connection with this part, including petitions, should be addressed to "Commissioner for Patents (Attention Licensing and Review), Washington, D.C. 20231."

(b) Application as used in this part includes provisional applications filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) (§ 1.9(a)(2) of this chapter), nonprovisional applications filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or entering the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371 (§ 1.9(a)(3)), or international applications filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty prior to entering the national stage of processing (§ 1.9(b)).

(c) Patent applications and documents relating thereto that are national security classified (see § 1.9(i) of this chapter) and contain authorized national security markings (e.g., "Confidential," "Secret" or "Top Secret") are accepted by the Office. National security classified documents filed in the Office must be either hand-carried to Licensing and Review or mailed to the Office in compliance with paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) The applicant in a national security classified patent application must obtain a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a). If a national security classified patent application is filed without a notification pursuant to § 5.2(a), the Office will set a time period within which either the application must be declassified, or the application must be placed under a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a), or the applicant must submit evidence of a good faith effort to obtain a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a) from the relevant department or agency in order to prevent abandonment of the application. If evidence of a good faith effort to obtain a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a) from the relevant department or agency is submitted by the applicant within the time period set by the Office, but the application has not been declassified or placed under a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a), the Office will again set a time period within which either the application must be declassified, or the application must be placed under a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a), or the applicant must submit evidence of a good faith effort to again obtain a secrecy order pursuant to § 5.2(a) from the relevant department or agency in order to prevent abandonment of the application.

(e) An application will not be published under § 1.211 of this chapter or allowed under § 1.311 of this chapter if publication or disclosure of the application would be detrimental to national security. An application under national security review will not be published at least until six months from its filing date or three months from the date the application was referred to a defense agency, whichever is later. A national security classified patent application will not

be published under § 1.211 of this chapter or allowed under § 1.311 of this chapter until the application is declassified and any secrecy order under § 5.2(a) has been rescinded.

(f) Applications on inventions made outside the United States and on inventions in which a U.S. Government defense agency has a property interest will not be made available to defense agencies.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20470, May 11, 1978; 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54682, Sept. 8, 2000, revised this section, effective Nov. 7, 2000; 65 FR 57024, 57060, Sept. 20, 2000, revised paragraph (e), effective Nov. 29, 2000.]

§ 5.2 Secrecy order.

(a) When notified by the chief officer of a defense agency that publication or disclosure of the invention by the granting of a patent would be detrimental to the national security, an order that the invention be kept secret will be issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) Any request for compensation as provided in 35 U.S.C. 183 must not be made to the Patent and Trademark Office, but directly to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

(c) An application disclosing any significant part of the subject matter of an application under a secrecy order pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section also falls within the scope of such secrecy order. Any such application that is pending before the Office must be promptly brought to the attention of Licensing and Review, unless such application is itself under a secrecy order pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section. Any subsequently filed application containing any significant part of the subject matter of an application under a secrecy order pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must either be hand-carried to Licensing and Review or mailed to the Office in compliance with § 5.1(a).

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959; 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54683, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54683, Sept. 8, 2000, added paragraph (c), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.

Unless specifically ordered otherwise, action on the application by the Office and prosecution by the applicant will proceed during the time an application is under secrecy order to the point indicated in this section:

(a) National applications under secrecy order which come to a final rejection must be appealed or otherwise prosecuted to avoid abandonment. Appeals in such cases must be completed by the applicant but unless otherwise specifically ordered by the Commissioner will not be set for hearing until the secrecy order is removed.

(b) An interference will not be declared involving national applications under secrecy order. However, if an applicant whose application is under secrecy order seeks to provoke an interference with an issued patent, a notice of that fact will be placed in the file wrapper of the patent. (See § 1.607(d))

(c) When the national application is found to be in condition for allowance except for the secrecy order the applicant and the agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued will be notified. This notice (which is not a notice

of allowance under § 1.311 of this chapter) does not require reply by the applicant and places the national application in a condition of suspension until the secrecy order is removed. When the secrecy order is removed the Patent and Trademark Office will issue a notice of allowance under § 1.311 of this chapter, or take such other action as may then be warranted.

(d) International applications under secrecy order will not be mailed, delivered or otherwise transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant. International applications under secrecy order will be processed up to the point where, if it were not for the secrecy order, record and search copies would be transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20470, May 11, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 23736, June 23, 1988; 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (c), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.

(a) A petition for rescission or removal of a secrecy order may be filed by, or on behalf of, any principal affected thereby. Such petition may be in letter form, and it must be in duplicate.

(b) The petition must recite any and all facts that purport to render the order ineffectual or futile if this is the basis of the petition. When prior publications or patents are alleged the petition must give complete data as to such publications or patents and should be accompanied by copies thereof.

(c) The petition must identify any contract between the Government and any of the principals, under which the subject matter of the application or any significant part thereof was developed, or to which the subject matter is otherwise related. If there is no such contract, the petition must so state.

(d) Appeal to the Secretary of Commerce, as provided by 35 U.S.C. 181, from a secrecy order cannot be taken until after a petition for rescission of the secrecy order has been made and denied. Appeal must be taken within sixty days from the date of the denial, and the party appealing, as well as the department or agency which caused the order to be issued, will be notified of the time and place of hearing.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959; 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53203, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (a) and (d), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.

(a) Consent to disclosure, or to the filing of an application abroad, as provided in 35 U.S.C. 182, shall be made by a "permit" or "modification" of the secrecy order.

(b) Petitions for a permit or modification must fully recite the reason or purpose for the proposed disclosure. Where any proposed disclosee is known to be cleared by a defense agency to receive classified information, adequate

explanation of such clearance should be made in the petition including the name of the agency or department granting the clearance and the date and degree thereof. The petition must be filed in duplicate.

(c) In a petition for modification of a secrecy order to permit filing abroad, all countries in which it is proposed to file must be made known, as well as all attorneys, agents and others to whom the material will be consigned prior to being lodged in the foreign patent office. The petition should include a statement vouching for the loyalty and integrity of the proposed disclosees and where their clearance status in this or the foreign country is known all details should be given.

(d) Consent to the disclosure of subject matter from one application under secrecy order may be deemed to be consent to the disclosure of common subject matter in other applications under secrecy order so long as not taken out of context in a manner disclosing material beyond the modification granted in the first application.

(e) Organizations requiring consent for disclosure of applications under secrecy order to persons or organizations in connection with repeated routine operation may petition for such consent in the form of a general permit. To be successful such petitions must ordinarily recite the security clearance status of the disclosees as sufficient for the highest classification of material that may be involved.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959; 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (b) and (e), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.6 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 5.7 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 5.8 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

§ 5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting an international application.

(a) A license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184 is required before filing any application for patent including any modifications, amendments, or supplements thereto or divisions thereof or for the registration of a utility model, industrial design, or model, in a foreign patent office or any foreign patent agency or any international agency other than the United States Receiving Office, if the invention was made in the United States and:

(1) An application on the invention has been on file in the United States less than six months prior to the date on which the application is to be filed, or

(2) No application on the invention has been filed in the United States.

(b) The license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraph (a) would also authorize the export of technical data abroad for purposes relating to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application without separately complying with the regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR part 779 (Regulations of the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy).

(c) Where technical data in the form of a patent application, or in any form, is being exported for purposes related to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application, without the license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, or on an invention not made in the United States, the export regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 120 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR parts 768-799 (Export Administration Regulations of the Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Assistance to Foreign Atomic Energy Activities Regulations of the Department of Energy) must be complied with unless a license is not required because a United States application was on file at the time of export for at least six months without a secrecy order under § 5.2 being placed thereon. The term "exported" means export as it is defined in 22 CFR part 120, 15 CFR part 779 and activities covered by 10 CFR part 810.

(d) If a secrecy order has been issued under § 5.2, an application cannot be exported to, or filed in, a foreign country (including an international agency in a foreign country), except in accordance with § 5.5.

(e) No license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section is required:

(1) If the invention was not made in the United States, or

(2) If the corresponding United States application is not subject to a secrecy order under § 5.2, and was filed at least six months prior to the date on which the application is filed in a foreign country, or

(3) For subsequent modifications, amendments and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application if:

(i) A license is not, or was not, required under paragraph (e)(2) of this section for the foreign patent application;

(ii) The corresponding United States application was not required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181; and

(iii) Such modifications, amendments, and supplements do not, or did not, change the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require any corresponding United States application to be or have been available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181.

(f) A license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section can be revoked at any time upon written notification by the Patent and Trademark Office. An authorization to file a foreign patent application resulting from the passage of six months from the date of filing of a United States patent application may be revoked by the imposition of a secrecy order.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 13461, April 4, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 1928, Jan. 18, 1991; 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (b), (c) and (e)(3), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.12 Petition for license.

(a) Filing of an application for patent for inventions made in the United States will be considered to include a petition for license under 35 U.S.C. 184 for the subject matter of the application. The filing receipt will indicate if a license is granted. If the initial automatic petition is not granted, a subsequent petition may be filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) A petition for license must include the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) of this chapter, the petitioner's address, and full instructions for delivery of the requested license when it is to be delivered to other than the petitioner. The petition should be presented in letter form.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 13462, April 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54683, Sept. 8, 2000]

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97-247)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54683, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (b), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.

If no corresponding national or international application has been filed in the United States, the petition for license under § 5.12(b) must also be accompanied by a legible copy of the material upon which a license is desired. This copy will be retained as a measure of the license granted.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 13462, April 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.

(a) When there is a corresponding United States application on file, a petition for license under § 5.12(b) must also identify this application by application number, filing date, inventor, and title, but a copy of the material upon which the license is desired is not required. The subject matter licensed will be measured by the disclosure of the United States application.

(b) Two or more United States applications should not be referred to in the same petition for license unless they are to be combined in the foreign or international application, in which event the petition should so state and the identification of each United States application should be in separate paragraphs.

(c) When the application to be filed or exported abroad contains matter not disclosed in the United States application or applications, including the case where the combining of two or more United States applications introduces subject matter not disclosed in any of them, a copy of the application as it is to be filed in the foreign country or international application which is to be transmitted to a foreign international or national agency for filing in the Receiving Office, must be furnished with the petition. If however, all new matter in the foreign or international application to be filed is readily identifiable, the new matter may be submitted in detail and the remainder by reference to the pertinent United States application or applications.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 20471, May 11, 1978, and 49 FR 13462, April 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997]

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraph (a), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.15 Scope of license.

(a) Applications or other materials reviewed pursuant to § § 5.12 through 5.14, which were not required to be made available for inspection by defense agencies under 35 U.S.C. 181, will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. This license permits subsequent modifications, amendments, and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application, if such changes to the application do not alter the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require the United States application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181. Grant of this license authorizing the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency when the subject matter of the foreign or international application corresponds to that of the domestic application. This license includes authority:

(1) To export and file all duplicate and formal application papers in foreign countries or with international agencies;

(2) To make amendments, modifications, and supplements, including divisions, changes or supporting matter consisting of the illustration, exemplification, comparison, or explanation of subject matter disclosed in the application; and

(3) To take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application provided that the adding of subject matter or taking of any action under paragraphs (a)(1) or (2) of this section does not change the general nature of the invention disclosed in the application in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 by including technical data pertaining to:

(i) Defense services or articles designated in the United States Munitions List applicable at the time of foreign filing, the unlicensed exportation of which is prohibited pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act, as amended, and 22 CFR parts 121 through 130; or

(ii) Restricted Data, sensitive nuclear technology or technology useful in the production or utilization of special nuclear material or atomic energy, dissemination of which is subject to restrictions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, and the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, as implemented by the regulations for Unclassified Activities in Foreign Atomic Energy Programs, 10 CFR part 810, in effect at the time of foreign filing.

(b) Applications or other materials which were required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. Grant of this license authorizes the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency. Further, this license includes authority to export and file all duplicate and formal papers in foreign countries or with foreign and international patent agencies and to make amendments, modifications, and supplements to, file divisions of, and take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application, provided subject matter additional to that covered by the license is not involved.

(c) A license granted under § 5.12(b) pursuant to § 5.13 or § 5.14 shall have the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section, if it is so specified in the license. A petition, accompanied by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), may also be filed to change a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (b) of this section to a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section. No such petition will be granted if the copy of the material filed pursuant to § 5.13 or any corresponding United States application was required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181. The change in the scope of a license will be effective as of the date of the grant of the petition.

(d) In those cases in which no license is required to file the foreign application or transmit the international application, no license is required to file papers in connection with the prosecution of the foreign or international application not involving the disclosure of additional subject matter.

(e) Any paper filed abroad or transmitted to an international patent agency following the filing of a foreign or international application which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 or which involves the disclosure of subject matter listed in paragraphs (a)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section must be separately licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application. Further, if no license has been granted under § 5.12(a) on filing the corresponding United States application, any paper filed abroad or with an international patent agency which involves the disclosure of additional subject matter must be licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application.

(f) Licenses separately granted in connection with two or more United States applications may be exercised by combining or dividing the disclosures, as desired, provided:

(1) Subject matter which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing or which involves subject matter listed in paragraph (a)(3) (i) or (ii) of this section is not introduced, and

(2) In the case where at least one of the licenses was obtained under § 5.12(b), additional subject matter is not introduced.

(g) A license does not apply to acts done before the license was granted. See § 5.25 for petitions for retroactive licenses.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 13462, April 4, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 1928, Jan. 18, 1991; 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53204, Oct. 10, 1997, revised paragraphs (a), (b), (c) and (e), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.16 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 5.17 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

(a) The exportation of technical data relating to arms, ammunition, and implements of war generally is subject to the International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State (22 CFR parts 120 through 130); the articles designated as arms, ammunitions, and implements of war are enumerated in the U.S. Munitions List (22 CFR part 121). However, if a patent applicant complies with regulations issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184, no separate approval from the Department of State is required unless the applicant seeks to export technical data exceeding that used to support a patent application in a foreign country. This exemption from Department of State regulations is applicable regardless of whether a license from the Commissioner is required by the provisions of § § 5.11 and 5.12 (22 CFR part 125).

(b) When a patent application containing subject matter on the Munitions List (22 CFR part 121) is subject to a secrecy order under § 5.2 and a petition is made under § 5.5 for a modification of the secrecy order to permit filing abroad, a separate request to the Department of State for authority to export classified information is not required (22 CFR part 125).

**Legislative History**

[35 FR 6430, April 22, 1970; 62 FR 53132, 53205, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53205, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.19 Export of technical data.

(a) Under regulations (15 CFR 770.10(j)) established by the Department of Commerce, a license is not required in any case to file a patent application or part thereof in a foreign country if the foreign filing is in accordance with the regulations (§ § 5.11 through 5.25) of the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An export license is not required for data contained in a patent application prepared wholly from foreign-origin technical data where such application is being sent to the foreign inventor to be executed and returned to the United States for subsequent filing in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (15 CFR 779A.3(e)).

**Legislative History**

[45 FR 72654, Nov. 3, 1980; 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53205, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53205, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.

Under regulations (10 CFR 810.7) established by the United States Department of Energy, an application filed in accordance with the regulations (§ § 5.11 through 5.25) of the Patent and Trademark Office and eligible for foreign filing under 35 U.S.C. 184, is considered to be information available to the public in published form and a generally authorized activity for the purposes of the Department of Energy regulations.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 13463, April 4, 1984; 62 FR 53132, 53205, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53205, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

(a) A petition for a retroactive license under 35 U.S.C. 184 shall be presented in accordance with § 5.13 or § 5.14(a), and shall include:

(1) A listing of each of the foreign countries in which the unlicensed patent application material was filed,

(2) The dates on which the material was filed in each country,

(3) A verified statement (oath or declaration) containing:

(i) An averment that the subject matter in question was not under a secrecy order at the time it was filed aboard, and that it is not currently under a secrecy order,

(ii) A showing that the license has been diligently sought after discovery of the proscribed foreign filing, and

(iii) An explanation of why the material was filed abroad through error and without deceptive intent without the required license under § 5.11 first having been obtained, and

(4) The required fee (§ 1.17(h)).

The above explanation must include a showing of facts rather than a mere allegation of action through error and without deceptive intent. The showing of facts as to the nature of the error should include statements by those persons having personal knowledge of the acts regarding filing in a foreign country and should be accompanied by copies of any necessary supporting documents such as letters of transmittal or instructions for filing. The acts which are alleged to constitute error without deceptive intent should cover the period leading up to and including each of the proscribed foreign filings.

(b) If a petition for a retroactive license is denied, a time period of not less than thirty days shall be set, during which the petition may be renewed. Failure to renew the petition within the set time period will result in a final denial of the petition. A final denial of a petition stands unless a petition is filed under § 1.181 within two months of the date of the denial. If the petition for a retroactive license is denied with respect to the invention of a pending application and no petition under § 1.181 has been filed, a final rejection of the application under 35 U.S.C. 185 will be made.

**Legislative History**

[49 FR 13463, April 4, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 1929, 1991; 62 FR 53132, 53206, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53206, Oct. 10, 1997, removed paragraph (c), effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

GENERAL

§ 5.31 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 5.32 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 5.33 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

## PART 6 --CLASSIFICATION OF GOODS AND SERVICES UNDER THE TRADEMARK ACT

§ 6.1 International schedule of classes of goods and services.

Goods

1. Chemicals used in industry, science and photography, as well as in agriculture, horticulture and forestry; unprocessed artificial resins; unprocessed plastics; manures; fire extinguishing compositions; tempering and soldering preparations; chemical substances for preserving foodstuffs; tanning substances; adhesives used in industry.

2. Paints, varnishes, lacquers; preservatives against rust and against deterioration of wood; colorants; mordants; raw natural resins; metals in foil and powder form for painters, decorators, printers and artists.

3. Bleaching preparations and other substances for laundry use; cleaning, polishing, scouring and abrasive preparations; soaps; perfumery, essential oils, cosmetics, hair lotions; dentifrices.

4. Industrial oils and greases; lubricants; dust absorbing, wetting and binding compositions; fuels (including motor spirit) and illuminants; candles, wicks.

5. Pharmaceutical, veterinary, and sanitary preparations; dietetic substances adapted for medical use, food for babies; plasters, materials for dressings; material for stopping teeth, dental wax; disinfectants; preparations for destroying vermin; fungicides, herbicides.

6. Common metals and their alloys; metal building materials; transportable buildings of metal; materials of metal for railway tracks; nonelectric cables and wires of common metal; ironmongery, small items of metal hardware; pipes and tubes of metal; safes; goods of common metal not included in other classes; ores.

7. Machines and machine tools; motors and engines (except for land vehicles); machine coupling and transmission components (except for land vehicles); agricultural implements other than hand-operated; incubators for eggs.

8. Hand tools and implements (hand-operated); cutlery; side arms; razors.

9. Scientific, nautical, surveying, electric, photographic, cinematographic, optical, weighing, measuring, signalling, checking (supervision), life-saving and teaching apparatus and instruments; apparatus for recording, transmission or reproduction of sound or images; magnetic data carriers, recording discs; automatic vending machines and mechanisms for coin operated apparatus; cash registers, calculating machines, data processing equipment and computers; fire extinguishing apparatus.

10. Surgical, medical, dental, and veterinary apparatus and instruments, artificial limbs, eyes, and teeth; orthopedic articles; suture materials.

11. Apparatus for lighting, heating, steam generating, cooking, refrigerating, drying, ventilating, water supply, and sanitary purposes.

12. Vehicles; apparatus for locomotion by land, air, or water.

13. Firearms; ammunition and projectiles; explosives; fireworks.

14. Precious metals and their alloys and goods in precious metals or coated therewith, not included in other classes; jewelry, precious stones; horological and chronometric instruments.

15. Musical instruments.

16. Paper, cardboard and goods made from these materials, not included in other classes; printed matter; bookbinding material; photographs; stationery; adhesives for stationery or household purposes; artists' materials; paint brushes; typewriters and office requisites (except furniture); instructional and teaching material (except apparatus); plastic materials for packaging (not included in other classes); playing cards; printers' type; printing blocks.

17. Rubber, gutta-percha, gum, asbestos, mica and goods made from these materials and not included in other classes; plastics in extruded form for use in manufacture; packing, stopping and insulating materials; flexible pipes, not of metal.

18. Leather and imitations of leather, and goods made of these materials and not included in other classes; animal skins, hides; trunks and travelling bags; umbrellas, parasols and walking sticks; whips, harness and saddlery.

19. Building materials (non-metallic); nonmetallic rigid pipes for building; asphalt, pitch and bitumen; nonmetallic transportable buildings; monuments, not of metal.

20. Furniture, mirrors, picture frames; goods (not included in other classes) of wood, cork, reed, cane, wicker, horn, bone, ivory, whalebone, shell, amber, mother-of-pearl, meerschaum and substitutes for all these materials, or of plastics.

21. Household or kitchen utensils and containers (not of precious metal or coated therewith); combs and sponges; brushes (except paint brushes); brush making materials; articles for cleaning purposes; steel wool; unworked or semi worked glass (except glass used in building); glassware, porcelain and earthenware not included in other classes.

22. Ropes, string, nets, tents, awnings, tarpaulins, sails, sacks and bags (not included in other classes); padding and stuffing materials (except of rubber or plastics); raw fibrous textile materials.

23. Yarns and threads, for textile use.

24. Textiles and textile goods, not included in other classes; beds and table covers.

25. Clothing, footwear, headgear.

26. Lace and embroidery, ribbons and braid; buttons, hooks and eyes, pins and needles; artificial flowers.

27. Carpets, rugs, mats and matting, linoleum and other materials for covering existing floors; wall hangings (non textile).

28. Games and playthings; gymnastic and sporting articles not included in other classes; decorations for Christmas trees.

29. Meat, fish, poultry and game; meat extracts; preserved, dried and cooked fruits and vegetables; jellies, jams, fruit sauces; eggs, milk and milk products; edible oils and fats.

30. Coffee, tea, cocoa, sugar, rice, tapioca, sago, artificial coffee; flour and preparations made from cereals, bread, pastry and confectionery, ices; honey, treacle; yeast, baking powder; salt, mustard; vinegar, sauces (condiments); spices; ice.

31. Agricultural, horticultural and forestry products and grains not included in other classes; live animals; fresh fruits and vegetables; seeds, natural plants and flowers; foodstuffs for animals; malt.

32. Beers; mineral and aerated waters and other nonalcoholic drinks; fruit drinks and fruit juices; syrups and other preparations for making beverages.

33. Alcoholic beverages (except beers).

34. Tobacco; smokers' articles; matches.

Services

35. Advertising; business management; business administration; office functions.

36. Insurance; financial affairs; monetary affairs; real estate affairs.

37. Building construction; repair; installation services.

38. Telecommunications.

39. Transport; packaging and storage of goods; travel arrangement.

40. Treatment of materials.

41. Education; providing of training; entertainment; sporting and cultural activities.

42. [Effective until Jan. 1, 2002.] Providing of food and drink; temporary accommodation; medical, hygienic and beauty care; veterinary and agricultural services; legal services; scientific and industrial research; computer programming; services that cannot be classified in other classes.

42. [Effective Jan. 1, 2002.] Scientific and technological services and research and design relating thereto; industrial analysis and research services; design and development of computer hardware and software; legal services.

43. [Effective Jan. 1, 2002.] Services for providing food and drink; temporary accommodations.

44. [Effective Jan. 1, 2002.] Medical services; veterinary services; hygienic and beauty care for human being or animals; agriculture, horticulture and forestry services.

45. [Effective Jan. 1, 2002.] Personal and social services rendered by others to meet the needs of individuals; security services for the protection of property and individuals.

**Legislative History**

[38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973; 64 FR 48900, 48927, Sept. 8, 1999; 66 FR 48338, 48339, Sept. 20, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 48338, 48339, Sept. 20, 2001, revised paragraph 42, and added paragraphs 43, 44, and 45, effective Jan. 1, 2002.]

§ 6.2 Prior U.S. schedule of classes of goods and services.

Click here to view image.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

§ 6.3 Schedule for certification marks.

In the case of certification marks, all goods and services are classified in two classes as follows:

A. Goods.

B. Services.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

§ 6.4 Schedule for collective membership marks.

All collective membership marks are classified as follows:

| Class | Title |
|---|---|
| 200 | Collective Membership. |

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

PART 7 --REGISTER OF GOVERNMENT INTERESTS IN PATENTS--[RESERVED]

PART 10 --REPRESENTATION OF OTHERS BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 10.1 Definitions.

This part governs solely the practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Patent and Trademark Office. Nothing in this part shall be construed to preempt the authority of each State to regulate the practice of law, except to the extent necessary for the Patent and Trademark Office to accomplish its federal objectives. Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this part:

(a) Affidavit means affidavit, declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25 (see § 1.68 and § 2.20 of this subchapter), or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746.

(b) Application includes an application for a design, plant, or utility patent, an application to reissue any patent, and an application to register a trademark.

(c) Attorney or lawyer means an individual who is a member in good standing of the bar of any United States court or the highest court of any State. A "non-lawyer" is a person who is not an attorney or lawyer.

(d) Canon is defined in § 10.20(a).

(e) Confidence is defined in § 10.57(a).

(f) Differing interests include every interest that may adversely affect either the judgment or the loyalty of a practitioner to a client, whether it be a conflicting, inconsistent, diverse, or other interest.

(g) Director means the Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(h) Disciplinary Rule is defined in § 10.20(b).

(i) Employee of a tribunal includes all employees of courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(j) Giving information within the meaning of § 10.23(c)(2) includes making (1) a written statement or representation or (2) an oral statement or representation.

(k) Law firm includes a professional legal corporation or a partnership.

(l) Legal counsel means practitioner.

(m) Legal profession includes the individuals who are lawfully engaged in practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Office.

(n) Legal service means any legal service which may lawfully be performed by a practitioner before the Office.

(o) Legal System includes the Office and courts and adjudicatory bodies which review matters on which the Office has acted.

(p) Office means Patent and Trademark Office.

(q) Person includes a corporation, an association, a trust, a partnership, and any other organization or legal entity.

(r) Practitioner means (1) an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office in patent cases or (2) an individual authorized under 5 U.S.C. 500(b) or otherwise as provided by this subchapter, to practice before the Office in trademark cases or other non-patent cases. A "suspended or excluded practitioner" is a practitioner who is suspended or excluded under § 10.156. A "non-practitioner" is an individual who is not a practitioner.

(s) A proceeding before the Office includes an application, a reexamination, a protest, a public use proceeding, a patent interference, an inter partes trademark proceeding, or any other proceeding which is pending before the Office.

(t) Professional legal corporation means a corporation authorized by law to practice law for profit.

(u) Registration means registration to practice before the Office in patent cases.

(v) Respondent is defined in § 10.134(a)(1).

(w) Secret is defined in § 10.57(a).

(x) Solicit is defined in § 10.33.

(y) State includes the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and other federal territories and possessions.

(z) Tribunal includes courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(aa) United States means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(a) Appointment. The Commissioner shall appoint a Director of Enrollment and Discipline. In the event of the absence of the Director or a vacancy in the Office of the Director, the Commissioner may designate an employee of the Office to serve as acting Director of Enrollment and Discipline. The Director and any acting Director shall be an active member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) Duties. The Director shall:

(1) Receive and act upon applications for registration, prepare and grade the examination provided for in § 10.7(b), maintain the register provided for in § 10.5, and perform such other duties in connection with enrollment and recognition of attorneys and agents as may be necessary.

(2) Conduct investigations into possible violations by practitioners of Disciplinary Rules, with the consent of the Committee on Discipline initiate disciplinary proceedings under § 10.132(b), and perform such other duties in connection with investigations and disciplinary proceedings as may be necessary.

(c) Review of Director's decision. Any final decision of the Director refusing to register an individual under § 10.6, recognize an individual under § 10.9 or § 10.14(c), or reinstate a suspended or excluded petitioner under § 10.160, may be reviewed by petition to the Commissioner upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(5). A petition filed more than 30 days after the date of the decision of the Director may be dismissed as untimely. Any petition shall contain (1) a statement of the facts involved and the points to be reviewed and (2) the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support of the petition shall accompany or be embodied therein. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the Director and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record before the Director shall not be submitted with the petition. An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.3 Committee on Enrollment.

(a) The Commissioner may establish a Committee on Enrollment composed of one or more employees of the Office.

(b) The Committee on Enrollment shall, as necessary, advise the Director in connection with the Director's duties under § 10.2(b)(1).

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.4 Committee on Discipline.

(a) The Commissioner shall appoint a Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall consist of at least three employees of the Office, none of whom reports directly or indirectly to the Director or the Solicitor. Each member of the Committee on Discipline shall be a member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) The Committee on Discipline shall meet at the request of the Director and after reviewing evidence presented by the Director shall, by majority vote, determine whether there is probable cause to bring charges under § 10.132 against a practitioner. When charges are brought against a practitioner, no member of the Committee on Discipline, employee under the direction of the Director, or associate solicitor or assistant solicitor in the Office of the Solicitor shall participate in rendering a decision on the charges.

(c) No discovery shall be authorized of, and no member of the Committee on Discipline shall be required to testify about, deliberations of the Committee on Discipline.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.

A register of attorneys and agents is kept in the Office on which are entered the names of all individuals recognized as entitled to represent applicants before the Office in the preparation and prosecution of applications for patent. Registration in the Office under the provisions of this part shall only entitle the individuals registered to practice before the Office in patent cases.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.

(a) Attorneys. Any citizen of the United States who is an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office, provided: Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States and further provided: The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also § 10.9(b).

(b) Agents. Any citizen of the United States who is not an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is not an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office, provided: Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States, and further provided: The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also § 10.9(b).

Note: All individuals registered prior to November 15, 1938, were registered as attorneys, whether they were attorneys or not, and such registrations have not been changed.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreigner not a resident of the United States who shall file proof to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered and in good standing before the patent office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and who is possessed of the qualifications stated in § 10.7, may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office for the limited purpose of presenting and prosecuting patent applications of applicants located in such country, provided: The patent office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those admitted to practice before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Registration as a patent agent under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988]

§ 10.7 Requirements for registration.

(a) No individual will be registered to practice before the Office unless he or she shall:

(1) Apply to the Commissioner in writing on a form supplied by the Director and furnish all requested information and material and

(2) Establish to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is:

(i) Of good moral character and repute;

(ii) Possessed of the legal, scientific, and technical qualifications necessary to enable him or her to render applicants for patents valuable service; and

(iii) Is otherwise competent to advise and assist applicants for patents in the presentation and prosecution of their applications before the Office.

(b) In order that the Director may determine whether an individual seeking to have his or her name placed upon the register has the qualifications specified in paragraph (a) of this section, satisfactory proof of good moral character and repute and of sufficient basic training in scientific and technical matters must be submitted to the Director. Except as provided in this paragraph, each applicant for registration must take and pass an examination which is held from time to time. Each application for admission to take the examination for registration must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(1) of this subchapter. The taking of an examination may be waived in the case of any individual who has actively served for at least four years in the patent examining corps of the Office. The examination will not be administered as a mere academic exercise.

(c) Within two months from the date an applicant is notified that he or she failed an examination, the applicant may request regrading of the examination upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(6). Any applicant requesting regrading shall particularly point out the errors which the applicant believed occurred in the grading of his or her examination.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.8 Oath and registration fee.

Before an individual may have his or her name entered on the register of attorneys and agents, the individual must, after his or her application is approved, subscribe and swear to an oath or make a declaration prescribed by the Commissioner and pay the registration fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(2) of this subchapter.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.

(a) Any individual not registered under § 10.6 may, upon a showing of circumstances which render it necessary or justifiable, be given limited recognition by the Director to prosecute as attorney or agent a specified application or specified applications, but limited recognition under this paragraph shall not extend further than the application or applications specified.

(b) When registration of a resident alien under paragraphs (a) or (b) of § 1A10.6 is not appropriate, the resident alien may be given limited recognition as may be appropriate under paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) An individual not registered under § 10.6 may, if appointed by applicant to do so, prosecute an international application only before the U.S. International Searching Authority and the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority, provided: The individual has the right to practice before the national office with which the international

application is filed (PCT Art. 49, Rule 90 and § 1.455) or before the International Bureau when acting as Receiving Office pursuant to PCT Rules 83.1[sup]bis and 90.1.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 58 FR 4348, Jan. 14, 1993; 60 FR 21440, May 2, 1995]

[PUBLISHER'S NOTE: The symbol [sup] appearing in the text of this section indicates that the character immediately following is a superscript.]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 60 FR 21440, May 2, 1995, which revised paragraph (c), became effective June 1, 1995.]

§ 10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.

(a) Only practitioners who are registered under § 10.6 or individuals given limited recognition under § 10.9 will be permitted to prosecute patent applications of others before the Office.

(b) No individual who has served in the patent examining corps of the Office may practice before the Office after termination of his or her service, unless he or she signs a written undertaking,

(1) Not to prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application pending in any patent examining group during his or her period of service therein and

(2) Not to prepare or prosecute or to assist in any manner in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application of another (i) assigned to such group for examination and (ii) filed within two years after the date he or she left such group, without written authorization of the Director. Associated and related classes in other patent examining groups may be required to be included in the undertaking or designated classes may be excluded from the undertaking. When an application for registration is made after resignation from the Office, the applicant will not be registered if he or she has prepared or prosecuted or assisted in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application as indicated in the paragraph. Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application contrary to the provisions of this paragraph shall constitute misconduct under § 10.23(c)(13) of this part.

(c) A practitioner who is an employee of the Office cannot prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application before the Office.

(d) Practice before the Office by Government employees is subject to any applicable conflict of interest laws, regulations or codes of professional responsibility.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988; 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988]

§ 10.11 Removing names from the register.

(a) Registered attorneys and agents shall notify the Director of any change of address. Any notification to the Director of any change of address shall be separate from any notice of change of address filed in individual applications.

(b) A letter may be addressed to any individual on the register, at the address of which separate notice was last received by the Director, for the purpose of ascertaining whether such individual desires to remain on the register. The name of any individual failing to reply and give any information requested by the Director within a time limit specified will be removed from the register and the names of individuals so removed will be published in the Official Gazette. The name of any individual so removed may be reinstated on the register as may be appropriate and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(3) of this subchapter.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.12--10.13 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(a) Attorneys. Any individual who is an attorney may represent others before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases. An attorney is not required to apply for registration or recognition to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) Non-lawyers. Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark cases under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall prove to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark cases, provided: The patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark cases before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(d) Recognition of any individual under this section shall not be construed as sanctioning or authorizing the performance of any act regarded in the jurisdiction where performed as the unauthorized practice of law.

(e) No individual other than those specified in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section will be permitted to practice before the Office in trademark cases. Any individual may appear in a trademark or other non-patent case in his or her own behalf. Any individual may appear in a trademark case for (1) a firm of which he or she is a member or (2) a corporation or association of which he or she is an officer and which he or she is authorized to represent, if such firm, corporation, or association is a party to a trademark proceeding pending before the Office.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.

Any practitioner authorized to appear before the Office may be suspended or excluded in accordance with the provisions of this part. Any practitioner who is suspended or excluded under this subpart or removed under § 10.11(b) shall not be entitled to practice before the Office.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.16--10.17 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.18 Signature and certificate for correspondence filed in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(a) For all documents filed in the Office in patent, trademark, and other non-patent matters, except for correspondence that is required to be signed by the applicant or party, each piece of correspondence filed by a practitioner in the Patent and Trademark Office must bear a signature, personally signed by such practitioner, in compliance with § 1.4(d)(1) of this chapter.

(b) By presenting to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) any paper, the party presenting such paper, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, is certifying that --

(1) All statements made therein of the party's own knowledge are true, all statements made therein on information and belief are believed to be true, and all statements made therein are made with the knowledge that whoever, in any matter within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office, knowingly and willfully falsifies, conceals, or covers up by any trick, scheme, or device a material fact, or makes any false, fictitious or fraudulent statements or representations, or makes or uses any false writing or document knowing the same to contain any false, fictitious or fraudulent statement or entry, shall be subject to the penalties set forth under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that violations of this paragraph may jeopardize the validity of the application or document, or the validity or enforceability of any patent, trademark registration, or certificate resulting therefrom; and

(2) To the best of the party's knowledge, information and belief, formed after an inquiry reasonable under the circumstances, that --

(i) The paper is not being presented for any improper purpose, such as to harass someone or to cause unnecessary delay or needless increase in the cost of prosecution before the Office;

(ii) The claims and other legal contentions therein are warranted by existing law or by a nonfrivolous argument for the extension, modification, or reversal of existing law or the establishment of new law;

(iii) The allegations and other factual contentions have evidentiary support or, if specifically so identified, are likely to have evidentiary support after a reasonable opportunity for further investigation or discovery; and

(iv) The denials of factual contentions are warranted on the evidence, or if specifically so identified, are reasonably based on a lack of information or belief.

(c) Violations of paragraph (b)(1) of this section by a practitioner or non-practitioner may jeopardize the validity of the application or document, or the validity or enforceability of any patent, trademark registration, or certificate resulting therefrom. Violations of any of paragraphs (b)(2) (i) through (iv) of this section are, after notice and reasonable opportunity to respond, subject to such sanctions as deemed appropriate by the Commissioner, or the Commissioner's designee, which may include, but are not limited to, any combination of --

(1) Holding certain facts to have been established;

(2) Returning papers;

(3) Precluding a party from filing a paper, or presenting or contesting an issue;

(4) Imposing a monetary sanction;

(5) Requiring a terminal disclaimer for the period of the delay; or

(6) Terminating the proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(d) Any practitioner violating the provisions of this section may also be subject to disciplinary action. See § 10.23(c)(15).

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993; 62 FR 53132, 53206, Oct. 10, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 53132, 53206, Oct. 10, 1997, revised this section, effective Dec. 1, 1997.]

§ 10.19 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

§ 10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.

(a) Canons are set out in § § 10.21, 10.30, 10.46, 10.56, 10.61, 10.76, 10.83, 10.100, and 10.110. Canons are statements of axiomatic norms, expressing in general terms the standards of professional conduct expected of practitioners in their relationships with the public, with the legal system, and with the legal profession.

(b) Disciplinary Rules are set out in § § 10.22--10.24, 10.31--10.40, 10.47--10.57, 10.62--10.68, 10.77, 10.78, 10.84, 10.85, 10.87--10.89, 10.92, 10.93, 10.101--10.103, 10.111, and 10.112. Disciplinary Rules are mandatory in character and state the minimum level of conduct below which no practitioner can fall without being subjected to disciplinary action.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.21 Canon 1.

A practitioner should assist in maintaining the integrity and competence of the legal profession.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.

(a) A practitioner is subject to discipline if the practitioner has made a materially false statement in, or if the practitioner has deliberately failed to disclose a material fact requested in connection with, the practitioner's application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court or any State court or his or her authority to otherwise practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) A practitioner shall not further the application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court, State court, or administrative agency of another person known by the practitioner to be unqualified in respect to character, education, or other relevant attribute.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.23 Misconduct.

(a) A practitioner shall not engage in disreputable or gross misconduct.

(b) A practitioner shall not:

(1) Violate a Disciplinary Rule.

(2) Circumvent a Disciplinary Rule through actions of another.

(3) Engage in illegal conduct involving moral turpitude.

(4) Engage in conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, deceit, or misrepresentation.

(5) Engage in conduct that is prejudicial to the administration of justice.

(6) Engage in any other conduct that adversely reflects on the practitioner's fitness to practice before the Office.

(c) Conduct which constitutes a violation of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Conviction of a criminal offense involving moral turpitude, dishonesty, or breach of trust.

(2) Knowingly giving false or misleading information or knowingly participating in a material way in giving false or misleading information, to:

(i) A client in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(ii) The Office or any employee of the Office.

(3) Misappropriation of, or failure to properly or timely remit, funds received by a practitioner or the practitioner's firm from a client to pay a fee which the client is required by law to pay to the Office.

(4) Directly or indirectly improperly influencing, attempting to improperly influence, offering or agreeing to improperly influence, or attempting to offer or agree to improperly influence an official action of any employee of the Office by:

(i) Use of threats, false accusations, duress, or coercion,

(ii) An offer of any special inducement or promise of advantage, or

(iii) Improperly bestowing of any gift, favor, or thing of value.

(5) Suspension or disbarment from practice as an attorney or agent on ethical grounds by any duly constituted authority of a State or the United States or, in the case of a practitioner who resides in a foreign country or is registered under § 10.6(c), by any duly constituted authority of:

(i) A State,

(ii) The United States, or

(iii) The country in which the practitioner resides.

(6) Knowingly aiding or abetting a practitioner suspended or excluded from practice before the Office in engaging in unauthorized practice before the Office under § 10.158.

(7) Knowingly withholding from the Office information identifying a patent or patent application of another from which one or more claims have been copied. See § § 1.604(b) and 1.607(c) of this subchapter.

(8) Failing to inform a client or former client or failing to timely notify the Office of an inability to notify a client or former client of correspondence received from the Office or the client's or former client's opponent in an inter partes proceeding before the Office when the correspondence (i) could have a significant effect on a matter pending before the Office, (ii) is received by the practitioner on behalf of a client or former client and (iii) is correspondence of which a reasonable practitioner would believe under the circumstances the client or former client should be notified.

(9) Knowingly misusing a "Certificate of Mailing or Transmission" under § 1.8 of this chapter.

(10) Knowingly violating or causing to be violated the requirements of § 1.56 or § 1.555 of this subchapter.

(11) Except as permitted by § 1.52(c) of this chapter, knowingly filing or causing to be filed an application containing any material alteration made in the application papers after the signing of the accompanying oath or declaration without identifying the alteration at the time of filing the application papers.

(12) Knowingly filing, or causing to be filed, a frivolous complaint alleging a violation by a practitioner of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility.

(13) Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of a patent application in violation of an undertaking signed under § 10.10(b).

(14) Knowingly failing to advise the Director in writing of any change which would preclude continued registration under § 10.6.

(15) Signing a paper filed in the Office in violation of the provisions of § 10.18 or making a scandalous or indecent statement in a paper filed in the Office.

(16) Willfully refusing to reveal or report knowledge or evidence to the Director contrary to § 10.24 or paragraph (b) of § 10.131.

(17) Representing before the Office in a patent case either a joint venture comprising an inventor and an invention developer or an inventor referred to the registered practitioner by an invention developer when (i) the registered practitioner knows, or has been advised by the Office, that a formal complaint filed by a Federal or State agency, based on any violation of any law relating to securities, unfair methods of competition, unfair or deceptive acts or practices, mail fraud, or other civil or criminal conduct, is pending before a Federal or State court or Federal or State agency, or has been resolved unfavorably by such court or agency, against the invention developer in connection with invention development services and (ii) the registered practitioner fails to fully advise the inventor of the existence of the pending complaint or unfavorable resolution thereof prior to undertaking or continuing representation of the joint venture or inventor. "Invention developer" means any person, and any agent, employee, officer, partner, or independent contractor thereof, who is not a registered practitioner and who advertises invention development services in media of general circulation or who enters into contracts for invention development services with customers as a result of such advertisement. "Invention development services" means acts of invention development required or promised to be performed, or actually performed, or both, by an invention developer for a customer. "Invention development" means the evaluation, perfection, marketing, brokering, or promotion of an invention on behalf of a customer by an invention developer, including a patent search, preparation of a patent application, or any other act done by an invention developer for consideration toward the end of procuring or attempting to procure a license, buyer, or patent for an invention. "Customer" means any individual who has made an invention and who enters into a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to the invention by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than $ 5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention). "Contract for invention development services" means a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to an invention made by a customer by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than $ 5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention).

(18) In the absence of information sufficient to establish a reasonable belief that fraud or inequitable conduct has occurred, alleging before a tribunal that anyone has committed a fraud on the Office or engaged in inequitable conduct in a proceeding before the Office.

(19) Action by an employee of the Office contrary to the provisions set forth in § 10.10(c).

(20) Knowing practice by a Government employee contrary to applicable Federal conflict of interest laws, or regulations of the Department, agency or commission employing said individual.

(d) A practitioner who acts with reckless indifference to whether a representation is true or false is chargeable with knowledge of its falsity. Deceitful statements of half-truths or concealment of material facts shall be deemed actual fraud within the meaning of this part.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985; 50 FR 25980, June 24, 1985; 53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988; 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988; 57 FR 2036, Jan. 17, 1992; 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993; 61 FR 56439, 56448, Nov. 1, 1996; 62 FR 53132, 53206, Oct. 10, 1997; 65 FR 54604, 54683, Sept. 8, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 54604, 54683, Sept. 8, 2000, revised paragraph (c)(11), effective Nov. 7, 2000.]

§ 10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.

(a) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge of a violation of a Disciplinary Rule shall report such knowledge to the Director.

(b) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge or evidence concerning another practitioner, employee of the Office, or a judge shall reveal fully such knowledge or evidence upon proper request of a tribunal or other authority empowered to investigate or act upon the conduct of practitioners, employees of the Office, or judges.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0017)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.25--10.29 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.30 Canon 2.

A practitioner should assist the legal profession in fulfilling its duty to make legal counsel available.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner's services.

(a) No practitioner shall with respect to any prospective business before the Office, by word, circular, letter, or advertising, with intent to defraud in any manner, deceive, mislead, or threaten any prospective applicant or other person having immediate or prospective business before the Office.

(b) A practitioner may not use the name of a Member of either House of Congress or of an individual in the service of the United States in advertising the practitioner's practice before the Office.

(c) Unless authorized under § 10.14(b), a non-lawyer practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(d) Unless a practitioner is an attorney, the practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out:

(1) To be an attorney or lawyer or

(2) As authorized to practice before the Office in non-patent and trademark cases.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.32 Advertising.

(a) Subject to § 10.31, a practitioner may advertise services through public media, including a telephone directory, legal directory, newspaper, or other periodical, radio, or television, or through written communications not involving solicitation as defined by § 10.33.

(b) A practitioner shall not give anything of value to a person for recommending the practitioner's services, except that a practitioner may pay the reasonable cost of advertising or written communication permitted by this section and may pay the usual charges of a not-for-profit lawyer referral service or other legal service organization.

(c) Any communication made pursuant to this section shall include the name of at least one practitioner responsible for its content.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.

A practitioner may not solicit professional employment from a prospective client with whom the practitioner has no family or prior professional relationship, by mail, in-person or otherwise, when a significant motive for the practitioner's doing so is the practitioner's pecuniary gain under circumstances evidencing undue influence, intimidation, or overreaching. The term "solicit" includes contact in person, by telephone or telegraph, by letter or other writing, or by other communication directed to a specific recipient, but does not include letters addressed or advertising circulars distributed generally to persons not specifically known to need legal services of the kind provided by the practitioner in a particular matter, but who are so situated that they might in general find such services useful.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.34 Communication of fields of practice.

A registered practitioner may state or imply that the practitioner is a specialist as follows:

(a) A registered practitioner who is an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Attorney," "Patent Lawyer," "Registered Patent Attorney," or a substantially similar designation.

(b) A registered practitioner who is not an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Agent," "Registered Patent Agent," or a substantially similar designation, except that any practitioner who was registered prior to November 15, 1938, may refer to himself or herself as a "patent attorney."

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.35 Firm names and letterheads.

(a) A practitioner shall not use a firm name, letterhead, or other professional designation that violates § 10.31. A trade name may be used by a practitioner in private practice if it does not imply a current connection with a government agency or with a public or charitable legal services organization and is not otherwise in violation of § 10.31.

(b) Practitioners may state or imply that they practice in a partnership or other organization only when that is the fact.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.36 Fees for legal services.

(a) A practitioner shall not enter into an agreement for, charge, or collect an illegal or clearly excessive fee.

(b) A fee is clearly excessive when, after a review of the facts, a practitioner of ordinary prudence would be left with a definite and firm conviction that the fee is in excess of a reasonable fee. Factors to be considered as guides in determining the reasonableness of a fee include the following:

(1) The time and labor required, the novelty and difficulty of the questions involved, and the skill requisite to perform the legal service properly.

(2) The likelihood, if apparent to the client, that the acceptance of the particular employment will preclude other employment by the practitioner.

(3) The fee customarily charged for similar legal services.

(4) The amount involved and the results obtained.

(5) The time limitations imposed by the client or by the circumstances.

(6) The nature and length of the professional relationship with the client.

(7) The experience, reputation, and ability of the practitioner or practitioners performing the services.

(8) Whether the fee is fixed or contingent.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.

(a) A practitioner shall not divide a fee for legal services with another practitioner who is not a partner in or associate of the practitioner's law firm or law office, unless:

(1) The client consents to employment of the other practitioner after a full disclosure that a division of fees will be made.

(2) The division is made in proportion to the services performed and responsibility assumed by each.

(3) The total fee of the practitioners does not clearly exceed reasonable compensation for all legal services rendered to the client.

(b) This section does not prohibit payment to a former partner or associate pursuant to a separation or retirement agreement.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall not be a party to or participate in a partnership or employment agreement with another practitioner that restricts the right of a practitioner to practice before the Office after the termination of a relationship created by the agreement, except as a condition to payment of retirement benefits.

(b) In connection with the settlement of a controversy or suit, a practitioner shall not enter into an agreement that restricts the practitioner's right to practice before the Office.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.39 Acceptance of employment.

A practitioner shall not accept employment on behalf of a person if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such person wishes to:

(a) Bring a legal action, commence a proceeding before the Office, conduct a defense, assert a position in any proceeding pending before the Office, or otherwise have steps taken for the person, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any other person.

(b) Present a claim or defense in litigation or any proceeding before the Office that is not warranted under existing law, unless it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.40 Withdrawal from employment.

(a) A practitioner shall not withdraw from employment in a proceeding before the Office without permission from the Office (see § § 1.36 and 2.19 of this subchapter). In any event, a practitioner shall not withdraw from employment until the practitioner has taken reasonable steps to avoid foreseeable prejudice to the rights of the client, including giving due notice to his or her client, allowing time for employment of another practitioner, delivering to the client all papers and property to which the client is entitled, and complying with applicable laws and rules. A practitioner who withdraws from employment shall refund promptly any part of a fee paid in advance that has not been earned.

(b) Mandatory withdrawal. A practitioner representing a client before the Office shall withdraw from employment if:

(1) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the client is bringing a legal action, commencing a proceeding before the Office, conducting a defense, or asserting a position in litigation or any proceeding pending before the Office, or is otherwise having steps taken for the client, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any person;

(2) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner's continued employment will result in violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively; or

(4) The practitioner is discharged by the client.

(c) Permissive withdrawal. If paragraph (b) of this section is not applicable, a practitioner may not request permission to withdraw in matters pending before the Office unless such request or such withdrawal is because:

(1) The petitioner's client:

(i) Insists upon presenting a claim or defense that is not warranted under existing law and cannot be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law;

(ii) Personally seeks to pursue an illegal course of conduct;

(iii) Insists that the practitioner pursue a course of conduct that is illegal or that is prohibited under a Disciplinary Rule;

(iv) By other conduct renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;

(v) Insists, in a matter not pending before a tribunal, that the practitioner engage in conduct that is contrary to the judgment and advice of the practitioner but not prohibited under the Disciplinary Rule; or

(vi) Has failed to pay one or more bills rendered by the practitioner for an unreasonable period of time or has failed to honor an agreement to pay a retainer in advance of the performance of legal services.

(2) The practitioner's continued employment is likely to result in a violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's inability to work with co-counsel indicates that the best interests of the client likely will be served by withdrawal;

(4) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;

(5) The practitioner's client knowingly and freely assents to termination of the employment; or

(6) The practitioner believes in good faith, in a proceeding pending before the Office, that the Office will find the existence of other good cause for withdrawal.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.41--10.45 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.46 Canon 3.

A practitioner should assist in preventing the unauthorized practice of law.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.

(a) A practitioner shall not aid a non-practitioner in the unauthorized practice of law before the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not aid a suspended or excluded practitioner in the practice of law before the Office.

(c) A practitioner shall not aid a non-lawyer in the unauthorized practice of law.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.48 Sharing legal fees.

A practitioner or a firm of practitioners shall not share legal fees with a non-practitioner except that:

(a) An agreement by a practitioner with the practitioner's firm, partner, or associate may provide for the payment of money, over a reasonable period of time after the practitioner's death, to the practitioner's estate or to one or more specified persons.

(b) A practitioner who undertakes to complete unfinished legal business of a deceased practitioner may pay to the estate of the deceased practitioner that proportion of the total compensation which fairly represents the services rendered by the deceased practitioner.

(c) A practitioner or firm of practitioners may include non-practitioner employees in a compensation or retirement plan, even though the plan is based in whole or in part on a profit-sharing arrangement, providing such plan does not circumvent another Disciplinary Rule.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 64155, Dec. 6, 1993]

§ 10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.

A practitioner shall not form a partnership with a non-practitioner if any of the activities of the partnership consist of the practice of patent, trademark, or other law before the Office.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.50--10.55 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.56 Canon 4.

A practitioner should preserve the confidences and secrets of a client.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.

(a) "Confidence" refers to information protected by the attorney-client or agent-client privilege under applicable law. "Secret" refers to other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client.

(b) Except when permitted under paragraph (c) of this section, a practitioner shall not knowingly:

(1) Reveal a confidence or secret of a client.

(2) Use a confidence or secret of a client to the disadvantage of the client.

(3) Use a confidence or secret of a client for the advantage of the practitioner or of a third person, unless the client consents after full disclosure.

(c) A practitioner may reveal:

(1) Confidences or secrets with the consent of the client affected but only after a full disclosure to the client.

(2) Confidences or secrets when permitted under Disciplinary Rules or required by law or court order.

(3) The intention of a client to commit a crime and the information necessary to prevent the crime.

(4) Confidences or secrets necessary to establish or collect the practitioner's fee or to defend the practitioner or the practitioner's employees or associates against an accusation of wrongful conduct.

(d) A practitioner shall exercise reasonable care to prevent the practitioner's employees, associates, and others whose services are utilized by the practitioner from disclosing or using confidences or secrets of a client, except that a practitioner may reveal the information allowed by paragraph (c) of this section through an employee.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.58--10.60 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.61 Canon 5.

A practitioner should exercise independent professional judgment on behalf of a client.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.

(a) Except with the consent of a client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not accept employment if the exercise of the practitioner's professional judgment on behalf of the client will be or reasonably may be affected by the practitioner's own financial, business, property, or personal interests.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept employment in a proceeding before the Office if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness, except that the practitioner may undertake the employment and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify:

(1) If the testimony will relate solely to an uncontested matter.

(2) If the testimony will relate solely to a matter of formality and there is no reason to believe that substantial evidence will be offered in opposition to the testimony.

(3) If the testimony will relate solely to the nature and value of legal services rendered in the case by the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to the client.

(4) As to any matter, if refusal would work a substantial hardship on the client because of the distinctive value of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm as counsel in the particular case.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.

(a) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding in the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness on behalf of a practitioner's client, the practitioner shall withdraw from the conduct of the proceeding and the practitioner's firm, if any, shall not continue representation in the proceeding, except that the practitioner may continue the representation and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify in the circumstances enumerated in paragraphs (1) through (4) of § 10.62(b).

(b) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding before the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may be asked to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness other than on behalf of the practitioner's client, the practitioner may continue the representation until it is apparent that the practitioner's affidavit or testimony is or may be prejudicial to the practitioner's client.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.

(a) A practitioner shall not acquire a proprietary interest in the subject matter of a proceeding before the Office which the practitioner is conducting for a client, except that the practitioner may:

(1) Acquire a lien granted by law to secure the practitioner's fee or expenses; or

(2) Contract with a client for a reasonable contingent fee; or

(3) In a patent case, take an interest in the patent as part or all of his or her fee.

(b) While representing a client in connection with a contemplated or pending proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not advance or guarantee financial assistance to a client, except that a practitioner may advance or guarantee the expenses of going forward in a proceeding before the Office including fees required by law to be paid to the Office, expenses of investigation, expenses of medical examination, and costs of obtaining and presenting evidence, provided the client remains ultimately liable for such expenses. A practitioner may, however, advance any fee required to prevent or remedy an abandonment of a client's application by reason of an act or omission attributable to the practitioner and not to the client, whether or not the client is ultimately liable for such fee.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.

A practitioner shall not enter into a business transaction with a client if they have differing interests therein and if the client expects the practitioner to exercise professional judgment therein for the protection of the client, unless the client has consented after full disclosure.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall decline proffered employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the acceptance of the proffered employment, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) A practitioner shall not continue multiple employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the practitioner's representation of another client, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) In the situations covered by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section a practitioner may represent multiple clients if it is obvious that the practitioner can adequately represent the interest of each and if each consents to the representation after full disclosure of the possible effect of such representation on the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment on behalf of each.

(d) If a practitioner is required to decline employment or to withdraw from employment under a Disciplinary Rule, no partner, or associate, or any other practitioner affiliated with the practitioner or the practitioner's firm, may accept or continue such employment unless otherwise ordered by the Director or Commissioner.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.

A practitioner who represents two or more clients shall not make or participate in the making of an aggregate settlement of the claims of or against the practitioner's clients, unless each client has consented to the settlement after being advised of the existence and nature of all the claims involved in the proposed settlement, of the total amount of the settlement, and of the participation of each person in the settlement.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.

(a) Except with the consent of the practitioner's client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not:

(1) Accept compensation from one other than the practitioner's client for the practitioner's legal services to or for the client.

(2) Accept from one other than the practitioner's client any thing of value related to the practitioner's representation of or the practitioner's employment by the client.

(b) A practitioner shall not permit a person who recommends, employs, or pays the practitioner to render legal services for another, to direct or regulate the practitioner's professional judgment in rendering such legal services.

(c) A practitioner shall not practice with or in the form of a professional corporation or association authorized to practice law for a profit, if a non-practitioner has the right to direct or control the professional judgment of a practitioner.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.69--10.75 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.76 Canon 6.

A practitioner should represent a client competently.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.77 Failing to act competently.

A practitioner shall not:

(a) Handle a legal matter which the practitioner knows or should know that the practitioner is not competent to handle, without associating with the practitioner another practitioner who is competent to handle it.

(b) Handle a legal matter without preparation adequate in the circumstances.

(c) Neglect a legal matter entrusted to the practitioner.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.78 Limiting liability to client.

A practitioner shall not attempt to exonerate himself or herself from, or limit his or her liability to, a client for his or her personal malpractice.

**Legislative History**

50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985.

§ § 10.79--10.82 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.83 Canon 7.

A practitioner should represent a client zealously within the bounds of the law.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.84 Representing a client zealously.

(a) A practitioner shall not intentionally:

(1) Fail to seek the lawful objectives of a client through reasonably available means permitted by law and the Disciplinary Rules, except as provided by paragraph (b) of this section. A practitioner does not violate the provisions of this section, however, by acceding to reasonable requests of opposing counsel which do not prejudice the rights of the client, by being punctual in fulfilling all professional commitments, by avoiding offensive tactics, or by treating with courtesy and consideration all persons involved in the legal process.

(2) Fail to carry out a contract of employment entered into with a client for professional services, but a practitioner may withdraw as permitted under § § 10.40, 10.63, and 10.66.

(3) Prejudice or damage a client during the course of a professional relationship, except as required under this part.

(b) In representation of a client, a practitioner may:

(1) Where permissible, exercise professional judgment to waive or fail to assert a right or position of the client.

(2) Refuse to aid or participate in conduct that the practitioner believes to be unlawful, even though there is some support for an argument that the conduct is legal.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.

(a) In representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(1) Initiate or defend any proceeding before the Office, assert a position, conduct a defense, delay a trial or proceeding before the Office, or take other action on behalf of the practitioner's client when the practitioner knows or when it is obvious that such action would serve merely to harass or maliciously injure another.

(2) Knowingly advance a claim or defense that is unwarranted under existing law, except that a practitioner may advance such claim or defense if it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

(3) Conceal or knowingly fail to disclose that which the practitioner is required by law to reveal.

(4) Knowingly use perjured testimony or false evidence.

(5) Knowingly make a false statement of law or fact.

(6) Participate in the creation or preservation of evidence when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the evidence is false.

(7) Counsel or assist a client in conduct that the practitioner knows to be illegal or fraudulent.

(8) Knowingly engage in other illegal conduct or conduct contrary to a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) A practitioner who receives information clearly establishing that:

(1) A client has, in the course of the representation, perpetrated a fraud upon a person or tribunal shall promptly call upon the client to rectify the same, and if the client refuses or is unable to do so the practitioner shall reveal the fraud to the affected person or tribunal.

(2) A person other than a client has perpetrated a fraud upon a tribunal shall promptly reveal the fraud to the tribunal.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.86 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.

During the course of representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(a) Communicate or cause another to communicate on the subject of the representation with a party the practitioner knows to be represented by another practitioner in that matter unless the practitioner has the prior consent of the other practitioner representing such other party or is authorized by law to do so. It is not improper, however, for a practitioner to encourage a client to meet with an opposing party for settlement discussions.

(b) Give advice to a person who is not represented by a practitioner other than the advice to secure counsel, if the interests of such person are or have a reasonable possibility of being in conflict with the interests of the practitioner's client.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.

A practitioner shall not present, participate in presenting, or threaten to present criminal charges solely to obtain an advantage in any prospective or pending proceeding before the Office.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.89 Conduct in proceedings.

(a) A practitioner shall not disregard or advise a client to disregard any provision of this Subchapter or a decision of the Office made in the course of a proceeding before the Office, but the practitioner may take appropriate steps in good faith to test the validity of such provision or decision.

(b) In presenting a matter to the Office, a practitioner shall disclose:

(1) Controlling legal authority known to the practitioner to be directly adverse to the position of the client and which is not disclosed by opposing counsel or an employee of the Office.

(2) Unless privileged or irrelevant, the identities of the client the practitioner represents and of the persons who employed the practitioner.

(c) In appearing in a professional capacity before a tribunal, a practitioner shall not:

(1) State or allude to any matter that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case or that will not be supported by admissible evidence.

(2) Ask any question that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case and that is intended to degrade a witness or other person.

(3) Assert the practitioner's personal knowledge of the facts in issue, except when testifying as a witness.

(4) Assert the practitioner's personal opinion as to the justness of a cause, as to the credibility of a witness, as to the culpability of a civil litigant, or as to the guilt or innocence of an accused; but the practitioner may argue, on the practitioner's analysis of the evidence, for any position or conclusion with respect to the matters stated herein.

(5) Engage in undignified or discourteous conduct before the Office (see § 1.3 of the subchapter).

(6) Intentionally or habitually violate any provision of this subchapter or established rule of evidence.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.90--10.91 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.92 Contact with witnesses.

(a) A practitioner shall not suppress any evidence that the practitioner or the practitioner's client has a legal obligation to reveal or produce.

(b) A practitioner shall not advise or cause a person to be secreted or to leave the jurisdiction of a tribunal for the purpose of making the person unavailable as a witness therein.

(c) A practitioner shall not pay, offer to pay, or acquiesce in the payment of compensation to a witness contingent upon the content of the witness' affidavit, testimony or the outcome of the case. But a practitioner may advance, guarantee, or acquiesce in the payment of:

(1) Expenses reasonably incurred by a witness in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(2) Reasonable compensation to a witness for the witness' loss of time in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(3) A reasonable fee for the professional services of an expert witness.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.93 Contact with officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not give or lend anything of value to a judge, official, or employee of a tribunal under circumstances which might give the appearance that the gift or loan is made to influence official action.

(b) In an adversary proceeding, including any inter partes proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not communicate, or cause another to communicate, as to the merits of the cause with a judge, official, or Office employee before whom the proceeding is pending, except:

(1) In the course of official proceedings in the cause.

(2) In writing if the practitioner promptly delivers a copy of the writing to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(3) Orally upon adequate notice to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(4) As otherwise authorized by law.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.94--10.99 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.100 Canon 8.

A practitioner should assist in improving the legal system.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.101 Action as a public official.

(a) A practitioner who holds public office shall not:

(1) Use the practitioner's public position to obtain, or attempt to obtain, a special advantage in legislative matters for the practitioner or for a client under circumstances where the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such action is not in the public interest.

(2) Use the practitioner's public position to influence, or attempt to influence, a tribunal to act in favor of the practitioner or of a client.

(3) Accept any thing of value from any person when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the offer is for the purpose of influencing the practitioner's action as a public official.

(b) A practitioner who is an officer or employee of the United States shall not practice before the Office in patent cases except as provided in § 10.10(c) and (d).

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 6520, Feb. 13, 1989]

§ 10.102 Statements concerning officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false statements of fact concerning the qualifications of a candidate for election or appointment to a judicial office or to a position in the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false accusations against a judge, other adjudicatory officer, or employee of the Office.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.

A practitioner who is a candidate for judicial office shall comply with applicable provisions of law.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.104--10.109 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.110 Canon 9.

A practitioner should avoid even the appearance of professional impropriety.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.

(a) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter upon the merits of which he or she has acted in a judicial capacity.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter in which he or she had personal responsibility while a public employee.

(c) A practitioner shall not state or imply that the practitioner is able to influence improperly or upon irrelevant grounds any tribunal, legislative body, or public official.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.

(a) All funds of clients paid to a practitioner or a practitioner's firm, other than advances for costs and expenses, shall be deposited in one or more identifiable bank accounts maintained in the United States or, in the case of a practitioner having an office in a foreign country or registered under § 10.6(c), in the United States or the foreign country.

(b) No funds belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm shall be deposited in the bank accounts required by paragraph (a) of this section except as follows:

(1) Funds reasonably sufficient to pay bank charges may be deposited therein.

(2) Funds belonging in part to a client and in part presently or potentially to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm must be deposited therein, but the portion belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm may be withdrawn when due unless the right of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to receive it is disputed by the client, in which event the disputed portion shall not be withdrawn until the dispute is finally resolved.

(c) A practitioner shall:

(1) Promptly notify a client of the receipt of the client's funds, securities, or other properties.

(2) Identify and label securities and properties of a client promptly upon receipt and place them in a safe deposit box or other place of safekeeping as soon as practicable.

(3) Maintain complete records of all funds, securities, and other properties of a client coming into the possession of the practitioner and render appropriate accounts to the client regarding the funds, securities, or other properties.

(4) Promptly pay or deliver to the client as requested by a client the funds, securities, or other properties in the possession of the practitioner which the client is entitled to receive.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0017)

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.113--10.129 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

§ 10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.

(a) The Commissioner may, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, (1) reprimand or (2) suspend or exclude, either generally or in any particular case, any individual, attorney, or agent shown to be incompetent or disreputable, who is guilty of gross misconduct, or who violates a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) Petitions to disqualify a practitioner in ex parte or inter partes cases in the Office are not governed by § § 10.130 through 10.170 and will be handled on a case-by-case basis under such conditions as the Commissioner deems appropriate.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.131 Investigations.

(a) The Director is authorized to investigate possible violations of Disciplinary Rules by practitioners. See § 10.2(b)(2).

(b) Practitioners shall report and reveal to the Director any knowledge or evidence required by § 10.24. A practitioner shall cooperate with the Director in connection with any investigation under paragraph (a) of this section and with officials of the Office in connection with any disciplinary proceeding instituted under § 10.132(b).

(c) Any non-practitioner possessing knowledge or information concerning a violation of a Disciplinary Rule by a practitioner may report the violation to the Director. The Director may require that the report be presented in the form of an affidavit.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.

(a) If after conducting an investigation under § 10.131(a) the Director is of the opinion that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall, after complying where necessary with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 558(c), call a meeting of the Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall then determine as specified in § 10.4(b) whether a disciplinary proceeding shall be instituted under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the Committee on Discipline determines that probable cause exists to believe that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall institute a disciplinary proceeding by filing a complaint under § 10.134. The complaint shall be filed in the Office of the Director. A disciplinary proceeding may result in:

(1) A reprimand, or

(2) Suspension or exclusion of a practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) Upon the filing of a complaint under § 10.134, the Commissioner will refer the disciplinary proceeding to an administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.

(a) General. The Director may confer with a practitioner concerning possible violations by the practitioner of a Disciplinary Rule whether or not a disciplinary proceeding has been instituted.

(b) Resignation. Any practitioner who is the subject of an investigation under § 10.131 or against whom a complaint has been filed under § 10.134 may resign from practice before the Office only by submitting with the Director an affidavit stating his or her desire to resign.

(c) If filed prior to the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall state that:

(1) The resignation is freely and voluntarily proffered;

(2) The practitioner is not acting under duress or coercion from the Office;

(3) The practitioner is fully aware of the implications of filing the resignation;

(4) The practitioner is aware (i) of a pending investigation or (ii) of charges arising from the complaint alleging that he or she is guilty of a violation of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility, the nature of which shall be set forth by the practitioner to the satisfaction of the Director;

(5) The practitioner acknowledges that, if and when he or she applies for reinstatement under § 10.160, the Director will conclusively presume, for the limited purpose of determining the application for reinstatement, that:

(i) The facts upon which the complaint is based are true and

(ii) The practitioner could not have successfully defended himself or herself against (A) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (B) charges set out in the complaint filed against the practitioner.

(d) If filed on or after the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall make the statements required by paragraphs (b) (1) through (4) of this section and shall state that:

(1) The practitioner acknowledges the facts upon which the complaint is based are true; and

(2) The resignation is being submitted because the practitioner could not successfully defend himself or herself against (i) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (ii) charges set out in the complaint.

(e) When an affidavit under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section is received while an investigation is pending, the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner "on consent." When an affidavit under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section is received after a complaint under § 10.134 has been filed, the Director shall notify the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge shall enter an order transferring the disciplinary proceeding to the Commissioner and the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner "on consent."

(f) Any practitioner who resigns from practice before the Office under this section and who intends to reapply for admission to practice before the Office must comply with the provisions of § 10.158.

(g) Settlement. Before or after a complaint is filed under § 10.134, a settlement conference may occur between the Director and a practitioner for the purpose of settling any disciplinary matter. If an offer of settlement is made by the Director or the practitioner and is not accepted by the other, no reference to the offer of settlement or its refusal shall be admissible in evidence in the disciplinary proceeding unless both the Director and the practitioner agree in writing.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.134 Complaint.

(a) A complaint instituting a disciplinary proceeding shall:

(1) Name the practitioner, who may then be referred to as the "respondent."

(2) Give a plain and concise description of the alleged violations of the Disciplinary Rules by the practitioner.

(3) State the place and time for filing an answer by the respondent.

(4) State that a decision by default may be entered against the respondent if an answer is not timely filed.

(5) Be signed by the Director.

(b) A complaint will be deemed sufficient if it fairly informs the respondent of any violation of the Disciplinary Rules which form the basis for the disciplinary proceeding so that the respondent is able to adequately prepare a defense.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.135 Service of complaint.

(a) A complaint may be served on a respondent in any of the following methods:

(1) By handing a copy of the complaint personally to the respondent, in which case the individual handing the complaint to the respondent shall file an affidavit with the Director indicating the time and place the complaint was handed to the respondent.

(2) By mailing a copy of the complaint by "Express Mail" or first-class mail to:

(i) A registered practitioner at the address for which separate notice was last received by the Director or

(ii) A non-registered practitioner at the last address for the respondent known to the Director.

(3) By any method mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent.

(b) If a complaint served by mail under paragraph (a)(2) of this section is returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall mail a second copy of the complaint to the respondent. If the second copy of the complaint is also returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall serve the respondent by publishing an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette for four consecutive weeks, in which case the time for answer shall be at least thirty days from the fourth publication of the notice.

(c) If a respondent is a registered practitioner, the Director may serve simultaneously with the complaint a letter under § 10.11(b). The Director may require the respondent to answer the § 10.11(b) letter within a period of not less than 15 days. An answer to the § 10.11(b) letter shall constitute proof of service. If the respondent fails to answer the § 10.11(b) letter, his or her name will be removed from the register as provided by § 10.11(b).

(d) If the respondent is represented by an attorney under § 10.140(a), a copy of the complaint shall also be served on the attorney.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.136 Answer to complaint.

(a) Time for answer. An answer to a complaint shall be filed within a time set in the complaint which shall be not less than thirty days.

(b) With whom filed. The answer shall be filed in writing with the administrative law judge. The time for filing an answer may be extended once for a period of no more than thirty days by the administrative law judge upon a showing of good cause provided a motion requesting an extension of time is filed within thirty days after the date the complaint is filed by the Director. A copy of the answer shall be served on the Director.

(c) Content. The respondent shall include in the answer a statement of the facts which constitute the grounds of defense and shall specifically admit or deny each allegation set forth in the complaint. The respondent shall not deny a material allegation in the complaint which the respondent knows to be true or state that respondent is without sufficient information to form a belief as to the truth of an allegation when in fact the respondent possesses that information. The respondent shall also state affirmatively special matters of defense.

(d) Failure to deny allegations in complaint. Every allegation in the complaint which is not denied by a respondent in the answer is deemed to be admitted and may be considered proven. No further evidence in respect of that allegation

need be received by the administrative law judge at any hearing. Failure to timely file an answer will constitute an admission of the allegations in the complaint.

(e) Reply by Director. No reply to an answer is required by the Director and any affirmative defense in the answer shall be deemed to be denied. The Director may, however, file a reply if he or she chooses or if ordered by the administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.137 Supplemental complaint.

False statements in an answer may be made the basis of a supplemental complaint.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.138 Contested case.

Upon the filing of an answer by the respondent, a disciplinary proceeding shall be regarded as a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24. Evidence obtained by a subpoena issued under 35 U.S.C. 24 shall not be admitted into the record or considered unless leave to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 24 was previously authorized by the administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.

(a) Appointment. An administrative law judge, appointed under 5 U.S.C. 3105, shall conduct disciplinary proceedings as provided by this part.

(b) Responsibilities. The administrative law judge shall have authority to:

(1) Administer oaths and affirmations;

(2) Make rulings upon motions and other requests;

(3) Rule upon offers of proof, receive relevant evidence, and examine witnesses;

(4) Authorize the taking of a deposition of a witness in lieu of personal appearance of the witness before the administrative law judge;

(5) Determine the time and place of any hearing and regulate its course and conduct;

(6) Hold or provide for the holding of conferences to settle or simplify the issues;

(7) Receive and consider oral or written arguments on facts or law;

(8) Adopt procedures and modify procedures from time to time as occasion requires for the orderly disposition of proceedings;

(9) Make initial decisions under § 10.154; and

(10) Perform acts and take measures as necessary to promote the efficient and timely conduct of any disciplinary proceeding.

(c) Time for making initial decision. The administrative law judge shall set times and exercise control over a disciplinary proceeding such that an initial decision under § 10.154 is normally issued within six months of the date a complaint is filed. The administrative law judge may, however, issue an initial decision more than six months after a complaint is filed if in his or her opinion there exist unusual circumstances which preclude issuance of an initial decision within six months of the filing of the complaint.

(d) Review of interlocutory orders. An interlocutory order of an administrative law judge will not be reviewed by the Commissioner except:

(1) when the administrative law judge shall be of the opinion (i) that the interlocutory order involves a controlling question of procedure or law as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and (ii) that an immediate decision by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the disciplinary proceeding or

(2) in an extraordinary situation where justice requires review

(e) Stays pending review of interlocutory order. If the Director or a respondent seeks review of an interlocutory order of an administrative law judge under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, any time period set for taking action by the administrative law judge shall not be stayed unless ordered by the Commissioner or the administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.

(a) A respondent may be represented before the Office in connection with an investigation or disciplinary proceeding by an attorney. The attorney shall file a written declaration that he or she is an attorney within the meaning of § 10.1(c) and shall state:

(1) The address to which the attorney wants correspondence related to the investigation or disciplinary proceeding sent and

(2) A telephone number where the attorney may be reached during normal business hours.

(b) The Commissioner shall designate at least two associate solicitors in the Office of the Solicitor to act as representatives for the Director in disciplinary proceedings. In prosecuting disciplinary proceedings, the designated associate solicitors shall not involve the Solicitor or the Deputy Solicitor. The Solicitor and the Deputy Solicitor shall

remain insulated from the investigation and prosecution of all disciplinary proceedings in order that they shall be available as counsel to the Commissioner in deciding disciplinary proceedings.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.141 Filing of papers.

(a) The provisions of § 1.8 of this subchapter do not apply to disciplinary proceedings.

(b) All papers filed after the complaint and prior to entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the administrative law judge at an address or place designated by the administrative law judge. All papers filed after entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the Director. The Director shall promptly forward to the Commissioner any paper which requires action under this part by the Commissioner.

(c) The administrative law judge or the Director may provide for filing papers and other matters by hand or by "Express Mail."

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.142 Service of papers.

(a) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the office of the attorney; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to the attorney at the address provided by the attorney under § 10.140(a)(1); or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the attorney and a representative for the Director.

(b) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent who is not represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the respondent; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to the respondent at the address to which a complaint may be served or such other address as may be designated in writing by the respondent; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and a representative of the Director.

(c) A respondent shall serve on the representative for the Director one copy of each paper filed with the administrative law judge or the Director. A paper may be served on the representative for the Director by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the representative; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to an address designated in writing by the representative; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and the representative.

(d) Each paper filed in a disciplinary proceeding shall contain therein a certificate of service indicating:

(1) The date on which service was made and

(2) The method by which service was made.

(e) The administrative law judge or the Commissioner may require that a paper be served by hand or by "Express Mail."

(f) Service by mail is completed when the paper mailed in the United States is placed into the custody of the U.S. Postal Service.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.143 Motions.

Motions may be filed with the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge will determine on a case-by-case basis the time period for response to a motion and whether replies to responses will be authorized. No motion shall be filed with the administrative law judge unless such motion is supported by a written statement by the moving party that the moving party or attorney for the moving party has conferred with the opposing party or attorney for the opposing party in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised by a motion are resolved by the parties prior to a decision on the motion by the administrative law judge, the parties shall promptly notify the administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.144 Hearings.

(a) The administrative law judge shall preside at hearings in disciplinary proceedings. Hearings will be stenographically recorded and transcribed and the testimony of witnesses will be received under oath or affirmation. The administrative law judge shall conduct hearings in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 556. A copy of the transcript of the hearing shall become part of the record. A copy of the transcript shall be provided to the Director and the respondent at the expense of the Office.

(b) If the respondent to a disciplinary proceeding fails to appear at the hearing after a notice of hearing has been given by the administrative law judge, the administrative law judge may deem the respondent to have waived the right to a hearing and may proceed with the hearing in the absence of the respondent.

(c) A hearing under this section will not be open to the public except that the Director may grant a request by a respondent to open his or her hearing to the public and make the record of the disciplinary proceeding available for public inspection, provided, Agreement is reached in advance to exclude from public disclosure information which is privileged or confidential under applicable laws or regulations. If a disciplinary proceeding results in disciplinary action against a practitioner, and subject to § 10.159(c), the record of the entire disciplinary proceeding, including any settlement agreement, will be available for public inspection.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.

In case of a variance between the evidence and the allegations in a complaint, answer, or reply, if any, the administrative law judge may order or authorize amendment of the complaint, answer, or reply to conform to the evidence. Any party who would otherwise be prejudiced by the amendment will be given reasonable opportunity to meet the allegations in the complaint, answer, or reply, as amended, and the administrative law judge shall make findings on any issue presented by the complaint, answer, or reply as amended.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ § 10.146--10.148 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.149 Burden of proof.

In a disciplinary proceeding, the Director shall have the burden of proving his or her case by clear and convincing evidence and a respondent shall have the burden of proving any affirmative defense by clear and convincing evidence.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.150 Evidence.

(a) Rules of evidence. The rules of evidence prevailing in courts of law and equity are not controlling in hearings in disciplinary proceedings. However, the administrative law judge shall exclude evidence which is irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious.

(b) Depositions. Depositions of witnesses taken pursuant to § 10.151 may be admitted as evidence.

(c) Government documents. Official documents, records, and papers of the Office are admissible without extrinsic evidence of authenticity. These documents, records and papers may be evidenced by a copy certified as correct by an employee of the Office.

(d) Exhibits. If any document, record, or other paper is introduced in evidence as an exhibit, the administrative law judge may authorize the withdrawal of the exhibit subject to any conditions the administrative law judge deems appropriate.

(e) Objections. Objections to evidence will be in short form, stating the grounds of objection. Objections and rulings on objections will be a part of the record. No exception to the ruling is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.151 Depositions.

(a) Depositions for use at the hearing in lieu of personal appearance of a witness before the administrative law judge may be taken by respondent or the Director upon a showing of good cause and with the approval of, and under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by, the administrative law judge. Depositions may be taken upon oral or written questions, upon not less than ten days written notice to the other party, before any officer authorized to administer an oath or affirmation in the place where the deposition is to be taken. The requirement of ten days notice may be waived by the parties and depositions may then be taken of a witness and at a time and place mutually agreed to by the parties. When a deposition is taken upon written questions, copies of the written questions will be served upon the other party with the notice and copies of any written cross-questions will be served by hand or "Express Mail" not less than five days before the date of the taking of the deposition unless the parties mutually agree otherwise. A party on whose behalf a deposition is taken shall file a copy of a transcript of the deposition signed by a court reporter with the administrative law judge and shall serve one copy upon the opposing party. Expenses for a court reporter and preparing, serving, and filing depositions shall be borne by the party at whose instance the deposition is taken.

(b) When the Director and the respondent agree in writing, a deposition of any witness who will appear voluntarily may be taken under such terms and condition as may be mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent. The deposition shall not be filed with the administrative law judge and may not be admitted in evidence before the administrative law judge unless he or she orders the deposition admitted in evidence. The admissibility of the deposition shall lie within the discretion of the administrative law judge who may reject the deposition on any reasonable basis including the fact that demeanor is involved and that the witness should have been called to appear personally before the administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.152 Discovery.

Discovery shall not be authorized except as follows:

(a) After an answer is filed under § 10.136 and when a party establishes in a clear and convincing manner that discovery is necessary and relevant, the administrative law judge, under such conditions as he or she deems appropriate, may order an opposing party to:

(1) Answer a reasonable number of written requests for admission or interrogatories;

(2) Produce for inspection and copying a reasonable number of documents; and

(3) Produce for inspection a reasonable number of things other than documents.

(b) Discovery shall not be authorized under paragraph (a) of this section of any matter which:

(1) Will be used by another party solely for impeachment or cross-examination;

(2) Is not available to the party under 35 U.S.C. § 122;

(3) Relates to any disciplinary proceeding commenced in the Patent and Trademark Office prior to March 8, 1985;

(4) Relates to experts except as the administrative law judge may require under paragraph (e) of this section.

(5) Is privileged; or

(6) Relates to mental impressions, conclusions, opinions, or legal theories of any attorney or other representative of a party.

(c) The administrative law judge may deny discovery requested under paragraph (a) of this section if the discovery sought:

(1) Will unduly delay the disciplinary proceeding;

(2) Will place an undue burden on the party required to produce the discovery sought; or

(3) Is available (i) generally to the public, (ii) equally to the parties; or (iii) to the party seeking the discovery through another source.

(d) Prior to authorizing discovery under paragraph (a) of this section, the administrative law judge shall require the party seeking discovery to file a motion (§ 10.143) and explain in detail for each request made how the discovery sought is necessary and relevant to an issue actually raised in the complaint or the answer.

(e) The administrative law judge may require parties to file and serve, prior to any hearing, a pre-hearing statement which contains:

(1) A list (together with a copy) of all proposed exhibits to be used in connection with a party's case-in-chief,

(2) A list of proposed witnesses,

(3) As to each proposed expert witness:

(i) An identification of the field in which the individual will be qualified as an expert;

(ii) A statement as to the subject matter on which the expert is expected to testify; and

(iii) A statement of the substance of the facts and opinions to which the expert is expected to testify,

(4) The identity of government employees who have investigated the case, and

(5) Copies of memoranda reflecting respondent's own statements to administrative representatives.

(f) After a witness testifies for a party, if the opposing party requests, the party may be required to produce, prior to cross-examination, any written statement made by the witness.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.

Except in cases when the respondent has failed to answer the complaint, the administrative law judge, prior to making an initial decision, shall afford the parties a reasonable opportunity to submit proposed findings and conclusions and a post-hearing memorandum in support of the proposed findings and conclusions.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.

(a) The administrative law judge shall make an initial decision in the case. The decision will include (1) a statement of findings and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis therefore with appropriate references to the record, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record, and (2) an order of suspension or exclusion from practice, an order of reprimand, or an order dismissing the complaint. The administrative law judge shall file the decision with the Director and shall transmit a copy to the representative of the Director and to the respondent. In the absence of an appeal to the Commissioner, the decision of the administrative law judge will, without further proceedings, become the decision of the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks thirty (30) days from the date of the decision of the administrative law judge.

(b) The initial decision of the administrative law judge shall explain the reason for any penalty or reprimand, suspension or exclusion. In determining any penalty, the following should normally be considered:

(1) The public interest;

(2) The seriousness of the violation of the Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The deterrent effects deemed necessary;

(4) The integrity of the legal profession; and

(5) Any extenuating circumstances.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.

(a) Within thirty (30) days from the date of the initial decision of the administrative law judge under § 10.154, either party may appeal to the Commissioner. If an appeal is taken, the time for filing a cross-appeal expires 14 days after the date of service of the appeal pursuant to § 10.142 or 30 days after the date of initial decision of the administrative law judge, whichever is later. An appeal or cross-appeal by the respondent will be filed and served with the Director in duplicate and will include exceptions to the decisions of the administrative law judge and supporting reasons for those

exceptions. If the Director files the appeal or cross-appeal, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the appeal or cross-appeal. The other party to an appeal or cross-appeal may file a reply brief. A respondent's reply brief shall be filed and served in duplicate with the Director. The time for filing any reply brief expires thirty (30) days after the date of service pursuant to § 10.142 of an appeal, cross-appeal or copy thereof. If the Director files a reply brief, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the reply brief. Upon the filing of an appeal, cross-appeal, if any, and reply briefs, if any, the Director shall transmit the entire record to the Commissioner.

(b) The appeal will be decided by the Commissioner on the record made before the administrative law judge.

(c) The Commissioner may order reopening of a disciplinary proceeding in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials. Any request to reopen a disciplinary proceeding on the basis of newly discovered evidence must demonstrate that the newly discovered evidence could not have been discovered by due diligence.

(d) In the absence of an appeal by the Director, failure by the respondent to appeal under the provisions of this section shall be deemed to be both acceptance by the respondent of the initial decision and waiver by the respondent of the right to further administrative or judicial review.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended by 54 FR 26026, June 21, 1989; 60 FR 64125, 64126, Dec. 14, 1995]

§ 10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.

(a) An appeal from an initial decision of the administrative law judge shall be decided by the Commissioner. The Commissioner may affirm, reverse or modify the initial decision or remand the matter to the administrative law judge for such further proceedings as the Commissioner may deem appropriate. Subject to paragraph (c) of this section, a decision by the Commissioner does not become a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding until 20 days after it is entered. In making a final decision, the Commissioner shall review the record or those portions of the record as may be cited by the parties in order to limit the issues. The Commissioner shall transmit a copy of the final decision to the Director and to the respondent.

(b) A final decision of the Commissioner may dismiss a disciplinary proceeding, reprimand a practitioner, or may suspend or exclude the practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the Commissioner's decision may be made by the respondent or the Director if filed within 20 days from the date of entry of the decision. Such a request shall have the effect of staying the effective date of the decision. The decision by the Commissioner on the request is a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding and is effective on its date of entry.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 6660, Feb. 14, 1989]

§ 10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.

(a) Review of the Commissioner's final decision in a disciplinary case may be had, subject to § 10.155(d), by a petition filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. See 35 U.S.C. 32 and Local Rule 213 of the United States District Court for the District of Columbia.

(b) The Commissioner may stay a final decision pending review of the Commissioner's final decision.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 53 FR 13120, Apr. 21, 1988; 54 FR 26027, June 21, 1989]

§ 10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.

(a) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under § 10.156(b) shall not engage in unauthorized practice of patent, trademark and other non-patent law before the Office.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, any practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under § 10.156(b) shall:

(1) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, notify all bars of which he or she is a member and all clients of the practitioner for whom he or she is handling matters before the Office in separate written communications of the suspension or exclusion and shall file a copy of each written communication with the Director.

(2) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, surrender a client's active Office case files to (i) the client or (ii) another practitioner designated by the client.

(3) Not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice law before the Office.

(4) Promptly take any necessary and appropriate steps to remove from any telephone, legal, or other directory any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice patent, trademark or other non-patent law before the Office, and within 30 days of taking those steps, file with the Director an affidavit describing the precise nature of the steps taken.

(5) Not advertise the practitioner's availability or ability to perform or render legal services for any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(6) Not render legal advice or services to any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office as to that business.

(7) Promptly take steps to change any sign identifying a practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's office and the practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's stationery to delete therefrom any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice law before the Office.

(8) Within 30 days, return to any client any unearned funds, including any unearned retainer fee, and any securities and property of the client.

(c) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office and who aids another practitioner in any way in the other practitioner's practice of law before the Office, may, under the direct supervision of the other practitioner, act as a para-legal for the other practitioner or perform other services for the other practitioner which are normally performed by lay-persons, Provided:

(1) The practitioner who is suspended or excluded is:

(i) A salaried employee of:

(A) The other practitioner;

(B) The other practitioner's law firm; or

(C) A client-employer who employs the other practitioner as a salaried employee;

(2) The other practitioner assumes full professional responsibility to any client and the Office for any work performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner for the other practitioner;

(3) The suspended or excluded practitioner, in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office, does not:

(i) Communicate directly in writing, orally, or otherwise with a client of the other practitioner;

(ii) Render any legal advice or any legal services to a client of the other practitioner; or

(iii) Meet in person or in the presence of the other practitioner with:

(A) Any Office official in connection with the prosecution of any patent, trademark, or other case;

(B) Any client of the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the client-employer of the other practitioner;

(c) Any witness or potential witness which the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the other practitioner's client-employer may or intends to call as a witness in any proceeding before the Office. The term "witness" includes individuals who will testify orally in a proceeding before, or sign an affidavit or any other document to be filed in, the Office.

(d) When a suspended or excluded practitioner acts as a para-legal or performs services under paragraph (c) of this section, the suspended or excluded practitioner shall not thereafter be reinstated to practice before the Office unless:

(1) The suspended or excluded practitioner shall have filed with the Director an affidavit which (i) explains in detail the precise nature of all para-legal or other services performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner and (ii) shows by clear and convincing evidence that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of this section and all Disciplinary Rules, and

(2) The other practitioner shall have filed with the Director a written statement which (i) shows that the other practitioner has read the affidavit required by subparagraph (d)(1) of this section and that the other practitioner believes every statement in the affidavit to be true and (ii) states why the other practitioner believes that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with paragraph (c) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.

(a) Upon issuance of a final decision reprimanding a practitioner or suspending or excluding a practitioner from practice before the Office, the Director shall give notice of the final decision to appropriate employees of the Office and to interested departments, agencies, and courts of the United States. The Director shall also give notice to appropriate authorities of any State in which a practitioner is known to be a member of the bar and any appropriate bar association.

(b) The Director shall cause to be published in the Official Gazette the name of any practitioner suspended or excluded from practice. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, the Director shall publish in the Official Gazette the name of any practitioner reprimanded by the Commissioner.

(c) The Director shall maintain records, which shall be available for public inspection, of every disciplinary proceeding where a practitioner is reprimanded, suspended, or excluded unless the Commissioner orders that the proceeding be kept confidential.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.160 Petition for reinstatement.

(a) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner suspended for a period of less than five years will not be considered until the period of suspension has passed.

(b) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner excluded from practice will not be considered until five years after the effective date of the exclusion.

(c) An individual who has resigned under § 10.133 or who has been suspended or excluded may file a petition for reinstatement. The Director may grant a petition for reinstatement when the individual makes a clear and convincing showing that the individual will conduct himself or herself in accordance with the regulations of this part and that granting a petition for reinstatement is not contrary to the public interest. As a condition to reinstatement, the Director may require the individual to:

(1) Meet the requirements of § 10.7, including taking and passing an examination under § 10.7(b) and

(2) Pay all or a portion of the costs and expenses, not to exceed $ 1,500, of the disciplinary proceeding which led to suspension or exclusion.

(d) Any suspended or excluded practitioner who has violated the provisions of § 10.158 during his or her period of suspension or exclusion shall not be entitled to reinstatement until such time as the Director is satisfied that a period of suspension equal in time to that ordered by the Commissioner or exclusion for five years has passed during which the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of § 10.158.

(e) Proceedings on any petition for reinstatement shall be open to the public. Before reinstating any suspended or excluded practitioner, the Director shall publish in the Official Gazette a notice of the suspended or excluded practitioner's petition for reinstatement and shall permit the public a reasonable opportunity to comment or submit evidence with respect to the petition for reinstatement.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 10.161 Savings clause.

(a) A disciplinary proceeding based on conduct engaged in prior to the effective date of these regulations may be instituted subsequent to such effective date, if such conduct would continue to justify suspension or exclusion under the provisions of this part.

(b) No practitioner shall be subject to a disciplinary proceeding under this part based on conduct engaged in before the effective date hereof if such conduct would not have been subject to disciplinary action before such effective date.

**Legislative History**

50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985.

§ § 10.162-10.169 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 10.170 Suspension of rules.

(a) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations of this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, sua sponte, or on petition of any party, including the Director or the Director's representative, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed.

(b) Any petition under this section will not stay a disciplinary proceeding unless ordered by the Commissioner or an administrative law judge.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985]

## PART 102 --DISCLOSURE OF GOVERNMENT INFORMATION

### SUBPART A--FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT

§ 102.1 General.

(a) The information in this part is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), as amended (5 U.S.C. 552). This part sets forth the procedures the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) follows to make publicly available the materials and indices specified in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2) and records requested under 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(3). Information routinely provided to the public as part of a regular USPTO activity (for example, press releases issued by the Office of Public Affairs) may be provided to the public without following this part. USPTO's policy is to make discretionary disclosures of records or information exempt from disclosure under FOIA whenever disclosure would not foreseeably harm an interest protected by a FOIA exemption, but this policy does not create any right enforceable in court.

(b) As used in this subpart, FOIA Officer means the USPTO employee designated to administer FOIA for USPTO. To ensure prompt processing of a request, correspondence should be addressed to the FOIA Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, WASHINGTON DC 20231 or delivered by hand to Crystal Park Two, 2121 Crystal Drive, Suite 714, Arlington, Virginia.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52917, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52917, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.2 Public reference facilities.

(a) USPTO maintains a public reference facility that contains the records FOIA requires to be made regularly available for public inspection and copying; furnishes information and otherwise assists the public concerning USPTO operations under FOIA; and receives and processes requests for records under FOIA. The FOIA Officer is responsible for determining which of USPTO's records are required to be made available for public inspection and copying, and for making those records available in USPTO's reference and records inspection facility. The FOIA Officer shall maintain and make available for public inspection and copying a current subject-matter index of USPTO's public inspection facility records. Each index shall be updated regularly, at least quarterly, with respect to newly included records. In accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2), USPTO has determined that it is unnecessary and impracticable to publish quarterly, or more frequently, and distribute copies of the index and supplements thereto. The public reference facility is located in the Public Search Room, Crystal Plaza Three, 2021 South Clark Place, Room 1A01, Arlington, Virginia.

(b) The FOIA Officer shall also make public inspection facility records created by USPTO on or after November 1, 1996, available electronically through USPTO's World Wide Web site (http://www.uspto.gov). Information available at the site shall include:

(1) The FOIA Officer's index of the public inspection facility records, which indicates which records are available electronically; and

(2) The general index referred to in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(c) USPTO maintains and makes available for public inspection and copying:

(1) A current index providing identifying information for the public as to any matter that is issued, adopted, or promulgated after July 4, 1967, and that is retained as a record and is required to be made available or published. Copies of the index are available upon request after payment of the direct cost of duplication;

(2) Copies of records that have been released and that the FOIA Officer determines, because of their subject matter, have become or are likely to become the subject of subsequent requests for substantially the same records;

(3) A general index of the records described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section;

(4) Final opinions and orders, including concurring and dissenting opinions made in the adjudication of cases;

(5) Those statements of policy and interpretations that have been adopted by USPTO and are not published in the Federal Register; and

(6) Administrative staff manuals and instructions to staff that affect a member of the public.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52917, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52917, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.3 Records under FOIA.

(a) Records under FOIA include all Government records, regardless of format, medium or physical characteristics, and include electronic records and information, audiotapes, videotapes, and photographs.

(b) There is no obligation to create, compile, or obtain from outside USPTO a record to satisfy a FOIA request. With regard to electronic data, the issue of whether records are created or merely extracted from an existing database is not always apparent. When responding to FOIA requests for electronic data where creation of a record or programming becomes an issue, USPTO shall undertake reasonable efforts to search for the information in electronic format.

(c) USPTO officials may, upon request, create and provide new information pursuant to user fee statutes, such as the first paragraph of 15 U.S.C. 1525, or in accordance with authority otherwise provided by law. This is outside the scope of FOIA.

(d) The FOIA Officer shall preserve all correspondence pertaining to the requests received under this subpart, as well as copies of all requested records, until disposition or destruction is authorized by Title 44 of the United States Code or a National Archives and Records Administration's General Records Schedule. The FOIA Officer shall not dispose of records while they are the subject of a pending request, appeal, or lawsuit under FOIA.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52917, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52917, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.4 Requirements for making requests.

(a) A request for USPTO records that are not customarily made available to the public as part of USPTO's regular informational services must be in writing, and shall be processed under FOIA, regardless of whether FOIA is mentioned in the request. Requests should be sent to the USPTO FOIA Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington DC 20231 (records FOIA requires to be made regularly available for public inspection and copying are addressed in § 102.2(c)). For the quickest handling, the request letter and envelope should be marked "Freedom of Information Act Request." For requests for records about oneself, § 102.24 contains additional requirements. For requests for records about another individual, either a written authorization signed by that individual permitting disclosure of those records to the requester or proof that that individual is deceased (for example, a copy of a death certificate or an obituary) facilitates processing the request.

(b) The records requested must be described in enough detail to enable USPTO personnel to locate them with a reasonable amount of effort. Whenever possible, a request should include specific information about each record sought, such as the date, title or name, author, recipient, and subject matter of the record, and the name and location of the office where the record is located. Also, if records about a court case are sought, the title of the case, the court in which the case was filed, and the nature of the case should be included. If known, any file designations or descriptions for the requested records should be included. In general, the more specifically the request describes the records sought, the greater the likelihood that USPTO will locate those records. If the FOIA Officer determines that a request does not reasonably describe records, the FOIA Officer will inform the requester what additional information is needed or why the request is otherwise insufficient. The FOIA Officer also may give the requester an opportunity to discuss the request so that it may be modified to meet the requirements of this section.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52918, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52918, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.5 Responsibility for responding to requests.

(a) In general. Except as stated in paragraph (b) of this section, the USPTO will process FOIA requests directed to USPTO. In determining records responsive to a request, the FOIA Officer shall include only those records within USPTO's possession and control as of the date the FOIA Officer receives the request.

(b) Consultations and referrals. If the FOIA Officer receives a request for a record in USPTO's possession in which another Federal agency subject to FOIA has the primary interest, the FOIA Officer shall refer the record to that agency for direct response to the requester. The FOIA Officer shall consult with another Federal agency before responding to a requester if the FOIA Officer receives a request for a record in which another Federal agency subject to FOIA has a significant interest, but not the primary interest; or another Federal agency not subject to FOIA has the primary interest or a significant interest. Ordinarily, the agency that originated a record will be presumed to have the primary interest in it.

(c) Notice of referral. Whenever a FOIA Officer refers a document to another Federal agency for direct response to the requester, the FOIA Officer will ordinarily notify the requester in writing of the referral and inform the requester of the name of the agency to which the document was referred.

(d) Timing of responses to consultations and referrals. All consultations and referrals shall be handled according to the date the FOIA request was received by the first Federal agency.

(e) Agreements regarding consultations and referrals. The FOIA Officer may make agreements with other Federal agencies to eliminate the need for consultations or referrals for particular types of records.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52918, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52918, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.6 Time limits and expedited processing.

(a) In general. The FOIA Officer ordinarily shall respond to requests according to their order of receipt.

(b) Initial response and appeal. Subject to paragraph (c)(1) of this section, an initial response shall be made within 20 working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) of the receipt of a request for a record under this part by the proper FOIA Officer identified in accordance with § 102.5(a), and an appeal shall be decided within 20 working days of its receipt by the Office of the General Counsel.

(c) Unusual circumstances. (1) In unusual circumstances as specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the FOIA Officer may extend the time limits in paragraph (b) of this section by notifying the requester in writing as soon as practicable of the unusual circumstances and of the date by which processing of the request is expected to be completed. Extensions of time for the initial determination and extensions on appeal may not exceed a total of ten working days, unless the requester agrees to a longer extension, or the FOIA Officer provides the requester with an opportunity either to limit the scope of the request so that it may be processed within the applicable time limit, or to arrange an alternative time frame for processing the request or a modified request.

(2) As used in this section, unusual circumstances means, but only to the extent reasonably necessary to properly process the particular request:

(i) The need to search for and collect the requested records from field facilities or other establishments separate from the office processing the request;

(ii) The need to search for, collect, and appropriately examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records that are the subject of a single request; or

(iii) The need for consultation, which shall be conducted with all practicable speed, with another Federal agency having a substantial interest in the determination of the request.

(3) Unusual circumstances do not include a delay that results from a predictable workload of requests, unless USPTO demonstrates reasonable progress in reducing its backlog of pending requests. Refusal to reasonably modify the scope of a request or arrange an alternate time frame may affect a requester's ability to obtain judicial review.

(4) If the FOIA Officer reasonably believes that multiple requests submitted by a requester, or by a group of requesters acting in concert, constitute a single request that would otherwise involve unusual circumstances, and the requests involve clearly related matters, the FOIA Officer may aggregate them. Multiple requests involving unrelated matters will not be aggregated.

(d) Multitrack processing. (1) The FOIA Officer may use two or more processing tracks by distinguishing between simple and more complex requests based on the number of pages involved, or some other measure of the amount of work and/or time needed to process the request, and whether the request qualifies for expedited processing as described in paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) The FOIA Officer may provide requesters in a slower track with an opportunity to limit the scope of their requests in order to qualify for faster processing. The FOIA Officer may contact the requester by telephone or by letter, whichever is most efficient in each case.

(e) Expedited processing. (1) Requests and appeals shall be taken out of order and given expedited treatment whenever it is determined they involve:

(i) Circumstances in which the lack of expedited treatment could reasonably be expected to pose an imminent threat to the life or physical safety of an individual;

(ii) The loss of substantial due process rights;

(iii) A matter of widespread and exceptional media interest in which there exist questions about the Government's integrity that affect public confidence; or

(iv) An urgency to inform the public about an actual or alleged Federal Government activity, if made by a person primarily engaged in disseminating information.

(2) A request for expedited processing may be made at the time of the initial request for records or at any later time. For a prompt determination, a request for expedited processing should be sent to the FOIA Officer.

(3) A requester who seeks expedited processing must submit a statement, certified to be true and correct to the best of that person's knowledge and belief, explaining in detail the basis for requesting expedited processing. For example, a requester within the category described in paragraph (e)(1)(iv) of this section, if not a full-time member of the news media, must establish that he or she is a person whose main professional activity or occupation is information dissemination, though it need not be his or her sole occupation. A requester within the category described in paragraph (e)(1)(iv) of this section must also establish a particular urgency to inform the public about the Government activity involved in the request, beyond the public's right to know about Government activity generally. The formality of certification may be waived as a matter of administrative discretion.

(4) Within ten calendar days of receipt of a request for expedited processing, the FOIA Officer will decide whether to grant it and shall notify the requester of the decision. If a request for expedited treatment is granted, the request shall be given priority and processed as soon as practicable. If a request for expedited processing is denied, any appeal of that decision shall be acted on expeditiously.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52918, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52918, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.7 Responses to requests.

(a) Grants of requests. If the FOIA Officer makes a determination to grant a request in whole or in part, the FOIA Officer will notify the requester in writing. The FOIA Officer will inform the requester in the notice of any fee charged under § 102.11 and disclose records to the requester promptly upon payment of any applicable fee. Records disclosed in part shall be marked or annotated to show each applicable FOIA exemption and the amount of information deleted, unless doing so would harm an interest protected by an applicable exemption. The location of the information deleted shall also be indicated on the record, if feasible.

(b) Adverse determinations of requests. If the FOIA Officer makes an adverse determination regarding a request, the FOIA Officer will notify the requester of that determination in writing. An adverse determination is a denial of a request in any respect, namely: A determination to withhold any requested record in whole or in part; a determination that a requested record does not exist or cannot be located; a determination that a record is not readily reproducible in the form or format sought by the requester; a determination that what has been requested is not a record subject to FOIA (except that a determination under § 102.11(j) that records are to be made available under a fee statute other than FOIA is not an adverse determination); a determination against the requester on any disputed fee matter, including a denial of a request for a fee waiver; or a denial of a request for expedited treatment. Each denial letter shall be signed by the FOIA Officer and shall include:

(1) The name and title or position of the denying official;

(2) A brief statement of the reason(s) for the denial, including applicable FOIA exemption(s);

(3) An estimate of the volume of records or information withheld, in number of pages or some other reasonable form of estimation. This estimate need not be provided if the volume is otherwise indicated through deletions on records disclosed in part, or if providing an estimate would harm an interest protected by an applicable FOIA exemption; and

(4) A statement that the denial may be appealed, and a list of the requirements for filing an appeal under § 102.10(b).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52919, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52919, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.9 Business Information.

(a) In general. Business information obtained by USPTO from a submitter will be disclosed under FOIA only under this section.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1) Business information means commercial or financial information, obtained by USPTO from a submitter, which may be protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4 (5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4)).

(2) Submitter means any person or entity outside the Federal Government from whom USPTO obtains business information, directly or indirectly. The term includes corporations; state, local and tribal governments; and foreign governments.

(c) Designation of business information. A submitter of business information should designate by appropriate markings, either at the time of submission or at a reasonable time thereafter, any portions of its submission that it considers to be protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4. These designations will expire ten years after the date of the submission unless the submitter requests, and provides justification for, a longer designation period.

(d) Notice to submitters. The FOIA Officer shall provide a submitter with prompt written notice of a FOIA request or administrative appeal that seeks its business information whenever required under paragraph (e) of this section, except as provided in paragraph (h) of this section, in order to give the submitter an opportunity under paragraph (f) of this section to object to disclosure of any specified portion of that information. Such written notice shall be sent via certified mail, return receipt requested, or similar means. The notice shall either describe the business information requested or include copies of the requested records containing the information. When notification of a large number of submitters is required, notification may be made by posting or publishing the notice in a place reasonably likely to accomplish notification.

(e) When notice is required. Notice shall be given to the submitter whenever:

(1) The information has been designated in good faith by the submitter as protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4; or

(2) The FOIA Officer has reason to believe that the information may be protected from disclosure under FOIA exemption 4.

(f) Opportunity to object to disclosure. The FOIA Officer shall allow a submitter seven working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) from the date of receipt of the written notice described in paragraph (d) of this section to provide the FOIA Officer with a detailed statement of any objection to disclosure. The statement must specify all grounds for withholding any portion of the information under any exemption of FOIA and, in the case of exemption 4, it must show why the information is a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential. If a submitter fails to respond to the notice within the time specified, the submitter will be considered to have no objection to disclosure of the information. Information a submitter provides under this paragraph may itself be subject to disclosure under FOIA.

(g) Notice of intent to disclose. The FOIA Officer shall consider a submitter's objections and specific grounds under FOIA for nondisclosure in deciding whether to disclose business information. If the FOIA Officer decides to disclose business information over the objection of a submitter, the FOIA Officer shall give the submitter written notice via certified mail, return receipt requested, or similar means, which shall include:

(1) A statement of reason(s) why the submitter's objections to disclosure were not sustained;

(2) A description of the business information to be disclosed; and

(3) A statement that the FOIA Officer intends to disclose the information seven working days from the date the submitter receives the notice.

(h) Exceptions to notice requirements. The notice requirements of paragraphs (d) and (g) of this section shall not apply if:

(1) The FOIA Officer determines that the information should not be disclosed;

(2) The information has been lawfully published or has been officially made available to the public;

(3) Disclosure of the information is required by statute (other than FOIA) or by a regulation issued in accordance with Executive Order 12600; or

(4) The designation made by the submitter under paragraph (c) of this section appears obviously frivolous, in which case the FOIA Officer shall provide the submitter written notice of any final decision to disclose the information seven working days from the date the submitter receives the notice.

(i) Notice of FOIA lawsuit. Whenever a requester files a lawsuit seeking to compel the disclosure of business information, the FOIA Officer shall promptly notify the submitter.

(j) Corresponding notice to requesters. Whenever a FOIA Officer provides a submitter with notice and an opportunity to object to disclosure under paragraph (d) of this section, the FOIA Officer shall also notify the requester(s). Whenever a submitter files a lawsuit seeking to prevent the disclosure of business information, the FOIA Officer shall notify the requester(s).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52919, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52919, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.10 Appeals from initial determinations or untimely delays.

(a) If a request for records is initially denied in whole or in part, or has not been timely determined, or if a requester receives an adverse initial determination regarding any other matter under this subpart (as described in § 102.7(b)), the requester may file a written appeal, which must be received by the Office of General Counsel within thirty calendar days of the date of the written denial or, if there has been no determination, may be submitted anytime after the due date, including the last extension under § 102.6(c), of the determination.

(b) Appeals shall be decided by a Deputy General Counsel. Appeals should be addressed to the General Counsel, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington DC 20231. Both the letter and the appeal envelope should be clearly marked "Freedom of Information Appeal". The appeal must include a copy of the original request and the initial denial, if any, and may include a statement of the reasons why the records requested should be made available and why the initial denial, if any, was in error. No opportunity for personal appearance, oral argument or hearing on appeal is provided.

(c) If an appeal is granted, the person making the appeal shall be immediately notified and copies of the releasable documents shall be made available promptly thereafter upon receipt of appropriate fees determined in accordance with § 102.11.

(d) If no determination of an appeal has been sent to the requester within the twenty-working-day period specified in § 102.6(b) or the last extension thereof, the requester is deemed to have exhausted his administrative remedies with respect to the request, giving rise to a right of judicial review under 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(C). If the person making a request initiates a civil action against USPTO based on the provision in this paragraph, the administrative appeal process may continue.

(e) A determination on appeal shall be in writing and, when it denies records in whole or in part, the letter to the requester shall include:

(1) A brief explanation of the basis for the denial, including a list of applicable FOIA exemptions and a description of how the exemptions apply;

(2) A statement that the decision is final;

(3) Notification that judicial review of the denial is available in the United States district court for the district in which the requester resides or has its principal place of business, the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Virginia, or the District of Columbia; and

(4) The name and title or position of the official responsible for denying the appeal.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52920, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52920, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.11 Fees.

(a) In general. USPTO shall charge for processing requests under FOIA in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, except when fees are limited under paragraph (d) of this section or when a waiver or reduction of fees is granted under paragraph (k) of this section. USPTO shall collect all applicable fees before sending copies of requested records to a requester. Requesters must pay fees by check or money order made payable to the Treasury of the United States.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section:

(1) Commercial use request means a request from or on behalf of a person who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers his or her commercial, trade, or profit interests, which can include furthering those interests through litigation. The FOIA Officer shall determine, whenever reasonably possible, the use to which a requester will put the requested records. When it appears that the requester will put the records to a commercial use, either because of the nature of the request itself or because the FOIA Officer has reasonable cause to doubt a requester's stated use, the FOIA Officer shall provide the requester a reasonable opportunity to submit further clarification.

(2) Direct costs means those expenses USPTO incurs in searching for and duplicating (and, in the case of commercial use requests, reviewing) records to respond to a FOIA request. Direct costs include, for example, the labor costs of the employee performing the work (the basic rate of pay for the employee, plus 16 percent of that rate to cover benefits). Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as the costs of space and heating or lighting of the facility in which the records are kept.

(3) Duplication means the making of a copy of a record, or of the information contained in it, necessary to respond to a FOIA request. Copies may take the form of paper, microform, audiovisual materials, or electronic records (for example, magnetic tape or disk), among others. The FOIA Officer shall honor a requester's specified preference of form or format of disclosure if the record is readily reproducible with reasonable efforts in the requested form or format.

(4) Educational institution means a preschool, a public or private elementary or secondary school, an institution of undergraduate higher education, an institution of graduate higher education, an institution of professional education, or an institution of vocational education, that operates a program of scholarly research. To be in this category, a requester must show that the request is authorized by and is made under the auspices of a qualifying institution, and that the records are sought to further scholarly research rather than for a commercial use.

(5) Noncommercial scientific institution means an institution that is not operated on a "commercial" basis, as that term is defined in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and that is operated solely for the purpose of conducting scientific research, the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry. To be in this category, a requester must show that the request is authorized by and is made under the auspices of a qualifying institution and that the records are sought to further scientific research rather than for a commercial use.

(6) Representative of the news media, or news media requester means any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the public. The term "news" means information that is about current events or that would be of current interest to the public. Examples of news media entities include television or radio stations broadcasting to the public at large and publishers of periodicals (but only if they can qualify as disseminators of "news") that make their products available for purchase or subscription by the general public. For "freelance" journalists to be regarded as working for a news organization, they must demonstrate a solid basis for expecting publication through that organization. A publication contract would be the clearest proof, but the FOIA

Officer shall also look to the past publication record of a requester in making this determination. To be in this category, a requester must not be seeking the requested records for a commercial use. However, a request for records supporting the news-dissemination function of the requester shall not be considered to be for a commercial use.

(7) Review means the examination of a record located in response to a request in order to determine whether any portion of it is exempt from disclosure. It also includes processing any record for disclosure -- for example, doing all that is necessary to redact it and prepare it for disclosure. Review costs are recoverable even if a record ultimately is not disclosed. Review time does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the application of exemptions.

(8) Search means the process of looking for and retrieving records or information responsive to a request. It includes page-by-page or line-by-line identification of information within records and also includes reasonable efforts to locate and retrieve information from records maintained in electronic form or format. The FOIA Officer shall ensure that searches are done in the most efficient and least expensive manner reasonably possible.

(c) Fees. In responding to FOIA requests, the FOIA Officer shall charge the fees summarized in chart form in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section and explained in paragraphs (c)(3) through (c)(5) of this section, unless a waiver or reduction of fees has been granted under paragraph (k) of this section.

(1) The four categories and chargeable fees are:

Click here to view image.

(2) Uniform fee schedule.

Click here to view image.

(3) Search. (i) Search fees shall be charged for all requests -- other than requests made by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media -- subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section. The FOIA Officer will charge for time spent searching even if no responsive records are located or if located records are entirely exempt from disclosure. Search fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the search by the involved employees.

(ii) For computer searches of records, requesters will be charged the direct costs of conducting the search, although certain requesters (as provided in paragraph (d)(1) of this section) will be charged no search fee and certain other requesters (as provided in paragraph (d)(3) of this section) are entitled to the cost equivalent of two hours of manual search time without charge. These direct costs include the costs, attributable to the search, of operating a central processing unit and operator/programmer salary.

(4) Duplication. Duplication fees will be charged to all requesters, subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section. For a paper photocopy of a record (no more than one copy of which need be supplied), the fee shall be $ .15 cents per page. For copies produced by computer, such as tapes or printouts, the FOIA Officer shall charge the direct costs, including operator time, of producing the copy. For other forms of duplication, the FOIA Officer will charge the direct costs of that duplication.

(5) Review. Review fees shall be charged to requesters who make a commercial use request. Review fees shall be charged only for the initial record review -- the review done when the FOIA Officer determines whether an exemption applies to a particular record at the initial request level. No charge will be made for review at the administrative appeal level for an exemption already applied. However, records withheld under an exemption that is subsequently determined not to apply may be reviewed again to determine whether any other exemption not previously considered applies, and the costs of that review are chargeable. Review fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the review by the involved employees.

(d) Limitations on charging fees.

(1) No search fee will be charged for requests by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media.

(2) No search fee or review fee will be charged for a quarter-hour period unless more than half of that period is required for search or review.

(3) Except for requesters seeking records for a commercial use, the FOIA Officer will provide without charge:

(i) The first 100 pages of duplication (or the cost equivalent); and

(ii) The first two hours of search (or the cost equivalent).

(4) Whenever a total fee calculated under paragraph (c) of this section is $ 20.00 or less for any request, no fee will be charged.

(5) The provisions of paragraphs (d) (3) and (4) of this section work together. This means that for requesters other than those seeking records for a commercial use, no fee will be charged unless the cost of the search in excess of two hours plus the cost of duplication in excess of 100 pages totals more than $ 20.00.

(e) Notice of anticipated fees over $ 20.00. When the FOIA Officer determines or estimates that the fees to be charged under this section will be more than $ 20.00, the FOIA Officer shall notify the requester of the actual or estimated fees, unless the requester has indicated a willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. If only a portion of the fee can be estimated readily, the FOIA Officer shall advise the requester that the estimated fee may be only a portion of the total fee. If the FOIA Officer has notified a requester that actual or estimated fees are more than $ 20.00, the FOIA Officer shall not consider the request received or process it further until the requester agrees to pay the anticipated total fee. Any such agreement should be in writing. A notice under this paragraph shall offer the requester an opportunity to discuss the matter with USPTO personnel in order to reformulate the request to meet the requester's needs at a lower cost.

(f) Charges for other services. Apart from the other provisions of this section, the FOIA Officer shall ordinarily charge the direct cost of special services. Such special services could include certifying that records are true copies or sending records by other than ordinary mail.

(g) Charging interest. The FOIA Officer shall charge interest on any unpaid bill starting on the 31st calendar day following the date of billing the requester. Interest charges shall be assessed at the rate provided in 31 U.S.C. 3717 and accrue from the date of the billing until payment is received by the FOIA Officer. The FOIA Officer shall follow the provisions of the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996 (Pub. L. 104-134), as amended, and its administrative procedures, including the use of consumer reporting agencies, collection agencies, and offset.

(h) Aggregating requests. If a FOIA Officer reasonably believes that a requester or a group of requesters acting together is attempting to divide a request into a series of requests for the purpose of avoiding fees, the FOIA Officer may aggregate those requests and charge accordingly. The FOIA Officer may presume that multiple requests of this type made within a 30-calendar-day period have been made in order to avoid fees. If requests are separated by a longer period, the FOIA Officer shall aggregate them only if a solid basis exists for determining that aggregation is warranted under all the circumstances involved. Multiple requests involving unrelated matters shall not be aggregated.

(i) Advance payments. (1) For requests other than those described in paragraphs (i)(2) and (3) of this section, the FOIA Officer shall not require the requester to make an advance payment: a payment made before work is begun or continued on a request. Payment owed for work already completed (i.e., a payment before copies are sent to a requester) is not an advance payment.

(2) If the FOIA Officer determines or estimates that a total fee to be charged under this section will be more than $ 250.00, the requester must pay the entire anticipated fee before beginning to process the request, unless the FOIA Officer receives a satisfactory assurance of full payment from a requester who has a history of prompt payment.

(3) If a requester has previously failed to pay a properly charged FOIA fee to USPTO or another responsible Federal agency within 30 calendar days of the date of billing, the FOIA Officer shall require the requester to pay the full amount due, plus any applicable interest, and to make an advance payment of the full amount of any anticipated fee, before the FOIA Officer begins to process a new request or continues to process a pending request from that requester.

(4) In cases in which the FOIA Officer requires payment under paragraphs (i)(2) or (3) of this section, the request shall not be considered received and further work will not be done on it until the required payment is received.

(5) Upon the completion of processing of a request, when a specific fee is determined to be payable and appropriate notice has been given to the requester, the FOIA Officer shall make records available to the requester only upon receipt of full payment of the fee.

(j) Other statutes specifically providing for fees. The fee schedule of this section does not apply to fees charged under any statute (except for FOIA) that specifically requires USPTO or another responsible Federal agency to set and collect fees for particular types of records. If records responsive to requests are maintained for distribution by agencies operating such statutorily based fee schedule programs, the FOIA Officer shall inform requesters of how to obtain records from those sources.

(k) Requirements for waiver or reduction of fees. (1) Records responsive to a request will be furnished without charge or at a charge reduced below that established under paragraph (c) of this section if the FOIA Officer determines, based on all available information, that the requester has demonstrated that:

(i) Disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the Government; and

(ii) Disclosure of the information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester.

(2) To determine whether the first fee waiver requirement is met, the FOIA Officer shall consider the following factors:

(i) The subject of the request: whether the subject of the requested records concerns the operations or activities of the Government. The subject of the requested records must concern identifiable operations or activities of the Federal Government, with a connection that is direct and clear, not remote or attenuated.

(ii) The informative value of the information to be disclosed: whether the disclosure is "likely to contribute" to an understanding of Government operations or activities. The disclosable portions of the requested records must be meaningfully informative about Government operations or activities in order to be "likely to contribute" to an increased public understanding of those operations or activities. The disclosure of information that already is in the public domain, in either a duplicative or a substantially identical form, would not be likely to contribute to such understanding.

(iii) The contribution to an understanding of the subject by the public likely to result from disclosure: whether disclosure of the requested information will contribute to the understanding of a reasonably broad audience of persons interested in the subject, as opposed to the individual understanding of the requester. A requester's expertise in the subject area and ability and intention to effectively convey information to the public shall be considered. It shall be presumed that a representative of the news media satisfies this consideration. It shall be presumed that a requester who merely provides information to media sources does not satisfy this consideration.

(iv) The significance of the contribution to public understanding: whether the disclosure is likely to contribute "significantly" to public understanding of Government operations or activities. The public's understanding of the subject in question prior to the disclosure must be significantly enhanced by the disclosure.

(3) To determine whether the second fee waiver requirement is met, the FOIA Officer shall consider the following factors:

(i) The existence and magnitude of a commercial interest: whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure. The FOIA Officer shall consider any commercial interest of the requester (with reference to the definition of "commercial use request" in paragraph (b)(1) of this section), or of any person on whose behalf the requester may be acting, that would be furthered by the requested disclosure. Requesters shall be given an opportunity to provide explanatory information regarding this consideration.

(ii) The primary interest in disclosure: whether any identified commercial interest of the requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is "primarily in the commercial interest of the

requester." A fee waiver or reduction is justified if the public interest standard (paragraph (k)(1)(i) of this section) is satisfied and the public interest is greater than any identified commercial interest in disclosure. The FOIA Officer ordinarily shall presume that if a news media requester has satisfied the public interest standard, the public interest is the primary interest served by disclosure to that requester. Disclosure to data brokers or others who merely compile and market Government information for direct economic return shall not be presumed to primarily serve the public interest.

(4) If only some of the records to be released satisfy the requirements for a fee waiver, a waiver shall be granted for those records.

(5) Requests for the waiver or reduction of fees should address the factors listed in paragraphs (k)(2) and (3) of this section, insofar as they apply to each request.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52920, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52920, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

## SUBPART B --PRIVACY ACT

### § 102.21 Purpose and scope.

(a) The purpose of this subpart is to establish policies and procedures for implementing the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552a) (the Act). The main objectives are to facilitate full exercise of rights conferred on individuals under the Act and to ensure the protection of privacy as to individuals on whom USPTO maintains records in systems of records under the Act. USPTO accepts the responsibility to act promptly and in accordance with the Act upon receipt of any inquiry, request or appeal from a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States, regardless of the age of the individual. Further, USPTO accepts the obligations to maintain only such information on individuals as is relevant and necessary to the performance of its lawful functions, to maintain that information with such accuracy, relevancy, timeliness, and completeness as is reasonably necessary to assure fairness in determinations made by USPTO about the individual, to obtain information from the individual to the extent practicable, and to take every reasonable step to protect that information from unwarranted disclosure. USPTO will maintain no record describing how an individual exercises rights guaranteed by the First Amendment unless expressly authorized by statute or by the individual about whom the record is maintained or unless pertinent to and within the scope of an authorized law enforcement activity. An individual's name and address will not be sold or rented by USPTO unless such action is specifically authorized by law; however, this provision shall not be construed to require the withholding of names and addresses otherwise permitted to be made public.

(b) This subpart is administered by the Privacy Officer of USPTO.

(c) Matters outside the scope of this subpart include the following:

(1) Requests for records which do not pertain to the individual making the request, or to the individual about whom the request is made if the requester is the parent or guardian of the individual;

(2) Requests involving information pertaining to an individual which is in a record or file but not within the scope of a system of records notice published in the Federal Register;

(3) Requests to correct a record where a grievance procedure is available to the individual either by regulation or by provision in a collective bargaining agreement with USPTO, and the individual has initiated, or has expressed in writing the intention of initiating, such grievance procedure. An individual selecting the grievance procedure waives the use of the procedures in this subpart to correct or amend a record; and,

(4) Requests for employee-employer services and counseling which were routinely granted prior to enactment of the Act, including, but not limited to, test calculations of retirement benefits, explanations of health and life insurance programs, and explanations of tax withholding options.

(d) Any request for records which pertains to the individual making the request, or to the individual about whom the request is made if the requester is the parent or guardian of the individual, shall be processed under the Act and this subpart and under the Freedom of Information Act and USPTO's implementing regulations at Subpart A of this part, regardless whether the Act or the Freedom of Information Act is mentioned in the request.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52923, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52923, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.22 Definitions.

(a) All terms used in this subpart which are defined in 5 U.S.C. 552a shall have the same meaning herein.

(b) As used in this subpart:

(1) Act means the "Privacy Act of 1974, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552a)".

(2) Appeal means a request by an individual to review and reverse an initial denial of a request by that individual for correction or amendment.

(3) USPTO means the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

(4) Inquiry means either a request for general information regarding the Act and this subpart or a request by an individual (or that individual's parent or guardian) that USPTO determine whether it has any record in a system of records which pertains to that individual.

(5) Person means any human being and also shall include but not be limited to, corporations, associations, partnerships, trustees, receivers, personal representatives, and public or private organizations.

(6) Privacy Officer means a USPTO employee designated to administer this subpart.

(7) Request for access means a request by an individual or an individual's parent or guardian to see a record which is in a particular system of records and which pertains to that individual.

(8) Request for correction or amendment means the request by an individual or an individual's parent or guardian that USPTO change (either by correction, amendment, addition or deletion) a particular record in a system of records which pertains to that individual.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52924, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52924, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.23 Procedures for making inquiries.

(a) Any individual, regardless of age, who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States may submit an inquiry to USPTO. The inquiry should be made either in person at Crystal Park Two, 2121 Crystal Park Drive, Suite 714, Arlington, Virginia, or by mail addressed to the Privacy Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, WASHINGTON DC 20231 or to the official identified in the notification procedures paragraph of the systems of records notice published in the Federal Register. If an individual believes USPTO maintains a record pertaining to that individual but does not know which system of records might contain such a record, the USPTO Privacy Officer will provide assistance in person or by mail.

(b) Inquiries submitted by mail should include the words "PRIVACY ACT INQUIRY" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. If the inquiry is for general information regarding the Act and this subpart, no particular information is required. USPTO reserves the right to require compliance with the identification procedures appearing at § 102.24(d) where circumstances warrant. If the inquiry is a request that USPTO determine whether it has, in a given system of records, a record which pertains to the individual, the following information should be submitted:

(1) Name of individual whose record is sought;

(2) Individual whose record is sought is either a U.S. citizen or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence;

(3) Identifying data that will help locate the record (for example, maiden name, occupational license number, period or place of employment, etc.);

(4) Record sought, by description and by record system name, if known;

(5) Action requested (that is, sending information on how to exercise rights under the Act; determining whether requested record exists; gaining access to requested record; or obtaining copy of requested record);

(6) Copy of court guardianship order or minor's birth certificate, as provided in § 102.24(f)(3), but only if requester is guardian or parent of individual whose record is sought;

(7) Requester's name (printed), signature, address, and telephone number (optional);

(8) Date; and,

(9) Certification of request by notary or other official, but only if

(i) Request is for notification that requested record exists, for access to requested record or for copy of requested record;

(ii) Record is not available to any person under 5 U.S.C. 552; and

(iii) Requester does not appear before an employee of USPTO for verification of identity.

(c) Any inquiry which is not addressed as specified in paragraph (a) of this section or which is not marked as specified in paragraph (b) of this section will be so addressed and marked by USPTO personnel and forwarded immediately to the Privacy Officer. An inquiry which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring the time period for response until actual receipt by the Privacy Officer. In each instance when an inquiry so forwarded is received, the Privacy Officer shall notify the individual that his or her inquiry was improperly addressed and the date the inquiry was received at the proper address.

(d)(1) Each inquiry received shall be acted upon promptly by the Privacy Officer. Every effort will be made to respond within ten working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) of the date of receipt. If a response cannot be made within ten working days, the Privacy Officer shall send an acknowledgment during that period providing information on the status of the inquiry and asking for such further information as may be necessary to process the inquiry. The first correspondence sent by the Privacy Officer to the requester shall contain USPTO's control number assigned to the request, as well as a note that the requester should use that number in all future contacts in order to facilitate processing. USPTO shall use that control number in all subsequent correspondence.

(2) If the Privacy Officer fails to send an acknowledgment within ten working days, as provided above, the requester may ask the General Counsel to take corrective action. No failure of the Privacy Officer to send an acknowledgment shall confer administrative finality for purposes of judicial review.

(e) An individual shall not be required to state a reason or otherwise justify his or her inquiry.

(f) Special note should be taken of the fact that certain agencies are responsible for publishing notices of systems of records having Government-wide application to other agencies, including USPTO. The agencies known to be publishing these general notices and the types of records covered therein appear in an appendix to this part. The provisions of this section, and particularly paragraph (a) of this section, should be followed in making inquiries with respect to such records. Such records in USPTO are subject to the provisions of this part to the extent indicated in the appendix to this part. The exemptions, if any, determined by an agency publishing a general notice shall be invoked and applied by USPTO after consultation, as necessary, with that other agency.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52924, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52924, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.24 Procedures for making requests for records.

(a) Any individual, regardless of age, who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States may submit a request for access to records to USPTO. The request should be made either in person at Crystal Park Two, 2121 Crystal Drive, Suite 714, Arlington, Virginia, or by mail addressed to the Privacy Officer, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231.

(b) Requests submitted by mail should include the words "PRIVACY ACT REQUEST" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. Any request which is not addressed as specified in paragraph (a) of this section or which is not marked as specified in this paragraph will be so addressed and marked by USPTO personnel and forwarded immediately to the Privacy Officer. A request which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring time periods for response until actual receipt by the Privacy Officer. In each instance when a request so forwarded is received, the Privacy Officer shall notify the individual that his or her request was improperly addressed and the date when the request was received at the proper address.

(c) If the request follows an inquiry under § 102.23 in connection with which the individual's identity was established by USPTO, the individual need only indicate the record to which access is sought, provide the USPTO control number assigned to the request, and sign and date the request. If the request is not preceded by an inquiry under § 102.23, the procedures of this section should be followed.

(d) The requirements for identification of individuals seeking access to records are as follows:

(1) In person. Each individual making a request in person shall be required to present satisfactory proof of identity. The means of proof, in the order of preference and priority, are:

(i) A document bearing the individual's photograph (for example, driver's license, passport or military or civilian identification card);

(ii) A document, preferably issued for participation in a federally sponsored program, bearing the individual's signature (for example, unemployment insurance book, employer's identification card, national credit card, and professional, craft or union membership card); and

(iii) A document bearing neither the photograph nor the signature of the individual, preferably issued for participation in a federally sponsored program (for example, Medicaid card). In the event the individual can provide no

suitable documentation of identity, USPTO will require a signed statement asserting the individual's identity and stipulating that the individual understands the penalty provision of 5 U.S.C. 552a(i)(3) recited in § 102.32(a). In order to avoid any unwarranted disclosure of an individual's records, USPTO reserves the right to determine the adequacy of proof of identity offered by any individual, particularly when the request involves a sensitive record.

(2) Not in person. If the individual making a request does not appear in person before the Privacy Officer or other employee authorized to determine identity, a certification of a notary public or equivalent officer empowered to administer oaths must accompany the request under the circumstances prescribed in § 102.23(b)(9). The certification in or attached to the letter must be substantially in accordance with the following text:

City of _____

County of _____

(Name of individual), who affixed (his) (her) signature below in my presence, came before me, a (title), in and for the aforesaid County and State, this _____ day of _____, 20_____, and established (his) (her) identity to my satisfaction.

My commission expires _____.

(Signature)

(3) Parents of minors and legal guardians. An individual acting as the parent of a minor or the legal guardian of the individual to whom a record pertains shall establish his or her personal identity in the same manner prescribed in either paragraph (d)(1) or (d)(2) of this section. In addition, such other individual shall establish his or her identity in the representative capacity of parent or legal guardian. In the case of the parent of a minor, the proof of identity shall be a certified or authenticated copy of the minor's birth certificate. In the case of a legal guardian of an individual who has been declared incompetent due to physical or mental incapacity or age by a court of competent jurisdiction, the proof of identity shall be a certified or authenticated copy of the court's order. For purposes of the Act, a parent or legal guardian may represent only a living individual, not a decedent. A parent or legal guardian may be accompanied during personal access to a record by another individual, provided the provisions of § 102.25(f) are satisfied.

(e) When the provisions of this subpart are alleged to impede an individual in exercising his or her right to access, USPTO will consider, from an individual making a request, alternative suggestions regarding proof of identity and access to records.

(f) An individual shall not be required to state a reason or otherwise justify his or her request for access to a record.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52925, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52925, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.25 Disclosure of requested records to individuals.

(a)(1) The Privacy Officer shall act promptly upon each request. Every effort will be made to respond within ten working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) of the date of receipt. If a response cannot be made within ten working days due to unusual circumstances, the Privacy Officer shall send an acknowledgment during that period providing information on the status of the request and asking for any further information that may be necessary to process the request. "Unusual circumstances" shall include circumstances in which

(i) A search for and collection of requested records from inactive storage, field facilities or other establishments is required;

(ii) A voluminous amount of data is involved;

(iii) Information on other individuals must be separated or expunged from the particular record; or

(iv) Consultations with other agencies having a substantial interest in the determination of the request are necessary.

(2) If the Privacy Officer fails to send an acknowledgment within ten working days, as provided above in paragraph (a) of this section, the requester may ask the General Counsel to take corrective action. No failure of the Privacy Officer to send an acknowledgment shall confer administrative finality for purposes of judicial review.

(b) Grant of access -- (1) Notification. An individual shall be granted access to a record pertaining to him or her, except where the provisions of paragraph (g)(1) of this section apply. The Privacy Officer will notify the individual of a determination to grant access, and provide the following information:

(i) The methods of access, as set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section;

(ii) The place at which the record may be inspected;

(iii) The earliest date on which the record may be inspected and the period of time that the records will remain available for inspection. In no event shall the earliest date be later than thirty calendar days from the date of notification;

(iv) The estimated date by which a copy of the record could be mailed and the estimate of fees pursuant to § 102.31. In no event shall the estimated date be later than thirty calendar days from the date of notification;

(v) The fact that the individual, if he or she wishes, may be accompanied by another individual during personal access, subject to the procedures set forth in paragraph (f) of this section; and,

(vi) Any additional requirements needed to grant access to a specific record.

(2) Methods of access. The following methods of access to records by an individual may be available depending on the circumstances of a given situation:

(i) Inspection in person may be had in a location specified by the Privacy Officer during business hours;

(ii) Transfer of records to a Federal facility more convenient to the individual may be arranged, but only if the Privacy Officer determines that a suitable facility is available, that the individual's access can be properly supervised at that facility, and that transmittal of the records to that facility will not unduly interfere with operations of USPTO or involve unreasonable costs, in terms of both money and manpower; and

(iii) Copies may be mailed at the request of the individual, subject to payment of the fees prescribed in § 102.31. USPTO, on its own initiative, may elect to provide a copy by mail, in which case no fee will be charged the individual.

(c) Access to medical records is governed by the provisions of § 102.26.

(d) USPTO will supply such other information and assistance at the time of access as to make the record intelligible to the individual.

(e) USPTO reserves the right to limit access to copies and abstracts of original records, rather than the original records. This election would be appropriate, for example, when the record is in an automated data media such as tape or diskette, when the record contains information on other individuals, and when deletion of information is permissible under exemptions (for example, 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2)). In no event shall original records of USPTO be made available to the individual except under the immediate supervision of the Privacy Officer or the Privacy Officer's designee.

(f) Any individual who requests access to a record pertaining to that individual may be accompanied by another individual of his or her choice. "Accompanied" includes discussion of the record in the presence of the other individual. The individual to whom the record pertains shall authorize the presence of the other individual in writing. The

authorization shall include the name of the other individual, a specific description of the record to which access is sought, the USPTO control number assigned to the request, the date, and the signature of the individual to whom the record pertains. The other individual shall sign the authorization in the presence of the Privacy Officer. An individual shall not be required to state a reason or otherwise justify his or her decision to be accompanied by another individual during personal access to a record.

(g) Initial denial of access -- (1) Grounds. Access by an individual to a record which pertains to that individual will be denied only upon a determination by the Privacy Officer that:

(i) The record is exempt under § 102.33 or § 102.34, or exempt by determination of another agency publishing notice of the system of records, as described in § 102.23(f);

(ii) The record is information compiled in reasonable anticipation of a civil action or proceeding;

(iii) The provisions of § 102.26 pertaining to medical records temporarily have been invoked; or

(iv) The individual has unreasonably failed to comply with the procedural requirements of this part.

(2) Notification. The Privacy Officer shall give notice of denial of access to records to the individual in writing and shall include the following information:

(i) The Privacy Officer's name and title or position;

(ii) The date of the denial;

(iii) The reasons for the denial, including citation to the appropriate section of the Act and this part;

(iv) The individual's opportunities, if any, for further administrative consideration, including the identity and address of the responsible official. If no further administrative consideration within USPTO is available, the notice shall state that the denial is administratively final; and

(v) If stated to be administratively final within USPTO, the individual's right to judicial review provided under 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1), as limited by 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(5).

(3) Administrative review. When an initial denial of a request is issued by the Privacy Officer, the individual's opportunities for further consideration shall be as follows:

(i) As to denial under paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, two opportunities for further consideration are available in the alternative:

(A) If the individual contests the application of the exemption to the records, review procedures in § 102.25(g)(3)(ii) shall apply; or

(B) If the individual challenges the exemption itself, the procedure is a petition for the issuance, amendment, or repeal of a rule under 5 U.S.C. 553(e). If the exemption was determined by USPTO, such petition shall be filed with the General Counsel. If the exemption was determined by another agency (as described in § 102.23(f)), USPTO will provide the individual with the name and address of the other agency and any relief sought by the individual shall be that provided by the regulations of the other agency. Within USPTO, no such denial is administratively final until such a petition has been filed by the individual and disposed of on the merits by the General Counsel.

(ii) As to denial under paragraphs (g)(1)(ii) of this section, (g)(1)(iv) of this section or (to the limited extent provided in paragraph (g)(3)(i)(A) of this section) paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, the individual may file for review with the General Counsel, as indicated in the Privacy Officer's initial denial notification. The procedures appearing in § 102.28 shall be followed by both the individual and USPTO to the maximum extent practicable.

(iii) As to denial under paragraph (g)(1)(iii) of this section, no further administrative consideration within USPTO is available because the denial is not administratively final until expiration of the time period indicated in § 102.26(a).

(h) If a request is partially granted and partially denied, the Privacy Officer shall follow the appropriate procedures of this section as to the records within the grant and the records within the denial.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52925, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52925, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.26 Special procedures: Medical records.

(a) No response to any request for access to medical records by an individual will be issued by the Privacy Officer for a period of seven working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays) from the date of receipt.

(b) USPTO has published as a routine use, for all systems of records containing medical records, consultations with an individual's physician or psychologist if, in the sole judgment of USPTO, disclosure could have an adverse effect upon the individual. The mandatory waiting period set forth in paragraph (a) of this section will permit exercise of this routine use in appropriate cases. USPTO will pay no cost of any such consultation.

(c) In every case of a request by an individual for access to medical records, the Privacy Officer shall:

(1) Inform the individual of the waiting period prescribed in paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Obtain the name and address of the individual's physician and/or psychologist, if the individual consents to give them;

(3) Obtain specific, written consent for USPTO to consult the individual's physician and/or psychologist in the event that USPTO believes such consultation is advisable, if the individual consents to give such authorization;

(4) Obtain specific, written consent for USPTO to provide the medical records to the individual's physician or psychologist in the event that USPTO believes access to the record by the individual is best effected under the guidance of the individual's physician or psychologist, if the individual consents to give such authorization; and

(5) Forward the individual's medical record to USPTO's medical expert for review and a determination on whether consultation with or transmittal of the medical records to the individual's physician or psychologist is warranted. If the consultation with or transmittal of such records to the individual's physician or psychologist is determined to be warranted, USPTO's medical expert shall so consult or transmit. Whether or not such a consultation or transmittal occurs, USPTO's medical officer shall provide instruction to the Privacy Officer regarding the conditions of access by the individual to his or her medical records.

(d) If an individual refuses in writing to give the names and consents set forth in paragraphs (c)(2) through (c)(4) of this section and USPTO has determined that disclosure could have an adverse effect upon the individual, USPTO shall give the individual access to said records by means of a copy, provided without cost to the requester, sent registered mail return receipt requested.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52927, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52927, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.27 Procedures for making requests for correction or amendment.

(a) Any individual, regardless of age, who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence into the United States may submit a request for correction or amendment to USPTO. The request should be made either in person or by mail addressed to the Privacy Officer who processed the individual's request for access to the record, and to whom is delegated authority to make initial determinations on requests for correction or amendment. The office of the Privacy Officer is open to the public between the hours of 9 a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday (excluding legal public holidays).

(b) Requests submitted by mail should include the words "PRIVACY ACT REQUEST" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. Any request which is not addressed as specified in paragraph (a) of this section or which is not marked as specified in this paragraph will be so addressed and marked by USPTO personnel and forwarded immediately to the Privacy Officer. A request which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring the time period for response until actual receipt by the Privacy Officer. In each instance when a request so forwarded is received, the Privacy Officer shall notify the individual that his or her request was improperly addressed and the date the request was received at the proper address.

(c) Since the request, in all cases, will follow a request for access under § 102.25, the individual's identity will be established by his or her signature on the request and use of the USPTO control number assigned to the request.

(d) A request for correction or amendment should include the following:

(1) Specific identification of the record sought to be corrected or amended (for example, description, title, date, paragraph, sentence, line and words);

(2) The specific wording to be deleted, if any;

(3) The specific wording to be inserted or added, if any, and the exact place at which to be inserted or added; and

(4) A statement of the basis for the requested correction or amendment, with all available supporting documents and materials which substantiate the statement. The statement should identify the criterion of the Act being invoked, that is, whether the information in the record is unnecessary, inaccurate, irrelevant, untimely or incomplete.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52927, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52927, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.28 Review of requests for correction or amendment.

(a)(1)(i) Not later than ten working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) after receipt of a request to correct or amend a record, the Privacy Officer shall send an acknowledgment providing an estimate of time within which action will be taken on the request and asking for such further information as may be necessary to process the request. The estimate of time may take into account unusual circumstances as described in § 102.25(a). No acknowledgment will be sent if the request can be reviewed, processed, and the individual notified of the results of review (either compliance or denial) within the ten working days. Requests filed in person will be acknowledged in writing at the time submitted.

(ii) If the Privacy Officer fails to send the acknowledgment within ten working days, as provided in paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section, the requester may ask the General Counsel to take corrective action. No failure of the Privacy Officer to send an acknowledgment shall confer administrative finality for purposes of judicial review.

(2) Promptly after acknowledging receipt of a request, or after receiving such further information as might have been requested, or after arriving at a decision within the ten working days, the Privacy Officer shall either:

(i) Make the requested correction or amendment and advise the individual in writing of such action, providing either a copy of the corrected or amended record or a statement as to the means whereby the correction or amendment was effected in cases where a copy cannot be provided (for example, erasure of information from a record maintained only in magnetically recorded computer files); or

(ii) Inform the individual in writing that his or her request is denied and provide the following information:

(A) The Privacy Officer's name and title or position;

(B) The date of the denial;

(C) The reasons for the denial, including citation to the appropriate sections of the Act and this subpart; and

(D) The procedures for appeal of the denial as set forth in § 102.29, including the address of the General Counsel.

(3) The term promptly in this section means within thirty working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal public holidays). If the Privacy Officer cannot make the determination within thirty working days, the individual will be advised in writing of the reason therefor and of the estimated date by which the determination will be made.

(b) Whenever an individual's record is corrected or amended pursuant to a request by that individual, the Privacy Officer shall be responsible for notifying all persons and agencies to which the corrected or amended portion of the record had been disclosed prior to its correction or amendment, if an accounting of such disclosure required by the Act was made. The notification shall require a recipient agency maintaining the record to acknowledge receipt of the notification, to correct or amend the record, and to apprise any agency or person to which it had disclosed the record of the substance of the correction or amendment.

(c) The following criteria will be considered by the Privacy Officer in reviewing a request for correction or amendment:

(1) The sufficiency of the evidence submitted by the individual;

(2) The factual accuracy of the information;

(3) The relevance and necessity of the information in terms of purpose for which it was collected;

(4) The timeliness and currency of the information in light of the purpose for which it was collected;

(5) The completeness of the information in terms of the purpose for which it was collected;

(6) The degree of risk that denial of the request could unfairly result in determinations adverse to the individual;

(7) The character of the record sought to be corrected or amended; and

(8) The propriety and feasibility of complying with the specific means of correction or amendment requested by the individual.

(d) USPTO will not undertake to gather evidence for the individual, but does reserve the right to verify the evidence which the individual submits.

(e) Correction or amendment of a record requested by an individual will be denied only upon a determination by the Privacy Officer that:

(1) The individual has failed to establish, by a preponderance of the evidence, the propriety of the correction or amendment in light of the criteria set forth in paragraph (c) of this section;

(2) The record sought to be corrected or amended is part of the official record in a terminated judicial, quasi-judicial, or quasi-legislative proceeding to which the individual was a party or participant;

(3) The information in the record sought to be corrected or amended, or the record sought to be corrected or amended, is the subject of a pending judicial, quasi-judicial, or quasi-legislative proceeding to which the individual is a party or participant;

(4) The correction or amendment would violate a duly enacted statute or promulgated regulation; or

(5) The individual has unreasonably failed to comply with the procedural requirements of this part.

(f) If a request is partially granted and partially denied, the Privacy Officer shall follow the appropriate procedures of this section as to the records within the grant and the records within the denial.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52927, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52927, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.29 Appeal of initial adverse determination on correction or amendment.

(a) When a request for correction or amendment has been denied initially under § 102.28, the individual may submit a written appeal within thirty working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) after the date of the initial denial. When an appeal is submitted by mail, the postmark is conclusive as to timeliness.

(b) An appeal should be addressed to the General Counsel, United States Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. An appeal should include the words "PRIVACY APPEAL" in capital letters at the top of the letter and on the face of the envelope. An appeal not addressed and marked as provided herein will be so marked by USPTO personnel when it is so identified and will be forwarded immediately to the General Counsel. An appeal which is not properly addressed by the individual will not be deemed to have been "received" for purposes of measuring the time periods in this section until actual receipt by the General Counsel. In each instance when an appeal so forwarded is received, the General Counsel shall notify the individual that his or her appeal was improperly addressed and the date when the appeal was received at the proper address.

(c) The individual's appeal shall include a statement of the reasons why the initial denial is believed to be in error and USPTO's control number assigned to the request. The appeal shall be signed by the individual. The record which the individual requests be corrected or amended and all correspondence between the Privacy Officer and the requester will be furnished by the Privacy Officer who issued the initial denial. Although the foregoing normally will comprise the entire record on appeal, the General Counsel may seek additional information necessary to assure that the final determination is fair and equitable and, in such instances, disclose the additional information to the individual to the greatest extent possible, and provide an opportunity for comment thereon.

(d) No personal appearance or hearing on appeal will be allowed.

(e) The General Counsel shall act upon the appeal and issue a final determination in writing not later than thirty working days (i.e., excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal public holidays) from the date on which the appeal is received, except that the General Counsel may extend the thirty days upon deciding that a fair and equitable review cannot be made within that period, but only if the individual is advised in writing of the reason for the extension and the estimated date by which a final determination will issue. The estimated date should not be later than the sixtieth working day after receipt of the appeal unless unusual circumstances, as described in § 102.25(a), are met.

(f) If the appeal is determined in favor of the individual, the final determination shall include the specific corrections or amendments to be made and a copy thereof shall be transmitted promptly both to the individual and to the Privacy Officer who issued the initial denial. Upon receipt of such final determination, the Privacy Officer promptly shall take the actions set forth in § 102.28(a)(2)(i) and (b).

(g) If the appeal is denied, the final determination shall be transmitted promptly to the individual and state the reasons for the denial. The notice of final determination also shall inform the individual of the following:

(1) The right of the individual under the Act to file a concise statement of reasons for disagreeing with the final determination. The statement ordinarily should not exceed one page and USPTO reserves the right to reject a statement of excessive length. Such a statement shall be filed with the General Counsel. It should provide the USPTO control number assigned to the request, indicate the date of the final determination and be signed by the individual. The General Counsel shall acknowledge receipt of such statement and inform the individual of the date on which it was received.

(2) The facts that any such disagreement statement filed by the individual will be noted in the disputed record, that the purposes and uses to which the statement will be put are those applicable to the record in which it is noted, and that a copy of the statement will be provided to persons and agencies to which the record is disclosed subsequent to the date of receipt of such statement;

(3) The fact that USPTO will append to any such disagreement statement filed by the individual, a copy of the final determination or summary thereof which also will be provided to persons and agencies to which the disagreement statement is disclosed; and,

(4) The right of the individual to judicial review of the final determination under 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1)(A), as limited by 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(5).

(h) In making the final determination, the General Counsel shall employ the criteria set forth in § 102.28(c) and shall deny an appeal only on the grounds set forth in § 102.28(e).

(i) If an appeal is partially granted and partially denied, the General Counsel shall follow the appropriate procedures of this section as to the records within the grant and the records within the denial.

(j) Although a copy of the final determination or a summary thereof will be treated as part of the individual's record for purposes of disclosure in instances where the individual has filed a disagreement statement, it will not be subject to correction or amendment by the individual.

(k) The provisions of paragraphs (g)(1) through (g)(3) of this section satisfy the requirements of 5 U.S.C. 552a(e)(3).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52928, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52928, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.30 Disclosure of record to person other than the individual to whom it pertains.

(a) USPTO may disclose a record pertaining to an individual to a person other than the individual to whom it pertains only in the following instances:

(1) Upon written request by the individual, including authorization under § 102.25(f);

(2) With the prior written consent of the individual;

(3) To a parent or legal guardian under 5 U.S.C. 552a(h);

(4) When required by the Act and not covered explicitly by the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552a(b); and

(5) When permitted under 5 U.S.C. 552a(b)(1) through (12), which read as follows:1

15 U.S.C. 552a(b)(4) has no application within USPTO.

(i) To those officers and employees of the agency which maintains the record who have a need for the record in the performance of their duties;

(ii) Required under 5 U.S.C. 552;

(iii) For a routine use as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552a(a)(7) and described under 5 U.S.C. 552a(e)(4)(D);

(iv) To the Bureau of the Census for purposes of planning or carrying out a census or survey or related activity pursuant to the provisions of Title 13;

(v) To a recipient who has provided the agency with advance adequate written assurance that the record will be used solely as a statistical research or reporting record, and the record is to be transferred in a form that is not individually identifiable;

(vi) To the National Archives and Records Administration as a record which has sufficient historical or other value to warrant its continued preservation by the United States Government, or for evaluation by the Archivist of the United States or the designee of the Archivist to determine whether the record has such value;

(vii) To another agency or to an instrumentality of any governmental jurisdiction within or under the control of the United States for a civil or criminal law enforcement activity if the activity is authorized by law, and if the head of the agency or instrumentality has made a written request to the agency which maintains the record specifying the particular portion desired and the law enforcement activity for which the record is sought;

(viii) To a person pursuant to a showing of compelling circumstances affecting the health or safety of an individual if upon such disclosure notification is transmitted to the last known address of such individual;

(ix) To either House of Congress, or, to the extent of matter within its jurisdiction, any committee or subcommittee thereof, any joint committee of Congress or subcommittee of any such joint committee;

(x) To the Comptroller General, or any of his authorized representatives, in the course of the performance of the duties of the General Accounting Office;

(xi) Pursuant to the order of a court of competent jurisdiction; or

(xii) To a consumer reporting agency in accordance with section 3711(e) of Title 31.

(b) The situations referred to in paragraph (a)(4) of this section include the following:

(1) 5 U.S.C. 552a(c)(4) requires dissemination of a corrected or amended record or notation of a disagreement statement by USPTO in certain circumstances;

(2) 5 U.S.C. 552a(d) requires disclosure of records to the individual to whom they pertain, upon request; and

(3) 5 U.S.C. 552a(g) authorizes civil action by an individual and requires disclosure by USPTO to the court.

(c) The Privacy Officer shall make an accounting of each disclosure by him of any record contained in a system of records in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552a(c) (1) and (2). Except for a disclosure made under 5 U.S.C. 552a(b)(7), the Privacy Officer shall make such accounting available to any individual, insofar as it pertains to that individual, on request submitted in accordance with § 102.24. The Privacy Officer shall make reasonable efforts to notify any individual when any record in a system of records is disclosed to any person under compulsory legal process, promptly upon being informed that such process has become a matter of public record.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52929, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52929, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.31 Fees.

The only fees to be charged to or collected from an individual under the provisions of this part are for duplication of records at the request of the individual. The Privacy Officer shall charge fees for duplication of records under the Act in the same way in which they charge duplication fees under § 102.11, except as provided in this section.

(a) No fees shall be charged or collected for the following: Search for and retrieval of the records; review of the records; copying at the initiative of USPTO without a request from the individual; transportation of records and personnel; and first-class postage.

(b) It is the policy of USPTO to provide an individual with one copy of each record corrected or amended pursuant to his or her request without charge as evidence of the correction or amendment.

(c) As required by the United States Office of Personnel Management in its published regulations implementing the Act, USPTO will charge no fee for a single copy of a personnel record covered by that agency's Government-wide published notice of systems of records.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52929, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52929, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.32 Penalties.

(a) The Act provides, in pertinent part:

Any person who knowingly and willfully requests or obtains any record concerning an individual from an agency under false pretenses shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and fined not more than $ 5,000. (5 U.S.C. 552a(i)(3)).

(b) A person who falsely or fraudulently attempts to obtain records under the Act also may be subject to prosecution under such other criminal statutes as 18 U.S.C. 494, 495 and 1001.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52929, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52929, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.33 General exemptions.

(a) Individuals may not have access to records maintained by USPTO but which were provided by another agency which has determined by regulation that such information is subject to general exemption under 5 U.S.C. 552a(j). If such exempt records are within a request for access, USPTO will advise the individual of their existence and of the name and address of the source agency. For any further information concerning the record and the exemption, the individual must contact that source agency.

(b) The general exemption determined to be necessary and proper with respect to systems of records maintained by USPTO, including the parts of each system to be exempted, the provisions of the Act from which they are exempted, and the justification for the exemption, is as follows: Investigative Records -- Contract and Grant Frauds and Employee Criminal Misconduct -- COMMERCE/DEPT. -- 12. Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2), these records are hereby determined to be exempt from all provisions of the Act, except 5 U.S.C. 552a (b), (c) (1) and (2), (e)(4) (A) through (F), (e) (6), (7), (9), (10), and (11), and (i). These exemptions are necessary to ensure the proper functions of the law enforcement activity, to protect confidential sources of information, to fulfill promises of confidentiality, to prevent interference with law enforcement proceedings, to avoid the disclosure of investigative techniques, to avoid the endangering of law enforcement personnel, to avoid premature disclosure of the knowledge of criminal activity and the evidentiary bases of possible enforcement actions, and to maintain the integrity of the law enforcement process.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52930, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52930, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

§ 102.34 Specific exemptions.

(a)(1) Some systems of records under the Act which are maintained by USPTO contain, from time-to-time, material subject to the exemption appearing at 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(1), relating to national defense and foreign policy materials. The systems of records published in the Federal Register by USPTO which are within this exemption are: COMMERCE/PAT-TM-6, COMMERCE/PAT-TM-7, COMMERCE/PAT-TM-8, COMMERCE/PAT-TM-9.

(2) USPTO hereby asserts a claim to exemption of such materials wherever they might appear in such systems of records, or any systems of records, at present or in the future. The materials would be exempt from 5 U.S.C. 552a (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4) (G), (H), and (I), and (f) to protect materials required by Executive order to be kept secret in the interest of the national defense and foreign policy.

(b) The specific exemptions determined to be necessary and proper with respect to systems of records maintained by USPTO, including the parts of each system to be exempted, the provisions of the Act from which they are exempted, and the justification for the exemption, are as follows:

(1)(i) Exempt under 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2). The systems of records exempt (some only conditionally), the sections of the Act from which exempted, and the reasons therefor are as follows:

(A) Investigative Records -- Contract and Grant Frauds and Employee Criminal Misconduct -- COMMERCE/DEPT-12, but only on condition that the general exemption claimed in § 102.33(b)(3) is held to be invalid;

(B) Investigative Records -- Persons Within the Investigative Jurisdiction of USPTO -- COMMERCE/DEPT-13;

(C) Litigation, Claims and Administrative Proceeding Records -- COMMERCE/DEPT-14;

(D) Attorneys and Agents Registered to Practice Before the Office -- COMMERCE/PAT-TM-1;

(E) Complaints, Investigations and Disciplinary Proceedings Relating to Registered Patent Attorneys and Agents -- COMMERCE/PAT-TM-2; and

(F) Non-Registered Persons Rendering Assistance to Patent Applicants -- COMMERCE/PAT-TM-5.

(ii) The foregoing are exempted from 5 U.S.C. 552a (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4)(G), (H), and (I), and (f). The reasons for asserting the exemption are to prevent subjects of investigation from frustrating the investigatory process, to insure the proper functioning and integrity of law enforcement activities, to prevent disclosure of investigative techniques, to maintain the ability to obtain necessary information, to fulfill commitments made to sources to protect their identities and the confidentiality of information and to avoid endangering these sources and law enforcement personnel. Special note is taken of the fact that the proviso clause in this exemption imports due process and procedural protections for the individual. The existence and general character of the information exempted will be made known to the individual to whom it pertains.

(2)(i) Exempt under 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(5). The systems of records exempt (some only conditionally), the sections of the act from which exempted, and the reasons therefor are as follows:

(A) Investigative Records -- Contract and Grant Frauds and Employee Criminal Misconduct -- COMMERCE/DEPT-12, but only on condition that the general exemption claimed in § 102.33(b)(3) is held to be invalid;

(B) Investigative Records -- Persons Within the Investigative Jurisdiction of USPTO -- COMMERCE/DEPT-13; and

(C) Litigation, Claims, and Administrative Proceeding Records -- COMMERCE/DEPT-14.

(ii) The foregoing are exempted from 5 U.S.C. 552a (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4) (G), (H), and (I), and (f). The reasons for asserting the exemption are to maintain the ability to obtain candid and necessary information, to fulfill commitments made to sources to protect the confidentiality of information, to avoid endangering these sources and, ultimately, to facilitate proper selection or continuance of the best applicants or persons for a given position or contract. Special note is made of the limitation on the extent to which this exemption may be asserted. The existence and general character of the information exempted will be made known to the individual to whom it pertains.

(c) At the present time, USPTO claims no exemption under 5 U.S.C. 552a(k) (3), (4), (6) and (7).

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52930, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52930, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

APPENDIX Appendix to Part 102 --Systems of Records Noticed by other Federal Agencies 1 and Applicable to USPTO Records and Applicability of this Part thereto

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 52916, 52930, Aug. 31, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 52916, 52930, Aug. 31, 2000, added Part 102, effective Oct. 2, 2000.]

1. Other than systems of records noticed by the Department of Commerce. Where the system of records applies only to USPTO, these regulations apply. Where the system of records applies generally to components of the Department of Commerce, the regulations of that department attach at the point of any denial for access or for correction or amendment.

SUBCHAPTER B -- ADMINISTRATION

PART 104 --LEGAL PROCESSES

SUBPART A --GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 104.1 Definitions.

Demand means a request, order, or subpoena for testimony or documents for use in a legal proceeding.

Director means the Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Document means any record, paper, and other property held by the Office, including without limitation, official letters, telegrams, memoranda, reports, studies, calendar and diary entries, maps, graphs, pamphlets, notes, charts, tabulations, analyses, statistical or informational accumulations, any kind of summaries of meetings and conversations, film impressions, magnetic tapes, and sound or mechanical reproductions.

Employee means any current or former officer or employee of the Office.

Legal proceeding means any pretrial, trial, and posttrial stages of existing or reasonably anticipated judicial or administrative actions, hearings, investigations, or similar proceedings before courts, commissions, boards or other tribunals, foreign or domestic. This phrase includes all phases of discovery as well as responses to formal or informal requests by attorneys or others involved in legal proceedings.

Office means the United States Patent and Trademark Office, including any operating unit in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, and its predecessors, the Patent Office and the Patent and Trademark Office.

Official business means the authorized business of the Office.

General Counsel means the General Counsel of the Office.

Testimony means a statement in any form, including personal appearances before a court or other legal tribunal, interviews, depositions, telephonic, televised, or videotaped statements or any responses given during discovery or similar proceedings, which response would involve more than the production of documents, including a declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25 or 28 U.S.C. 1746.

United States means the Federal Government, its departments and agencies, individuals acting on behalf of the Federal Government, and parties to the extent they are represented by the United States.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.2 Address for mail and service; telephone number.

(a) Mail under this part should be addressed to General Counsel, United States Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, VA 22215.

(b) Service by hand should be made during business hours to the Office of the General Counsel, Crystal Park Two, Suite 905, 2121 Crystal Drive, Arlington, Virginia.

(c) The Office of the General Counsel may be reached by telephone at 703-308-2000 during business hours.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.3 Waiver of rules.

In extraordinary situations, when the interest of justice requires, the General Counsel may waive or suspend the rules of this part, sua sponte or on petition of an interested party to the Director, subject to such requirements as the General Counsel may impose. Any petition must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h) of this title.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.4 Relationship of this Part to the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure.

Nothing in this part waives or limits any requirement under the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

SUBPART B --SERVICE OF PROCESS

§ 104.11 Scope and purpose.

(a) This subpart sets forth the procedures to be followed when a summons and complaint is served on the Office or on the Director or an employee in his or her official capacity.

(b) This subpart is intended, and should be construed, to ensure the efficient administration of the Office and not to impede any legal proceeding.

(c) This subpart does not apply to subpoenas, the procedures for which are set out in subpart C.

(d) This subpart does not apply to service of process made on an employee personally on matters not related to official business of the Office or to the official responsibilities of the employee.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.12 Acceptance of service of process.

(a) Any summons and complaint to be served in person or by registered or certified mail or as otherwise authorized by law on the Office, on the Director, or on an employee in his or her official capacity, shall be served as indicated in § 104.2.

(b) Any employee of the Office served with a summons and complaint shall immediately notify, and shall deliver the summons and complaint to, the Office of the General Counsel.

(c) Any employee receiving a summons and complaint shall note on the summons and complaint the date, hour, and place of service and whether service was by hand or by mail.

(d) When a legal proceeding is brought to hold an employee personally liable in connection with an action taken in the conduct of official business, rather than liable in an official capacity, the employee by law is to be served personally with process. See Fed. R. Civ. P. 4(e). An employee sued personally for an action taken in the conduct of official business shall immediately notify and deliver a copy of the summons and complaint to the General Counsel.

(e) An employee sued personally in connection with official business may be represented by the Department of Justice at its discretion (28 CFR 50.15 and 50.16).

(f) The Office will only accept service of process for an employee in the employee's official capacity.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

SUBPART C --EMPLOYEE TESTIMONY AND PRODUCTION OF DOCUMENTS IN LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

§ 104.21 Scope and purpose.

(a) This subpart sets forth the policies and procedures of the Office regarding the testimony of employees as witnesses in legal proceedings and the production or disclosure of information contained in Office documents for use in legal proceedings pursuant to a demand.

(b) Exceptions. This subpart does not apply to any legal proceeding in which:

(1) An employee is to testify regarding facts or events that are unrelated to official business; or

(2) A former employee is to testify as an expert in connection with a particular matter in which the former employee did not participate personally while at the Office.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47390, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.22 Demand for testimony or production of documents.

(a) Whenever a demand for testimony or for the production of documents is made upon an employee, the employee shall immediately notify the Office of the General Counsel at the telephone number or addresses in § 104.2 and make arrangements to send the subpoena to the General Counsel promptly.

(b) An employee may not give testimony, produce documents, or answer inquiries from a person not employed by the Office regarding testimony or documents subject to a demand or a potential demand under the provisions of this subpart without the approval of the General Counsel. The General Counsel may authorize the provision of certified copies not otherwise available under Part 1 of this title subject to payment of applicable fees under § 1.19.

(c)(1) Demand for testimony or documents. A demand for the testimony of an employee under this subpart shall be addressed to the General Counsel as indicated in § 104.2.

(2) Subpoenas. A subpoena for employee testimony or for a document shall be served in accordance with the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure or applicable state procedure, and a copy of the subpoena shall be sent to the General Counsel as indicated in § 104.2.

(3) Affidavits. Except when the United States is a party, every demand shall be accompanied by an affidavit or declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746 or 35 U.S.C. 25(b) setting forth the title of the legal proceeding, the forum, the requesting party's interest in the legal proceeding, the reason for the demand, a showing that the desired testimony or document is not reasonably available from any other source, and, if testimony is requested, the intended use of the testimony, a general summary of the desired testimony, and a showing that no document could be provided and used in lieu of testimony.

(d) Failure of the attorney to cooperate in good faith to enable the General Counsel to make an informed determination under this subpart may serve as a basis for a determination not to comply with the demand.

(e) A determination under this subpart to comply or not to comply with a demand is not a waiver or an assertion of any other ground for noncompliance, including privilege, lack of relevance, or technical deficiency.

(f) Noncompliance. If the General Counsel makes a determination not to comply, he or she will seek Department of Justice representation for the employee and will attempt to have the subpoena modified or quashed. If Department of Justice representation cannot be arranged, the employee should appear at the time and place set forth in the subpoena. In such a case, the employee should produce a copy of these rules and state that the General Counsel has advised the employee not to provide the requested testimony nor to produce the requested document. If a legal tribunal rules that the demand in the subpoena must be complied with, the employee shall respectfully decline to comply with the demand, citing United States ex rel. Touhy v. Ragen, 340 U.S. 462 (1951).

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.23 Expert or opinion testimony.

(a)(1) If the General Counsel authorizes an employee to give testimony in a legal proceeding not involving the United States, the testimony, if otherwise proper, shall be limited to facts within the personal knowledge of the employee. Employees, with or without compensation, shall not provide expert testimony in any legal proceedings regarding Office information, subjects, or activities except on behalf of the United States or a party represented by the United States Department of Justice.

(2) The General Counsel may authorize an employee to appear and give the expert or opinion testimony upon the requester showing, pursuant to § 104.3 of this part, that exceptional circumstances warrant such testimony and that the anticipated testimony will not be adverse to the interest of the Office or the United States.

(b)(1) If, while testifying in any legal proceeding, an employee is asked for expert or opinion testimony regarding Office information, subjects, or activities, which testimony has not been approved in advance in writing in accordance with the regulations in this subpart, the witness shall:

(i) Respectfully decline to answer on the grounds that such expert or opinion testimony is forbidden by this subpart;

(ii) Request an opportunity to consult with the General Counsel before giving such testimony; and

(iii) Explain that upon such consultation, approval for such testimony may be provided.

(2) If the tribunal conducting the proceeding then orders the employee to provide expert or opinion testimony regarding Office information, subjects, or activities without the opportunity to consult with the General Counsel, the employee shall respectfully refuse to provide such testimony, citing United States ex rel. Touhy v. Ragen, 340 U.S. 462 (1951).

(c) If an employee is unaware of the regulations in this subpart and provides expert or opinion testimony regarding Office information, subjects, or activities in a legal proceeding without the aforementioned consultation, the employee shall, as soon after testifying as possible, inform the General Counsel that such testimony was given and provide a written summary of the expert or opinion testimony provided.

(d) Proceeding where the United States is a party. In a proceeding in which the United States is a party or is representing a party, an employee may not testify as an expert or opinion witness for any party other than the United States.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.24 Demands or requests in legal proceedings for records protected by confidentiality statutes.

Demands in legal proceedings for the production of records, or for the testimony of employees regarding information protected by the confidentiality provisions of the Patent Act (35 U.S.C. 122), the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a), the Trade Secrets Act (18 U.S.C. 1905), or any other confidentiality statute, must satisfy the requirements for disclosure set forth in those statutes and associated rules before the records may be provided or testimony given.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001] [EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

SUBPART D --EMPLOYEE INDEMNIFICATION

§ 104.24 Scope.

The procedure in this subpart shall be followed if a civil action or proceeding is brought, in any court, against an employee (including the employee's estate) for personal injury, loss of property, or death, resulting from the employee's activities while acting within the scope of the employee's office or employment. When the employee is incapacitated or deceased, actions required of an employee should be performed by the employee's executor, administrator, or comparable legal representative.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47391, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]NOTES APPLICABLE TO ENTIRE CHAPTER:

§ 104.24 Procedure for requesting indemnification.

(a) After being served with process or pleadings in such an action or proceeding, the employee shall within five (5) calendar days of receipt, deliver to the General Counsel all such process and pleadings or an attested true copy thereof, together with a fully detailed report of the circumstances of the incident giving rise to the court action or proceeding.

(b)(1) An employee may request indemnification to satisfy a verdict, judgment, or award entered against that employee only if the employee has timely satisfied the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) No request for indemnification will be considered unless the employee has submitted a written request through the employee's supervisory chain to the General Counsel with:

(i) Appropriate documentation, including copies of the verdict, judgment, appeal bond, award, or settlement proposal;

(ii) The employee's explanation of how the employee was acting within the scope of the employee's employment; and

(iii) The employee's statement of whether the employee has insurance or any other source of indemnification.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47392, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47392, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

SUBPART E --TORT CLAIMS

§ 104.41 Procedure for filing claims.

Administrative claims against the Office filed pursuant to the administrative claims provision of the Federal Tort Claims Act (28 U.S.C. 2672) and the corresponding Department of Justice regulations (28 CFR Part 14) shall be filed with the General Counsel as indicated in § 104.2.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47392, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47392, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

§ 104.42 Finality of settlement or denial of claims.

Only a decision of the Director or the General Counsel regarding settlement or denial of any claim under this subpart may be considered final for the purpose of judicial review.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 47387, 47392, Sept. 12, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 47387, 47392, Sept. 12, 2001, added Part 104, effective Sept. 12, 2001.]

SUBCHAPTER C --PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS

PART 150 --REQUESTS FOR PRESIDENTIAL PROCLAMATIONS PURSUANT TO 17 U.S.C. 902(A)(2)

§ 150.1 Definitions.

(a) Commissioner means Assistant Secretary and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) Foreign government means the duly-constituted executive of a foreign nation, or an international or regional intergovernmental organization which has been empowered by its member states to request issuance of Presidential proclamations on their behalf under this part.

(c) Interim order means an order issued by the Secretary of Commerce under 17 U.S.C. 914.

(d) Mask work means a series of related images, however fixed or encoded--

(1) Having or representing the predetermined, three-dimensional pattern of metallic, insulating, or semiconductor material present or removed from the layers of a semiconductor chip product; and

(2) In which series the relation of the images to one another is that each image has the pattern of the surface of one form of the semiconductor chip product.

(e) Presidential proclamation means an action by the President extending to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities the privilege of applying for registrations for mask works pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 902.

(f) Request means a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a Presidential proclamation.

(g) Proceeding means a proceeding to issue a interim order extending protection to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities under 17 U.S.C. Chapter 9.

(h) Secretary means the Secretary of Commerce.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988]

§ 150.2 Initiation of evaluation.

(a) The Commissioner independently or as directed by the Secretary, may initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance, revision, suspension or revocation of a section 902 proclamation.

(b) The Commissioner shall initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance of a section 902 proclamation upon receipt of a request from a foreign government.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988]

§ 150.3 Submission of requests.

(a) Requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation shall be submitted by foreign governments for review by the Commissioner.

(b) Requests for issuance of a proclamation shall include:

(1) A copy of the foreign law or legal rulings that provide protection for U.S. mask works which provide a basis for the request.

(2) A copy of any regulations or administrative orders implementing the protection.

(3) A copy of any laws, regulations or administrative orders establishing or regulating the registration (if any) of mask works.

(4) Any other relevant laws, regulations or administrative orders.

(5) All copies of laws, legal rulings, regulations or administrative orders submitted must be in unedited, full-text form, and if possible, must be reproduced from the original document.

(6) All material submitted must be in the original language, and if not in English, must be accompanied by a certified English translation.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988]

§ 150.4 Evaluation.

(a) Upon submission of a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation, if an interim order under section 914 has not been issued, the Commissioner may initiate a section 914 proceeding if additional information is required.

(b) If an interim order under section 914 has been issued, the information obtained during the section 914 proceeding will be used in evaluating the request for a section 902 proclamation.

(c) After the Commissioner receives the request of a foreign government for a section 902 proclamation, or after a determination is made by the Commissioner to initiate independently an evaluation pursuant to § 150.2(a) of this part, a notice will be published in the Federal Register to request relevant and material comments on the adequacy and effectiveness of the protection afforded U.S. mask works under the system of law described in the notice. Comments should include detailed explanations of any alleged deficiencies in the foreign law or any alleged deficiencies in its implementation. If the alleged deficiencies include problems in administration such as registration, the respondent should include as specifically as possible full detailed explanations, including dates for and the nature of any alleged problems. Comments shall be submitted to the Commissioner within sixty (60) days of publication of the Federal Register notice.

(d) The Commissioner shall notify the Register of Copyrights and the Committees on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives of the initiation of an evaluation under these regulations.

(e) If the written comments submitted by any party present relevant and material reasons why a proclamation should not issue, the Commissioner will:

(1) Contact the party raising the issue for verification and any needed additional information;

(2) Contact the requesting foreign government to determine if the issues raised by the party can be resolved; and,

(i) If the issues are resolved, continue with the evaluation; or,

(ii) If the issues cannot be resolved on this basis, hold a public hearing to gather additional information.

(f) The comments, the section 902 request, information obtained from a section 914 proceeding, if any, and information obtained in a hearing held pursuant to paragraph (e)(ii) of this section, if any, will be evaluated by the Commissioner.

(g) The Commissioner will forward the information to the Secretary, together with an evaluation and a draft recommendation.

(h) The Secretary will forward a recommendation regarding the issuance of a section 902 proclamation to the President.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988]

§ 150.5 Duration of proclamation.

(a) The recommendation for the issuance of a proclamation may include terms and conditions regarding the duration of the proclamation.

(b) Requests for the revision, suspension or revocation of a proclamation may be submitted by any interested party. Requests for revision, suspension or revocation of a proclamation will be considered in substantially the same manner as requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988]

§ 150.6 Mailing address.

Requests and all correspondence submitted pursuant to these guidelines shall be addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 4, Washington, DC 20231.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988]

CHAPTER II – COPYRIGHT OFFICE, LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

SUBCHAPTER A – COPYRIGHT OFFICE AND PROCEDURES

PART 201 --GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 201.1 Communications with the Copyright Office.

(a) General purpose addresses. The following addresses may be used for general inquiries made to a particular division or section of the Copyright Office. Addresses for special, limited purposes are provided below in paragraph (b) of this section.

(1) In general. Mail and other communications shall be addressed to the Register of Copyrights, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(2) Inquiries to Licensing Division. Inquiries about filings related to the compulsory licenses (17 U.S.C. 111, 114, 115, 118, 119 and chapter 10) should be addressed to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20557-6400.

(3) Copies of records or deposits. Requests for copies of records or deposits should be addressed to the Certifications and Documents Section, LM-402, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20559-6302.

(4) Search of records. Requests for searches of registrations and recordations in the completed catalogs, indexes, and other records of the Copyright Office should be addressed to the Reference and Bibliography Section, LM-450, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20559-6306.

(b) Limited purpose addresses. The following addresses may be used only in the special, limited circumstances given for a particular Copyright Office service:

(1) Time sensitive requests. Freedom of Information (FOIA) requests; notices of filing of copyright infringement lawsuits; comments for rulemaking proceedings; requests for Copyright Office speakers; requests for approvals of computer generated application forms; requests for expedited service from either the Certifications and Documents Section or Reference and Bibliography Section to meet the needs of pending or prospective litigation, customs matters or contract or publishing deadlines should be addressed to: Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024-0400.

(2) Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels (CARPs). CARP claims, filings, and general CARP correspondence should be mailed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP), P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024-0977.

(c) Copies of records or deposits. Requests for copies of records or deposits should be addressed to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Certifications and Documents Section, LM-402, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(d) Search of records. Requests for searches of registrations and recordations in the completed catalogs, indexes, and other records of the Copyright Office should be addressed to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Reference and Bibliography Section, LM-450, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-6000.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 30170, July 24, 1985; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35420, 35421, July 1, 1997, as corrected at 62 FR 40457, July 29, 1997; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39818, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001, revised paragraphs (a) and (b), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.2 Information given by the Copyright Office.

(a) In general. (1) Information relative to the operations of the Copyright Office is supplied without charge. A search of the records, indexes, and deposits will be made for such information as they may contain relative to copyright claims upon application and payment of the statutory fee. The Copyright Office, however, does not undertake the making of comparisons of copyright deposits to determine similarity between works.

(2) The Copyright Office does not furnish the names of copyright attorneys, publishers, agents, or other similar information.

(3) In the administration of the Copyright Act in general, the Copyright Office interprets the Act. The Copyright Office, however, does not give specific legal advice on the rights of persons, whether in connection with particular uses of copyrighted works, cases of alleged foreign or domestic copyright infringement, contracts between authors and publishers, or other matters of a similar nature.

(b) Inspection and copying of records. (1) Inspection and copying of completed records and indexes relating to a registration or a recorded document, and inspection of copies or identifying material deposited in connection with a completed copyright registration may be undertaken in the Certifications and Documents Section. Since some of these materials are not stored on the immediate premises of the Copyright Office, it is advisable to consult the Certifications and Documents Section to determine the length of time necessary to produce the requested materials.

(2) It is the general policy of the Copyright Office to deny direct public access to in-process files and to any work (or other) areas where they are kept. However, direct public use of computers intended to access the automated equivalent of limited portions of these files is permitted on a specified terminal in the Records Maintenance Unit, LM B-14, 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, upon payment of applicable fees.

(3) Information contained in Copyright Office in-process files may be obtained by anyone upon payment of applicable fees and request to the Information and Reference Division, in accordance with the following procedures:

(i) In general, all requests by the public for information in the in-process and open unfinished business files should be made to the Certifications and Documents Section, which upon receipt of applicable fees will give a report that provides the following for each request:

(A) The date(s) of receipt of:

(1) The application(s) for registration that may have been submitted and is (are) in process;

(2) The document(s) that may have been submitted for recordation and is (are) in process;

(3) The copy or copies (or phonorecords) that may have been submitted;

(B) The title of the work(s); and

(C) The name of the remitter.

(ii) Such searches of the in-process files will be given priority to the extent permitted by the demands of normal work flow of the affected sections of the Copyright Office.

(4) Access will be afforded as follows to pending applications for registration, the deposit material accompanying them, and pending documents for recordation that were submitted within the twelve month period immediately preceding the request for access:

(i) In the case of applications for registration and deposits accompanying them, upon the request of the copyright claimant or his/her authorized representative, and

(ii) In the case of documents, upon the request of at least one of the persons who executed the document or by an authorized representative of that person.

These requests should be made to the Public Information Office, and the review of the materials will be permitted there. No charge will be made for reviewing these materials; the appropriate search fee identified in § 201.3(c) or § 201.3(d) will be assessed, and the appropriate copying fee identified in § 201.3(c) or § 201.3(d) will be assessed if the claimant wants and is entitled to a copy of the material.

(5) In exceptional circumstances, the Register of Copyrights may allow inspection of pending applications and open correspondence files by someone other than the copyright claimant, upon submission of a written request which is deemed by the Register to show good cause for such access and establishes that the person making the request is one properly and directly concerned. The written request should be addressed to Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024.

(6) In no case will direct public access be permitted to any financial or accounting records.

(7) The Copyright Office maintains administrative staff manuals referred to as its "Compendium of Office Practices I" and "Compendium of Office Practices II" for the general guidance of its staff in making registrations and recording documents. The manuals, as amended and supplemented from time to time, are available for purchase from the National Technical Information Service (Compendium I) and the Government Printing Office (Compendium II). They are also available for public inspection and copying in the Certifications and Documents Section.

(c) Correspondence. (1) Official correspondence, including preliminary applications, between copyright claimants or their agents and the Copyright Office, and directly relating to a completed registration, a recorded document, a rejected application for registration, or a document for which recordation was refused is available for public inspection. Included in the correspondence available for public inspection is that portion of the file directly relating to a completed registration, recorded document, a rejected application for registration, or a document for which recordation was refused which was once open to public inspection as a closed case, even if the case is subsequently reopened. Public inspection is available only for the correspondence contained in the file during the time it was closed because of one of the aforementioned actions. Correspondence relating to the reopening of the file and reconsideration of the case is considered part of an in-process file until final action is taken, and public inspection of that correspondence is governed by § 201.2(b). Requests for reproductions of the correspondence shall be made pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Correspondence, application forms, and any accompanying material forming a part of a pending application are considered in-process files and access to them is governed by paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) Correspondence, memoranda, reports, opinions, and similar material relating to internal matters of personnel and procedures, office administration, security matters, and internal consideration of policy and decisional matters including the work product of an attorney, are not open to public inspection.

(4) The Copyright Office will return unanswered any abusive or scurrilous correspondence.

(d) Requests for copies. (1) Requests for copies of records should include the following:

(i) A clear identification of the type of records desired (for example, additional certificates of registration, copies of correspondence, copies of deposits).

(ii) A specification of whether the copies are to be certified or uncertified.

(iii) A clear identification of the specific records to be copied. Requests should include the following specific information, if possible:

(A) The type of work involved (for example, novel, lyrics, photograph);

(B) The registration number;

(C) The year date or approximate year date of registration;

(D) The complete title of the work;

(E) The author(s) including any pseudonym by which the author may be known; and

(F) The claimant(s); and

(G) If the requested copy is of an assignment, license, contract, or other recorded document, the volume and page number of the recorded document.

(iv) If the copy requested is an additional certificate of registration, include the fee. The Certifications and Documents Section will review requests for copies of other records and quote fees for each.

(v) The telephone number and address of the requestor.

(2) Requests for certified or uncertified reproductions of the copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with a copyright registration of published or unpublished works in the custody of the Copyright Office will be granted only when one of the following three conditions has been met:

(i) The Copyright Office receives written authorization from the copyright claimant of record or his or her designated agent, or from the owner of any of the exclusive rights in the copyright as long as this ownership can be demonstrated by written documentation of the transfer of ownership.

(ii) The Copyright Office receives a written request from an attorney on behalf of either the plaintiff or defendant in connection with litigation, actual or prospective, involving the copyrighted work. The following information must be included in such a request:

(A) The names of all the parties involved and the nature of the controversy;

(B) The name of the court in which the actual case is pending or, in the case of a prospective proceeding, a full statement of the facts of the controversy in which the copyrighted work is involved; and

(C) Satisfactory assurance that the requested reproduction will be used only in connection with the specified litigation.

(iii) The Copyright Office receives a court order for reproduction of the deposited copies, phonorecords, or identifying material of a registered work which is the subject of litigation. The order must be issued by a court having jurisdiction of the case in which the reproduction is to be submitted as evidence.

(3) When a request is made for a reproduction of a phonorecord, such as an audiotape or cassette, in which either a sound recording or the underlying musical, dramatic, or literary work is embodied, the Copyright Office will provide proximate reproduction. The Copyright Office reserves the right to substitute a monaural reproduction for a stereo, quadraphonic, or any other type of fixation of the work accepted for deposit.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 30170, July 24, 1985, as amended at 51 FR 30062, Aug. 22, 1986; 62 FR 35420, 35421, July 1, 1997; 64 FR 29518, 29520, June 1, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29520, June 1, 1999, amended paragraph (b)(4), effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 201.3 Fees for registration, recordation, and related services, special services, and services performed by the Licensing Division.

(a) General. This section prescribes the fees for registration, recordation, and related services, special services, and services performed by the Licensing Division.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Registration, recordation, and related service fee. This is the fee for a registration or recordation service that the Office is required to perform under 17 U.S.C., or a directly related service. It includes those services described in section 708(a)(1)-(9) and authorized by Pub. L. 105-80.

(2) Special service fee. This is a fee for a special service not specified in title 17, which the Register of Copyrights may fix at any time on the basis of the cost of providing the service, as provided by 17 U.S.C. 708(a)(10).

(3) Licensing Division service fee. This is a fee for a service performed by the Licensing Division.

(c) Registration, Recordation and Related Service Fees. The Copyright Office has established the following fees for these services:

Click here to view image.

(d) Special Service Fees. The Copyright Office has established the following fees for special services:

Click here to view image.

(e) Licensing Division Service Fees. The Copyright Office has established the following fees for certain services performed by the Licensing Division:

Click here to view image.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 29518, 29520, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29520, June 1, 1999, added this section, effective July 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999, amended this section, effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 201.4 Recordation of transfers and certain other documents.

(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions for the recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to a copyright under section 205 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. The filing or recordation of the following documents is not within the provisions of this section:

(i) Certain contracts entered into by cable systems located outside of the 48 contiguous States (17 U.S.C. 111(e); see 37 CFR 201.12);

(ii) Notices of identity and signal carriage complement, and statements of account, of cable systems (17 U.S.C. 111(d); see 37 CFR 201.11; 201.17);

(iii) Original, signed notices of intention to obtain compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works (17 U.S.C. 115(b); see 37 CFR 201.18);

(iv) License agreements, and terms and rates of royalty payments, voluntarily negotiated between one or more public broadcasting entities and certain owners of copyright (17 U.S.C. 118; see 37 CFR 201.9);

(v) Notices of termination (17 U.S.C. 203, 304(c); see 37 CFR 201.10); and

(vi) Statements regarding the identity of authors of anonymous and pseudonymous works, and statements relating to the death of authors (17 U.S.C. 302).

(2) A transfer of copyright ownership has the meaning set forth in section 101 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. A document shall be considered to "pertain to a copyright" if it has a direct or indirect relationship to the existence, scope, duration, or identification of a copyright, or to the ownership, division, allocation, licensing, transfer, or exercise of rights under a copyright. That relationship may be past, present, future, or potential.

(3) For purposes of this section:

(i) A sworn certification is an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or if the original is located outside of the United States, under the official seal of any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States or of a person authorized to administer oaths whose authority is proved by the certificate of such an officer, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code; and

(ii) An official certification is a certification, by the appropriate Government official, that the original of the document is on file in a public office and that the reproduction is a true copy or the original.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents.

(c) Recordable documents. Any transfer of copyright ownership (including any instrument of conveyance, or note or memorandum of the transfer), or any other document pertaining to a copyright, may be recorded in the Copyright Office if it is accompanied by the fee set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, and if the requirements of this paragraph with respect to signatures, completeness, and legibility are met.

(1) To be recordable, the document must bear the actual signature or signatures of the person or persons who executed it. Alternatively, the document may be recorded if it is a legible photocopy or other legible facsimile reproduction of the signed document, accompanied by a sworn certification or an official certification that the reproduction is a true copy of the signed document. Any sworn certification accompanying a reproduction shall be signed by at least one of the parties to the signed document, or by an authorized representative of that person.

(2) To be recordable, the document must be complete by its own terms.

(i) A document that contains a reference to any schedule, appendix, exhibit, addendum, or other material as being attached to the document or made a part of it shall be recordable only if the attachment is also submitted for recordation with the document or if the reference is deleted by the parties to the document. If a document has been submitted for recordation and has been returned by the Copyright Office at the request of the sender for deletion of the reference to an attachment, the document will be recorded only if the deletion is signed or initialed by the persons who executed the document or by their authorized representatives. In exceptional cases a document containing a reference to an attachment will be recorded without the attached material and without deletion of the reference if the person seeking recordation submits a written request specifically asserting that:

(A) The attachment is completely unavailable for recordation; and

(B) the attachment is not essential to the identification of the subject matter of the document; and

(C) it would be impossible or wholly impracticable to have the parties to the document sign or initial a deletion of the reference.

In such exceptional cases, the Copyright Office records of the document will be annotated to show that recordation was made in response to a specific request under this paragraph.

(ii) If a document otherwise recordable under this title indicates on its face that it is a self-contained part of a larger instrument (for example: if it is designated "Attachment A" or "Exhibit B"), the Copyright Office will raise the question of completeness, but will record the document if the person requesting recordation asserts that the document is sufficiently complete as it stands.

(iii) When the document submitted for recordation merely identifies or incorporates by reference another document, or certain terms of another document, the Copyright Office will raise no question of completeness, and will not require recordation of the other document.

(3) To be recordable, the document must be legible and capable of being reproduced in legible microform copies.

(d) Fees. The fees for recordation of a document are prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(e) Recordation. The date of recordation is the date when a proper document under paragraph (c) of this section and a proper fee under paragraph (d) of this section are all received in the Copyright Office. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 35044, Aug. 8, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 123, Jan. 5, 1988; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

(17 U.S.C. 205, 702, 708)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 201.5 Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations; applications for supplementary registration.

(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions relating to the filing of an application for supplementary registration, to correct an error in a copyright registration or to amplify the information given in a registration, under section 408(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. For the purposes of this section:

(i) A basic registration means any of the following:

(A) A copyright registration made under sections 408, 409, and 410 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553;

(B) a renewal registration made under section 304 of title 17 of the United States Code, as so amended;

(C) a registration of claim to copyright made under title 17 of the United States Code as it existed before January 1, 1978; or

(D) a renewal registration made under title 17 of the United States Code as it existed before January 1, 1978; and

(ii) A supplementary registration means a registration made upon application under section 408(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, and the provisions of this section.

(2) No correction or amplification of the information in a basic registration will be made except pursuant to the provisions of this § 201.5. As an exception, where it is discovered that the record of a basic registration contains an error that the Copyright Office itself should have recognized at the time registration was made, the Office will take appropriate measures to rectify its error.

(b) Persons entitled to file an application for supplementary registration; grounds of application. (1) Supplementary registration can be made only if a basic copyright registration for the same work has already been completed. After a basic registration has been completed, any author or other copyright claimant of the work, or the owner of any exclusive right in the work, or the duly authorized agent of any such author, other claimant, or owner, who wishes to correct or amplify the information given in the basic registration for the work may file an application for supplementary registration.n1

(2) Supplementary registration may be made either to correct or to amplify the information in a basic registration. For the purposes of this section:

(i) A correction is appropriate if information in the basic registration was incorrect at the time that basic registration was made, and the error is not one that the Copyright Office itself should have recognized;

(ii) An amplification is appropriate:

(A) To supplement or clarify the information that was required by the application for the basic registration and should have been provided, such as the identity of a co-author or co-claimant, but was omitted at the time the basic registration was made, or

(B) To reflect changes in facts, other than those relating to transfer, license, or ownership of rights in the work, that have occurred since the basic registration was made.

(iii) Supplementary registration is not appropriate:

(A) As an amplification, to reflect a change in ownership that occurred on or after the effective date of the basic registration or to reflect the division, allocation, licensing or transfer of rights in a work; or

(B) To correct errors in statements or notices on the copies of phonorecords of a work, or to reflect changes in the content of a work; and

(iv) Where a basic renewal registration has been made for a work during the last year of the relevant first-term copyright, supplementary registration to correct the renewal claimant or basis of claim or to add a renewal claimant is ordinarily possible only if the application for supplementary registration and fee are received in the Copyright Office within the last year of the relevant first-term copyright. If the error or omission in a basic renewal registration is extremely minor, and does not involve the identity of the renewal claimant or the legal basis of the claim, supplementary registration may be made at any time. In an exceptional case, however, supplementary registration may be made to correct the name of the renewal claimant and the legal basis of the claim at any time if clear, convincing, objective documentation is submitted to the Copyright Office which proves that an inadvertent error was made in failing to designate the correct living statutory renewal claimant in the basic renewal registration.

(c) Form and content of application for supplementary registration. (1) An application for supplementary registration shall be made on a form prescribed by the Copyright Office, shall be accompanied by the appropriate fee identified in § 201.3(c), and shall contain the following information;

(i) The title of the work as it appears in the basic registration, including previous or alternative titles if they appear;

(ii) The registration number of the basic registration;

(iii) The year when the basic registration was completed;

(iv) The name or names of the author or authors of the work, and the copyright claimant or claimants in the work, as they appear in the basic registration;

(v) In the case of a correction:

(A) The line number and heading or description of the part of the basic registration where the error occurred;

(B) A transcription of the erroneous information as it appears in the basic registration;

(C) A statement of the correct information as it should have appeared; and

(D) If desired, an explanation of the error or its correction;

(vi) In the case of an amplification:

(A) The line number and heading or description of the part of the basic registration where the information to be amplified appears;

(B) A clear and succinct statement of the information to be added; and

(C) If desired, an explanation of the amplification;

(vii) The name and address:

(A) To which correspondence concerning the application should be sent; and

(B) To which the certificate of supplementary registration should be mailed; and

(viii) The certification shall consist of:

(A) The handwritten signature of the author, other copyright claimant, or owner of exclusive right(s) in the work, or of the duly authorized agent of such author, other claimant or owner (who shall also be identified);

(B) The typed or printed name of the person whose signature appears, and the date of signature; and

(C) A statement that the person signing the application is the author, other copyright claimant, or owner of exclusive right(s) in the work, or the authorized agent of such author, other claimant, or owner, and that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge.

(2) The form prescribed by the Copyright Office for the foregoing purposes is designated "Application for Supplementary Copyright Registration (Form CA)". Copies of the form are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(3) Copies, phonorecords or supporting documents cannot be made part of the record of a supplementary registration and should not be submitted with the application.

(d) Effect of supplementary registration. (1) When a supplementary registration is completed, the Copyright Office will assign it a new registration number in the appropriate class, and issue a certificate of supplementary registration under that number.

(2) As provided in section 408(d) of Title 17, the information contained in a supplementary registration augments but does not supersede that contained in the basic registration. The basic registration will not be expunged or cancelled.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 773, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 57 FR 60482, Dec. 21, 1992; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35420, 35421, July 1, 1997; 63 FR 59235, 59236, Nov. 3, 1998; as corrected and amended at 63 FR 66041, 66042, Dec. 1, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001]

(Pub. L. 94-553; 17 U.S.C. 205, 408(d), 601(b), 702, 708)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (c), effective June 28, 2000; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000, amended paragraph (c)(1)(viii), effective Aug. 10, 2000; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (a)(1), effective June 28, 2001.]

FOOTNOTES:
[n1] Footnote 1. If the person who, or on whose behalf, an application for supplementary registration is submitted is the same as the person identified as the copyright claimant in the basic registration, the Copyright Office will place a note referring to the supplementary registration on its records of the basic registration.

§ 201.6 Payment and refund of Copyright Office fees.

(a) In general. All fees sent to the Copyright Office should be in the form of a money order, check or bank draft payable to the Register of Copyrights. Coin or currency sent to the Office in letters or packages will be at the remitter's risk. Remittances from foreign countries should be in the form of an International Money Order or Bank Draft payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Uncertified checks are accepted subject to collection. Where the statutory fee is submitted in the form of a check, the registration of the copyright claim or other record made by the Office is provisional until payment in money is received. In the event the fee is not paid, the registration or other record shall be expunged.

(b) Deposit accounts. Persons or firms having a considerable amount of business with the Copyright Office may, for their own convenience, prepay copyright expenses by establishing a Deposit Account.

(c) Refunds. Money remitted to the Copyright Office for original, basic, supplementary or renewal registration will not be refunded if the claim is rejected because the material deposited does not constitute copyrightable subject matter or because the claim is invalid for any other reason. Payments made by mistake or in excess of the statutory fee will be refunded, but amounts of $ 50 or less will not be refunded unless specifically requested, and refunds of less than $ 2 may be made in postage stamps. Before making any refund for fees remitted in relation to nonregistration copyright services, the Copyright Office shall deduct an administrative processing fee in an amount equivalent to one hour of the requested service, or the minimum fee set by statute for the service.

(d) Return of deposit copies. Copies of works deposited in the Copyright Office pursuant to law are either retained in the Copyright Office, transferred for the permanent collections or other uses of the Library of Congress, or disposed of according to law. When an application is rejected, the Copyright Office reserves the right to retain the deposited copies.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 4955, June 18, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 25442, May 7, 1981; 56 FR 7813, Feb. 26, 1991; 59 FR 38371, July 28, 1994]

§ 201.7 Cancellation of completed registrations.

(a) Definition. Cancellation is an action taken by the Copyright Office whereby either the registration is eliminated on the ground that the registration is invalid under the applicable law and regulations, or the registration number is eliminated and a new registration is made under a different class and number.

(b) General policy. The Copyright Office will cancel a completed registration only in those cases where:

(1) It is clear that no registration should have been made because the work does not constitute copyrightable subject matter or fails to satisfy the other legal and formal requirements for obtaining copyright;

(2) Registration may be authorized but the application, deposit material, or fee does not meet the requirements of the law and Copyright Office regulations, and the Office is unable to get the defect corrected; or

(3) An existing registration in the wrong class is to be replaced by a new registration in the correct class.

(c) Circumstances under which a registration will be cancelled. (1) Where the Copyright Office becomes aware after registration that a work is not copyrightable, either because the authorship is de minimis or the work does not contain authorship subject to copyright, the registration will be cancelled. The copyright claimant will be notified by correspondence of the proposed cancellation and the reasons therefor, and be given 30 days, from the date the Copyright Office letter is mailed, to show cause in writing why the cancellation should not be made. If the claimant fails to respond within the 30 day period, or if the Office after considering the response, determines that the registration was made in error and not in accordance with title 17 U.S.C., Chapters 1 through 8, the registration will be cancelled.

(2) When a check received in payment of a registration fee is returned to the Copyright Office marked "insufficient funds" or is otherwise uncollectible the Copyright Office will immediately cancel any registration(s) for which the dishonored check was submitted and will notify the remitter the registration has been cancelled because the check was returned as uncollectible.

(3) Where registration is made in the wrong class, the Copyright Office will cancel the first registration, replace it with a new registration in the correct class, and issue a corrected certificate.

(4) Where registration has been made for a work which appears to be copyrightable but after registration the Copyright Office becomes aware that, on the administrative record before the Office, the statutory requirements have apparently not been satisfied, or that information essential to registration has been omitted entirely from the application or is questionable, or correct deposit material has not been deposited, the Office will correspond with the copyright claimant in an attempt to secure the required information or deposit material or to clarify the information previously given on the application. If the Copyright Office receives no reply to its correspondence within 30 days of the date the letter is mailed, or the response does not resolve the substantive defect, the registration will be cancelled. The correspondence will include the reason for the cancellation. The following are instances where a completed registration will be cancelled unless the substantive defect in the registration can be cured:

(i) Eligibility for registration has not been established;

(ii) A work published before March 1, 1989, was registered more than 5 years after the date of first publication and the deposit copy or phonorecord does not contain a statutory copyright notice;

(iii) The deposit copies or phonorecords of a work published before January 1, 1978 do not contain a copyright notice or the notice is defective;

(iv) A renewal claim was registered after the statutory time limits for registration had apparently expired;

(v) The application and copy(s) or phonorecord(s) do not match each other and the Office cannot locate a copy or phonorecord as described in the application elsewhere in the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress;

(vi) The application for registration does not identify a copyright claimant or it appears from the transfer statement on the application or elsewhere that the "claimant" named in the application does not have the right to claim copyright;

(vii) A claim to copyright is based on material added to a preexisting work and a reading of the application in its totality indicates that there is no copyrightable new material on which to base a claim;

(viii) A work subject to the manufacturing provisions of the Act of 1909 was apparently published in violation of those provisions;

(ix) For a work published after January 1, 1978, the only claimant given on the application was deceased on the date the application was certified;

(x) A work is not anonymous or pseudonymous and statements on the application and/or copy vary so much that the author cannot be identified; and

(xi) Statements on the application conflict or are so unclear that the claimant cannot be adequately identified.

(d) Minor substantive errors. Where a registration includes minor substantive errors or omissions which would generally have been rectified before registration, the Copyright Office will attempt to rectify the error through correspondence with the remitter. Except in those cases enumerated in paragraph (c) of this section, if the Office is unable for any reason to obtain the correct information or deposit copy, the registration record will be annotated to state the nature of the informality and show that the Copyright Office attempted to correct the registration.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 40835, Oct. 7, 1985; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (c)(1), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.8 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 201.9 Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities.

(a) License agreements voluntarily negotiated between one or more owners of copyright in published nondramatic musical works and published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works, and one or more public broadcasting entities, and terms and rates of royalty payments agreed to among owners of copyright in nondramatic literary works and public broadcasting entities will be filed in the Copyright Office, Licensing Division by recordation upon payment of the fee prescribed by § 201.3. The document submitted for recordation shall meet the following requirements:

(1) It shall be an original instrument of agreement; or it shall be a legible photocopy or other full-size facsimile reproduction of an original, accompanied by a certification signed by at least one of the parties to the agreement, or an authorized representative of that party, that the reproduction is a true copy;

(2) It shall bear the signatures of all persons identified as parties to the agreement, or of their authorized agents or representatives;

(3) It shall be complete on its face, and shall include any schedules, appendixes, or other attachments referred to in the instrument as being part of it; and

(4) It shall be clearly identified, in its body or a covering transmittal letter, as being submitted for recordation under 17 U.S.C. 118.

(b) The fee for recordation of a voluntary license agreement under this section is the basic recordation fee as prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(c) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee, have been received in the Copyright Office. A document is filed in the Copyright Office, and a filing in the Copyright Office takes place on the date of recordation. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 16777, Mar. 30, 1977, as amended at 46 FR 33249, June 29, 1981; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999, amended paragraph (a) and revised paragraph (b), effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 201.10 Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term.

(a) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving notices of termination.

(b) Contents. (1) A notice of termination must include a clear identification of each of the following:

(i) The name of each grantee whose rights are being terminated, or the grantee's successor in title, and each address at which service of the notice is being made;

(ii) The title and the name of at least one author of, and the date copyright was originally secured in, each work to which the notice of termination applies; and, if possible and practicable, the original copyright registration number;

(iii) A brief statement reasonably identifying the grant to which the notice of termination applies;

(iv) The effective date of termination; and

(v) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by a person or persons other than the author, a listing of the surviving person or persons who executed the grant. In the case of a termination of a grant executed by one or more of the authors of the work where the termination is exercised by the successors of a deceased author, a listing of the names and relationships to that deceased author of all of the following, together with specific indication of the person or persons executing the notice who constitute more than one-half of that author's termination interest: That author's surviving widow or widower; and all of that author's surviving children; and, where any of that author's children are dead, all of the surviving children of any such deceased child of that author; however, instead of the information required by this paragraph (v), the notice may contain both of the following:

(A) A statement of as much of such information as is currently available to the person or persons signing the notice, with a brief explanation of the reasons why full information is or may be lacking; together with

(B) A statement that, to the best knowledge and belief of the person or persons signing the notice, the notice has been signed by all persons whose signature is necessary to terminate the grant under section 304(c) of title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents.

(2) Clear identification of the information specified by paragraph (b)(1) of this section requires a complete and unambiguous statement of facts in the notice itself, without incorporation by reference of information in other documents or records.

(c) Signature. (1) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by a person or persons other than the author, the notice shall be signed by all of the surviving person or persons who executed the grant, or by their duly authorized agents.

(2) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by one or more of the authors of the work, the notice as to any one author's share shall be signed by that author or by his or her duly authorized agent. If that author is dead, the notice shall be signed by the number and proportion of the owners of that author's termination interest required under clauses (1) and (2) of section 304(c) of Title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents, and shall contain a brief statement of their relationship or relationships to that author.

(3) Where a signature is by a duly authorized agent, it shall clearly identify the person or persons on whose behalf the agent is acting.

(4) The handwritten signature of each person effecting the termination shall either be accompanied by a statement of the full name and address of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand, or shall clearly correspond to such a statement elsewhere in the notice.

(d) Service. (1) The notice of termination shall be served upon each grantee whose rights are being terminated, or the grantee's successor in title, by personal service, or by first-class mail sent to an address which, after a reasonable investigation, is found to be the last known address of the grantee or successor in title.

(2) The service provision of section 304(c)(4) of title 17, U.S.C., will be satisfied if, before the notice of termination is served, a reasonable investigation is made by the person or persons executing the notice as to the current ownership of the rights being terminated, and based on such investigation:

(i) If there is no reason to believe that such rights have been transferred by the grantee to a successor in title, the notice is served on the grantee; or

(ii) if there is reason to believe that such rights have been transferred by the grantee to a particular successor in title, the notice is served on such successor in title.

(3) For purposes of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, a reasonable investigation includes, but is not limited to, a search of the records in the Copyright Office; in the case of a musical composition with respect to which performing rights are licensed by a performing rights society, a "reasonable investigation" also includes a report from that performing rights society identifying the person or persons claiming current ownership of the rights being terminated.

(4) Compliance with the provisions of clauses (2) and (3) of this paragraph (d) will satisfy the service requirements of section 304(c)(4) of title 17, U.S.C. However, as long as the statutory requirements, have been met, the failure to comply with the regulatory provisions of paragraphs (d) (2) or (3) of this section will not affect the validity of the service.

(e) Harmless errors. (1) Harmless errors in a notice that do not materially affect the adequacy of the information required to serve the purposes of section 304(c) of title 17, U.S.C., shall not render the notice invalid.

(2) Without prejudice to the general rule provided by paragraph (e)(1) of this section (e), errors made in giving the date or registration number referred to in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, or in complying with the provisions of paragraph (b)(1)(v) of this section, or in describing the precise relationships under clause (2) of paragraph (c) of this section, shall not affect the validity of the notice if the errors were made in good faith and without any intention to deceive, mislead, or conceal relevant information.

(f) Recordation. (1) A copy of the notice of termination will be recorded in the Copyright Office upon payment of the fee prescribed by paragraph (2) of this paragraph (f) and upon compliance with the following provisions:

(i) The copy submitted for recordation shall be a complete and exact duplicate of the notice of termination as served and shall include the actual signature or signatures, or a reproduction of the actual signature or signatures, appearing on the notice; where separate copies of the same notice were served on more than one grantee or successor in title, only one copy need be submitted for recordation; and

(ii) The copy submitted for recordation shall be accompanied by a statement setting forth the date on which the notice was served and the manner of service, unless such information is contained in the notice.

(2) The fee for recordation of a document is prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(3) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee and, if required, the statement referred to in paragraph (f)(1)(ii) of this section, have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation, the document, including any accompanying statement, is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(4) Recordation of a notice of termination by the Copyright Office is without prejudice to any party claiming that the legal and formal requirements for issuing a valid notice have not been met.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 45920, Sept. 13, 1977, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999; 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, June 28, 2001, amended this section, effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.11 Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by the satellite carrier license of section 119(b)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 103-369, in order that certain secondary transmissions by satellite carriers for private home viewing be subject to statutory licensing.

(b) Definitions. (1) The terms distributor, network station,T1 private home viewing, satellite carrier, subscriber, superstation, and unserved household have the meanings set forth in section 119(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 103-369.

(2) The terms primary transmission and secondary transmission have the meanings set forth in section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Accounting periods and deposit. (1) Statements of Account shall cover semiannual accounting periods of January 1 through June 30, and July 1 through December 31, and shall be deposited in the Copyright Office, together with the total statutory royalty fee or the confirmed arbitration royalty fee for such accounting periods as prescribed by section 119(b)(1)(B) and (c)(3) of title 17, by not later than July 30, if the Statement of Account covers the January 1 through June 30 accounting period, and by not later than the immediately following January 30, if the Statement of Account covers the July 1 through December 31 accounting period.

(2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office will examine the statement and fee for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the documents is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the satellite carrier, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record of the case. However, completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall in no case be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty fee had been deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements to qualify for a statutory license have been satisfied.

(3) Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period they purport to cover will not be processed by the Copyright Office. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the filing deadlines of July 30 or January 30, respectively, will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have, if any.

(4) In the Register's discretion, four years after the close of any calendar year, the Register may close out the royalty payments account for that calendar year, and may treat any funds remaining in such account and any subsequent deposits that would otherwise be attributable to that calendar year as attributable to the succeeding calendar year.

(d) Forms. (1) Each Statement of Account shall be furnished on an appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office, and shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions. Computation of the copyright royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms. Copies of Statement of Account forms are available free upon request to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400.

(2) The form prescribed by the Copyright Office is designated "Statement of Account for Secondary Transmissions by Satellite Carriers to Home Viewers."

(e) Contents. Each Statement of Account shall contain the following information:

(1) A clear designation of the accounting period covered by the Statement.

(2) The designation "Owner" followed by:

(i) The full legal name of the satellite carrier. If the owner is a partnership, the name of the partnership is to be followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any other name or names under which the owner conducts the business of the satellite carrier; and

(iii) The full mailing address of the owner. Ownership, other names under which the owner conducts the business of the satellite carrier, and the owner's mailing address shall reflect facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(3) The designation "Primary Transmitters," followed by the call signs, broadcast channel numbers, station locations (city and state of license), and a notation whether that primary transmitter is a "superstation" or "network station" transmitted to any or all of the subscribers of the satellite carrier during any portion of the period covered by the Statement of Account.

(4) The designation "Superstations," followed by:

(i) The call sign of each superstation signal carried for each month of the period covered by the Statement, and

(ii) The total number of subscribers to each superstation for each month of the period covered by the Statement. This number is the number of subscribers to each superstation receiving the retransmission on the last day of each month.

(5) The designation "Network Stations," followed by:

(i) The call sign of each network station carried for each month of the period covered by the Statement, and

(ii) The total number of subscribers to each network station for each month of the period covered by the Statement. This number is the number of subscribers to each network station receiving the retransmission on the last day of each month.

(6) The total number of subscribers to each superstation for the six-month period covered by the Statement multiplied by the statutory royalty rate prescribed in § 258.3 of this chapter.

(7) The total number of subscribers to each network station for the six-month period covered by the Statement multiplied by the statutory royalty rate prescribed in § 258.3 of this chapter.

(8) The name, address, business title, and telephone number of the individual or individuals to be contacted for information or questions concerning the content of the Statement of Account.

(9) The handwritten signature of:

(i) The owner of the satellite carrier or a duly authorized agent of the owner, if the owner is not a partnership or a corporation; or

(ii) A partner, if the owner is a partnership; or

(iii) An officer of the corporation, if the owner is a corporation. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Statement of Account;

(B) The date of signature;

(C) If the owner of the satellite carrier is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Statement of Account;

(D) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(E) The following statement:

I, the undersigned Owner or Agent of the Satellite Carrier, or Officer or Partner, if the Satellite Carrier is a Corporation or Partnership, have examined this Statement of Account and hereby declare under penalty of law that all statements of fact contained herein are true, complete, and correct to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, and are made in good faith.

(18 U.S.C., section 1001 (1986))

(f) Royalty fee payment. All royalty fees may be paid by electronic transfer of funds, provided the payment is received in the designated United States Federal Reserve Bank by the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. Except in the case of an electronic payment, the royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account shall accompany that Statement of Account and shall be deposited at the Copyright Office with it. Payment must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or a money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or a United States Treasury electronic payment.

(g) Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds. (1) Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this section, corrections to Statements of Account will be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, any of the information given in the Statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete; or

(ii) Where calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low.

(2) Corrections to Statements of Account will not be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, addition or deletion of a signal) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to a Statement of Account be placed on record, that fee payments be accepted, or requests for the issuance of refunds, shall be made only in the cases mentioned in paragraph (g)(1) of this section. Such requests shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request must be in writing, must clearly identify its purpose, and, in the case of a request for a refund, must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of 30 days from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period, or before the expiration of 30 days from the date of receipt at the Copyright Office of the royalty payment that is the subject of the request, whichever time period is longer. A telegraphic or similar unsigned communication will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, if it is received in the Copyright Office within the required 30-day period, and if a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (g)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such 30-day period:

(ii) The Statement of Account to which the request pertains must be sufficiently identified in the request (by inclusion of the name of the owner of the satellite carrier and the accounting period in question) so that it can be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) The request must contain a clear statement of the facts on which it is based and provide a clear basis on which a refund may be granted, in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, where the information given in the Statement of Account is incorrect or incomplete, the request must clearly identify the erroneous or incomplete information and provide the correct or additional information:

(B) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of this section, where the royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office was either too high or too low, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement

in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(9) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculation.

(iv)(A) All requests filed under this paragraph (g) must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $ 15 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or of a certified check, cashier's check or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) All requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be received for deposit under this paragraph (g) must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or electronic payment. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(v) All requests submitted under this paragraph (g) must be signed by the satellite carrier owner named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of the owner, in accordance with paragraph (e)(9) of this section.

(vi) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the satellite carrier owner named in the Statement of Account without regard to the time limitations provided for in paragraph (g)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) Following final processing, all requests submitted under this paragraph (g) will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve satellite carriers from their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(h) Interest. (1) Royalty fee payments submitted as a result of late or amended filings will include interest. Interest will begin to accrue beginning on the first day after the close of the period for filing statements of account for all underpayments or late payments of royalties for the satellite carrier statutory license for secondary transmissions for private home viewing occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period will end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment submitted by a satellite carrier, provided that such payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, the accrual period will end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(2)(i) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period beginning with the 1992/2 period shall be the Current Value of Funds Rate, as established by section 8025.40 of the Treasury Financial Manual and published in the Federal Register, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for that accounting period. Satellite carriers wishing to obtain the interest rate for a specific accounting period may do so by consulting the Federal Register for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(ii) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period earlier than the 1992/2 period shall be the rate fixed by the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office pursuant to 37 CFR 201.11(h) in effect on June 30, 1992.

(3) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is less than or equal to five dollars ($ 5.00).

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 27877, July 3, 1989, as amended at 55 FR 49998, Dec. 4, 1990; 56 FR 29589, June 28, 1991; 57 FR 61834, Dec. 29, 1992; 59 FR 67635, Dec. 30, 1994; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 60 FR 57935, 57937, Nov. 24, 1995; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, substituted "superstation" for "super station" in paragraph (e)(3), effective June 5, 1998; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999, amended this section, effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 201.12 Recordation of certain contracts by cable systems located outside of the forty-eight contiguous States.

(a) Written, nonprofit contracts providing for the equitable sharing of costs of videotapes and their transfer, as identified in section 111(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, will be filed in the Copyright Office Licensing Division by recordation upon payment of the prescribed fee. The document submitted for recordation shall meet the following requirements:

(1) It shall be an original instrument of contract; or it shall be a legible photocopy or other full-size facsimile reproduction of an original, accompanied by a certification signed by at least one of the parties to the contract, or an authorized representative of that party, that the reproduction is a true copy;

(2) It shall bear the signatures of all persons identified as parties to the contract, or of their authorized agents or representatives;

(3) It shall be complete on its face, and shall include any schedules, appendixes, or other attachments referred to in the instrument as being part of it; and

(4) It shall be clearly identified, in its body or a covering transmittal letter, as being submitted for recordation under 17 U.S.C. 111(e).

(b) The fee for recordation of a document is prescribed in § 201.3.

(c) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee, have been received in the Copyright Office. A document is filed in the Copyright Office and a filing in the Copyright Office takes place on the date of recordation. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 53961, Oct. 4, 1977, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999, revised the first sentence of paragraph (a) and paragraph (b), effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 201.13 Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works.

(a) Definitions. (1) A Notice of Objection is a notice, as required by section 110(4) of Title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, to be served as a condition of preventing the noncommercial performance of a nondramatic literary or musical work under certain circumstances.

(2) For purposes of this section, the copyright owner of a nondramatic literary or musical work is the author of the work (including, in the case of a work made for hire, the employer or other person for whom the work was prepared), or a person or organization that has obtained ownership of the exclusive right, initially owned by the author of performance of the type referred to in 17 U.S.C. 110(4). If the other requirements of this section are met, a Notice of Objection may cover the works of more than one copyright owner.

(b) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Notices of Objection.

(c) Contents. (1) A Notice of Objection must clearly state that the copyright owner objects to the performance, and must include all of the following:

(i) Reference to the statutory authority on which the Notice of Objection is based, either by citation of 17 U.S.C. 110(4) or by a more general characterization or description of that statutory provision;

(ii) The date and place of the performance to which an objection is being made; however, if the exact date or place of a particular performance, or both, are not known to the copyright owner, it is sufficient if the Notice describes whatever information the copyright owner has about the date and place of a particular performance, and the source of that information unless the source was considered private or confidential;

(iii) Clear identification, by title and at least one author, of the particular nondramatic literary or musical work or works, to the performance of which the copyright owner thereof is lodging objection; a Notice may cover any number of separately identified copyrighted works owned by the copyright owner or owners serving the objection. Alternatively, a blanket notice, with or without separate identification of certain copyrighted works, and purporting to cover one or more groups of copyrighted works not separately identified by title and author, shall have effect if the conditions specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section are met; and

(iv) A concise statement of the reasons for the objection.

(2) A blanket notice purporting to cover one or more groups of copyrighted works not separately identified by title and author shall be valid only if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The Notice shall identify each group of works covered by the blanket notice by a description of any common characteristics distinguishing them from other copyrighted works, such as common author, common copyright owner, common publisher, or common licensing agent;

(ii) The Notice shall identify a particular individual whom the person responsible for the performance can contact for more detailed information about the works covered by the blanket notice and to determine whether a particular work planned for performance is in fact covered by the Notice. Such identification shall include the full name and business and residence addresses of the individual, telephone numbers at which the individual can be reached throughout the period between service of the notice and the performance, and name, addresses, and telephone numbers of another individual to contact during that period in case the first cannot be reached.

(iii) If the copyright owner or owners of all works covered by the blanket notice is not identified in the Notice, the Notice shall include an offer to identify, by name and last known address, the owner or owners of any and all such works, upon request made to the individual referred to in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) A Notice of Objection must also include clear and prominent statements explaining that:

(i) A failure to exclude the works identified in the Notice from the performance in question may subject the person responsible for the performance to liability for copyright infringement; and

(ii) The objection is without legal effect if there is no direct or indirect admission charge for the performance, and if the other conditions of 17 U.S.C. 110(4) are met.

(d) Signature and identification. (1) A Notice of Objection shall be in writing and signed by each copyright owner, or such owner's duly authorized agent, as required by 17 U.S.C. 110(4)(B)(i).

(2) The signature of each owner or agent shall be an actual handwritten signature of an individual, accompanied by the date of signature and the full name, address, and telephone number of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand.

(3) If a Notice of Objection is initially served in the form of a telegram or similar communication, as provided by paragraph (e) of this section, the requirement for an individual's handwritten signature shall be considered waived if the further conditions of said paragraph (e) are met.

(e) Service. (1) A Notice of Objection shall be served on the person responsible for the performance at least seven days before the date of the performance, as provided by 17 U.S.C. 110 (4)(B)(ii).

(2) Service of the Notice may be effected by any of the following methods:

(i) Personal service;

(ii) First-class mail;

(iii) Telegram, cablegram, or similar form of communication, if: (A) The Notice meets all of the other conditions provided by this section; and (B) before the performance takes place, the person responsible for the performance receives written confirmation of the Notice, bearing the actual handwritten signature of each copyright owner or duly authorized agent.

(3) The date of service is the date the Notice of Objection is received by the person responsible for the performance or any agent or employee of that person.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 64684, Dec. 28, 1977]

§ 201.14 Warnings of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives.

(a) Definitions. (1) A Display Warning of Copyright is a notice under paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(2) of section 108 of Title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. As required by those sections the "Display Warning of Copyright" is to be displayed at the place where orders for copies or phonorecords are accepted by certain libraries and archives.

(2) An Order Warning of Copyright is a notice under paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(2) of section 108 of Title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. As required by those sections the "Order Warning of Copyright" is to be included on printed forms supplied by certain libraries and archives and used by their patrons for ordering copies or phonorecords.

(b) Contents. A Display Warning of Copyright and an Order Warning of Copyright shall consist of a verbatim reproduction of the following notice, printed in such size and form and displayed in such manner as to comply with paragraph (c) of this section:

**Notice Warning Concerning Copyright Restrictions**

The copyright law of the United States (Title 17, United States Code) governs the making of photocopies or other reproductions of copyrighted material.

Under certain conditions specified in the law, libraries and archives are authorized to furnish a photocopy or other reproduction. One of these specific conditions is that the photocopy or reproduction is not to be "used for any purpose other than private study, scholarship, or research." If a user makes a request for, or later uses, a photocopy or reproduction for purposes in excess of "fair use," that user may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to accept a copying order if, in its judgment, fulfillment of the order would involve violation of copyright law.

(c) Form and manner of use. (1) A Display Warning of Copyright shall be printed on heavy paper or other durable material in type at least 18 points in size, and shall be displayed prominently, in such manner and location as to be clearly visible, legible, and comprehensible to a casual observer within the immediate vicinity of the place where orders are accepted.

(2) An Order Warning of Copyright shall be printed within a box located prominently on the order form itself, either on the front side of the form or immediately adjacent to the space calling for the name or signature of the person using the form. The notice shall be printed in type size no smaller than that used predominantly throughout the form, and in no case shall the type size be smaller than 8 points. The notice shall be printed in such manner as to be clearly legible, comprehensible, and readily apparent to a casual reader of the form.

**Legislative History**

[42 FR 59265, Nov. 16, 1977]

§ 201.15 [This section was removed and reserved. See 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.16 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 201.17 Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by section 111(d)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code in order for secondary transmissions of cable systems to be subject to compulsory licensing.

(b) Definitions. (1) Gross receipts for the "basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters" include the full amount of monthly (or other periodic) service fees for any and all services or tiers of services which include one or more secondary transmissions of television or radio broadcast signals, for additional set fees, and for converter fees. In no case shall gross receipts be less than the cost of obtaining the signals of primary broadcast transmitters for subsequent retransmission. All such gross receipts shall be aggregated and the distant signal equivalent (DSE) calculations shall be made against the aggregated amount. Gross receipts for secondary transmission services do not include installation (including connection, relocation, disconnection, or reconnection) fees, separate charges for security, alarm or facsimile services, charges for late payments, or charges for pay cable or other program origination services: Provided That, the origination services are not offered in combination with secondary transmission service for a single fee.

(2) A cable system is a facility, located in any State, Territory, Trust Territory, or Possession, that in whole or in part receives signals transmitted or programs broadcast by one or more television broadcast stations licensed by the Federal Communications Commission, and makes secondary transmissions of such signals or programs by wires, cables,

microwave, or other communications channels to subscribing members of the public who pay for such service. A system that meets this definition is considered a "cable system" for copyright purposes, even if the FCC excludes it from being considered a "cable system" because of the number or nature of its subscribers or the nature of its secondary transmissions. The Statements of Account and royalty fees to be deposited under § 201.17 of this section, shall be recorded and deposited by each individual cable system desiring its secondary transmissions to be subject to compulsory licensing. The owner of each individual cable system on the last day of the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account is responsible for depositing the Statement of Account and remitting the copyright royalty fees. For these purposes, and the purpose of § 201.17 of this section, an "individual" cable system is each cable system recognized as a distinct entity under the rules, regulations, and practices of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the last day of the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, in the case of the preparation and deposit of a Statement of Account and copyright royalty fee. For these purposes, two or more cable facilities are considered as one individual cable system if the facilities are either:

(i) In contiguous communities under common ownership or control or

(ii) operating from one headend.

(3) FCC means the Federal Communications Commission.

(4) In the case of cable systems which make secondary transmissions of all available FM radio signals, which signals are not electronically processed by the system as separate and discrete signals, an FM radio signal is "generally receivable" if:

(i) It is usually carried by the system whenever it is received at the system's headend, and

(ii) As a result of monitoring at reasonable times and intervals, it can be expected to be received at the system's headend, with the system's FM antenna, at least three consecutive hours each day at the same time each day, five or more days a week, for four or more weeks during any calendar quarter, with a strength of not less than fifty microvolts per meter measured at the foot of the tower or pole to which the antenna is attached.

(5) The terms primary transmission, secondary transmission, local service area of a primary transmitter, distant signal equivalent, network station, independent station, and noncommercial educational station have the meanings set forth in section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553 and Pub. L. 103-369.

(6) A primary transmitter is a "distant" station, for purposes of this section, if the programming of such transmitter is carried by the cable system in whole or in part beyond the local service area of such primary transmitter.

(7) A translator station is, with respect to programs both originally transmitted and retransmitted by it, a primary transmitter for the purposes of this section. A translator station which retransmits the programs of a network station will be considered a network station; a translator station which retransmits the programs of an independent station shall be considered an independent station; and a translator station which retransmits the programs of a noncommercial educational station shall be considered a noncommercial educational station. The determination of whether a translator station should be identified as a "distant" station depends on the local service area of the translator station.

(8) For purposes of this section, the "rules and regulations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976," which permitted a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place, refers to that portion of former 47 CFR 76.61(b)(2), revised June 25, 1981, and § 76.63 (referring to § 76.61(b)(2)), deleted June 25, 1981, concerning the substitution of a program that is primarily of local interest to the distant community (e.g., a local news or public affairs program).

(9) For purposes of this section, the "rules and regulations of the FCC", which require a cable system to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place, refers to 47 CFR 76.67.

(10) For purposes of this section, a cable system "lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry" only if:

(i) All of its activated television channels are used exclusively for the secondary transmission of television signals; and

(ii) The number of primary television transmitters secondarily transmitted by the cable system exceeds the number of its activated television channels.

(c) Accounting periods and deposit. (1) Statements of Account shall cover semiannual accounting periods of (i) January 1 through June 30, and (ii) July 1 through December 31, and shall be deposited in the Copyright Office, together with the total royalty fee for such accounting periods as prescribed by section 111(d)(1) (B), (C), or (D) of title 17, by not later than the immediately following August 29, if the Statement of Account covers the January 1 through June 30 accounting period, and by not later than the immediately following March 1, if the Statement of Account covers the July 1 through December 31 accounting period.

(2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such Statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Office will examine the Statement and fee for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the documents is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the cable system, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record of the case. However, completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall in no case be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty fee had been deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements to qualify for a compulsory license have been satisfied.

(3) Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period they purport to cover will not be processed by the Copyright Office. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the filing deadlines of August 29 or March 1, respectively, will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have, if any.

(4) In the Register's discretion, four years after the close of any calendar year, the Register may, close out the royalty payments account for that calendar year, and may treat any funds remaining in such account and any subsequent deposits that would otherwise be attributable to that calendar year as attributable to the succeeding calendar year.

(d) Forms. (1) Each Statement of Account shall be furnished on an appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office, and shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions. Computation of distant signal equivalents and the copyright royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms. Copies of Statement of Account forms are available free upon request to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400.

(2) The forms prescribed by the Copyright Office are designated "Statement of Account for Secondary Transmissions By Cable Systems":

(i) Form SA1-2 -- "Short Form" for use by cable systems whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmission total less than $ 379,600; and

(ii) Form SA3 -- "Long Form" for use by cable systems whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmission total $ 379,600 or more.

(e) Contents. Each Statement of Account shall contain the following information:

(1) A clear designation of the accounting period covered by the Statement.

(2) The designation "Owner," followed by:

(i) The full legal name of the owner of the cable system. The owner of the cable system is the individual or entity that provides the retransmission service and collects payment from the end user either directly or indirectly through a third

party. If the owner is a partnership, the name of the partnership is to be followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any other name or names under which the owner conducts the business of the cable system; and

(iii) The full mailing address of the owner.

Ownership, other names under which the owner conducts the business of the cable system, and the owner's mailing address shall reflect facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(3) The designation "System," followed by:

(i) Any business or trade names used to identify the business and operation of the system, unless these names have already been given under the designation "Owner"; and

(ii) The full mailing address of the system, unless such address is the same as the address given under the designation "Owner".

Business or trade names used to identify the business and operation of the system, and the system's mailing address, shall reflect the facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(4) The designation "Area Served", followed by the name of the community or communities served by the system. For this purpose a "community" is the same as a "community unit" as defined in FCC rules and regulations.

(5) The designation "Channels," followed by:

(i) The number of channels on which the cable system made secondary transmissions to its subscribers, and

(ii) The cable system's total activated channel capacity, in each case during the period covered by the Statement.

(6) The designation "Secondary Transmission Service: Subscribers and Rates", followed by:

(i) A brief description of each subscriber category for which a charge is made by the cable system for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters;

(ii) The number of subscribers to the cable system in each such subscriber category; and

(iii) The charge or charges made per subscriber to each such subscriber category for the basic service of providing such secondary transmissions. Standard rate variations within a particular category should be summarized; discounts allowed for advance payment should not be included. For these purposes:

(A) The description, the number of subscribers, and the charge or charges made shall reflect the facts existing on the last day of the period covered by the Statement; and

(B) Each entity (for example, the owner of a private home, the resident of an apartment, the owner of a motel, or the owner of an apartment house) which is charged by the cable system for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions shall be considered one subscriber.

(7) The designation "Gross Receipts", followed by the gross amount paid to the cable system by subscribers for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmissions during the period covered by the Statement of Account. If the cable system maintains its revenue accounts on an accrual basis, gross receipts for any accounting period includes all such amounts accrued for secondary transmission service furnished during that period, regardless of when accrued:

(i) Less the amount of any bad debts actually written-off during that accounting period, excluding bad debts for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978;

(ii) Plus the amount of any previously written-off bad debts for secondary transmission service which were actually recovered during that accounting period, excluding bad debt recoveries for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978.

If the cable system maintains its revenue accounts on a cash basis, gross receipts for any accounting period includes all such amounts actually received by the cable system during that accounting period, excluding amounts paid for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978; however, amounts received before January 1, 1978, for secondary transmission service furnished after that date, are to be considered as if they had been received during the accounting period in which the service covered by such payments was furnished.

(8) The designation "Services Other Than Secondary Transmissions: Rates," followed by a description of each package of service which consists solely of services other than secondary transmission services, for which a separate charge was made or established, and which the cable system furnished or made available to subscribers during the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with the amount of such charge. However, no information need be given concerning services furnished at cost. Specific amounts charged for pay cable programming need not be given if the rates are on a variable, per-program basis. (The fact of such variable charge shall be indicated.)

(9) The designation "Primary Transmitters: Television", followed by an identification of all primary television transmitters whose signals were carried by the cable system during the period covered by the Statement of Account, other than primary transmitters of programs carried by the cable system exclusively pursuant to rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, permitting the substitution of signals under certain circumstances, and required to be specially identified by paragraph (e)(11) of this section, together with the information listed below:

(i) The station call sign of the primary transmitter.

(ii) The name of the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(iii) The number of the channel upon which that primary transmitter broadcasts in the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(iv) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a "network station", an "independent station", or a "noncommercial educational station".

(v) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a "distant" station.

(vi) If that primary transmitter is a "distant" station, a specification of whether the signals of that primary transmitter are carried:

(A) On a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; or

(B) on any other basis.

If the signals of that primary transmitter are carried on a part-time basis because of lack of activated channel capacity, the Statement shall also include a log showing the dates on which such carriage occurred, and the hours during which such carriage occurred on those dates. Hours of carriage shall be accurate to the nearest quarter-hour, except that, in any case where such part-time carriage extends to the end of the broadcast day of the primary transmitter, an approximate ending hour may be given if it is indicated as an estimate.

(vii) The information indicated by paragraph (e)(9), subclauses (v) and (vi) of this section, is not required to be given by any cable system that appropriately completed Form SA1-2 for the period covered by the Statement.

(viii) Notwithstanding the requirements of this section, where a cable system carried a distant primary transmitter under FCC rules and regulations in effect on October 19, 1976 which permitted carriage of specific network programs

on a part-time basis in certain circumstances (former 47 CFR 76.59 (d) (2) and (4), 76.61(e) (2) and (4), and 76.63, referring to § 76.61(e) (2) and (4), all of which were deleted June 25, 1981), carriage of that primary transmitter on that basis need not be reported, and that carriage is to be excluded in computing the distant signal equivalent of that primary transmitter.

(10) The designation "Primary Transmitters: Radio", followed by an identification of primary radio transmitters whose signals were carried by the cable system during the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with the information listed below:

(i) A designation as to whether each primary transmitter was electronically processed by the system as a separate and discrete signal.

(ii) The station call sign of each:

(A) AM primary transmitter;

(B) FM primary transmitter, the signals of which were electronically processed by the system as separate and discrete signals; and

(C) FM primary transmitter carried on an all-band retransmission basis, the signals of which were generally receivable by the system.

(iii) A designation as to whether the primary transmitter is AM or FM.

(iv) The name of the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(11) A special statement and program log, which shall consist of the information indicated below for all nonnetwork television programming that, during the period covered by the Statement, was carried in whole or in part beyond the local service area of the primary transmitter of such programming under (i) rules or regulations of the FCC requiring a cable system to omit the further transmission of a particular program and permitting the substitution of another program in place of the omitted transmission; or (ii) rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, permitting a cable system, at its election, to omit the further transmission of a particular program and permitting the substitution of another program in place of the omitted transmission:

(A) The name or title of the substitute program.

(B) Whether the substitute program was transmitted live by its primary transmitter.

(C) The station call sign of the primary transmitter of the substitute program.

(D) The name of the community to which the primary transmitter of the substitute program is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(E) The date when the secondary transmission of the substitute program occurred, and the hours during which such secondary transmission occurred on that date accurate to the nearest 5 minutes.

(F) A designation as to whether deletion of the omitted program was permitted by the rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, or was required by the rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC.

(12) A statement of the total royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with a royalty fee analysis which gives a clear, complete, and detailed presentation of the determination of such fee. This analysis shall present in appropriate sequence all facts, figures, and mathematical processes used in determining such fee, and shall do so in such manner as required in the appropriate form so as to permit the Copyright Office to verify readily, from the face of the Statement of Account, the accuracy of such determination and fee. The royalty fee analysis is not required to be given by any cable system whose gross receipts from subscribers for the period covered by the

Statement of Account, for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmissions, total $ 98,600 or less.

(13) The name, address, and telephone number of an individual who may be contacted by the Copyright Office for further information about the Statement of Account.

(14) The handwritten signature of:

(i) The owner of the cable system or a duly authorized agent of the owner, if the owner is not a partnership or a corporation; or

(ii) A partner, if the owner is a partnership; or

(iii) An officer of the corporation, if the owner is a corporation. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Statement of Account;

(B) The date of signature;

(C) If the owner of the cable system is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Statement of Account;

(D) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(E) A declaration of the veracity of the statements of fact contained in the Statement of Account and the good faith of the person signing in making such statement of fact.

(f) Computation of distant signal equivalents. (1) A cable system that elects to delete a particular television program and substitute for that program another television program ("substitute program") under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, which permit a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place shall compute the distant signal equivalent ("DSE") of each primary transmitter that broadcasts one or more substitute programs by dividing:

(i) The number of the primary transmitter's live, nonnetwork, substitute programs that were carried by the cable system, during the period covered by the Statement of Account, in substitution for programs deleted at the option of the system; by

(ii) The number of days in the year in which the substitution occurred.

(2)(i) Where a cable system carries a primary transmitter on a full-time basis during any portion of an accounting period, the system shall compute a DSE for that primary transmitter as if it was carried full-time during the entire accounting period.

(ii) Where a cable system carries a primary transmitter solely on a substitute or part-time basis, in accordance with paragraph (f)(3) of this section, the system shall compute a DSE for that primary transmitter based on its cumulative carriage on a substitute or part-time basis. If that primary transmitter is carried on a full-time basis as well as on a substitute or part-time basis, the full DSE for that primary transmitter shall be the full DSE type value for that primary transmitter, for the entire accounting period.

(3)(i) In computing the DSE of a primary transmitter in a particular case of carriage before July 1, 1981, the cable system may make no prorated adjustments other than those specified as permissible "exceptions and limitations" in the definition of "distant signal equivalent" in the fifth paragraph of section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. Four prorated adjustments, as prescribed in the fourth and fifth sentences of said definition, are permitted under certain conditions where:

(A) A station is carried pursuant to the late-night programming rules of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the date of carriage;

(B) A station is carried pursuant to the specialty programming rules of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the date of carriage;

(C) A station is carried on a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; and

(D) A station is carried on a "substitute" basis under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on October 19, 1976.

(ii) In computing the DSE of a primary transmitter in a particular case of carriage on or after July 1, 1981, the cable system may make no prorated adjustments other than those specified as permissible "exceptions and limitations" in the definition of "distant signal equivalent" in the fifth paragraph of section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, and which remain in force under that provision. Two prorated adjustments, as prescribed in the fourth and fifth sentences of said definition, are permitted under certain conditions where:

(A) A station is carried on a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; and

(B) A station is carried on a "substitute" basis under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on October 19, 1976, which permitted a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place.

(4) In computing a DSE, a cable system may round off to the third decimal point. If a DSE is rounded off in any case in a Statement of Account, it must be rounded off throughout the Statement. Where a cable system has chosen to round off, and the fourth decimal point for a particular DSE value would, without rounding off, have been 1, 2, 3, or 4, the third decimal point remains unchanged; if, in such a case, the fourth decimal point would, without rounding off, be 5, 6, 7, 8, or 9, the third decimal point must be rounded off to the next higher number.

(5) For the purposes of computing DSE values, specialty primary television transmitters in the United States and all Canadian and Mexican primary television transmitters shall be assigned a value of one.

(g) Computation of the copyright royalty fee: Partially distant stations. A cable system located partly within and partly without the local service area of a primary television transmitter ("partially distant station") computes the royalty fee specified in section 111(d)(1)(B) (ii), (iii), and (iv) of the Copyright Act ("DSE fee") by excluding gross receipts from subscribers located within that station's local service area from total gross receipts. A cable system which carries two or more partially distant stations with local service areas that do not exactly coincide shall compute a separate DSE fee for each group of subscribers who are located outside of the local service areas of exactly the same complement of distant stations. Computation of the DSE fee for each subscriber group is to be based on:

(1) The total distant signal equivalents of that group's complement of distant stations, and

(2) The total gross receipts from that group of subscribers. The copyright royalty fee for that cable system is:

(i) The total of the subscriber group royalty fees thus computed, or

(ii) 0.956 of 1 percent of the system's gross receipts from all subscribers, whichever is larger.

(h) Computation of the copyright royalty fee pursuant to the 1982 cable rate adjustment. (1) For the purposes of this paragraph, in addition to the definitions of paragraph (b) of this section, the following definitions shall also apply:

(i) Current base rate means the applicable royalty rates in effect on December 31, 1982, as reflected in 37 CFR 256.2(a).

(ii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972. With respect to statements of account covering the filing period beginning January 1, 1990, and subsequent filing periods, the current base rate together with

the surcharge shall apply only to those DSE's that represent commercial VHF signals which place a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over a cable system. The surcharge will not apply if the signal is exempt from the syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981.

(iii) The 3.75% rate means the rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c), in effect on March 15, 1983.

(iv) Top 100 television market means a television market defined or interpreted as being within either the "top 50 television markets" or "second 50 television markets" in accordance with 47 CFR 76.51, in effect on June 24, 1981.

(v) The 1982 cable rate adjustment means the rate adjustment adopted by the Copyright Royalty Tribunal on October 20, 1982 (CRT Docket No. 81-2, 47 FR 52146, November 19, 1982).

(vi) The terms DSE or DSE's mean "distant signal equivalent(s)" as defined in 17 U.S.C. 111(f) and any fraction thereof.

(2) A cable system filing Form SA3 shall compute its royalty fee in the following manner:

(i) The cable system shall first determine those DSE's to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.

(ii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972. With respect to statements of account covering the filing period beginning January 1, 1990, and subsequent filing periods, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply only to those DSE's that represent commercial VHF signals which place a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over a cable system. The surcharge will not apply if the signal is exempt from the syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981.

(iii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, in the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(iv) Commencing with the semiannual accounting period of January 1, 1998, through June 30, 1998, the 3.75% rate applies to certain DSE's with respect to the communities within the cable system where carriage would not have been permitted under the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on June 24, 1981, but in all other communities within the cable system, the current base rate and the syndicated exclusivity surcharge, where applicable, shall apply. Such computation shall be made as provided for on Form SA3. The calculations shall be based upon the gross receipts from all subscribers, within the relevant communities, for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters, without regard to whether those subscribers actually received the station in question. For partially-distant stations, gross receipts shall be the total gross receipts from subscribers outside the local service area.

(3) A cable system whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmissions totalled $ 214,000 or more during the period January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983, shall compute its royalty fee for carriage during that period in the following manner:

(i) Copyright royalty fees must be paid on the basis of carriage for the entire accounting period except where proration of the DSE is permitted as described in paragraph (f)(3) of this section.

(ii) Where a distant signal was carried at any time only between January 1, 1983, and March 14, 1983;

(A) In the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate, together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972.

(B) In case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(iii) Where a distant signal was carried at any time after March 14, 1983;

(A) The cable system shall first determine those DSE's to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.

(B) If the 3.75% rate is applicable to a particular DSE, it shall be applied against the per centum.5967 (representing the number of days from March 15, 1983, through June 30, 1983, inclusive, in relation to the entire accounting period); and either

(1) In the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate, together with the surcharge, applied against the per centum.4033 (representing the number of days from January 1, 1983, through March 14, 1983, inclusive, in relation to the entire accounting period); however, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972; or

(2) In the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate applied against the per centum.4033.

(C) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972.

(D) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, in the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(4)(i) Separate Supplemental DSE Schedules as prescribed by the Copyright Office shall be completed and filed by a cable system affected by the 1982 cable rate adjustment for the accounting periods January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983 (83-1), and July 1, 1983, through December 31, 1983 (83-2). Each Supplemental DSE schedule shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions.

(ii) The Supplemental DSE Schedule will be mailed to all cable systems whose gross receipts for secondary transmissions total $ 214,000 or more either for accounting period 83-1 or for 83-2, and shall be completed and returned to the Copyright Office with the supplemental royalty fee due, if any, within sixty-five (65) days from the date of mailing by the Copyright Office.

(iii) Cable systems located wholly outside all major and smaller television markets as defined by the FCC are not affected by the 1982 cable rate adjustment. Such systems shall complete a certifying statement provided in the Supplemental DSE Schedule and return it within sixty-five (65) days from the date of mailing by the Copyright Office.

(5)(i) It shall be presumed that the 3.75% rate of 37 CFR 308.2(c) applies to DSE's accruing from newly added distant signals, carried for the first time by a cable system after June 24, 1981.

(ii) The presumption of paragraph (h)(5)(i) of this section can be rebutted in whole or in part:

(A) By actual carriage of a particular distant signal prior to June 25, 1981, as reported in Statements of Account duly filed with the Copyright Office ("actual carriage"), unless the prior carriage was not permitted by the FCC; or

(B) By carriage of no more than the number of distant signals which was or would have been allotted to the cable system under the FCC's quota for importation of network and nonspecialty independent stations [47 CFR 76.59(b), 76.61 (b) and (c) and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (b) and (c), in effect on June 24, 1981].

(6) To qualify as an FCC-permitted signal on the ground of individual waiver of the FCC rules (47 CFR 76.7 in effect on June 24, 1981), the waiver must have actually been granted by the FCC, and the signal must have been first carried by the cable system after April 15, 1976.

(7) Expanded geographic carriage after June 24, 1981, of a signal previously carried within only certain parts of a cable system is governed by the current base rate and the surcharge, if applicable.

(8) In cases of expanded temporal carriage of the same signal, previously carried pursuant to the FCC's former part-time or substitute carriage rules [47 CFR 76.61(b)(2), 76.61 (e)(1) and (e)(3), and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (e)(1) and

(e)(3), in effect on June 24, 1981], the 3.75% rate shall be applied to any additional fraction of a DSE accruing from the expanded temporal carriage of that signal. To identify such additional DSE's, a comparison shall be made of DSE's reported for that signal in any single accounting period prior to the July 1, 1981, to December 31, 1981, period (81-2), as designated by the cable system, with the DSE's for that same signal reported in the current relevant accounting period.

(9) Substitution of like signals pursuant to 37 CFR 256.2(c) is possible at the relevant non-3.75% rate (the surcharge together with the current base rate, or the current base rate alone) only if the substitution does not exceed the number of distant signals which was or would have been allotted to the cable system under the FCC's television market quota for importation of network and nonspecialty independent stations (47 CFR 76.59(b), 76.61 (b) and (c), and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (b) and (c), in effect on June 24, 1981.

(i) Royalty fee payment. (1) All royalty fees may be paid by electronic transfer of funds, provided the payment is received in the designated United States Federal Reserve Bank by the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. Except in the case of an electronic payment, the royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account shall accompany that Statement of Account and shall be deposited at the Copyright Office with it. Payment must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or a money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or a United States Treasury electronic payment.

(2) Royalty fee payments submitted as a result of late or amended filings shall include interest. Interest shall begin to accrue beginning on the first day after the close of the period for filing statements of account for all underpayments of royalties for the cable compulsory license occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period shall end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order or electronic payment submitted by a cable system, provided that such payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, then the accrual period shall end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(i) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period beginning with the 1992/2 period shall be the Current Value of Funds Rate, as established by section 8025.40 of the Treasury Financial Manual and published in the Federal Register, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for that accounting period. Cable operators wishing to obtain the interest rate for a specific accounting period may do so by consulting the Federal Register for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(ii) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period earlier than the 1992/2 period shall be the rate fixed by the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office pursuant to 37 CFR 201.17(i) in effect on June 30, 1992.

(iii) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is less than or equal to five dollars ($ 5.00).

(j) Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds. (1) Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in paragraph (j)(3) of this section, corrections to Statements of Account will be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, any of the information given in the Statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete;

(ii) Where, for any reason except that mentioned in paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this section, calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low; or

(iii) Where, for the semiannual accounting period of January 1, 1978, through June 30, 1978, the total royalty fee deposited was incorrect because the cable operator failed to compute royalties attributable to carriage of late-night, specialty, or part-time programming between January 1, 1978, and February 9, 1978.

(2) Corrections to Statements of Account will not be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, addition or deletion of a distant signal) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to a Statement of Account be placed on record, that fee payments be accepted, or requests for the issuance of refunds, shall be made only in the cases mentioned in paragraph (j)(1) of this section. Such requests shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request must be in writing, must clearly identify its purpose, and, in the case of a request for a refund, must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of 60 days from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period, or before the expiration of 60 days from the date of receipt at the Copyright Office of the royalty payment that is the subject of the request, whichever time period is longer. A request made by telephone or by telegraphic or similar unsigned communication, will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, if it is received in the Copyright Office within the required 60-day period, and if a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (j)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such 60-day period;

(ii) The Statement of Account to which the request pertains must be sufficiently identified in the request (by inclusion of the name of the owner of the cable system, the community or communities served, and the accounting period in question) so that it can be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) The request must contain a clear statement of the facts on which it is based and provide a clear basis on which a refund may be granted, in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section, where the information given in the Statement of Account is incorrect or incomplete, the request must clearly identify the erroneous or incomplete information and provide the correct or additional information;

(B) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(ii) of this section, where the royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office was either too high or too low, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculations;

(C) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this section, the request shall be identified as "Transitional and Supplemental Royalty Fee Payment" and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculations;

(iv)(A) All requests filed under this paragraph (j) (except those filed under subparagraph (1)(iii) of this paragraph) must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $ 15 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or of a certified check, cashier's check or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) All requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be received for deposit under this paragraph (j), must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or an electronic payment. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(v) All requests submitted under this paragraph (j) must be signed by the cable system owner named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of the owner, in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section.

(vi) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the cable system owner named in the Statement of Account without regard to the time limitations provided for in paragraph (j)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) Following final processing, all requests submitted under this paragraph (j) will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve cable systems from their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(k) Satellite carriers not eligible. Satellite carriers and satellite resale carriers are not eligible for the cable compulsory license based upon an interpretation of the whole of section 111 of title 17 of the United States Code.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 27832, June 27, 1978; 51 FR 599, 30216, 45112 (1986); 52 FR 28253 (1987); 54 FR 14221 (1989); 55 FR 49999 (1990); 56 FR 7813, 29589 (1991); 57 FR 3296, Jan. 29, 1992; 57 FR 61834 (1992); 58 FR 40363, July 28, 1993; 58 FR 45263, Aug. 27, 1993; 59 FR 67635, Dec. 30, 1994; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 60 FR 57935, 57937, Nov. 24, 1995; 62 FR 18705, 18710, Apr. 17, 1997; 62 FR 23360, 23362, Apr. 30, 1997; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 63 FR 39737, 39738, July 24, 1998; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 64622, 64623, Oct. 30, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

(17 U.S.C. 111, 702, 708)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 64622, 64623, Oct. 30, 2000, amended this section, effective July 1, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.18 Notice of intention to obtain a compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(a) General. (1) A "Notice of Intention" is a notice identified in section 115(b) of Title 17 of the United States Code, and required by that section to be served on a copyright owner, or in certain cases to be filed in the Copyright Office, to obtain a compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(2) A separate Notice of Intention shall be served or filed for each nondramatic musical work embodied, or intended to be embodied, in phonorecords made under the compulsory license.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the term copyright owner, in the case of any work having more than one copyright owner, means any one of the co-owners. In such cases, the service of a Notice of Intention on any one of the co-owners under paragraph (e)(2) of this section shall be sufficient with respect to all co-owners.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a type of phonorecord configuration, and a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a phonorecord manufactured, made, and distributed on the date the phonorecord is digitally transmitted.

(b) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving or filing Notices of Intention.

(c) Content. (1) A Notice of Intention shall be clearly and prominently designated, at the head of the notice, as a "Notice of Intention to Obtain a Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords," and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The full legal name of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(ii) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(iii) A statement of the nature of each and every business organization that the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license will use for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords under the license (for example, a corporation, a partnership, or an individual proprietorship); additionally:

(A) If the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license is a corporation registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall so state.

(B) If the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license is a corporation that is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall include a list of the names of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation.

(C) In all other cases, the Notice shall include the names of each entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity intending to exercise the compulsory license. If a corporate entity is named in response to this paragraph (C), then: If that corporation is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall so state; if that corporation is not so registered, the Notice shall include a list of the names of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(iv) The fiscal year of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. If that fiscal year is a calendar year, the Notice shall state that this is the case;

(v) The title of the nondramatic musical work embodied or intended to be embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license, and the names of the author or authors of such work if known;

(vi) The types of all phonorecord configurations already made (if any) and expected to be made under the compulsory license (for example: Single disk, long-playing disk, cassette, cartridge, reel-to-reel, a digital phonorecord delivery, or a combination of them);

(vii) The expected date of initial distribution of phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license;

(viii) The name of the principal recording artist or group actually engaged or expected to be engaged in rendering the performances fixed on phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license;

(ix) The catalog number or numbers, and label name or names, used or expected to be used on phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license; and

(x) In the case of phonorecords already made (if any) under the compulsory license, the date or dates of such manufacture.

(2) A "clear statement" of the information listed in paragraph (c)(1) of this section requires a clearly intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statement in the Notice itself and (subject to paragraph (c)(1)(iii)(A) of this section) without incorporation by reference of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(3) Where information is required to be given by paragraph (c)(1) of this section "if known" or as "expected", such information shall be given in good faith and on the basis of the best knowledge, information, and belief of the person signing the Notice. If so given, later developments affecting the accuracy of such information shall not affect the validity of the Notice.

(d) Signature. The Notice shall be signed by the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. If that person or entity is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that person or entity is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(e) Filing and service. (1) If, with respect to the nondramatic musical work named in the Notice of Intention, the registration or other public records of the Copyright Office do not identify the copyright owner of such work and include an address for such owner, the Notice shall be filed in the Copyright Office. Notices of Intention submitted for filing shall be accompanied by the fee specified in § 201.3(e). Notices of Intention will be filed by being placed in the appropriate public records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. The date of filing will be the date when a proper Notice and fee are both received in the Copyright Office. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender. Upon request and payment of the fee specified in § 201.3(e), a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(2) If the registration or other public records of the Copyright Office do identify the copyright owner of the nondramatic musical work named in the Notice of Intention and include an address for such owner, the Notice shall be served on such owner by certified mail or by registered mail sent to the last address for such owner shown by the records of the Office; it shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Notice in the Copyright Office in this case.

(3) If the Notice is sent by certified or registered mail to the last address for the copyright owner shown by the records of the Copyright Office and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is no longer located at the address or has refused to accept delivery, the original Notice as sent shall be filed in the Copyright Office. Notices of Intention submitted for filing under this paragraph (e)(3) shall be submitted to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall be accompanied by a brief statement that the Notice was sent to the last address for the copyright owner shown by the records of the Copyright Office but was returned, and by appropriate evidence that it was sent by certified or registered mail to that address. In these cases, the Copyright Office will specially mark its records to consider the date the original Notice was mailed, as shown by the evidence mentioned above, as the date of filing. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender. No filing fee will be required in the case of Notices filed under this paragraph (e)(3). Upon request and payment of the fee specified in § 201.3(e), a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

**Legislative History**

[45 FR 79045, Nov. 28, 1980, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999; 64 FR 41286, 41288, July 30, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, substituted "co-owners" for "coowners" in paragraph (a)(3), effective June 5, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999, amended paragraph (e), effective July 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective July 7, 1999; 64 FR 41286, 41288, July 30, 1999, added paragraph (a)(4) and amended paragraph (c)(1)(vi), effective Aug. 30, 1999.]

§ 201.19 Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(a) Definitions. (1) A Monthly Statement of Account is a statement accompanying monthly royalty payments identified in section 115(c)(5) of Title 17 of the United States Code, and required by that section to be made under the compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(2) An Annual Statement of Account is a statement identified in section 115(c)(5) of Title 17 of the United States Code, and required by that section to be filed for every compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the term copyright owner, in the case of any work having more than one copyright owner means any one of the co-owners. In such cases, the service of a Statement of Account, on one co-owner under paragraph (e)(7) or (f)(7) of this section shall be sufficient with respect to all co-owners.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a compulsory licensee is a person or entity exercising the compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works as provided under section 115 of Title 17 of the United States Code.

(5) For the purposes of this section, a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a type of phonorecord configuration, and a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a phonorecord, with the following clarifications:

(i) A digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a phonorecord made and distributed on the date the phonorecord is digitally transmitted; and

(ii) A digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as having been voluntarily distributed and relinquished from possession, and a compulsory licensee shall be treated as having permanently parted with possession of a digital phonorecord delivery, on the date that the phonorecord is digitally transmitted.

(6) Except as provided in paragraph (a)(5), a phonorecord is considered voluntarily distributed if the compulsory licensee has voluntarily and permanently parted with possession of the phonorecord. For this purpose, and subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a compulsory licensee shall be considered to have "permanently parted with possession" of a phonorecord made under the license:

(i) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale, at the time at which the compulsory licensee actually first parts with possession;

(ii) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes of sale without a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange, at the time at which the compulsory licensee actually first parts with possession;

(iii) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange:

(A) At the time when revenue from a sale of the phonorecord is "recognized" by the compulsory licensee; or

(B) nine months from the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with possession, whichever occurs first.

For these purposes, a compulsory licensee shall be considered to "recognize" revenue from the sale of a phonorecord when sales revenue would be recognized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as expressed by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or the Financial Accounting Standards Board, whichever would cause sales revenue to be recognized first.

(7) To the extent that the terms reserve, credit and return appear in this section, such provisions shall not apply to digital phonorecord deliveries.

(8) A phonorecord reserve comprises the number of phonorecords, if any, that have been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale in a given month accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, and that have not been considered voluntarily distributed during the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with their possession. The initial number of phonorecords comprising a phonorecord reserve shall be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as expressed by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or the Financial Accounting Standards Board.

(9) A negative reserve balance comprises the aggregate number of phonorecords, if any, that have been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, and that have been returned to the compulsory licensee, but because all available phonorecord reserves have been eliminated, have not been used to reduce a phonorecord reserve.

(10) An incomplete transmission is any digital transmission of a sound recording which, as determined by means within the sole control of the distributor, does not result in a specifically identifiable reproduction of the entire sound recording by or for any transmission recipient.

(11) A retransmission is a subsequent digital transmission of the same sound recording initially transmitted to an identified recipient for the purpose of completing the delivery of a complete and usable reproduction of that sound recording to that recipient.

(b) Accounting requirements where sales revenue is "recognized". Where under paragraph (a)(5)(iii)(A) of this section, revenue from the sale of phonorecords is "recognized" during any month after the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with their possession, said compulsory licensee shall reduce particular phonorecord reserves by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized," as follows:

(1) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" is smaller than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, this phonorecord reserve shall be reduced by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized." Subject to the time limitations of subparagraph (B) of this § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(2) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" is greater than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve but less than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall first eliminate those phonorecord reserves, beginning with the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve and continuing to the next succeeding phonorecord reserves, that are completely offset by phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized." Said licensee shall then reduce the next succeeding phonorecord reserve by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" that have not been used to eliminate a phonorecord reserve. Subject to the time limitations of subparagraph (B) of this § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(3) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" equals the number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the person or entity exercising the compulsory license shall eliminate all of the phonorecord reserves.

(c) Accounting requirements for offsetting phonorecord reserves with returned phonorecords. (1) In the case of a phonorecord that has been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, where the phonorecord is returned to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange before said compulsory licensee is considered to have "permanently parted with possession" of the phonorecord under paragraph (a)(5) of this section, the compulsory licensee may use such phonorecord to reduce a "phonorecord reserve," as defined in paragraph (a)(6) of this section.

(2) In such cases, the compulsory licensee shall reduce particular phonorecord reserves by the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement of Account in the following manner:

(i) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is smaller than the number comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, the compulsory licensee shall reduce this phonorecord reserve by the total number of returned phonorecords. Subject to the time limitations of paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(ii) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is greater than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve but less than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall first eliminate those phonorecord reserves, beginning with the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, and continuing to the next succeeding phonorecord reserves, that are completely offset by returned phonorecords. Said licensee shall then reduce the next succeeding phonorecord reserve by the number of returned phonorecords that have not been used to eliminate a phonorecord reserve. Subject to the time limitations of paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(iii) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is equal to or is greater than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall eliminate all eligible phonorecord reserves. Where said number is greater than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, said compulsory licensee shall establish a "negative reserve balance," as defined in paragraph (a)(7) of this section.

(3) Except where a negative reserve balance exists, a separate and distinct phonorecord reserve shall be established for each month during which the compulsory licensee relinquishes phonorecords from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section. In accordance with paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), any phonorecord remaining in a particular phonorecord reserve nine months from the month in which the particular reserve was established shall be considered "voluntarily distributed"; at that point, the particular monthly phonorecord reserve shall lapse and royalties for the phonorecords remaining in it shall be paid as provided in paragraph (e)(4)(ii) of this section.

(4) Where a negative reserve balance exists, the aggregate total of phonorecords comprising it shall be accumulated into a single balance rather than being separated into distinct monthly balances. Following the establishment of a negative reserve balance, any phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale or otherwise, shall be credited against such negative balance, and the negative reserve balance shall be reduced accordingly. The nine-month limit provided by paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii) shall have no effect upon a negative reserve balance; where a negative reserve balance exists, relinquishment from possession of a phonorecord by the compulsory licensee at any time shall be used to reduce such balance, and shall not be considered a "voluntary distribution" within the meaning of paragraph (a)(5) of this section.

(5) In no case shall a phonorecord reserve be established while a negative reserve balance is in existence; conversely, in no case shall a negative reserve balance be established before all available phonorecord reserves have been eliminated.

(d) Situations in which a compulsory licensee is barred from maintaining reserves. Notwithstanding any other provisions of this section, in any case where, within three years before the phonorecord was relinquished from possession, the compulsory licensee has had final judgment entered against it for failure to pay royalties for the reproduction of copyrighted music on phonorecords, or within such period has been definitively found in any proceeding involving bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, assignment for the benefit of creditors, or similar action, to have failed to pay such royalties, that compulsory licensee shall be considered to have "Permanently parted with possession" of a phonorecord made under the license at the time at which that licensee actually first parts with possession. For these purposes the "compulsory licensee," as defined in § 201.19(a)(4), shall include:

(1) In the case of any corporation, the corporation or any director, officer, or beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation;

(2) In all other cases, any entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity exercising the compulsory license.

(e) Monthly statements of account -- (1) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Monthly Statements of Account.

(2) General content. A Monthly Statement of Account shall be clearly and prominently identified as a "Monthly Statement of Account Under Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords," and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The period (month and year) covered by the Monthly Statement;

(ii) The full legal name of the compulsory licensee, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(iii) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the compulsory licensee. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose, except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(iv) The title or titles of the nondramatic musical work or works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license and owned by the copyright owner being served with the Monthly Statement and the name of the author or authors of such work or works, if known;

(v) For each nondramatic musical work that is owned by the same copyright owner being served with the Monthly Statement and that is embodied in phonorecords covered by the compulsory license, a detailed statement of all of the information called for in paragraph (e)(3) of this section;

(vi) The total royalty payable for the month covered by the Monthly Statement, computed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the formula specified in paragraph (e)(4) of this section, together with a statement of account showing in detail how the royalty was computed; and

(vii) In any case where the compulsory licensee falls within the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a clear description of the action or proceeding involved, including the date of the final judgment or definitive finding described in that paragraph.

(3) Specific content of monthly statements: Identification and accounting of phonorecords. (i) The information called for by paragraph (e)(2)(v) of this section shall, with respect to each nondramatic musical work, include a separate listing of each of the following items of information:

(A) The number of phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries, made during the month covered by the Monthly Statement;

(B) The number of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement and regardless of when made, were either:

Relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale;

Relinquished from possession for purposes of sale without any privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange;

Relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange;

Returned to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange;

Placed in a phonorecord reserve (except that if a negative reserve balance exists give either the number of phonorecords added to the negative reserve balance, or the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession that have been used to reduce the negative reserve balance);

Never delivered due to a failed transmission; or

Digitally retransmitted in order to complete a digital phonorecord delivery.

(C) The number of phonorecords, regardless of when made, that were relinquished from possession during a month earlier than the month covered by the Monthly Statement but that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement either have had revenue from their sale "recognized" under paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, or were comprised in a phonorecord reserve that lapsed after nine months under paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii).

(ii) Each of the items of information called for by paragraph (e)(3)(i) of this section shall also include, and if necessary shall be broken down to identify separately, the following:

(A) The catalog number or numbers and label name or names, used on the phonorecords;

(B) The names of the principal recording artist or group engaged in rendering the performances fixed on the phonorecords;

(C) The playing time on the phonorecords of each nondramatic musical work covered by the statement; and

(D) Each phonorecord configuration involved (for example: single disk, long-playing disk, cartridge, cassette, reel-to-reel, digital phonorecord delivery, or a combination of them).

(E) The date of and a reason for each incomplete transmission.

(4) Royalty payment and accounting. (i) The total royalty called for by paragraph (e)(2)(vi) of this section shall, as specified in section 115(c)(2) of Title 17 of the United States Code, be payable for every phonorecord "voluntarily distributed" during the month covered by the Monthly Statement.

(ii) The amount of the royalty payment shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

Step 1: Compute the number of phonorecords shipped for sale with a privilege of return. This is the total of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, were relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee, accompanied by the privilege of returning unsold phonorecords to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange. This total does not include: (1) Any phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale without the privilege of return; and (2) any phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale.

Step 2: Subtract the number of phonorecords reserved. This involves deducting, from the subtotal arrived at in Step 1, the number of phonorecords that have been placed in the phonorecord reserve for the month covered by the Monthly Statement. The number of phonorecords reserved is determined by multiplying the subtotal from Step 1 by the percentage reserve level established under Generally Accepted Accounting Practices. This step should be skipped by a compulsory licensee barred from maintaining reserves under paragraph (d) of this section.

Step 3: Add the total of all phonorecords that were shipped during the month and were not counted in Step 1. This total is the sum of two figures: (1) The number of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, were relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale, without the privilege of returning unsold phonorecords to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange; and (2) the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, for purposes other than sale.

Step 4: Make any necessary adjustments for sales revenue "recognized," lapsed reserves, or reduction of negative reserve balance during the month. If necessary, this step involves adding to or subtracting from the subtotal arrived at in Step 3 on the basis of three possible types of adjustments:

(a) Sales revenue "recognized." If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, the compulsory licensee "recognized" revenue from the sale of phonorecords that had been relinquished from possession in an earlier month, the number of such phonorecords is added to the Step 3 subtotal;

(b) Lapsed reserves. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are any phonorecords remaining in the phonorecord reserve for the ninth previous month (that is, any phonorecord reserves from the ninth previous month that have not been offset under FOFI, the first-out-first-in accounting convention, by actual returns during the intervening months), the reserve lapses and the number of phonorecords in it is added to the Step 3 subtotal.

(c) Reduction of negative reserve balance. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, the aggregate reserve balance for all previous months is a negative amount, the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee during that month and used to reduce the negative reserve balance is subtracted from the Step 3 subtotal.

(d) Incomplete transmissions. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are any digital transmissions of a sound recording which do not result in specifically identifiable reproductions of the entire sound recording by or for any transmission recipient, as determined by means within the sole control of the distributor, the number of such phonorecords is subtracted from the Step 3 subtotal.

(e) Retransmitted digital phonorecords. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are retransmissions of a digital phonorecord to a recipient who did not receive a complete and usable phonorecord during an initial transmission, and such transmissions are made for the sole purpose of delivering a complete and usable reproduction of the initially requested sound recording to that recipient, the number of such retransmitted digital phonorecords is subtracted from the Step 3 subtotal.

Step 5: Multiply by the statutory royalty rate. The total monthly royalty payment is obtained by multiplying the subtotal from Step 3, as adjusted if necessary by Step 4, by the statutory royalty rate of 5.7 cents or 1.1 cents per minute or fraction of playing time, whichever is larger.

(iii) Each step in computing the monthly payment, including the arithmetical calculations involved in each step, shall be set out in detail in the Monthly Statement.

(5) Clear statements. The information required by paragraphs (e) (2) and (3) of this section involves intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statements in the Monthly Statements of Account itself and without incorporation of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(6) Oath and signature. Each Monthly Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of the compulsory licensee. If that compulsory licensee is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that compulsory licensee is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(i) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Monthly Statement of Account;

(ii) the date of signature;

(iii) if the compulsory licensee is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Monthly Statement of Account;

(iv) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(v) the following statement:

I certify that I have examined this Monthly Statement of Account and that all statements of fact contained herein are true, complete, and correct to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, and are made in good faith.

(7) Service. (i) Each Monthly Statement of Account shall be served on the copyright owner to whom or which it is directed, together with the total royalty for the month covered by the Monthly Statement, by certified mail, or by registered mail on or before the 20th day of the immediately succeeding month. It shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Monthly Statement in the Copyright Office.

(ii)(A) In any case where a Monthly Statement of Account is sent by certified mail or registered mail and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is not located at that address or has refused to accept delivery, or in any case where an address for the copyright owner is not known, the Monthly Statement of Account, together with any evidence of mailing, may be filed in the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. Any Monthly Statement of Account submitted for filing in the Copyright Office shall be accompanied by a brief statement of the reason why it was not served on the copyright owner. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender.

(B) The Copyright Office will not accept any royalty fees submitted with Monthly Statements of Account under § 202.19(e)(7)(ii).

(C) Neither the filing of a Monthly Statement of Account in the Copyright Office, nor the failure to file such Monthly Statement, shall have effect other than that which may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(D) No filing fee will be required in the case of Monthly Statements of Account submitted to the Copyright Office under this § 201.19(e)(7)(ii). Upon request and payment of the fee specified in § 201.3(e), a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(iii) A separate Monthly Statement of Account shall be served for each month during which there is any activity relevant to the payment of royalties under section 115 of Title 17, United States Code, and under this section. The Annual Statement of Account identified in paragraph (f) of this section does not replace any Monthly Statement of Account.

(f) Annual statements of account -- (1) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Annual Statements of Account.

(2) Annual period. Any Annual Statement of Account shall cover the full fiscal year of the compulsory licensee.

(3) General content. An Annual Statement of Account shall be clearly and prominently identified as an "Annual Statement of Account Under Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords," and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(ii) The full legal name of the compulsory licensee, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(iii) A statement of the nature of the business organization used by the compulsory licensee in connection with the making and distribution of phonorecords (for example, a corporation, a partnership, or an individual proprietorship); additionally:

(A) If the compulsory licensee is a corporation registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall state that this is the case.

(B) If the compulsory licensee is a corporation that is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall include a list of the names of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation.

(C) In all other cases, the Annual Statement shall include the names of each entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity exercising the compulsory license. If a corporate entity is named in response to this paragraph (C), then: If that corporation is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall so state; if that corporation is not so registered, the Annual Statement shall include a list of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(iv) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, or the place of business of the compulsory licensee. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(v) The title or titles of the nondramatic musical work or works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license and owned by the copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement and the name of the author or authors of such work or works, if known;

(vi) The playing time of each nondramatic musical work on such phonorecords;

(vii) For each nondramatic musical work that is owned by the same copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement and that is embodied in phonorecords covered by the compulsory license, a detailed statement of all of the information called for in paragraph (f)(4) of this section;

(viii) The total royalty payable for the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement computed in accordance with the requirements of this section, together with a statement of account showing in detail how the royalty was computed. For these purposes, the applicable royalty as specified in section 115(c)(2) of Title 17 of the United States Code, shall be payable for every phonorecord "voluntarily distributed" during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(ix) The total sum paid under Monthly Statements of Account by the compulsory licensee to the copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement; and

(x) In any case where the compulsory license falls within the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a clear description of the action or proceeding involved, including the date of the final judgment or definitive finding described in that paragraph.

(4) Specific content of annual statements: Identification and accounting of phonorecords. (i) The information called for by paragraph (f)(3)(vii) of this section shall, with respect to each nondramatic musical work, include a separate listing of each of the following items of information separately stated and identified for each phonorecord configuration (for example, single disk, long playing disk, cartridge, cassette, or reel-to-reel) made:

(A) The number of phonorecords made through the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement, including any made during earlier years;

(B) The number of phonorecords which have never been relinquished from possession of the compulsory licensee through the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(C) The number of phonorecords involuntarily relinquished from possession (as through fire or theft) of the compulsory licensee during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement and any earlier years, together with a description of the facts of such involuntary relinquishment;

(D) The number of phonorecords "voluntarily distributed" by the compulsory licensee during all years before the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(E) The number of phonorecords relinquished from possession of the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold records for credit or exchange, but not "voluntarily distributed" by the end of that year;

(F) The number of phonorecords "voluntarily distributed" by the compulsory licensee during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement, together with:

(1) The catalog number or numbers, and label name or names, used on such phonorecords; and

(2) the names of the principal recording artists or groups engaged in rendering the performances fixed on such phonorecords.

(ii) If the information given under paragraphs (A) through (F) of this § 201.19(f)(4)(i) does not reconcile, the Annual Statement shall also include a clear and detailed explanation of the difference. For these purposes, the information given under such paragraphs shall be considered not to reconcile if, after the number of phonorecords given under paragraphs (B), (C), (D), and (E) are added together and that sum is deducted from the number of phonorecords given under paragraph (A), the result is different from the amount given under paragraph (F).

(5) Clear statement. The information required by paragraph (f)(3) of this section involves intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statements in the Annual Statement of Account itself and [subject to paragraph (f)(3)(iii)(A)] without incorporation by reference of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(6) Signature and certification. (i) Each Annual Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of the compulsory licensee. If that compulsory licensee is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that compulsory licensee is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by: (A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Annual Statement of Account; (B) the date of signature; (C) if the compulsory licensee is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Annual Statement of Account; and (D) a certification of the capacity of the person signing.

(ii)(A) Each Annual Statement of Account shall also be certified by a licensed Certified Public Accountant. Such certification shall consist of the following statement:

We have examined the attached "Annual Statement of Account Under Compulsory License For Making and Distributing Phonorecords" for the fiscal year ended (date) of (name of the compulsory licensee) applicable to phonorecords embodying (title or titles of nondramatic musical works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license) made under the provisions of section 115 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, and applicable regulations of the United States Copyright Office. Our examination was made in accordance

with generally accepted auditing standards and accordingly, included tests of the accounting records and such other auditing procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

In our opinion the Annual Statement of Account referred to above presents fairly the number of phonorecords embodying each of the above-identified nondramatic musical works made under compulsory license and voluntarily distributed by (name of the compulsory licensee) during the fiscal year ending (date), and the amount of royalties applicable thereto under such compulsory license, on a consistent basis and in accordance with the above cited law and applicable regulations published thereunder.

Click here to view image.

(B) The certificate shall be signed by an individual, or in the name of a partnership or a professional corporation with two or more shareholders. The certificate number and jurisdiction are not required if the certificate is signed in the name of a partnership or a professional corporation with two or more shareholders.

(7) Service. (i) Each Annual Statement of Account shall be served on the copyright owner to whom or which it is directed by certified mail or by registered mail on or before the twentieth day of the third month following the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement. It shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Annual Statement in the Copyright Office. An Annual Statement of Account shall be served for each fiscal year during which at least one Monthly Statement of Account was required to have been served under paragraph (e)(7) of this section.

(ii) In any case where the amount required to be stated in the Annual Statement of Account under paragraph (f)(3)(viii) of this section is greater than the amount stated in that Annual Statement under paragraph (f)(3)(ix) of this section, the difference between such amounts shall be delivered to the copyright owner together with the service of the Annual Statement. The delivery of such sum does not require the copyright owner to accept such sum, or to forego any right, relief, or remedy which may be available under law.

(iii)(A) In any case where an Annual Statement of Account is sent by certified mail or registered mail and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is not located at that address or has refused to accept delivery, or in any case where an address for the copyright owner is not known, the Annual Statement of Account, together with any evidence of mailing, may be filed in the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. Any Annual Statement of Account submitted for filing shall be accompanied by a brief statement of the reason why it was not served on the copyright owner. A written acknowledgment of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender.

(B) The Copyright Office will not accept any royalty fees submitted with Annual Statements of Account under § 202.19(f)(7)(iii).

(C) Neither the filing of an Annual Statement of Account in the Copyright Office, nor the failure to file such Annual Statement, shall have any effect other than that which may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(D) No filing fee will be required in the case of Annual Statements of Account submitted to the Copyright Office under this § 201.19(f)(7)(iii). Upon request and payment of the fee specified in § 201.3(e), a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(g) Documentation. All compulsory licensees shall, for a period of at least three years from the date of service of an Annual Statement of Account, keep and retain in their possession all records and documents necessary and appropriate to support fully the information set forth in such Annual Statement and in Monthly Statements served during the fiscal year covered by such Annual Statement.

**Legislative History**

[45 FR 79046, Nov. 28, 1980, as amended at 56 FR 7813, Feb. 26, 1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, July 7, 1999; 64 FR 41286, 41289, July 30, 1999; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

(17 U.S.C. 115, 702, 708)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (e)(4)(ii) and (f)(6)(ii)(A), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.20 Methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works.

(a) General. (1) This section specifies examples of methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works that will satisfy the notice requirement of section 401(c) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. A notice considered "acceptable" under this regulation shall be considered to satisfy the requirement of that section that it be "affixed to the copies in such manner and location as to give reasonable notice of the claim of copyright." As provided by that section, the examples specified in this regulation shall not be considered exhaustive of methods of affixation and positions giving reasonable notice of the claim of copyright.

(2) The provisions of this section are applicable to copies publicly distributed on or after December 1, 1981. This section does not establish any rules concerning the form of the notice or the legal sufficiency of particular notices, except with respect to methods of affixation and positions of notice. The adequacy or legal sufficiency of a copyright notice is determined by the law in effect at the time of first publication of the work.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1) The terms audiovisual works, collective works, copies, device, fixed, machine, motion picture, pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works, and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in section 101 of title 17.

(2) Title 17 means Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(3) In the case of a work consisting preponderantly of leaves on which the work is printed or otherwise reproduced on both sides, a "page" is one side of a leaf; where the preponderance of the leaves are printed on one side only, the terms "page" and "leaf" mean the same.

(4) A work is published in book form if the copies embodying it consist of multiple leaves bound, fastened, or assembled in a predetermined order, as, for example, a volume, booklet, pamphlet, or multipage folder. For the purpose of this section, a work need not consist of textual matter in order to be considered published in "book form."

(5) A title page is a page, or two consecutive pages facing each other, appearing at or near the front of the copies of a work published in book form, on which the complete title of the work is prominently stated and on which the names of the author or authors, the name of the publisher, the place of publication, or some combination of them, are given.

(6) The meaning of the terms front, back, first, last, and following, when used in connection with works published in book form, will vary in relation to the physical form of the copies, depending upon the particular language in which the work is written.

(7) In the case of a work published in book form with a hard or soft cover, the front page and back page of the copies are the outsides of the front and back covers; where there is no cover, the "front page," and "back page" are the pages visible at the front and back of the copies before they are opened.

(8) A masthead is a body of information appearing in approximately the same location in most issues of a newspaper, magazine, journal, review, or other periodical or serial, typically containing the title of the periodical or serial, information about the staff, periodicity of issues, operation, and subscription and editorial policies, of the publication.

(9) A single-leaf work is a work published in copies consisting of a single leaf, including copies on which the work is printed or otherwise reproduced on either one side or on both sides of the leaf, and also folders which, without cutting or tearing the copies, can be opened out to form a single leaf. For the purpose of this section, a work need not consist of textual matter in order to be considered a "single-leaf work."

(c) Manner of affixation and position generally. (1) In all cases dealt with in this section, the acceptability of a notice depends upon its being permanently legible to an ordinary user of the work under normal conditions of use, and affixed to the copies in such manner and position that, when affixed, it is not concealed from view upon reasonable examination.

(2) Where, in a particular case, a notice does not appear in one of the precise locations prescribed in this section but a person looking in one of those locations would be reasonably certain to find a notice in another somewhat different location, that notice will be acceptable under this section.

(d) Works published in book form. In the case of works published in book form, a notice reproduced on the copies in any of the following positions is acceptable:

(1) The title page, if any;

(2) The page immediately following the title page, if any;

(3) Either side of the front cover, if any; or, if there is no front cover, either side of the front leaf of the copies;

(4) Either side of the back cover, if any; or, if there is no back cover, either side of the back leaf of the copies;

(5) The first page of the main body of the work;

(6) The last page of the main body of the work;

(7) Any page between the front page and the first page of the main body of the work, if:

(i) There are no more than ten pages between the front page and the first page of the main body of the work; and

(ii) the notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from other matter on the page where it appears;

(8) Any page between the last page of the main body of the work and back page, if:

(i) There are no more than ten pages between the last page of the main body of the work and the back page; and

(ii) the notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from the other matter on the page where it appears.

(9) In the case of a work published as an issue of a periodical or serial, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (d)(1) through (8) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located:

(i) As a part of, or adjacent to, the masthead;

(ii) on the page containing the masthead if the notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from the other matter appearing on the page; or

(iii) adjacent to a prominent heading, appearing at or near the front of the issue, containing the title of the periodical or serial and any combination of the volume and issue number and date of the issue.

(10) In the case of a musical work, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (d)(1) through (9) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located on the first page of music.

(e) Single-leaf works. In the case of single-leaf works, a notice reproduced on the copies anywhere on the front or back of the leaf is acceptable.

(f) Contributions to collective works. For a separate contribution to a collective work to be considered to "bear its own notice of copyright," as provided by 17 U.S.C. 404, a notice reproduced on the copies in any of the following positions is acceptable:

(1) Where the separate contribution is reproduced on a single page, a notice is acceptable if it appears:

(i) Under the title of the contribution on that page;

(ii) adjacent to the contribution; or

(iii) on the same page if, through format, wording, or both, the application of the notice to the particular contribution is made clear;

(2) Where the separate contribution is reproduced on more than one page of the collective work, a notice is acceptable if it appears:

(i) Under a title appearing at or near the beginning of the contribution;

(ii) on the first page of the main body of the contribution;

(iii) immediately following the end of the contribution; or

(iv) on any of the pages where the contribution appears, if:

(A) The contribution is reproduced on no more than twenty pages of the collective work;

(B) the notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from other matter on the page where it appears; and

(C) through format, wording, or both, the application of the notice to the particular contribution is made clear;

(3) Where the separate contribution is a musical work, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (f)(1) and (2) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located on the first page of music of the contribution;

(4) As an alternative to placing the notice on one of the pages where a separate contribution itself appears, the contribution is considered to "bear its own notice" if the notice appears clearly in juxtaposition with a separate listing of the contribution by title, or if the contribution is untitled, by a description reasonably identifying the contribution:

(i) On the page bearing the copyright notice for the collective work as a whole, if any; or

(ii) in a clearly identified and readily-accessible table of contents or listing of acknowledgements appearing near the front or back of the collective work as a whole.

(g) Works reproduced in machine-readable copies. For works reproduced in machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tapes or disks, punched cards, or the like, from which the work cannot ordinarily be visually perceived except with the aid of a machine or device,n1 each of the following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and position of notice:

(1) A notice embodied in the copies in machine-readable form in such a manner that on visually perceptible printouts it appears either with or near the title, or at the end of the work;

(2) A notice that is displayed at the user's terminal at sign on;

(3) A notice that is continuously on terminal display; or

(4) A legible notice reproduced durably, so as to withstand normal use, on a gummed or other label securely affixed to the copies or to a box, reel, cartridge, cassette, or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the copies.

(h) Motion pictures and other audiovisual works. (1) The following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on motion pictures and other audiovisual works: A notice that is embodied in the copies by a photomechanical or electronic process, in such a position that it ordinarily would appear whenever the work is performed in its entirety, and that is located:

(i) With or near the title;

(ii) with the cast, credits, and similar information;

(iii) at or immediately following the beginning of the work; or

(iv) at or immediately preceding the end of the work.

(2) In the case of an untitled motion picture or other audiovisual work whose duration is sixty seconds or less, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, a notice that is embodied in the copies by a photomechanical or electronic process, in such a position that it ordinarily would appear to the projectionist or broadcaster when preparing the work for performance, is acceptable if it is located on the leader of the film or tape immediately preceding the beginning of the work.

(3) In the case of a motion picture or other audiovisual work that is distributed to the public for private use, the notice may be affixed, in addition to the locations specified in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, on the housing or container, if it is a permanent receptacle for the work.

(i) Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works. The following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various forms of pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works:

(1) Where a work is reproduced in two-dimensional copies, a notice affixed directly or by means of a label cemented, sewn, or otherwise attached durably, so as to withstand normal use, of the front or back of the copies, or to any backing, mounting, matting, framing, or other material to which the copies are durably attached, so as to withstand normal use, or in which they are permanently housed, is acceptable.

(2) Where a work is reproduced in three-dimensional copies, a notice affixed directly or by means of a label cemented, sewn, or otherwise attached durably, so as to withstand normal use, to any visible portion of the work, or to any base, mounting, framing, or other material on which the copies are durably attached, so as to withstand normal use, or in which they are permanently housed, is acceptable.

(3) Where, because of the size or physical characteristics of the material in which the work is reproduced in copies, it is impossible or extremely impracticable to affix a notice to the copies directly or by means of a durable label, a notice is acceptable if it appears on a tag that is of durable material, so as to withstand normal use, and that is attached to the copy with sufficient durability that it will remain with the copy while it is passing through its normal channels of commerce.

(4) Where a work is reproduced in copies consisting of sheet-like or strip material bearing multiple or continuous reproductions of the work, the notice may be applied:

(i) To the reproduction itself;

(ii) to the margin, selvage, or reverse side of the material at frequent and regular intervals; or

(iii) if the material contains neither a selvage nor a reverse side, to tags or labels, attached to the copies and to any spools, reels, or containers housing them in such a way that a notice is visible while the copies are passing through their normal channels of commerce.

(5) If the work is permanently housed in a container, such as a game or puzzle box, a notice reproduced on the permanent container is acceptable.

(17 U.S.C. 401, 702)

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 58312, Dec. 1, 1981; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, substituted "title" for "Title" in paragraph (b)(1), effective June 28, 2001.]

FOOTNOTES:
[n1] Footnote 1. Works published in a form requiring the use of a machine or device for purposes of optical enlargement (such as film, filmstrips, slide films, and works published in any variety of microform) and works published in visually perceptible form but used in connection with optical scanning devices, are not within this category.

§ 201.21 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 201.22 Advance notices of potential infringement of works consisting of sounds, images, or both.

(a) Definitions. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is a notice which, if served in accordance with section 411(b) of Title 17 of the United States Code, and in accordance with the provisions of this section, enables a copyright owner to institute an action for copyright infringement either before or after the first fixation of a work consisting of sounds, images, or both that is first fixed simultaneously with its transmission, and to enjoy the full remedies of said Title 17 for copyright infringement, provided registration for the work is made within three months after its first transmission.

(2) For purposes of this section, the copyright owner of a work consisting of sounds, images, or both, the first fixation of which is made simultaneously with its transmission, is the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation (including, in the case of a work made for hire, the employer or other person or entity for whom the work was prepared), or a person or organization that has obtained ownership of an exclusive right, initially owned by the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation.

(3) A transmission program is a body of material that, as an aggregate, has been produced for the sole purpose of transmission to the public in sequence and as a unit.

(b) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Advance Notices of Potential Infringement.

(c) Contents. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be clearly and prominently captioned "ADVANCE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL INFRINGEMENT" and must clearly state that the copyright owner objects to the relevant activities of the person responsible for the potential infringement, and must include all of the following:

(i) Reference to title 17 U.S.C. section 411(b) as the statutory authority on which the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is based;

(ii) The date, specific time, and expected duration of the intended first transmission of the work or works contained in the specific transmission program;

(iii) The source of the intended first transmission of the work or works;

(iv) Clear identification, by title, of the work or works. A single Advance Notice of Potential Infringement may cover all of the works of the copyright owner embodied in a specific transmission program. If any work is untitled, the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall include a detailed description of that work;

(v) The name of at least one person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation;

(vi) The identity of the copyright owner, as defined in paragraph (a)(2) of this section. If the copyright owner is not the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation, the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement also shall include a brief, general statement summarizing the means by which the copyright owner obtained ownership of the copyright and the particular rights that are owned; and

(vii) A description of the relevant activities of the person responsible for the potential infringement which would, if carried out, result in an infringement of the copyright.

(2) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement must also include clear and prominent statements:

(i) Explaining that the relevant activities may, if carried out, subject the person responsible to liability for copyright infringement; and

(ii) Declaring that the copyright owner intends to secure copyright in the work upon its fixation.

(d) Signature and identification. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be in writing and signed by the copyright owner, or such owner's duly authorized agent.

(2) The signature of the owner or agent shall be an actual handwritten signature of an individual, accompanied by the date of signature and the full name, address, and telephone number of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand.

(3) If an Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is initially served in the form of a telegram or similar communication, as provided by paragraph (e)(2)(iii) of this section, the requirement for an individual's handwritten signature shall be considered waived if the further conditions of said paragraph (e) are met.

(e) Service. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be served on the person responsible for the potential infringement not less than 48 hours before the first fixation and simultaneous transmission of the work as provided by 17 U.S.C. 411(b)(1).

(2) Service of the Advance Notice may be effected by any of the following methods:

(i) Personal service;

(ii) First-class mail; or

(iii) Telegram, cablegram, or similar form of communication, if:

(A) The Advance Notice meets all of the other conditions provided by this section; and

(B) before the first fixation and simultaneous transmission take place, the person responsible for the potential infringement receives written confirmation of the Advance Notice, bearing the actual handwritten signature of the copyright owner or duly authorized agent.

(3) The date of service is the date the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is received by the person responsible for the potential infringement or by any agent or employee of that person.

(17 U.S.C. 411, 702)

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 28849, May 29, 1981; 63 FR 66041, 66042, Dec. 1, 1998; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, substituted "title" for "Title" in paragraph (c)(1)(i), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.23 Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to the Library of Congress.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules governing the transfer of unpublished copyright deposits in the custody of the Copyright Office to the Library of Congress. The copyright deposits may consist of copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with registration of claims to copyright under section 408 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, 90 Stat. 2541, effective January 1, 1978. These rules establish the conditions under which the Library of Congress is entitled to select deposits of unpublished works for its collections or for permanent transfer to the National Archives of the United States or to a Federal records center in accordance with section 704(b) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(b) Selection by the Library of Congress. The Library of Congress may select any deposits of unpublished works for the purposes stated in paragraph (a) of this section at the time of registration or at any time thereafter; Provided, That:

(1) A facsimile reproduction of the entire copyrightable content of the deposit shall be made a part of the Copyright Office records before transfer to the Library of Congress as provided by section 704(c) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, unless, within the discretion of the Register of Copyrights, it is considered impractical or too expensive to make the reproduction;

(2) All unpublished copyright deposits retained by the Library of Congress in its collections shall be maintained under the control of the Library of Congress with appropriate safeguards against unauthorized copying or other unauthorized use of the deposits which would be contrary to the rights of the copyright owner in the work under Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553; and

(3) At the time selection is made a request for full term retention of the deposit under the control of the Copyright Office has not been granted by the Register of Copyrights, in accordance with section 704(e) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(17 U.S.C. 702, 704)

**Legislative History**

[45 FR 41414, June 19, 1980]

§ 201.24 Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries.

(a) Definition. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental is a notice under paragraph (b)(2)(A) of section 109 of the Copyright Act, title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by the Computer Software Rental Amendments Act of 1990, Public Law 101-650. As required by that paragraph, the "Warning of Copyright for Software Rental" shall be affixed to the packaging that contains the computer program which is lent by a nonprofit library for nonprofit purposes.

(b) Contents. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental shall consist of a verbatim reproduction of the following notice, printed in such size and form and affixed in such manner as to comply with paragraph (c) of this section.

Notice: Warning of Copyright Restrictions

The copyright law of the United States (title 17, United States Code) governs the reproduction, distribution, adaptation, public performance, and public display of copyrighted material.

Under certain conditions specified in law, nonprofit libraries are authorized to lend, lease, or rent copies of computer programs to patrons on a nonprofit basis and for nonprofit purposes. Any person who makes an unauthorized copy or adaptation of the computer program, or redistributes the loan copy, or publicly performs or displays the computer program, except as permitted by title 17 of the United States Code, may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to fulfill a loan request if, in its judgement, fulfillment of the request would lead to violation of the copyright law.

(c) Form and manner of use. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental shall be affixed to the packaging that contains the copy of the computer program, which is the subject of a library loan to patrons, by means of a label cemented, gummed, or otherwise durably attached to the copies or to a box, reel, cartridge, cassette, or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the copy of the computer program. The notice shall be printed in such manner as to be clearly legible, comprehensible, and readily apparent to a casual user of the computer program.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 7812, Feb. 26, 1991; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (b), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.25 Visual Arts Registry.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures relating to the submission of Visual Arts Registry Statements by visual artists and owners of buildings, or their duly authorized representatives, for recordation in the Copyright Office under section 113(d)(3) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 101-650, effective June 1, 1991. Statements recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will establish a public record of information relevant to an artist's integrity right to prevent destruction or injury to works of visual art incorporated in or made part of a building.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording statements regarding works of visual art that have been incorporated in or made part of a building.

(c) Recordable statements -- (1) General. Any statement designated as a "Visual Arts Regulatory Statement" and which pertains to a work of visual art that has been incorporated in or made part of a building may be recorded in the Copyright Office provided the statement is accompanied by the fee for recordation of documents specified in section 708(a)(4) of title 17 of the United States Code. Upon their submission, the statements and an accompanying documentation or photographs become the property of the United States Government and will not be returned. Photocopies are acceptable if they are clear and legible. Information contained in the Visual Arts Registry Statement should be as complete as possible since the information may affect the enforceability of valuable rights under the copyright law. Visual Arts Registry Statements which are illegible or fall outside of the scope of section 113(d)(3) of title 17 may be refused recordation by the Copyright Office.

(2) Statements by artists. Statements by artists regarding a work of visual art incorporated or made part of a building should be filed in a document containing the head: "Registry of Visual Art Incorporated in a Building -- Artist's Statement." The statement should contain the following information:

(i) Identification of the artist, including name, current address, age, and telephone number, if publicly listed.

(ii) Identification of the work or works, including the title, dimensions, and physical description of the work and the copyright registration number, if known. Additionally, it is recommended that one or more 8 x 10 photographs of the work on good quality photographic paper be included in the submission; the images should be clear and in focus.

(iii) Identification of the building, including its name and address. This identification may additionally include 8 x 10 photographs of the building and the location of the artist's work in the building.

(iv) Identification of the owner of the building, if known.

(3) Statements by the owner of the building. Statements of owners of a building which incorporates a work of visual art should be filed in a document containing the heading: "Registry of Visual Art Incorporated in a Building -- Building Owner's Statement." The statement should contain the following information:

(i) Identification of the ownership of the building, the name of a person who represents the owner, and a telephone number, if publicly listed.

(ii) Identification of the building, including the building's name and address. This identification may additionally include 8 x 10 photographs of the building and of the works of visual art which are incorporated in the building.

(iii) Identification of the work or works of visual art incorporated in the building, including the works' title(s), if known, and the dimensions and physical description of the work(s). This identification may include one or more 8 x 10 photographs of the work(s) on high quality photographic paper; the images should be clear and in focus.

(iv) Identification of the artist(s) who have works incorporated in the building, including the current address of each artist, if known.

(v) Photocopy of contracts, if any, between the artist and owners of the building regarding the rights of attribution and integrity.

(vi) Statement as to the measures taken by the owner to notify the artist(s) of the removal or pending removal of the work of visual art, and photocopies of any accompanying documents.

(4) Updating statements. Either the artist or owner of the building or both may record statements updating previously recorded information by submitting an updated statement and paying the recording fee specified in paragraph (d) of this section. Such statements should repeat the information disclosed in the previous filing as regarding the name of the artist(s), the name of the work(s) of visual art, the name and address of the building, and the name of the owner(s) of the building. The remaining portion of the statement should correct or supplement the information disclosed in the previously recorded statement.

(d) Fee. The fee for recording a Visual Arts Registry Statement, a Building Owner's Statement, or an updating statement is the recordation fee for a document, as prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(e) Date of recordation. The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation of the statement, the sender will receive a certificate of record from the Copyright Office. Any documentation or photographs accompanying any submission will be retained and filed by the Copyright Office. They may also be transferred to the Library of Congress, or destroyed after preparing suitable copies, in accordance with usual procedures.

(f) Effect of recordation. The Copyright Office will record statements in the Visual Arts Registry without examination or verification of the accuracy or completeness of the statement, if the statement is designated as a "Visual Arts Registry Statement" and pertains to a work of visual art incorporated in or made part of a building. Recordation of the statement and payment of the recording fee shall establish only the fact of recordation in the official record. Acceptance for recordation shall not be considered a determination that the statement is accurate, complete, and otherwise in compliance with section 113(d), title 17, U.S. Code. The accuracy and completeness of the statement is the responsibility of the artist or building owner who submits it for recordation. Artists and building owners are encouraged to submit accurate and complete statements. Omission of any information, however, shall not itself invalidate the recordation, unless a court of competent jurisdiction finds the statement is materially deficient and fails to meet the minimum requirements of section 113(d) of title 17, U.S. Code.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 38341, Aug. 13, 1991; 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29521, June 1, 1999, revised paragraph (d), effective July 1, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended paragraphs (d) and (f), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 201.26 Recordation of documents pertaining to computer shareware and donation of public domain computer software.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of legal documents pertaining to computer shareware and the deposit of public domain computer software under section 805 of Public Law 101-650, 104 Stat. 5089 (1990). Documents recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will be included in the Computer Shareware Registry. Recordation in this Registry will establish a public record of licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware. Documents transferring the ownership of some or all rights under the copyright law of computer shareware and security interests in such software should be recorded under 17 U.S.C. 205, as implemented by § 201.4.

(b) Definitions -- (1) The term computer shareware is accorded its customary meaning within the software industry. In general, shareware is copyrighted software which is distributed for the purposes of testing and review, subject to the condition that payment to the copyright owner is required after a person who has secured a copy decides to use the software.

(2) A document designated as pertaining to computer shareware means licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware.

(3) Public domain computer software means software which has been publicly distributed with an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection by the copyright owner.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents designated as pertaining to computer shareware or for the deposit of public domain computer software.

(d) Recordable Documents -- (1) Any document clearly designated as a "Document Pertaining to Computer Shareware" and which governs the legal relationship between owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware may be recorded in the Computer Shareware Registry.

(2) Submitted documents may be a duplicate original, a legible photocopy, or other legible facsimile reproduction of the document, and must be complete on its face.

(3) Submitted documents will not be returned, and the Copyright Office requests that if the document is considered valuable, that only copies of that document be submitted for recordation.

(4) The Copyright Office encourages the submission of a machine-readable copy of the document in the form of an IBM-PC compatible disk, in addition to a copy of the document itself.

(e) Fee. The fee for recording a document pertaining to computer shareware is the recordation fee for a document, as prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(f) Date of recordation. The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation of the statement, the sender

will receive a certificate of record from the Copyright Office. The submission will be retained and filed by the Copyright Office, and may be destroyed at a later date after preparing suitable copies, in accordance with usual procedures.

(g) Donation of public domain computer software. (1) Any person may donate a copy of public domain computer software for the benefit of the Machine-Readable Collections Reading Room of the Library of Congress. Decision as to whether any public domain computer software is suitable for accession to the collections rests solely with the Library of Congress. Materials not selected will be disposed of in accordance with usual procedures, including transfer to other libraries, sale, or destruction. Donation of public domain software may be made regardless of whether a document has been recorded pertaining to the software.

(2) In order to donate public domain software, the following conditions must be met:

(i) The copy of the public domain software must contain an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection from the copyright owner.

(ii) The submission should contain documentation regarding the software. If the documentation is in machine-readable form, a print-out of the documentation should be included in the donation.

(iii) If the public domain software is marketed in a box or other packaging, the entire work as distributed, including the packaging, should be deposited.

(iv) If the public domain software is copy protected, two copies of the software must be submitted.

(3) Donations of public domain software with an accompanying letter of explanation must be sent to the following address: Gift Section, Exchange & Gift Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540-4260.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 29107, May 19, 1993; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999, revised paragraph (d), effective July 1, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (g)(3), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 201.27 Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the filing of an Initial Notice of Distribution in the Copyright Office as required by section 1003(b) of the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992, Public Law 102-563, title 17 of the United States Code, to obtain a statutory license to import and distribute, or manufacture and distribute, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium in the United States.

(b) Definitions -- (1) An Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media or Initial Notice is a notice under section 1003(b) of the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992, Public Law 102-563, title 17 of the United States Code, which is required by that section to be filed in the Copyright Office by an importer or manufacturer of a digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium who has not previously filed notice of the importation or manufacture for distribution of such device or medium in the United States.

(2) The product category of a device or medium is a general class of products made up of functionally equivalent digital audio recording devices or media with substantially the same use in substantially the same environment, including, for example, hand-held portable integrated combination units ("boomboxes"); portable personal recorders; stand-alone

home recorders ("tape decks"); home combination systems ("rack systems"); automobile recorders; configurations of tape media (standard cassettes or microcassettes); and configurations of disc media such as 2 1/2, " 3" and 5" discs.

(3) The technology of a device or medium is a product type distinguished by different technical processes for digitally recording musical sounds, such as digital audio tape recorders (DAT), digital compact cassette, (DCC), or recordable compact discs, including minidiscs (MD).

(4) The terms digital audio recording device, digital audio recording medium, distribute, manufacture, and transfer price, have the meanings of the same terms as they are used in section 1001 of the Copyright Act, title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 102-563.

(c) Forms. An Initial Notice form may be obtained from the Copyright Office free of charge, by contacting the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400.

(d) Filing Deadline. Initial Notices shall be filed in the Copyright Office no later than 45 days after the commencement of the first distribution of digital audio recording devices or digital audio recording media in the United States, on or after October 28, 1992. A manufacturer or importer shall file an Initial Notice within 45 days of the first distribution for each new product category and each new technology that the manufacturer or importer has not reported in a previous Initial Notice.

(e) Content of Initial Notices. An Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

(1) The designation "Importer" or "Manufacturer," or both, whichever is applicable, followed by the full legal name of the importer or manufacturer of the digital audio recording device or medium, or if the party named is a partnership, the name of the partnership followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(2) Any trade or business name or names, trademarks, or other indicia of origin that the importer or manufacturer uses or intends to use in connection with the importation, manufacture, or distribution of such digital audio recording device or medium in the United States;

(3) The full United States mailing address of the importer or manufacturer, and the full business address, if different;

(4) The product category and technology of the devices or media imported or manufactured;

(5) The first date (day, month, and year) that distribution commenced, or is to commence;

(6) The signature of an appropriate officer, partner, or agent of the importer or manufacturer, as specified by the Initial Notice form; and

(7) Other information relevant to the importation or manufacture for distribution of digital audio recording devices or media as prescribed on the Initial Notice form provided by the Copyright Office.

(f) Amendments. (1) The Copyright Office will record amendments to Initial Notices submitted to correct an error or omission in the information given in an earlier Initial Notice. An amendment is not appropriate to reflect developments or changes in facts occurring after the date of signature of an Initial Notice.

(2) An amendment shall:

(i) Be clearly and prominently identified as an "Amendment to an Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media;"

(ii) Identify the specific Initial Notice intended to be amended so that it may be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) Clearly specify the nature of the amendment to be made; and

(iv) Be signed and dated in accordance with this section.

(3) The recordation of an amendment under this paragraph shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(g) Recordation. (1) The Copyright Office will record the Initial Notices and amendments submitted in accordance with this section by placing them in the appropriate public files of the Office. The Copyright Office will advise manufacturers and importers of errors or omissions appearing on the face of documents submitted to it, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before the documents will be recorded. However, recordation by the Copyright Office shall establish only the fact and date thereof; such recordation shall in no case be considered a determination that the document was, in fact, properly prepared or that all of the regulatory requirements to satisfy section 1003 of title 17 have been met.

(2) No fee shall be required for the recording of Initial Notices. A fee of $ 20 payable by personal or company check to the Register of Copyrights shall accompany any Amendment permitted by paragraph (f) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 55465, Nov. 25, 1992; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraphs (c) and (e), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 201.28 Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the filing of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and 1004, in order to import and distribute, or manufacture and distribute, in the United States any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Annual statement of account is the statement required under 17 U.S.C. 1003, to be filed no later than two months after the close of the accounting period covered by the annual statement.

(2) Device and medium have the same meaning as digital audio recording device and digital audio recording medium, respectively, have in 17 U.S.C. 1001.

(3) Digital audio recording product means digital audio recording devices and digital audio recording media.

(4) Generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), means the auditing standards promulgated by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

(5) Manufacturing or importing party refers to any person or entity that manufactures and distributes, and/or imports and distributes, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium in the United States, and is required under 17 U.S.C. 1003 to file with the Copyright Office quarterly and annual Statements of Account.

(6) Product category of a device or medium is a general class of products made up of functionally equivalent digital audio recording products with substantially the same use in substantially the same environment, including, for example, hand-held portable integrated combination units ("boomboxes"); portable personal recorders; stand-alone home recorders ("tape decks"); home combination systems ("rack systems"); automobile recorders; configurations of tape media (standard cassettes or microcassettes); and configurations of disc media, such as 2 1/2 inch, 3 inch, or 5 inch discs.

(7) Primary auditor is the certified public accountant retained by the manufacturing or importing party to audit the amounts reported in the annual Statement of Account submitted to the Copyright Office. The primary auditor may be

the certified public accountant engaged by the manufacturing or importing party to perform the annual audit of the party's financial statement.

(8) Quarterly statement of account is the statement accompanying royalty payments required under 17 U.S.C. 1003, to be filed for each of the first three quarters of the accounting year, and no later than 45 days after the close of the quarterly period covered by the statement.

(9) Technology of a device or medium is a digital audio recording product-type distinguished by different technical processes for digitally recording musical sounds, such as digital audio tape recorders (DAT), digital compact cassettes (DCC), or recordable compact discs, including minidiscs (MD).

(10) Distribute, manufacture, transfer price, and serial copying have the meanings set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1001.

(c) Accounting periods and filing deadlines -- (1) Election of filing basis. Statements of Account may be filed on either a calendar or fiscal year basis at the election of the manufacturing party. The election of a calendar or fiscal year basis must be made when the manufacturing or importing party files its first quarterly Statement of Account by appropriate designation on the Form DART/Q submitted. Thereafter the specific calendar or fiscal-year accounting period must be designated on each quarterly Statement of Account. The filing basis may be changed at any time upon notification in writing to the Register of Copyrights, accompanied by a statement of reasons as to why the change is to be made and a statement that such change will not affect the aggregate royalties due under the earlier basis. The notification of change in filing basis must be made at least two months before the date the next quarterly Statement of Account is due to be filed.

(2) Quarterly filings. Quarterly Statements of Account shall be filed on Form DART/Q and shall cover a three-month period corresponding to the calendar or fiscal year of the filing party. A quarterly statement shall be filed no later than 45 days after the close of the period it covers.

(3) Annual filings. Annual Statements of Account shall be filed on Form DART/A and shall cover both the fourth quarter of an accounting year and the aggregate of the entire year corresponding to the calendar or fiscal accounting year elected. An annual statement shall be filed no later than two months after the close of the period it covers. As a transitional measure, however, the first annual Statement of Account filed after October 28, 1992, is not due until March 1, 1994, or two months after the end of the calendar or fiscal year in which the manufacturing or importing party first filed a quarterly Statement of Account, whichever is later. The first annual Statement of Account shall cover the entire period from October 28, 1992, to the end of the full accounting year. The appropriate royalty payment, calculated according to the instructions contained in Form DART/A, shall accompany the annual Statement of Account covering royalties due for the filing year: that is, royalties for the fourth quarter and any additional royalties that are due because of adjustments in the aggregate amounts of devices or media distributed.

(4) Early or late filings. Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period covered by the statement will not be processed by the Office. The statement must be filed after the close of the relevant accounting period. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the 45-day deadline for quarterly statements or the two-month deadline for annual statements will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have and will be assessed the appropriate interest charge for the late filing.

(d) Forms. (1) Each quarterly or annual Statement of Account shall be submitted on the appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office. Computation of the royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms and this section. Statement of Account forms are available from the Licensing Division, Library of Congress. Forms and other information may be requested from the Licensing Division by facsimile transmission (FAX), but copies of Statement of Account forms transmitted to the Office by FAX will not be accepted.

(2) Forms prescribed by the Copyright Office are designated Quarterly Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products (Form DART/Q) and Annual Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products (Form DART/A).

(e) Contents of quarterly Statements of Account. (1) Quarterly period and filing. Any quarterly Statement of Account shall cover the full quarter of the calendar or fiscal accounting year for the particular quarter for which it is filed. A separate quarterly statement shall be filed for each quarter of the first three quarters of the accounting year during which

there is any activity relevant to the payment of royalties under 17 U.S.C. 1004. The annual Statement of Account identified in paragraph (f) of this section incorporates the fourth quarter of the accounting year.

(2) General content. Each quarterly Statement of Account shall be filed on Form DART/Q, the "Quarterly Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products," and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) A designation of the calendar or fiscal year of the annual reporting period;

(ii) A designation of the period, including the beginning and ending day, month, and year of the period covered by the quarter;

(iii) The full legal name of the manufacturing and/or importing party, together with any "doing-business-as" names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of manufacturing, importing, or distributing digital audio recording products;

(iv) The full mailing address of the manufacturing or importing party, including a specific number and street name, or rural route and box number, of the place of business of the person or entity. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(v) A designation of the manufacturing or importing party status, i.e., "Manufacturer," "Importer," or "Manufacturer and Importer;"

(vi) The designation "Product Categories" together with the product categories of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed during the quarter covered by the statement;

(vii) The designation "Technologies" together with the technologies of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed under the AHRA during the quarter covered by the statement;

(viii) The designation "Series or Model Number" followed by the model or series numbers of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed under the AHRA during the quarter covered by the statement;

(ix) The "fee code" associated with the product;

(x) The "source code" for the product category;

(xi) The "transfer price" of the product;

(xii) The "number of units distributed" for each product;

(xiii) The "minimum fee per unit" for each product;

(xiv) The statutory royalty "rate" for digital audio recording devices or media;

(xv) The "rate fee" for each product;

(xvi) The appropriate "maximum fee per unit" for each product;

(xvii) The "maximum fee" for each product; and

(xviii) A computation of the total royalty payable for the quarter covered by the statement. Filing parties may not round off the figures they list in Space C, the computation section of the form, except for the figure representing the total royalty fee due; in that case, numbers ending in 50 to 99 cents may be rounded up to the next dollar, and numbers ending in one to 49 cents may be rounded down to the next dollar;

(3) Royalty payments and accounting. (i) The royalty specified in 17 U.S.C. 1004 shall accompany the quarterly and annual Statements of Account. No royalty is payable for redistribution of the same product item unless a credit has been taken for such items. Where royalties are payable for the period covered by the statement, the Statement of Account shall contain the following information for each unique combination of product category, technology, series or model number, fee code, source code, and transfer price:

(A) The total number of digital audio recording media distributed, multiplied by the statutory royalty rate of three percent (3%) of the transfer price;

(B) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory royalty rate of two percent (2%) of the transfer price is payable, multiplied by such percentage rate of the transfer price;

(C) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory maximum royalty is limited to eight dollars ($ 8.00), multiplied by such eight dollar amount;

(D) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory maximum royalty is limited to twelve dollars ($ 12.00), multiplied by such twelve dollar amount; and

(E) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory minimum royalty is limited to one dollar ($ 1.00), multiplied by such one dollar amount.

(ii) The amount of the royalty payment shall be calculated in accordance with the instructions specified in the quarterly Statement of Account form. Payment of the royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment payable to the Register of Copyrights.

(4) Reduction of royalty fee. (i) Section 1004(a)(2)(A) of title 17 of the United States Code, provides an instance in which royalty payments may be reduced if the digital audio recording device and such other devices are part of a physically integrated unit, the royalty payment shall be based on the transfer price of the unit, but shall be reduced by any royalty payment made on any digital audio recording device included within the unit that was not first distributed in combination with the unit.

(ii) Notice of this provision together with directions for possible application to a product is contained in the DART/Q Form.

(5) Contact party. Each Statement of Account shall include the name, address, and telephone and facsimile (FAX) numbers of an individual whom the Copyright Office can write or call about the Statement of Account.

(6) Credits for returned or exported products. When digital audio recording products first distributed in the United States for ultimate transfer to United States consumers are returned to the manufacturer or importer as unsold or defective merchandise, or are exported, the manufacturing or importing party may take a credit to be deducted from the royalties payable for the period when the products were returned or exported. The credit may be taken only for returns or exports made within two years following the date royalties were paid for the products. This credit must be reflected in the manufacturing or importing party's quarterly or annual Statement of Account. If the manufacturer or importer later redistributes in the United States any products for which a credit has been taken, these products must be listed on the Statement of Account, and a new computation of the royalty fee must be made based on the transfer price of the products at the time of the new distribution.

(7) Oath and signature. Each Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of an authorized officer, principal, or agent of the filing party. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(i) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the quarterly Statement of Account;

(ii) The date the document is signed;

(iii) The following certification:

I, the undersigned, hereby certify that I am an authorized officer, principal, or agent of the "manufacturing or importing party" identified in Space B.

Penalties for fraud and false statements are provided under 18 U.S.C. 1001 et. seq.

(f) Contents of annual Statements of Account -- (1) General contents. Each annual Statement of Account shall be filed on form DART/A, "Annual Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products." It must be filed by any importer or manufacturer that distributed in the United States, during a given calendar or fiscal year, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium. The annual statement shall cover the aggregate of the distribution of devices and media for the entire year corresponding to the calendar or fiscal year elected. The annual Statement of

Account shall contain the information, oath, and certification prescribed in paragraphs (e)(2)(i) through (e)(7)(iii) of this section, and shall cover the entire accounting year, including the fourth quarter distribution, and shall also provide for the reconciliation of the aggregated accounting of digital audio recording devices and media for the reported accounting year.

(2) Reconciliation. Any royalty payment due under sections 1003 and 1004 of title 17 that was not previously paid with the filing party's first three quarterly Statements of Account, shall be reconciled in the annual statement. Reconciliation in the annual Statement of Account provides for adjustments for reductions, refunds, underpayments, overpayments, credits, and royalty payments paid in Quarters 1, 2, and 3, and shall be computed in accordance with the instructions included in the annual Statement of Account. Errors that require reconciliation shall be corrected immediately upon discovery.

(3) Accountant's opinion. Each annual Statement of Account or any amended annual Statement of Account shall be audited by the primary auditor as defined in paragraph (b)(7) of this section. An amendment may be submitted to the Office either as a result of responses to questions raised by a Licensing Division examiner or on the initiative of the manufacturing or importing party to correct an error in the original Statement of Account.

(i) The audit shall be performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). The audit may be performed in conjunction with an annual audit of the manufacturing or importing party's financial statements.

(ii) The CPA shall issue a report, the "primary auditor's report," reflecting his or her opinion as to whether the annual statement presents fairly, in all material respects, the number of digital audio recording devices and media that were imported and distributed, or manufactured and distributed, by the manufacturing or importing party during the relevant year, and the amount of royalty payments applicable to them under 17 U.S.C. chapter 10, in accordance with that law and these regulations.

(iii) The primary auditor's report shall be filed with the Copyright Office together with the annual Statement of Account, within two months after the end of the annual period for which the annual Statement of Account is prepared. The report may be qualified to the extent necessary and appropriate.

(iv) The Copyright Office does not provide a specific form, or require a specific format, for the CPA's review; however, in addition to the above, certain items must be named as audited items. These include the variables necessary to complete Space C of the Statement of Account form. The CPA may place his or her opinion, which will serve as the "primary auditor's report," in the space provided on Form DART/A, or may attach a separate sheet or sheets containing the opinion.

(v) The auditor's report shall be signed by an individual, or in the name of a partnership or a corporation, and shall include city and state of execution, certificate number, jurisdiction of certificate, and date of opinion. The certificate number and jurisdiction are not required if the report is signed in the name of a partnership or a corporation.

(g) Documentation. All filing parties shall keep and retain in their possession, for at least three years from the date of filing, all records and documents necessary and appropriate to support fully the information set forth in quarterly and annual statements that they file.

(h) Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds -- (1) General. Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in this paragraph (h), corrections to quarterly and annual Statements of Account will be placed on record, and supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds without interest will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by the quarterly or annual Statement of Account, any of the information given in the statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete; or

(ii) Where, for any reason except that mentioned in paragraph (h)(2) of this section, calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low.

(2) Corrections to quarterly or annual Statements of Account will not be placed on file, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, cases where digital audio recording media were exported) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to annual or quarterly Statements of Account be accepted, that fee payments be accepted, or that refunds be issued shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request shall be made in writing and must clearly identify the manufacturing or importing party making the request, the accounting period in question, and the purpose of the request. A request for a refund must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of two months from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period. A request made by telephone or by telegraphic or similar unsigned communication will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, is received in the Copyright Office within the two-month period, and a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (h)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such two-month period.

(ii) The request must clearly identify the incorrect or incomplete information formerly filed and must provide the correct or additional information.

(iii) In the case where a royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited with the Copyright Office was too large or too small, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with 28 U.S.C. 1746, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(7) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculation.

(iv) Following final processing, all requests will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve manufacturing or importing parties of their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(v)(A) The request must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $ 20 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or a certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to the Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) Requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be deposited must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment payable to the Register of Copyrights. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(vi) All requests submitted under paragraph (h) of this section must be signed by the manufacturing or importing party named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of that party in accordance with paragraph (e)(7) of this section.

(vii) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the manufacturing or importing party named in the Statement of Account. The Copyright Office will not pay interest on any royalty refunds.

(i) Examination of Statements of Account by the Copyright Office. (1) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Licensing Division will examine the statement for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the document is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the manufacturer or importer, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in

the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record.

(2) Completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall not be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty was deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements of 17 U.S.C. 1001 et. seq. were fulfilled.

(j) Interest on late payments or underpayments. (1) Royalty payments submitted as a result of late payments or underpayments shall include interest, which shall begin to accrue on the first day after the close of the period for filing Statements of Account for all late payments or underpayments of royalties occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period for interest shall end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment submitted by the manufacturing or importing party, if the payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, the accrual period shall end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(2) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period shall be the Current Value of Funds rate in accordance with the Treasury Financial Manual, at 1 TFM 6-8025.40, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. The interest rate for a particular accounting period may be obtained by consulting the Federal Register for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(3) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is five dollars ($ 5.00) or less.

(k) Confidentiality of Statements of Account. Public access to the Copyright Office files of Statements of Account for digital audio recording products shall not be provided. Access will only be granted to interested copyright parties in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Register of Copyrights pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1003(c).

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 9546, Feb. 22, 1993; 59 FR 4589, Feb. 1, 1994; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (c) and (e), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000, amended paragraph (c)(4), effective Aug. 10, 2000.]

§ 201.29 Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account, Verification Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules covering access to DART Statements of Account, including the Primary Auditor's Reports, filed under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and access to a Verifying Auditor's Report or other information that may be filed in the Office in a DART verification procedure as set out in § 201.30. It also prescribes rules to ensure confidential disclosure of these materials to appropriate parties.

(b) Definitions.

(1) Access includes inspection of and supervised making of notes on information contained in Statements of Account including Primary Auditor's Reports, Verification Auditor's Reports, and any other verification information.

(2) Audit and Verification Information means the reports of the Primary Auditor and Verifying Auditor filed with the Copyright Office under § § 201.28 and 201.30, and all information relating to a manufacturing or importing party.

(3) DART Access Form means the form provided by the Copyright Office that must be completed and signed by any appropriate party seeking access to DART confidential material.

(4) DART confidential material means the Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account, including the Primary Auditor's Report that is part of the Annual Statements of Account, and the Verifying Auditor's Report and any other verification information filed with the Copyright Office. It also includes photocopies of notes made by requestors who have had access to these materials that are retained by the Copyright Office.

(5) Interested copyright party means a party as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7).

(6) A Representative is someone, such as a lawyer or accountant, who is not an employee or officer of an interested copyright party or a manufacturing or importing party but is authorized to act on that party's behalf.

(7) Statements of Account means Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account as required under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and defined in § 201.28.

(c) Confidentiality. The Copyright Office will keep all DART confidential materials in locked files and disclose them only in accordance with this section. Any person or entity provided with access to DART confidential material by the Copyright Office shall receive such information in confidence and shall use and disclose it only as authorized in 17 U.S.C. 1001 et. seq.

(d) Persons allowed Access to DART confidential material. Access to DART Statements of Account filed under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and to Verification Auditor's Reports or other verification information is limited to:

(1) An interested copyright party as defined in § 201.29(b)(5) or an authorized representative of an interested copyright party, who has been qualified for access pursuant to paragraph (f)(2) of this section;

(2) The Verifying Auditor authorized to conduct verification procedures under § 201.30;

(3) The manufacturing or importing party who filed that Statement of Account or that party's authorized representative(s); and

(4) Staff of the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress who require access in the performance of their duties under title 17 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.;

(e) Requests for Access. An interested copyright party, manufacturing party, importing party, representative, or Verifying Auditor seeking access to any DART confidential material must complete and sign a "DART Access Form." The requestor must submit a copy of the completed DART Access Form to the Licensing Specialist, Licensing Division. The form must be received in the Licensing Division at least 5 working days before the date an appointment is requested. The form may be FAXED to the Licensing Division to expedite scheduling, but a copy of the form with the original signature must be filed with the Office.

(1) A representative of an interested copyright party, a manufacturing party or an importing party shall submit an affidavit of his or her authority (e.g., in the form of a letter of authorization from the interested copyright party or the manufacturing or importing party).

(2) An auditor selected to conduct a verification procedure under § 201.30 shall submit an affidavit of his or her selection to conduct the verification procedure.

(3) DART Access Forms may be requested from, and upon completion returned to: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400. They may also be requested or submitted in person at the Licensing Division, Room LM-458, James Madison Memorial Building, First and Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC, between 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m.

(f) Criteria for Access to DART confidential material. (1) A Verifying Auditor will be allowed access to any particular Statement of Account and Primary Auditor's Report required to perform his or her verification function;

(2) Interested copyright parties as defined in paragraph (b)(5) of this section will be allowed access to any DART confidential material as defined in paragraph (b)(4) of this section for verification purposes, except that no interested copyright party owned or controlled by a manufacturing or importing party subject to royalty payment obligations under the Audio Home Recording Act, or who owns or controls such a manufacturing or importing party, may have access to DART confidential material relating to any other manufacturing or importing party. In such cases, a representative of the interested copyright party as defined in paragraph (b)(6) of this section may have access for that party, provided that these representatives do not disclose the confidential information contained in the Statement of Account or Primary Auditor's Report to his or her client.

(3) Access to a Verifying Auditor's Report and any other verification material filed in the Office shall be limited to the interested copyright party(s) requesting the verification procedure and to the manufacturing or importing party whose Statement of Account was the subject of the verification procedure.

(g) Denial of Access. Any party who does not meet the criteria described in § 201.29(f) shall be denied access.

(h) Content of DART Access Form. The DART Access Form shall include the following information:

(1) Identification of the Statement of Account and Primary Auditor's Report, the Verification Auditor's Report and other verification materials, or notes prepared by requestors who earlier accessed the same items, to be accessed, by both the name (of the manufacturing party or importing party) and the quarter(s) and year(s) to be accessed.

(2) The name of the interested copyright party, manufacturing party, importing party, or verification auditor on whose behalf the request is made, plus this party's complete address, including a street address (not a post office box number), a telephone number, and a telefax number, if any.

(3) If the request for access is by or for an interested copyright party, a statement indicating whether the copyright party is owned or controlled by a manufacturing or importing party subject to a royalty payment obligation, or whether the interested copyright party owns or controls a manufacturing or importing party subject to royalty payments.

(4) The name, address, and telephone number of the person making the request for access and his/her relationship to the party on whose behalf the request is made.

(5) The specific purpose for the request for access, for example, access is requested in order to verify a Statement of Account; in order to review the results of a verification audit; for the resolution of a dispute arising from such an audit; or in order for a manufacturing or importing party to review its own Statement of Account, Primary Auditor's Report, Verification Auditor's Report, or related information.

(6) A statement that the information obtained from access to Statements of Account, Primary Auditor's Report, Verification Auditor's Report, and any other verification audit filings will be used only for a purpose permitted under the Audio Home Recording Act (AHRA) and the DART regulations.

(7) The actual signature of the party or the representative of the party requesting access certifying that the information will be held in confidence and used only for the purpose specified by the Audio Home Recording Act and these regulations.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 25998, May 16, 1995; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, substituted "Room" for "room" in paragraph (e)(3), effective June 5, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (e)(3), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 201.30 Verification of Statements of Account.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the verification of information contained in the Statements of Account by interested copyright parties pursuant to section 1003(c) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) Definitions.

(1) Annual Statement of Account, generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), and primary auditor have the same meaning as the definition in § 201.28 of this part.

(2) Filer is a manufacturer or importer of digital devices or media who is required by 17 U.S.C. 1003 to file with the Copyright Office Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account and a primary auditor's report on the Annual Statement of Account.

(3) Interested copyright party has the same meaning as the definition in § 201.29 of this part.

(4) Verifying auditor is the person retained by interested copyright parties to perform a verification procedure. He or she is independent and qualified as defined in paragraphs (j)(2) and (j)(3) of this section.

(5) Verification procedure is the process followed by the verifying auditor to verify the information reported on an Annual Statement of Account.

(c) Purpose of Verification. The purpose of verification is to determine whether there was any failure of the primary auditor to conduct the primary audit properly or to obtain a reliable result, or whether there was any error in the Annual Statement of Account.

(d) Timing of Verification Procedure.

(1) Requesting a verification procedure. No sooner than three months nor later than three years after the filing deadline of the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, any interested copyright party shall notify the Register of Copyrights of its interest in instituting a verification procedure. Such notification of interest shall also be served at the same time on the filer and the primary auditor identified in the Annual Statement of Account. Such notification shall include the year of the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, the name of the filer, information on how other interested copyright parties may contact the party interested in the verification including name, address, telephone number, facsimile number and electronic mail address, if any, and a statement establishing the party filing the notification as an interested copyright party. The notification of interest may apply to more than one Annual Statement of Account and more than one filer.

(2) Coordination and selection of verifying auditor. The Copyright Office will publish in the Federal Register notice of having received a notification of interest to institute a verification procedure. Interested copyright parties have one month from the date of publication of the Federal Register notice to notify the party interested in instituting the verification procedure of their intent to join with it and to participate in the selection of the verifying auditor. Any dispute about the selection of the verifying auditor shall be resolved by the parties themselves.

(3) Notification of the filer and primary auditor. As soon as the verifying auditor has been selected, and in no case later than two months after the publication in the Federal Register of the notice described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the joint interested copyright parties shall notify the Register of Copyrights, the filer, and the primary auditor identified in the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, that they intend or do not intend to initiate a verification procedure.

(4) Commencement of the verification procedure. The verification procedure shall begin no sooner than one month after notice of intent to initiate a verification procedure was given to the filer and the primary auditor by the joint interested copyright parties. The joint interested copyright parties shall grant the filer or the primary auditor a postponement of the beginning of the verification procedure of up to one additional month if either one requests it. Verification procedures shall be conducted at reasonable times during normal business hours.

(5) Anti-duplication rules. A filer shall be subject to no more than one verification procedure per calendar year. An Annual Statement of Account shall be subject to a verification procedure only once.

(e) Scope of verification. The verifying auditor shall limit his or her examination to verifying the information required in the Annual Statement of Account. To the extent possible, the verifying auditor shall inspect the information contained in the primary auditor's report and the primary auditor's working papers. If the verifying auditor believes that access to the records, files, or other materials in the control of the filer is required according to GAAS, he or she may, after consultation with the primary auditor, require the production of these documents as well. The verifying auditor and the primary auditor shall act in good faith using reasonable professional judgment, with the intention of reaching a reasonable accommodation as to the necessity and scope of examination of any additional documents, but the decision to require the production of additional documents is solely that of the verifying auditor.

(f) Verification Report. Upon concluding the verification procedure, the verifying auditor shall render a report enumerating in reasonable detail the procedures performed by the verifying auditor and his or her findings. Such findings shall state whether there was any failure of the primary auditor to conduct properly the primary audit or obtain a reliable result, and whether there was any error in the Annual Statement of Account, itemized by amount and by the filer's elected fiscal year. If there was such failure or error, the report shall specify all evidence from which the verifying auditor reached such conclusions. Such evidence shall be listed and identified in an appendix to the report in sufficient detail to enable a third party to reasonably understand or interpret the evidence on which the verifying auditor based his or her conclusion. If there was no such failure or error, the report shall so state.

(g) Distribution of Report. Copies of the verifying auditor's report shall be subject to the confidentiality provisions of § 201.29 and shall be distributed as follows:

(1) One copy, excluding the appendix, if applicable, shall be filed with the Register of Copyrights.

(2) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to each of the interested copyright parties who retained the services of the verifying auditor and who are authorized to receive such information according to § 201.29.

(3) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to the filer of the Annual Statement of Account.

(4) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to the primary auditor.

(h) Retention of Report. The Register of Copyrights will retain his or her copy of the verifying auditor's report for three years following the date the copy of the verifying auditor's report is filed.

(i) Costs of Verification. The joint interested copyright parties who requested the verification procedure shall pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor for their work performed in connection with the verification procedure, except, if the verification procedure results in a judicial determination or the filer's agreement that royalty payments were understated on the Annual Statement of Account, then,

(1) if the amount is less than five percent (5%) of the amount stated on the Annual Statement of Account, that amount shall first be used to pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor, and any remaining amount plus any applicable interest on the total amount shall be deposited, allocated by the filer's elected fiscal year, with the Register of Copyrights, or

(2) if the amount is equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the amount stated on the Annual Statement of Account, the filer shall pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor, and, in addition, shall deposit the amount found to be due plus any applicable interest on the total amount, allocated by the filer's elected fiscal year, with the Register of Copyrights.

(j) Independence and qualifications of verifying auditor.

(1) The verifying auditor shall be qualified and independent as defined in this section. If the filer has reason to believe that the verifying auditor is not qualified or independent, it shall raise the matter with the joint interested copyright parties before the commencement of the verification procedure, and if the matter is not resolved, it may raise the issue

with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Professional Ethics Division and/or the verifying auditor's State Board of Accountancy while the verification procedure is being performed.

(2) A verifying auditor shall be considered qualified if he or she is a certified public accountant or works under the supervision of a certified public accounting firm.

(3) A verifying auditor shall be considered independent if:

(i) he or she is independent as that term is used in the Code of Professional Conduct of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, including the Principles, Rules and Interpretations of such Code applicable generally to attest engagements (collectively, the "AICPA Code"); and (ii) he or she is independent as that term is used in the Statements on Auditing Standards promulgated by the Auditing Standards Board of the AICPA and Interpretations thereof issued by the Auditing Standards Division of the AICPA.

**Legislative History**

[61 FR 30808, 30813, June 18, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 30808, 30813, June 18, 1996, which added this section, became effective June 18, 1996.]

§ 201.31 Procedures for copyright restoration in the United States for certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of Statements of Intent pertaining to the restoration of copyright protection in the United States for certain motion pictures and works embodied therein as required by the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act (NAFTA) of December 8, 1993, Public Law No. 103-182. On or after January 3, 1995, the Copyright Office will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a list of works for which potential copyright owners have filed a complete and timely Statement of Intent with the Copyright Office.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Effective filing. To be effective a Statement of Intent must be complete and timely.

(2) Eligible work means any motion picture that was first fixed or published in Mexico or Canada, and any work included in such motion picture that was first fixed or published with this motion picture, if the work entered the public domain in the United States because it was first published on or after January 1, 1978, and before March 1, 1989, without the notice required by 17 U.S.C. 401, 402, or 403, the absence of which has not been excused by the operation of 17 U.S.C. 405, as such sections were in effect during that period.

(3) Fixed means a work "fixed" in a tangible medium of expression when its embodiment in a copy or phonorecord, by or under the authority of the author, is sufficiently permanent or stable to permit it to be perceived, reproduced, or otherwise communicated for a period of more than transitory duration. A work consisting of sounds, images, or both, that are being transmitted, is "fixed" for purposes of this title if a fixation of the work is being made simultaneously with its transmission. 17 U.S.C. 101

(4) Potential copyright owner means the person who would have owned any of the exclusive rights comprised in a copyright in the United States in a work eligible for copyright restoration under NAFTA, if the work had not fallen into the public domain for failure to comply with the statutory notice requirements in effect at the time of first publication, or any successor in interest to such a person.

(5) Published means distribution of copies of a work to the public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending. The offering to distribute copies to a group of persons for purposes of further distribution,

public performance, or public display, constitutes publication. A public performance or display of a work does not of itself constitute publication.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide Statement of Intent forms for the use of potential copyright owners who want to restore copyright protection in eligible works.

(d) Requirements for effective Statements of Intent. (1) The document should be clearly designated as a "Statement of Intent to restore copyright protection in the United States in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement".

(2) Statements of Intent must include:

(i) the title(s) of the work(s) for which copyright restoration is sought, including any underlying work(s) that has a title(s) different from the title of the motion picture, provided all works are owned by the same potential copyright owner;

(ii) the nation of first fixation;

(iii) The nation of first publication;

(iv) The date of first publication;

(v) The name and mailing address (and telephone and telefax, if applicable) of the potential copyright owner of the work;

(vi) The following certification (in its entirety); signed and dated by the potential copyright owner or authorized agent:

Click here to view image.

(3) If copyright restoration is sought for an underlying work only, the Statement of Intent must specify the kind of underlying work covered and give the title if different from the title of the motion picture.

(4) More than one motion picture may be included in a single Statement of Intent provided the potential copyright owner is the same for all the motion pictures. The information required in Section 201.31 (d)(2)(i) through (d)(2)(iv) must be given for each work.

(5) Sports programs that do not have a title can be identified in a Statement of Intent by giving the sporting event, the team names and the date (month, day and year).

(6) Statements of Intent must be received in the Copyright Office on or before December 31, 1994.

(7) Statements of Intent must be in English and either typed or legibly printed by hand, on 8 1/2 inch by 11 inch white paper.

(e) Fee. The Copyright Office is not requiring a fee for the processing of Statements of Intent.

(f) Effective date of restoration of copyright protection. (1) Potential copyright owners of eligible works who file a complete and timely Statement of Intent with the Copyright Office will have copyright protection restored in these works effective January 1, 1995.

(2) The new section 17 U.S.C. 104A(c) created by the NAFTA Implementation Act gives a one year exemption to U.S. nationals or domiciliaries who made or acquired copies of a motion picture or its contents before December 8, 1993, the date of enactment of the implementing act. These individuals or entities may continue to sell, distribute, or perform publicly such works without liability for a period of one year following the Copyright Office's publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER of the list of the works determined to be properly qualified for protection and for which complete and timely Statements of Intent have been filed.

(g) Registration of works whose copyright has been restored. After January 1, 1995, the Copyright Office encourages potential copyright owners to make voluntary copyright registration in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 408 for works that have had copyright restored in accordance with NAFTA.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 12164, Mar. 16, 1994; 59 FR 58789, Nov. 15, 1994; 60 FR 50414, 50420, Sept. 29, 1995; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (a), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.32 [This section was removed and reserved. See 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999.]

§ 201.33 Procedures for filing Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of Notices of Intent to Enforce a Restored Copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, as required in 17 U.S.C. 104A(a). On or before May 1, 1996, and every four months thereafter, the Copyright Office will publish in the Federal Register a list of works for which Notices of Intent to Enforce have been filed. It will maintain a list of these works. The Office will also make a more complete version of the information contained in the Notice of Intent to Enforce available on its automated database, which can be accessed over the Internet.

(b) Definitions -- (1) NAFTA work means a work restored to copyright on January 1, 1995, as a result of compliance with procedures contained in the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act of December 8, 1993, Public Law No. 103-182.

(2) Reliance party means any person who --

(i) With respect to a particular work, engages in acts, before the source country of that work becomes an eligible country under the URAA, which would have violated 17 U.S.C. 106 if the restored work had been subject to a copyright protection and who, after the source country becomes an eligible country, continues to engage in such acts;

(ii) Before the source country of a particular work becomes an eligible country, makes or acquires one or more copies of phonorecords of that work; or

(iii) As the result of the sale or other disposition of a derivative work, covered under the new 17 U.S.C. 104A(d)(3), or of significant assets of a person, described in the new 17 U.S.C. 104 A(d)(3) (A) or (B), is a successor, assignee or licensee of that person.

(3) Restored work means an original work of authorship that --

(i) Is protected under 17 U.S.C. 104A(a);

(ii) Is not in the public domain in its source country through expiration of term of protection;

(iii) Is in the public domain in the United States due to --

(A) Noncompliance with formalities imposed at any time by United States copyright law, including failure of renewal, lack of proper notice, or failure to comply with any manufacturing requirements;

(B) Lack of subject matter protection in the case of sound recordings fixed before February 15, 1972; or

(C) Lack of national eligibility; and

(iv) Has at least one author or rightholder who was, at the time the work was created, a national or domiciliary of an eligible country, and if published, was first published in an eligible country and not published in the United States during the 30-day period following publication in such eligible country.

(4) Source country of a restored work is --

(i) A nation other than the United States; and

(ii) In the case of an unpublished work --

(A) The eligible country in which the author or rightholder is a national or domiciliary, or, if a restored work has more than one author or rightholder, the majority of foreign authors or rightholders are nationals or domiciliaries of eligible countries; or

(B) If the majority of authors or rightholders are not foreign, the nation other than the United States which has the most significant contacts with the work; and

(iii) In the case of a published work --

(A) The eligible country in which the work is first published; or

(B) If the restored work is published on the same day in two or more eligible countries, the eligible country which has the most significant contacts with the work.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for Notices of Intent to Enforce filed with the Copyright Office. It requests that filers of such notices follow the format set out in Appendix A of this section and give all of the information listed in paragraph (d) of this section. Notices of Intent to Enforce must be in English, and should be typed or printed by hand legibly in dark, preferably black, ink, on 8 1/2 by 11 inch white paper of good quality, with at least a one inch (or three cm) margin.

(d) Requirements for Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(1) Notices of Intent to Enforce should be sent to the following address: GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, D.C. 20024, USA.

(2) The document should be clearly designated as "Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act".

(3) Notices of Intent to Enforce must include:

(i) Required information:

(A) The title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work;

(B) An English translation of the title if title is in a foreign language;

(C) Alternative titles if any;

(D) Name of the copyright owner of the restored work, or of an owner of an exclusive right therein;

(E) The address and telephone number where the owner of copyright or the exclusive right therein can be reached; and

(F) The following certification signed and dated by the owner of copyright, or the owner of an exclusive right therein, or the owner's authorized agent:

I hereby certify that for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner's authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Signature _____

Name (printed or typed) _____

As agent for (if applicable) _____

Date: _____

(ii) Optional but essential information:

(A) Type of work (painting, sculpture, music, motion picture, sound recording, book, etc.);

(B) Name of author(s);

(C) Source country;

(D) Approximate year of publication;

(E) Additional identifying information (e.g. for movies: director, leading actors, screenwriter, animator; for photographs or books: subject matter; for books: editor, publisher, contributors);

(F) Rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Notice of Intent to Enforce is filed (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work, or to prepare a derivative work based on the work, etc.); and

(G) Telefax number at which owner, exclusive rights holder, or agent thereof can be reached.

(4) Notices of Intent to Enforce may cover multiple works provided that each work is identified by title, all the works are by the same author, all the works are owned by the identified copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, and the rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Notice of Intent is filed are the same. In the case of Notices of Intent to Enforce covering multiple works, the notice must separately designate for each work covered the title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work; an English translation of the title if the title is in a foreign language; alternative titles, if any; the type of work; the source country; the approximate year of publication; and additional identifying information.

(5) Notices of Intent to Enforce works restored on January 1, 1996, may be submitted to the Copyright Office on or after January 1, 1996, through December 31, 1997.

(e) Fee -- (1) Amount. The filing fee for recording Notices of Intent to Enforce is 30 U.S. dollars for notices covering one work. For notices covering multiple works as described in paragraph (d)(4) of this section, the fee is 30 U.S. dollars, plus one dollar for each additional work covered beyond the first designated work. For example, the fee for a Notice of Intent to Enforce covering three works would be 32 U.S. dollars. This fee includes the cost of an acknowledgement of recordation.

(2) Method of Payment -- (i) Checks, money orders, or bank drafts. The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. International money orders, and postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office are not acceptable. CURRENCY WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

(ii) Copyright Office Deposit Account. The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts please write: Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559-6000, and request a copy of Circular 5, "How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office."

(iii) Credit cards. For URAA filings the Copyright Office will accept VISA, MasterCard and American Express. Debit cards cannot be accepted for payment. With the NIE, a filer using a credit card must submit a separate cover letter stating the name of the credit card, the credit card number, the expiration date of the credit card, the total amount, and a signature authorizing the Office to charge the fees to the account. To protect the security of the credit card number, the filer must not write the credit card number on the Notice of Intent to Enforce.

(f) Public online access. (1) Almost all of the information contained in the Notice of Intent to Enforce is available online in the Copyright Office History Documents (COHD) file through the Library of Congress electronic information system LC MARVEL through the Internet. Except on Federal holidays, this information may be obtained on terminals in the Copyright Office at the Library of Congress Monday through Friday 8:30 a.m. -- 5:00 p.m. U.S. Eastern Time or over the Internet Monday -- Friday 6:30 a.m. -- 9:30 p.m. U.S. Eastern Time, Saturday 8:00 a.m. -- 5 p.m., and Sunday 1:00 p.m. -- 5:00 p.m.

(2) Alternative ways to connect through Internet are: (i) use the Copyright Office Home Page on the World Wide Web at: http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright, (ii) telnet to locis.loc.gov or the numeric address 140.147.254.3, or (iii) telnet to marvel.loc.gov, or the numeric address 140.147.248.7 and log in as marvel, or (iv) use a Gopher Client to connect to marvel.loc.gov.

(3) Information available online includes: the title or brief description if untitled; an English translation of the title; the alternative titles if any; the name of the copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right; the author; the type of work; the date of receipt of the NIE in the Copyright Office; the date of publication in the Federal Register; the rights covered by the notice; and the address, telephone and telefax number (if given) of the copyright owner.

(4) Online records of Notices of Intent to Enforce are searchable by the title, the copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, and the author.

(g) NAFTA work. The copyright owner of a work restored under NAFTA by the filing of a NAFTA Statement of Intent to Restore with the Copyright Office prior to January 1, 1995, is not required to file a Notice of Intent to Enforce under this regulation.

APPENDIX Appendix A to § 201.33 -- NOTICE OF INTENT TO ENFORCE A COPYRIGHT RESTORED UNDER THE URUQUAY ROUND AGREEMENTS ACT (URAA)

1. Title: _____

(If this work does not have a title, state "No title.") OR

Brief description of work (for untitled works only): _____

_____

2. English translation of title (if applicable):

3. Alternative title(s) (if any): _____

4. Type of work: _____

(e.g. painting, sculpture, music, motion picture, sound recording, book)

5. Name of author(s): _____

6. Source country: _____

7. Approximate year of publication: _____

8. Additional identifying information: _____

(e.g. for movies; director, leading actors, screenwriter, animator, for photographs: subject matter; for books; editor, publisher, contributors, subject matter).

9. Name of copyright owner: _____

(Statements may be filed in the name of the owner of the restored copyright or the owner of an exclusive right therein.)

10. If you are not the owner of all rights, specify the rights you own:

_____

(e.g. the right to reproduce/distribute publicly display/publicly perform the work, or to prepare a derivative work based on the work)

11. Address at which copyright owner may be contacted:

_____

_____

(Give the complete address, including the country and an "attention" line, or "in care of" name, if necessary.)

12. Telephone number of owner: _____

13. Telefax number of owner: _____

14. Certification and Signature:

I hereby certify that, for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner's authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Signature: _____

Name (printed or typed): _____

As agent for (if applicable): _____

Date: _____

NOTE: Notices of Intent to Enforce must be in English, except for the original title, and either typed or printed by hand legibly in dark, preferably black, ink. They should be on 8 1/2 " by 11" white paper of good quality, with at least a 1-inch (or 3 cm) margin.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 50414, 50420, Sept. 29, 1995; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 64 FR 12902, Mar. 16, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, substituted "32 U.S. dollars" for "$ 32" in paragraph (e)(1), effective June 5, 1998; 64 FR 12902, Mar. 16, 1999, revised paragraph (d)(1), effective Feb. 22, 1999.]

§ 201.34 Procedures for filing Correction Notices of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of corrections of Notices of Intent to Enforce a Copyright (NIEs) Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act of December 8, 1994, as required by 17 U.S.C. 104A(e), as amended by Pub. L. 103-465, 108 Stat. 4809, 4976 (1994).

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply.

(1) Major error. A major error in filing a Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act is an error in the name of the copyright owner or rightholder, or in the title of the work (as opposed to its translation, if any) where such error fails to adequately identify the restored work or its owner through a reasonable search of the Copyright Office NIE records. Omission of, or incorrect information regarding, a written agency relationship also constitutes a major error.

(2) Minor error. A minor error in filing a Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act is any error that is not a major error.

(3) Restored work. For the definition of works restored under the URAA, see 37 CFR 201.33.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for Correction Notices of Intent to Enforce filed with the Copyright Office. It requests that filers of such Correction NIEs follow the format set out in Appendix A of this section and give all information listed in paragraph (d) of this section. Correction NIEs must be in English, and should be typed or legibly printed by hand in dark, preferably black ink, on 8 1/2 " by 11" white paper of good quality with at least a 1" (or three cm) margin.

(d) Requirements for Correction Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act. (1) A correction for a Notice of Intent to Enforce should be clearly designated as a "Correction Notice of Intent to Enforce" or "Correction NIE."

(2) Correction Notices of Intent to Enforce should be sent to the following address: URAA/GATT, NIEs and Registrations, PO Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, USA.

(3) A Correction NIE shall contain the following information:

(i) The volume and document number of the previous NIE which is to be corrected;

(ii) The title of the work as it appears on the previous NIE, including alternative titles, if they appear;

(iii) The English translation of the title, if any, as it appears on the previous NIE;

(iv) A statement of the erroneous information as it appears on the previous NIE;

(v) A statement of the correct information as it should have appeared and an optional explanation of its correction; or

(vi) A statement of the information to be added. This includes optional information such as:

(A) Type of work;

(B) Rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Correction Notice is filed;

(C) Name of author;

(D) Source country;

(E) Year of publication;

(F) Alternative titles;

(G) An optional explanation of the added information.

(vii) The name and address:

(A) To which correspondence concerning the document should be sent; and

(B) To which the acknowledgment of the recordation of the Correction NIE should be mailed; and

(viii) A certification. The certification shall consist of:

(A) A statement that, for each of the works named above, the person signing the Correction NIE is the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner's authorized agent, and that the information is correct to the best of that person's knowledge;

(B) The typed or printed name of the person whose signature appears;

(C) The signature and date of signature; and

(D) The telephone and telefax number at which the owner, rightholder, or agent thereof can be reached.

(4) A Correction NIE may cover multiple works in multiple NIE documents for one fee provided that: each work is identified by title; all the works are by the same author; all the works are owned by the same copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right. In the case of Correction NIEs, the notice must separately designate each title to be corrected, noting the incorrect information as it appeared on the previously filed NIE, as well as the corrected information. A single notice covering multiple titles need bear only a single certification.

(5) Copies, phonorecords or supporting documents cannot be made part of the record of a Correction NIE and should not be submitted with the document.

(6) Time for Submitting Correction NIEs.

(i) Major errors. The Copyright Office will accept a Correction NIE for a major error concerning a restored work during the 24-month period beginning on the date of restoration of the work, as provided for original NIEs in section 104A(d)(2)(A) of title 17.

(ii) Minor errors. The Office will accept a Correction NIE for a minor error or omission concerning a restored work at any time after the original NIE has been filed, as provided in section 104A(e)(1)(A)(iii) of title 17.

(e) Fee. -- (1) Amount. The filing fee for recording Correction NIEs is 30 U.S. dollars for each Correction Notice covering one work. For single Correction NIEs covering multiple works, that is, for works by the same author and owned by the same copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, the fee is 30 U.S. dollars, plus one dollar for each additional work covered beyond the first designated work.

(2) Method of payment. See 37 CFR 201.33(e)(1),(2).

(f) Public online access. Information contained in the Correction Notice of Intent to Enforce is available online in the Copyright Office History Documents (COHD) file through the Library of Congress electronic information system, available through the Internet. This file is available from computer terminals located in the Copyright Office itself or from terminals located in other parts of the Library of Congress through the Library of Congress Information System (LOCIS). Alternative ways to connect through Internet are the World Wide Web (WWW), using the Copyright Office Home Page at: http://www.loc.gov/copyright; directly to LOCIS through the telnet address at locis.loc.gov; or the Library of Congress through gopher LC MARVEL and WWW which are available 24 hours a day. LOCIS is available 24 hours a day, Monday through Friday. For the purpose of researching the full Office record of Correction NIEs on the Internet, the Office has made online searching instructions accessible through the Copyright Office Home Page. Researchers can access them through the Library of Congress Home Page on the World Wide Web by selecting the copyright link. Select the menu item "Copyright Office Records" and/or "URAA, GATT Amends U.S. law." Images of the complete Correction NIEs as filed will be stored on optical disk and will be available from the Copyright Office.

APPENDIX A to § 201.34 -- Correction Notice of Intent To Enforce

Correction of Notice of Intent To Enforce

1. Name of Copyright Owner (or owner of exclusive right) If this correction notice is to cover multiple works, the author and the rights owner must be the same for all works covered by the notice.)

2. Title(s) (or brief description)

(a) Work No. 1_____

Volume and Document Number: _____

English Translation: _____

(b) Work No. 2 (if applicable)_____

Volume and Document Number: _____

English Translation: _____

(c) Work No. 3 (if applicable)_____

Volume and Document Number: _____

English Translation: _____

(d) Work No. 4 (if applicable)_____

Volume and Document Number: _____

English Translation: _____

3. Statement of incorrect information on earlier NIE:

4. Statement of correct (or previously omitted) information:

Give the following only if incorrect or omitted on earlier NIE:

(a) Type of work _____

(b) Rights owned _____

(c) Name of author (of entire work) _____

(d) Source Country _____

(e) Year of Publication (Approximate if precise year is unknown) _____

(f) Alternative titles _____

5. Explanation of error:

6. Certification and Signature: I hereby certify that for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner's authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Name and Address (typed or printed):

Telephone/Fax:

As agent for:

Date and Signature:

**Legislative History**

[62 FR 55736, 55739, Oct. 28, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 55736, 55739, Oct. 28, 1997, added this section, effective Oct. 28, 1997.]

§ 201.35 Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which copyright owners shall receive initial notice of use of their sound recordings under statutory license under section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) Definitions. (1) An Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License is a notice to sound recording copyright owners of the use of their works under section 114(f), and required under this regulation to be filed by a Service in the Copyright Office.

(2) A Service is an entity engaged in the digital transmission of sound recordings, pursuant to section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, and includes, without limitation, any entity that transmits an AM/FM broadcast signal over a digital communications network such as the Internet, regardless of whether the transmission is made by the broadcaster that originates the AM/FM signal or by a third party, provided that such transmission meets the applicable requirements of the statutory license set forth in 17 U.S.C. 114(d)(2).

(c) Forms. A suggested format for the Initial Notices may be found on the Copyright Office website.

(d) Content. An "Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License" shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

(1) The full legal name of the Service commencing digital transmission of sound recordings under statutory license;

(2) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the Service. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(3) The telephone number and facsimile number of the Service; and

(4) Information on how to gain access to the online website or home page of the Service, or where information may be posted under these regulations concerning the use of sound recordings under statutory license.

(e) Signature. The Initial Notice shall include the signature of the appropriate officer or representative of the Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(f) Filing. A Service shall file the Initial Notice with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office prior to the first transmission of sound recordings under the license, or by September 3, 1998, in the case of a Service that makes subscription transmissions before or on that date, or by December 1, 1999, in the case of a Service that makes eligible nonsubscription transmissions before, or on, that date. Each Notice shall be accompanied by a filing fee of $ 20. Initial Notices and amendments will be placed in the public records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and posted online where they will be accessible through the Copyright Office website. The address of the Licensing Division is: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, D.C. 20557-6400.

(g) Amendments. A Service shall file with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office an amendment reporting a change in the information reported in the Initial Notice within 45 days of the change. An amendment shall be accompanied by a fee of $ 20, and shall:

(1) Be clearly and prominently identified as "An Amendment to an Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License";

(2) Identify the specific Initial Notice intended to be amended, by Service name and filing date, so that it may be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(3) Clearly specify the nature of the amendment to be made; and

(4) Be signed and dated in accordance with this section.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 34289, 34296, June 24, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 64 FR 49670, 49671, Sept. 14, 1999; 64 FR 50758, 50759, Sept. 20, 1999; 64 FR 66391, 66392, Nov. 26, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000; 65 FR 77292, 77301, Dec. 11, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective July 7, 1999; 64 FR 49670, 49671, Sept. 14, 1999, amended paragraph (c), effective Sept. 14, 1999; 64 FR 50758, 50759, Sept. 20, 1999, amended paragraph (f), effective Sept. 20, 1999; 64 FR 66391, 66392, Nov. 26, 1999, substituted "December 1" for "October 15" in paragraph (f), effective Nov. 26, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (f), effective June 28, 2000; 65 FR 77292, 77301, Dec. 11, 2000, revised paragraph (b)(2), effective Dec. 11, 2000.]

§ 201.36 Reports of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which Services shall serve copyright owners with notice of use of their sound recordings, what the content of that notice should be, and under which records of such use shall be kept and made available.

(b) Definitions. (1) A Collective is a collection and distribution organization that is designated under the statutory license, either by settlement agreement reached under section 114(f)(1)(A) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(i) and adopted pursuant to 37 CFR 251.63(b), or by decision of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) under section 114(f)(1)(B) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(ii), or by an order of the Librarian pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(2) A Report of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License is a report required under this regulation to be provided by the Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license.

(3) A Service is an entity engaged in the digital transmission of sound recordings pursuant to section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Service. Reports of Use shall be served upon Collectives that are identified in the records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office as having been designated under the statutory license, either by settlement agreement reached under section 114(f)(1)(A) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(i) and adopted pursuant to 37 CFR 251.63(b), or by decision of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) under section 114(f)(1)(B) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(ii), or by an order of the Librarian pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f). Reports of Use shall be served, by certified or registered mail, or by other means if agreed upon by the respective Service and Collective, on or before the twentieth day after the close of each month, commencing with the month succeeding the month in which these regulations become effective.

(d) Posting. In the event that no Collective is designated under the statutory license, or if all designated Collectives have terminated collection and distribution operations, a Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license shall post and make available online its Reports of Use. Services shall post their Reports of Use online on or before the 20th day after the close of each month, and make them available to all sound recording copyright owners for a period of 90 days. Services may require use of passwords for access to posted Reports of Use, but must make passwords available in a timely manner and free of charge or other restrictions. Services may predicate provision of a password upon:

(1) Information relating to identity, location and status as a sound recording copyright owner; and

(2) A "click-wrap" agreement not to use information in the Report of Use for purposes other than royalty collection, royalty distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without the express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use.

(e) Content. A "Report of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License" shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include a Service's "Intended Playlists" for each channel and each day of the reported month.

(1) The "Intended Playlists" shall include a consecutive listing of every recording scheduled to be transmitted, and shall contain the following information in the following order:

(i) The name of the service or entity;

(ii) The channel;

(iii) The sound recording title;

(iv) The featured recording artist, group, or orchestra;

(v) The retail album title (or, in the case of compilation albums created for commercial purposes, the name of the retail album identified by the Service for purchase of the sound recording);

(vi) The recording label;

(vii) The catalog number;

(viii) The International Standard Recording Code (ISRC) embedded in the sound recording, where available and feasible;

(ix) The date of transmission; and

(x) The time of transmission.

(2) The Report of Use shall include a report of any system failure resulting in a deviation from the Intended Playlists of scheduled sound recordings. Such report shall include the date, time and duration of any such system failure.

(f) Signature. Reports of Use shall include a signed statement by the appropriate officer or representative of the Service attesting, under penalty of perjury, that the information contained in the Report is believed to be accurate and is maintained by the Service in its ordinary course of business. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Report, and by the date of signature.

(g) Format. Reports of Use should be provided on a standard machine-readable medium, such as diskette, optical disc, or magneto-optical disc, and should conform as closely as possible to the following specifications:

(1) ASCII delimited format, using pipe characters as delimiter, with no headers or footers;

(2) Carats should surround strings;

(3) No carats should surround dates and numbers;

(4) Dates should be indicated by: MM/DD/YYYY;

(5) Times should be based on a 24-hour clock: HH:MM:SS;

(6) A carriage return should be at the end of each line; and

(7) All data for one record should be on a single line.

(h) Confidentiality. Copyright owners, their agents and Collectives shall not disseminate information in the Reports of Use to any persons not entitled to it, nor utilize the information for purposes other than royalty collection and distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use.

(i) Documentation. All compulsory licensees shall, for a period of at least three years from the date of service or posting of the Report of Use, keep and retain a copy of the Report of Use. For reporting periods from February 1, 1996, through August 31, 1998, the Service shall serve upon all designated Collectives and retain for a period of three years from the date of transmission records of use indicating which sound recordings were performed and the number of times each recording was performed, but is not required to produce full Reports of Use or Intended Playlists for those periods.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 34289, 34296, June 24, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraphs (b) and (c), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 201.37 Designated Collection and Distribution Organizations for Records of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which records of use shall be collected and distributed under section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, and under which records of such use shall be kept and made available.

(b) Definitions. (1) A Collective is a collection and distribution organization that is designated under the statutory license, either by settlement agreement reached under section 114(f)(1)(A) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(i) and adopted pursuant to 37 CFR 251.63(b), or by decision of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) under section 114(f)(1)(B) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(ii), or by an order of the Librarian pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(2) A Service is an entity engaged in the digital transmission of sound recordings pursuant to section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Notice of Designation as Collective under Statutory License. A Collective shall file with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office and post and make available online a "Notice of Designation as Collective under Statutory License," which shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall contain the following information:

(1) The Collective name, address, telephone number and facsimile number;

(2) A statement that the Collective has been designated for collection and distribution of performance royalties under statutory license for digital transmission of sound recordings; and

(3) Information on how to gain access to the online website or home page of the Collective, where information may be posted under these regulations concerning the use of sound recordings under statutory license. The address of the Licensing Division is: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, D.C. 20557-6400.

(d) Annual Report. The Collective will post and make available online, for the duration of one year, an Annual Report on how the Collective operates, how royalties are collected and distributed, and what the Collective spent that fiscal year on administrative expenses.

(e) Inspection of Reports of Use by Copyright Owners. The Collective shall make copies of the Reports of Use for the preceding three years available for inspection by any sound recording copyright owner, without charge, during normal office hours upon reasonable notice. The Collective shall predicate inspection of Reports of Use upon information relating to identity, location and status as a sound recording copyright owner, and the copyright owner's written agreement not to utilize the information for purposes other than royalty collection and distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use. The Collective shall render its best efforts to locate copyright owners in order to make available records of use, and such efforts shall include searches in Copyright Office public records and published directories of sound recording copyright owners.

(f) Confidentiality. Copyright owners, their agents, and Collectives shall not disseminate information in the Reports of Use to any persons not entitled to it, nor utilize the information for purposes other than royalty collection and distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use.

(g) Termination and dissolution. If a Collective terminates its collection and distribution operations prior to the close of its term of designation, the Collective shall notify the Copyright Office, and all Services transmitting sound recordings under statutory license, by certified or registered mail. The dissolving Collective shall provide each such Service with information identifying the copyright owners it has served.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 34289, 34297, June 24, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraphs (a) and (b), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended the heading to paragraph (b), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 201.38 Designation of agent to receive notification of claimed infringement.

(a) General. This section prescribes interim rules under which service providers may provide the Copyright Office with designations of agents to receive notification of claimed infringement under section 512(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended. These interim rules shall remain in effect until more comprehensive rules have been promulgated following a notice of proposed rulemaking and receipt of public comments.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for filing an Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement.

(c) Content. An "Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement" shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following information with respect to a single service provider:

(1) The full legal name and address of the service provider;

(2) All names under which the service provider is doing business;

(3) The name of the agent designated to receive notification of claimed infringement;

(4) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the agent designated to receive notification of claimed infringement. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(5) The telephone number, facsimile number, and electronic mail address of the agent designated to receive notification of claimed infringement.

(d) Signature. The Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement shall include the signature of the appropriate officer or representative of the service provider designating the agent. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(e) Filing. A service provider may file the Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement with the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office, Room LM-401, James Madison Memorial Building, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC, during normal business hours, 9 am to 5 pm. If mailed, the Interim Designation should be addressed to: Copyright GC/I&R, PO Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024. Each designation shall be accompanied by a filing fee of $ 20.00. Designations and amendments will be posted online on the Copyright Office's website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright).

(f) Amendments. In the event of a change in the information reported in an Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement, a service provider shall file with the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office an amended Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement, containing the current information required by section 201.38(c). The amended Interim Designation shall be signed in accordance with the requirements of section 201.38(d) and shall be accompanied by a fee of $ 20.00.

(g) Termination and dissolution. If a service provider terminates its operations, the entity shall notify the Copyright Office by certified or registered mail.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 59233, 59234, Nov. 3, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 59233, 59234, Nov. 3, 1998, added this section, effective Nov. 3, 1998.]

§ 201.39 Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which copyright owners or their agents may provide notice to qualified libraries and archives (including a nonprofit educational institution that functions as such) that a published work in its last 20 years of copyright protection is subject to normal commercial exploitation, or that a copy or phonorecord of the work can be obtained at a reasonable price, for purposes of section 108(h)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) Format. The Copyright Office provides a required format for a Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price, and for continuation sheets for group notices. The required format is set out in Appendix A to this section, and is available from the Copyright Office website (http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright). The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms. The Notice shall be in English (except for an original title, which may be in another language), typed or printed legibly in dark ink, and shall be provided on 8 1/2 x11 inch white paper with a one-inch margin.

(c) Required Content. A "Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price" shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

(1) The acronym NLA in capital, and preferably bold, letters in the top right-hand corner of the page;

(2) A check-box just below the acronym NLA indicating whether continuation sheets for additional works are attached;

(3) The title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work;

(4) The author(s) of the work;

(5) The type of work (e.g., music, motion picture, book, photograph, illustration, map, article in a periodical, painting, sculpture, sound recording, etc.);

(6) The edition, if any (e.g., first edition, second edition, teacher's edition) or version, if any (e.g., orchestral arrangement, translation, French version). If there is no information relating to the edition or version of the work, the notice should so state;

(7) The year of first publication;

(8) The year the work first secured federal copyright through publication with notice or registration as an unpublished work;

(9) The copyright renewal registration number (except this information is not required for foreign works in which copyright is restored pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 104A);

(10) The name of the copyright owner (or the owner of exclusive rights);

(11) If the copyright owner is not the owner of all rights, a specification of the rights owned (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work or to prepare a derivative work);

(12) The name, address, telephone number, fax number (if any) and e-mail address (if any) of the person or entity that the Copyright Office should contact concerning the Notice;

(13) The full legal name, address, telephone number, fax number (if any) and e-mail address (if any) of the person or entity that Libraries and Archives may contact concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at reasonable price; and

(14) A declaration made under penalty of perjury that the work identified is subject to normal commercial exploitation, or that a copy or phonorecord of the work is available at a reasonable price.

(d) Additional content. A Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price may include the following:

(1) The original copyright registration number of the work; and

(2) Additional information concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price.

(e) Signature. The Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price shall include the signature of the copyright owner or its agent. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(f) Multiple works. A Notice to Libraries and Archives may be filed for more than one work. The first work shall be identified using the format required for all Notices to Libraries and Archives. Each additional work in the group must be identified on a separate continuation sheet. The required format for the continuation sheet is set out in Appendix B to this section, and is available from the Copyright Office website (http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright). A group filing is permitted provided that:

(1) All the works are by the same author;

(2) All the works are owned by the same copyright owner or owner of the exclusive rights therein. If the claimant is not owner of all rights, the claimant must own the same rights with respect to all works in the group;

(3) All the works first secured federal copyright in the same year, through either publication with notice or registration as unpublished works;

(4) All the works were first published in the same year;

(5) The person or entity that the Copyright Office should contact concerning the Notice is the same for all the works; and

(6) The person or entity that Libraries and Archives may contact concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at reasonable price is the same for all the works.

(g) Filing -- (1) Method of Filing. The Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price should be addressed to: NLA, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20559-6000. If delivered by hand, it should be delivered during normal business hours, 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., to the Public Information Office, Room LM-401, James Madison Memorial Building, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC.

(2) Amount. Each Notice shall be accompanied by a filing fee of $ 50, and (if more than one work is identified in the Notice), $ 20 for each additional work.

(3) Method of Payment -- (i) Checks, money orders, or bank drafts. The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. Postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office and international money orders are not acceptable. CURRENCY IS NOT ACCEPTED.

(ii) Copyright Office Deposit Account. The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts, visit the Copyright Office website or write: Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559-6000, and request a copy of Circular 5, "How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office."

APPENDIX A TO § 201.39 -- REQUIRED FORMAT OF NOTICE TO LIBRARIES AND ARCHIVES OF NORMAL COMMERCIAL EXPLOITATION OR AVAILABILITY AT REASONABLE PRICE

NLA

[ ] Check box if continuation sheets for additional works are attached.

Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price

1. Title of the work (or, if untitled, a brief description of the work): _____.

2. Author(s) of the work: _____.

3. Type of work (e.g. music, motion picture, book, photograph, illustration, map, article in a periodical, painting, sculpture, sound recording, etc.): _____.

4. Edition, if any (e.g., first edition, second edition, teacher's edition) or version, if any (e.g., orchestral arrangement, English translation of French text). If there is no information available relating to the edition or version of the work, the Notice should state, "No information available": _____.

5. Year of first publication: _____.

6. Year the work first secured federal copyright through publication with notice or registration as an unpublished work: _____.

7. Copyright renewal registration number (not required for foreign works restored under 17 U.S.C. 104A): _____.

8. Full legal name of the copyright owner (or the owner of exclusive rights): _____.

9. The person or entity identified in space #8 owns:

[ ] all rights.

[ ] the following rights (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work or to prepare a derivative work): _____

10. Person or entity that the Copyright Office should contact concerning the Notice:

[ ] Name:_____

[ ] Address:_____

[ ] Telephone:_____

[ ] Fax number (if any):_____

[ ] E-mail address (if any):_____

11. Person or entity that libraries and archives may contact concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price:

[ ] Name:_____

[ ] Address:_____

[ ] Telephone:_____

[ ] Fax number (if any):_____

[ ] E-mail address (if any):_____

Additional Content (OPTIONAL):

12. Original copyright registration number: _____

13. Additional information concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price: _____

Declaration:

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States:

[ ] that each work identified in this notice is subject to normal commercial exploitation.

[ ] that a copy or phonorecord of each work identified in this notice is available at a reasonable price.

Signature:_____

Date:_____

[ ] Typed or printed name:_____

[ ] Title:_____

APPENDIX B TO § 201.39 -- REQUIRED FORMAT FOR CONTINUATION SHEET

NLA CON

Page --of --Pages.

Continuation Sheet for NLA Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price

1. Title of the work (or, if untitled, a brief description of the work): _____.

2. Type of work (e.g. music, motion picture, book, photograph, illustration, map, article in a periodical, painting, sculpture, sound recording, etc.): _____.

3. Edition, if any (e.g., first edition, second edition, teacher's edition) or version, if any (e.g., orchestral arrangement, English translation of French text). If there is no information available relating to the edition or version of the work, the Notice should state, "No information available": _____.

4. Copyright renewal registration number (not required for foreign works restored under 17 U.S.C. 104A): _____.

Additional Content (OPTIONAL):

5. Original copyright registration number: _____.

6. Additional information concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price: _____.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 71785, 71787, Dec. 30, 1998; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (b) and (f)(3), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 201.40 Exemption to prohibition against circumvention.

(a) General. This section prescribes the classes of copyrighted works for which the Librarian of Congress has determined, pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1201(a)(1)(C) and (D), that noninfringing uses by persons who are users of such works are, or are likely to be, adversely affected. The prohibition against circumvention of technological measures that control access to copyrighted works set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1201(a)(1)(A) shall not apply to such users of the prescribed classes of copyrighted works.

(b) Classes of copyrighted works. Pursuant to the authority set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1201(a)(1)(C) and (D), and upon the recommendation of the Register of copyrights, the Librarian has determined that two classes of copyrighted works shall be subject to the exemption found in 17 U.S.C. 1201(a)(1)(B) from the prohibition against circumvention of technological measures that effectively control access to copyrighted works set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1201(a)(1)A) for the period from October 28, 2000 to October 28, 2003. The exempted classes of works are:

(1) Compilations consisting of lists of websites blocked by filtering software applications; and

(2) Literary works, including computer programs and databases, protected by access control mechanisms that fail to permit access because of malfunction, damage or obsoleteness.

**Legislative History**

[65 FR 64556, 64574, Oct. 27, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 64556, 64574, Oct. 27, 2000, added this section, effective Oct. 28, 2000.]

## PART 202 --REGISTRATION OF CLAIMS TO COPYRIGHT

§ 202.1 Material not subject to copyright.

The following are examples of works not subject to copyright and applications for registration of such works cannot be entertained:

(a) Words and short phrases such as names, titles, and slogans; familiar symbols or designs; mere variations of typographic ornamentation, lettering or coloring; mere listing of ingredients or contents;

(b) Ideas, plans, methods, systems, or devices, as distinguished from the particular manner in which they are expressed or described in a writing;

(c) Blank forms, such as time cards, graph paper, account books, diaries, bank checks, scorecards, address books, report forms, order forms and the like, which are designed for recording information and do not in themselves convey information;

(d) Works consisting entirely of information that is common property containing no original authorship, such as, for example: Standard calendars, height and weight charts, tape measures and rulers, schedules of sporting events, and lists or tables taken from public documents or other common sources.

(e) Typeface as typeface.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 4956, June 18, 1959, as amended at 38 FR 3045, Feb. 1, 1973; 57 FR 6202, Feb. 21, 1992]

§ 202.2 Copyright notice.

(a) General. (1) With respect to a work published before January 1, 1978, copyright was secured, or the right to secure it was lost, except for works seeking ad interim copyright, at the date of publication, i.e., the date on which copies are first placed on sale, sold, or publicly distributed, depending upon the adequacy of the notice of copyright on the work at that time. The adequacy of the copyright notice for such a work is determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication.

(2) If before January 1, 1978, publication occurred by distribution of copies or in some other manner, without the statutory notice or with an inadequate notice, as determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication, the right to secure copyright was lost. In such cases, copyright cannot be secured by adding the notice to copies distributed at a later date.

(3) Works first published abroad before January 1, 1978, other than works for which ad interim copyright has been obtained, must have borne an adequate copyright notice. The adequacy of the copyright notice for such works is determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication abroad.

(b) Defects in notice. Where the copyright notice on a work published before January 1, 1978, does not meet the requirements of Title 17 of the United States Code as it existed on December 31, 1977, the Copyright Office will reject an application for copyright registration. Common defects in the notice include, among others the following:

(1) The notice lacks one or more of the necessary elements (i.e., the word "Copyright," the abbreviation "Copr.", or the symbol [copyright symbol], or, in the case of a sound recording, the symbol [copyright symbol]; the name of the copyright proprietor, or, in the case of a sound recording, the name, a recognizable abbreviation of the name, or a generally known alternative designation, of the copyright owner; and, when required, the year date of publication);

(2) The elements of the notice are so dispersed that a necessary element is not identified as a part of the notice; in the case of a sound recording, however, if the producer is named on the label or container, and if no other name appears in conjunction with the notice, his name will be considered a part of the notice;

(3) The notice is not in one of the positions prescribed by law;

(4) The notice is in a foreign language;

(5) The name in the notice is that of someone who had no authority to secure copyright in his name;

(6) The year date in the copyright notice is later than the date of the year in which copyright was actually secured, including the following cases:

(i) Where the year date in the notice is later than the date of actual publication;

(ii) Where copyright was first secured by registration of a work in unpublished form, and copies of the same work as later published without change in substance bear a copyright notice containing a year date later than the year of unpublished registration;

(iii) Where a book or periodical published abroad, for which ad interim copyright has been obtained, is later published in the United States without change in substance and contains a year date in the copyright notice later than the year of first publication abroad:

Provided, however, That in each of the three foregoing types of cases, if the copyright was actually secured not more than one year earlier than the year date in the notice, registration may be considered as a doubtful case.

(7) A notice is permanently covered so that it cannot be seen without tearing the work apart;

(8) A notice is illegible or so small that it cannot be read without the aid of a magnifying glass: Provided, however, That where the work itself requires magnification for its ordinary use (e.g., a microfilm, microcard or motion picture) a notice which will be readable when so magnified, will not constitute a reason for rejection of the claim;

(9) A notice is on a detachable tag and will eventually be detached and discarded when the work is put in use;

(10) A notice is on the wrapper or container which is not a part of the work and which will eventually be removed and discarded when the work is put to use; the notice may be on a container which is designed and can be expected to remain with the work;

(11) The notice is restricted or limited exclusively to an uncopyrightable element, either by virtue of its position on the work, by the use of asterisks, or by other means.

**Legislative History**

[24 FR 4956, June 18, 1959; 24 FR 6163, July 31, 1959, as amended at 37 FR 3055, Feb. 11, 1972; 46 FR 33249, June 29, 1981; 46 FR 34329, July 1, 1981; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, as corrected at 66 FR 40322, Aug. 2, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(3), and (b)(6)(iii), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 202.3 Registration of copyright.

(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions for the registration of copyright, and the application to be made for registration under sections 408 and 409 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(2) For the purposes of this section, the terms audiovisual work, compilation, copy, derivative work, device, fixation, literary work, motion picture, phonorecord, pictorial, graphic and sculptural works, process, sound recording, and their variant forms, have the meanings set forth in section 101 of title 17. The term author includes an employer or other person for whom a work is "made for hire" under section 101 of title 17.

(3) For the purposes of this section, a copyright claimant is either:

(i) The author of a work;

(ii) A person or organization that has obtained ownership of all rights under the copyright initially belonging to the author.n1

(b) Administrative classification and application forms -- (1) Classes of works. For the purpose of registration, the Register of Copyrights has prescribed the classes of works in which copyright may be claimed. These classes, and examples of works which they include, are as follows:

(i) Class TX: Nondramatic literary works. This class includes all published and unpublished nondramatic literary works. Examples: Fiction; nonfiction; poetry; textbooks; reference works; directories; catalogs; advertising copy; and compilations of information.

(ii) Class PA: Works of the performing arts. This class includes all published and unpublished works prepared for the purpose of being performed directly before an audience or indirectly by means of a device or process. Examples: Musical works, including any accompanying words; dramatic works, including any accompanying music; pantomimes and choreographic works; and motion pictures and other audiovisual works.

(iii) Class VA: Works of the visual arts. This class includes all published and unpublished pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works. Examples: Two dimensional and three dimensional works of the fine, graphic, and applied arts; photographs; prints and art reproductions; maps, globes, and charts; technical drawings, diagrams, and models; and pictorial or graphic labels and advertisements.

(iv) Class SR: Sound recordings. This class includes all published and unpublished sound recordings fixed on and after February 15, 1972. Claims to copyright in literary, dramatic, and musical works embodied in phonorecords may also be registered in this class under paragraph (b)(3) of this section if:

(A) Registration is sought on the same application for both a recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and a sound recording;

(B) the recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and the sound recording are embodied in the same phonorecord; and

(C) the same claimant is seeking registration of both the recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and the sound recording.

(v) Class SE: Serials. A serial is a work issued or intended to be issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. This class includes periodicals; newspapers; annuals; and the journals, proceedings, transactions, etc. of societies.

(2) Application forms. For the purpose of registration, The Register of Copyrights has prescribed the basic forms to be used for all applications submitted on and after January 1, 1978. Each form corresponds to a class set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and is so designated ("Form TX"; "Form PA"; "Form VA"; "Form SR"; "Form SE"; and "Form SE/Group"). Copies of the forms are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000. Applications should be submitted in the class most appropriate to the nature of the authorship in which copyright is claimed. In the case of contributions to collective works, applications should be submitted in the class representing the copyrightable authorship in the contribution. In the case of derivative works, applications should be submitted in the class most appropriately representing the copyrightable authorship involved in recasting, transforming, adapting, or otherwise modifying the preexisting work. In cases where a work contains elements of authorship in which copyright is claimed which fall into two or more classes, the application should be submitted in the class most appropriate to the type of authorship that predominates in the work as a whole. However, in any case where registration is sought for a work consisting of or including a sound recording in which copyright is claimedn2 the application shall be submitted on Form SR.

(3) Registration as a single work. (i) For the purpose of registration on a single application and upon payment of a single registration fee, the following shall be considered a single work:

(A) In the case of published works: all copyrightable elements that are otherwise recognizable as self-contained works, that are included in a single unit of publication, and in which the copyright claimant is the same; and

(B) In the case of unpublished works: all copyrightable elements that are otherwise recognizable as self-contained works, and are combined in a single unpublished "collection." For these purposes, a combination of such elements shall be considered a "collection" if:

(1) The elements are assembled in an orderly form;

(2) the combined elements bear a single title identifying the collection as a whole;

(3) The copyright claimant in all of the elements, and in the collection as a whole, is the same; and

(4) All of the elements are by the same author, or, if they are by different authors, at least one of the authors has contributed copyrightable authorship to each element.

Registration of an unpublished "collection" extends to each copyrightable element in the collection and to the authorship, if any, involved in selecting and assembling the collection.

(ii) In the case of applications for registration made under paragraphs (b)(3) through (b)(8) of this section, the "year in which creation of this work was completed", as called for by the application, means the latest year in which the creation of any copyrightable element was completed.

(4) Group registration of related works: Automated databases. (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by section 408(c)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for automated databases and their updates or other derivative versions that are original works of authorship, if, where a database (or updates or other revisions thereof), if unpublished, is (or are) fixed, or if published is (or are) published only in the form of machine-readable copies, all of the following conditions are met:

(A) All of the updates or other revisions are owned by the same copyright claimant;

(B) All of the updates or other revisions have the same general title;

(C) All of the updates or other revisions are similar in their general content, including their subject;

(D) All of the updates or other revisions are similar in their organization;

(E) Each of the updates or other revisions as a whole, if published before March 1, 1989, bears a statutory copyright notice as first published and the name of the owner of copyright in each work (or an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally known alternative designation of the owner) was the same in each notice;

(F) Each of the updates or other revisions if published was first published, or if unpublished was first created, within a three-month period in a single calendar year; and

(G) The deposit accompanying the application complies with § 202.20(c)(2)(vii)(D).

(ii) A single registration may be made on one application for both a database published on a single date, or if unpublished, created on a single date, and also for its copyrightable revisions, including updates covering a three-month period in a single calendar year. An application for group registration of automated databases under section 408(c)(1) of title 17 and this subsection shall consist of:

(A) A Form TX, completed in accordance with the basic instructions on the form and the Special Instructions for Group Registration of an Automated Database and its Updates or Revisions;

(B) The appropriate filing fee, as required in § 201.3(c); and

(C) The deposit required by § 202.20(c)(2)(vii)(D).

(5) Group registration of related serials. (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by section 408(c)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of serials published at intervals of a week or longer if all the following conditions are met:

(A) The Library of Congress receives two complimentary copies promptly after publication of each issue of the serial.

(B) The single application covers no more than the issues published in a given three month period.

(C) The claim to copyright for which registration is sought is in the collective work.

(D) The collective work authorship is essentially new material that is being published for the first time.

(E) The collective work is a work made for hire.

(F) The author(s) and claimant(s) of the collective work is the same person(s) or organization(s).

(G) Each issue must have been created no more than one year prior to publication and all issues included in the group registration must have been published in the same calendar year.

(ii) To be eligible for group registration of serials, publishers must submit a letter affirming that two complimentary subscriptions to the particular serial have been entered for the Library of Congress. The letter should be sent to Library of Congress, Group Periodicals Registration, Washington, D.C. 20540-4161.

(iii) The complimentary subscription copies must be addressed to: Group Periodicals Registration, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540-4161.

(iv) The Register of Copyrights may revoke the privilege of group registration of serials for any publisher who fails to submit the required complimentary subscription copies promptly after publication of each issue. Notice of revocation of the group registration of serials privilege shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization applying for group registration of serials, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of revocation may be given at any time if the requirements of the regulation are not satisfied, but it shall state a specific date of revocation that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed.

(v) To apply for group registration of serials under section 408(c)(1) of title 17 and this subsection, the following items must be sent together in the same package:

(A) A completed Form SE/Group, giving the requested information.

(B) The appropriate filing fee, as required in § 201.3(c) for each issue covered by the group registration.

(C) A deposit consisting of one complete copy of the best edition of each issue included in the group registration.

(6) Group registration of daily newspapers. (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, microfilm deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of daily newspapers published in a microfilm format if the following conditions are met:

(A) Registration covers a full month of issues of the same newspaper title published with issue dates in one calendar month.

(B) A completed GDN application form is submitted.

(C) A publication date is specified designating the first and last day that issues in the group were published.

(D) A deposit is made of positive, 35mm silver halide microfilm meeting the Library's best edition criteria that includes all issues published as final editions in the designated calendar month. In addition to the final edition of the daily newspaper, the claim to copyright and the deposit may also include earlier editions published the same day in a given metropolitan area served by the newspaper, but may not include national or regional editions distributed beyond a given metropolitan area.

(E) The appropriate filing fee, as required in § 201.3(c), is included with the submission or charged to an active deposit account.

(F) Registration is sought within three months after the publication date of the last issue included in the group.

(ii) As used in this regulation, newspapers means serials which are classified as newspapers under the policy document "Newspapers Received Currently in the Library of Congress," which is administered by the Newspaper Section of the Serials & Government Publications Division of the Library of Congress. In general, serials classified as newspapers are serials mainly designed to be a primary source of written information on current events, either local, national, or international in scope. A newspaper contains a broad range of news on all subjects and activities and is not limited to any specific subject matter. Newspapers are intended either for the general public or for a particular ethnic, cultural, or national group.

(7) Group registration of contributions to periodicals. (i) As provided by section 408(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, a single registration, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and registration fee, may be made for a group of works if all of the following conditions are met:

(A) All of the works are by the same author;

(B) The author of each work is an individual, and not an employer or other person for whom the work was made for hire;

(C) Each of the works was first published as a contribution to a periodical (including newspapers) within a twelve-month period;n3

(D) Each of the works, if first published before March 1, 1989, bore a separate copyright notice, and the name of the owner of copyright in each work (or an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally known alternative designation of the owner) was the same in each notice; and

(E) The deposit accompanying the application must consist of one of the following: one copy of the entire issue of the periodical, or, in the case of a newspaper, the entire section containing the contribution; tear sheets or proof copies of the contribution; a photocopy of the contribution itself, or a photocopy of the entire page containing the contribution; the entire page containing the contribution cut or torn from the collective work; the contribution cut or torn from the collective work; or photographs or photographic slides of the contribution or entire page containing the contribution as long as all contents of the contribution to be registered are clear and legible.

(ii) An application for group registration under section 408(c)(2) of title 17 and paragraph (b)(7) of this section shall consist of:

(A) A basic application for registration on Form TX, Form PA, or Form VA,n4 which shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions;

(B) An adjunct form prescribed by the Copyright Office and designated "Adjunct Application for Copyright Registration for a Group of Contributions to Periodicals (Form GR/CP)", which shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions; and

(C) The appropriate filing fee, as required in § 201.3(c), and the deposit required by paragraph (b)(7)(i)(E) of this section.

(8) Group registration of daily newsletters. Pursuant to the authority granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of two or more issues of a daily newsletter if the following conditions are met:

(i) As used in this regulation, daily newsletter means a serial published and distributed by mail or electronic media (online or telefacsimile), or in any medium including but not limited to, paper, cassette tape, diskette or CD-ROM. Publication must occur on at least two days each week and the newsletter must contain news or information of interest

chiefly to a special group (for example, trade and professional associations, corporate in-house groups, schools, colleges, or churches).

(ii) The works must be essentially all new collective works or all new issues that have not been published before.

(iii) Each issue must be a work made for hire.

(iv) The author(s) and claimant(s) must be the same person(s) or organization(s) for all of the issues.

(v) All the items in the group must bear issue dates within a single calendar month under the same continuing title.

(vi) Deposit. (A). The deposit for newsletters registered under this section is one complete copy of each issue included in the group.

(B) In addition, if requested in writing by the Copyright Acquisitions Division before an application for registration is submitted, the claimant must give the Library of Congress whichever of the following the Library prefers: either as many as two complimentary subscriptions of the newsletter in the edition most suitable to the Library's needs, or a single positive, 35 mm silver halide microfilm meeting the Library's best edition criteria that includes all issues published as final editions in the designated calendar month. Subscription copies must be delivered to the separate address specified by the Copyright Acquisitions Division in its request. Subscription copies or a microfilm are not required unless expressly requested by the Copyright Acquisitions Division.

(C) The copyright owner of any newsletter that cannot meet the criteria set out in this section may continue to register on Form SE or Short Form SE.

(vii) Registration is sought within three months after the publication date of the last issue included in the group.

(viii) A Form G/DN shall be submitted for daily newsletters bearing issue dates within a single month, together with one copy of each issue, and a filing fee. The application shall designate the first and last day that issues in the group were published.

(9) Group registration of published photographs. Pursuant to the authority granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Register of Copyrights will accept a single application (on Form VA), deposit and filing fee for registration of a group of photographs if the following conditions are met:

(i) The copyright claimant in all of the photographs must be the same.

(ii) The photographer who photographed each of the photographs submitted for registration as part of the group must be the same person.

(iii) The photographs in the group must have been published within the same calendar year.

(iv) If the photographs in a group were all published on the same date, the date of publication must be identified in space 3b of the application. If the photographs in a group were not all published on the same date, the range of dates of publication (e.g., January 1-December 31, 2001) must be provided in space 3b of the application, and the date of publication of each photograph within the group must be identified either on the deposited image or on a continuation sheet, in such a manner that for each photograph in the group, the date of publication can be identified. A special continuation sheet for registration of a group of photographs shall be made available by the Copyright Office.

(v) If each photograph within the group was first published within three months before the date on which an acceptable application, an acceptable deposit, and the applicable fee are received in the Copyright Office, the applicant may, in lieu of the procedure set forth in paragraph (b)(9)(iv) of this section, simply state the range of dates of publication (e.g., February 15-May 15, 2001) in space 3b of the application, without specifically identifying the date of publication of each photograph in the group either on the deposited image or on a continuation sheet.

(vi) The deposit(s) and application must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 201.3(c) of this chapter for a basic registration.

(vii) The applicant must state "Group Registration/Photos" and state the approximate number of photographs included in the group in space 1 of the application Form VA under the heading "Previous or Alternative Titles" (e.g., "Group Registration/Photos; app. 450 photographs").

(viii) If the photographs in the group are works made for hire, the applicant must note, as part of the applicant's entry in space 2 of the application Form VA for "Name of Author," both the name of the employer for hire and the name of the photographer who photographed the works in the group (e.g., "XYZ Corporation, employer for hire of John Doe").

(ix) As an alternative to the best edition of the work, one copy of each photograph shall be submitted in one of the formats set forth in § 202.20(c)(2)(xx).

(10) One registration per work. As a general rule only one copyright registration can be made for the same version of a particular work. However:

(i) Where a work has been registered as unpublished, another registration may be made for the first published edition of the work, even if it does not represent a new version;

(ii) Where someone other than the author is identified as copyright claimant in a registration, another registration for the same version may be made by the author in his or her own name as copyright claimant;n5

(iii) Where an applicant for registration alleges that an earlier registration for the same version is unauthorized and legally invalid, a registration may be made by that applicant; and

(iv) Supplementary registrations may be made, under the conditions of § 201.5 of these regulations, to correct or amplify the information in a registration made under this section.

(c) Application for registration. (1) An application for copyright registration may be submitted by any author or other copyright claimant of a work, or the owner of any exclusive right in a work, or the duly authorized agent of any such author, other claimant, or owner.

(2) An application for copyright registration shall be submitted on the appropriate form prescribed by the Register of Copyrights under paragraph (b) of this section, and shall be accompanied by the appropriate filing fee, as required in § 201.3(c), and the deposit required under 17 U.S.C. 408 and § 202.20 of these regulations. n6 The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(i) A designation of whether the applicant is the author of, or other copyright claimant or owner of exclusive rights in, the work, or the duly authorized agent of such author, other claimant, or owner (whose identity shall also be given);

(ii) the handwritten signature of such author, other claimant, owner, or agent, accompanied by the typed or printed name of that person;

(iii) a declaration that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge; and

(iv) the date of certification.

An application for registration of a published work will not be accepted if the date of certification is earlier than the date of publication given in the application.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 966, Jan. 5, 1978; as amended at 54 FR 13181, Mar. 31, 1989; 54 FR 21059, May 16, 1989; 55 FR 50557, Dec. 7, 1990; 56 FR 7813, 7815 Feb. 26, 1991; 56 FR 27197, June 13, 1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 56 FR 65190, Dec. 16, 1991; 57 FR 39616, Sept. 1, 1992; 58 FR 17778, Apr. 6, 1993; 60 FR 15875, Mar. 28, 1995; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35420, 35421, July, 1997; 62 FR 63657, Dec. 2, 1997; 62 FR 66822, Dec. 22, 1997; 64 FR 29518,

29522, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 29522, 29523, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001; 66 FR 37142, 37149, July 17, 2001; 67 Fr 10329, March 7, 2002]

(Pub. L. 94-553; secs. 408, 409, 410, 702)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (b)(3)(i)(A), effective June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended this section, effective June 28, 2001; 66 FR 37142, 37149, July 17, 2001, redesignated paragraph (b)(9) as paragraph (b)(10), and added a new paragraph (b)(9), effective Aug. 16, 2001.]

FOOTNOTES:

[n1] Footnote 1. This category includes a person or organization that has obtained, from the author or from an entity that has obtained ownership of all rights under the copyright initially belonging to the author, the contractual right to claim legal title to the copyright in an application for copyright registration.

[n2] Footnote 2. A sound recording does not include the sounds accompanying a motion picture or other audiovisual work (17 U.S.C. 101). For this purpose, "accompanying" does not require physical integration in the same copy. Accordingly, registration may be made for a motion picture or audiovisual kit in Class PA and that registration will cover the sounds embodied in the "sound track" of the motion picture or on disks, tapes, or the like included in the kit. Separate application in Class SR is not appropriate for these elements.

[n3] Footnote 3. This does not require that each of the works must have been first published during the same calendar year; it does require that, to be grouped in a single application, the earliest and latest contributions must not have been first published more than twelve months apart.

[n4] Footnote 4. The basic application should be filed in the class appropriate to the nature of authorship in the majority of the contributions. However, if any of the contributions consists preponderantly of nondramatic literary material that is in the English language, the basic application for the entire group should be submitted on Form TX.

[n5] Footnote 5. An author includes an employer or other person for whom a work is "made for hire" under 17 U.S.C. 101. This paragraph does not permit an employee or other person working "for hire" under that section to make a later registration in his or her own name. In the case of authors of a joint work, this paragraph does permit a later registration by one author in his or her own name as copyright claimant, where an earlier registration identifies only another author as claimant.

## § 202.4 Effective date of registration.

The effective date of registration for claims received in the Copyright Office on or after January 3, 1991, and through December 31, 1991, with a short fee of $ 10 is the date on which the application, deposit, and $ 10 fee have all been received in the Copyright Office, provided, the claim is later determined to be acceptable for registration by the Register of Copyrights and a supplementary fee of $ 10 is received in the Copyright Office. If the supplementary fee is not received promptly after notification of the short fee, the Copyright Office will initiate a proceeding to cancel the copyright registration. If the supplementary fee of $ 10 is not received in the Copyright Office before the cancellation proceeding is completed, the cancellation will become final and will result in the loss of the effective date of registration. After cancellation, registration could be obtained only by submitting a new application, deposit, and filing fee.

**Legislative History**

[55 FR 50001, Dec. 4, 1990]

## § § 202.5--202.9 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 202.10 Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.

(a) In order to be acceptable as a pictorial, graphic, or sculptural work, the work must embody some creative authorship in its delineation or form. The registrability of such a work is not affected by the intention of the author as to the use of the work or the number of copies reproduced. The availability of protection or grant of protection under the law for a utility or design patent will not affect the registrability of a claim in an original work of pictorial, graphic, or sculptural authorship.

(b) A claim to copyright cannot be registered in a print or label consisting solely of trademark subject matter and lacking copyrightable matter. While the Copyright Office will not investigate whether the matter has been or can be registered at the Patent and Trademark Office, it will register a properly filed copyright claim in a print or label that contains the requisite qualifications for copyright even though there is a trademark on it. However, registration of a claim to copyright does not give the claimant rights available by trademark registrations at the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) [Redesignated as paragraph (b). See 60 FR 15606, Mar. 24, 1995.]

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 33249, June 29, 1981; 60 FR 15605, 15606, Mar. 24, 1995, as corrected at 61 FR 5445, Feb. 12, 1996]

§ 202.11 Architectural works.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the registration of architectural works, as provided for in the amendment of title 17 of the United States Code by the Judicial Improvements Act of 1990, Public Law 101-650.

(b) Definitions. (1) For the purposes of this section, the term architectural work has the same meaning as set forth in section 101 of title 17, as amended.

(2) The term building means humanly habitable structures that are intended to be both permanent and stationary, such as houses and office buildings, and other permanent and stationary structures designed for human occupancy, including but not limited to churches, museums, gazebos, and garden pavilions.

(c) Registration--(1) Original design. In general, an original design of a building embodied in any tangible medium of expression, including a building, architectural plans, or drawings, may be registered as an architectural work.

(2) Registration limited to single architectural work. For published and unpublished architectural works, a single application may cover only a single architectural work. A group of architectural works may not be registered on a single application form. For works such as tract housing, a single work is one house model, with all accompanying floor plan options, elevations, and styles that are applicable to that particular model.

(3) Application form. Registration should be sought on Form VA. Line one of the form should give the title of the building. The date of construction of the building, if any, should also be designated. If the building has not yet been constructed, the notation "not yet constructed" should be given following the title.

(4) Separate registration for plans. Where dual copyright claims exist in technical drawings and the architectural work depicted in the drawings, any claims with respect to the technical drawings and architectural work must be registered separately.

(5) Publication. Publication of an architectural work occurs when underlying plans or drawings of the building or other copies of the building design are distributed or made available to the general public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending. Construction of a building does not itself constitute publication for purposes of registration, unless multiple copies are constructed.

(d) Works excluded. The following structures, features, or works cannot be registered:

(1) Structures other than buildings. Structures other than buildings, such as bridges, cloverleafs, dams, walkways, tents, recreational vehicles, mobile homes, and boats.

(2) Standard features. Standard configurations of spaces, and individual standard features, such as windows, doors, and other staple building components.

(3) Pre-December 1, 1990 building designs. The designs of buildings where the plans or drawings of the building were published before December 1, 1990, or the buildings were constructed or otherwise published before December 1, 1990.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 45310, Oct. 1, 1992]

§ 202.12 Restored copyrights.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the registration of foreign copyright claims which have been restored to copyright protection under section 104A of 17 U.S.C., as amended by the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Public Law 103-465.

(b) Definitions. (1) For the purposes of this section, restored work and source country, have the definition given in the URAA and § 201.33(b) of this chapter.

(2) Descriptive statement for a work embodied solely in machine-readable format is a separate written statement giving the title of the work, nature of the work (for example: computer program, database, videogame, etc.), plus a brief description of the contents or subject matter of the work.

(c) Registration -- (1) General. Application, deposit, and filing fee for registering a copyright claim in a restored work under section 104A, as amended, may be submitted to the Copyright Office on or after January 1, 1996. The application, filing fee, and deposit should be sent in a single package to the following address: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue S.E., Washington, D.C. 20559-6000.

(2) GATT Forms. Application for registration for single works restored to copyright protection under URAA should be made on Form GATT. Application for registration for a group of works published under a single series title and published within the same calendar year should also be made on Form GATT. Application for a group of at least two and up to ten individual and related works as described in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section should be made on Form GATT/GRP. GATT/URAA forms may be obtained by writing or calling the Copyright Office Hotline at (202) 707-9100. In addition, legible photocopies of these forms are acceptable if reproduced on good quality, 8 1/2 by 11 inch white paper, and printed head to head so that page two is printed on the back of page one.

(3) Fee -- (i) Amount. The filing fee for registering a copyright claim in a restored work is 30 U.S. dollars. The filing fee for registering a group of multiple episodes under a series title under paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section is also

$ 30. The filing fee for registering a group of related works under paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section is 10 U.S. dollars per individual work, with a minimum fee of US$ 30.

(ii) Method of payment -- (A) Checks, money orders, or bank drafts. The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. In addition, international money orders, and postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office are not acceptable. CURRENCY WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

(B) Copyright Office Deposit Account. The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts please write: Register of Copyrights, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559, and request a copy of Circular 5, "How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office."

(C) Credit cards. For URAA registrations the Copyright Office will accept VISA, MasterCard, and American Express. Debit cards cannot be accepted for payment. With the registration application, an applicant using a credit card must submit a separate cover letter stating the name of the credit card, the credit card number, the expiration date of the credit card, the total amount authorized and a signature authorizing the Office to charge the fees to the account. To protect the security of the credit card number, the applicant must not write the credit card number on the registration application.

(4) Deposit -- (i) General. The deposit for a work registered as a restored work under the amended section 104A, except for those works listed in paragraphs (c)(4)(ii) through (iv) of this section, should consist of one copy or phonorecord which best represents the copyrightable content of the restored work. In descending order of preference, the deposit should be:

(A) The work as first published;

(B) A reprint or re-release of the work as first published;

(C) A photocopy or identical reproduction of the work as first published; or

(D) A revised version which includes a substantial amount of the copyrightable content of the restored work with an indication in writing of the percentage of the restored work appearing in the revision.

(ii) Previously registered works. No deposit is needed for works previously registered in the Copyright Office.

(iii) Works embodied solely in machine-readable format. For works embodied only in machine-readable formats, the deposit requirements are as follows:

(A) One machine-readable copy and a descriptive statement of the work; or

(B) Representative excerpts of the work, such as printouts; or, if the claim extends to audiovisual elements in the work, a videotape of what appears on the screen.

(iv) Pictorial, graphic and sculptural works. With the exception of 3-dimensional works of art, the general deposit preferences specified under paragraph (c)(4)(i) of this section shall govern. For 3-dimensional works of art, the preferred deposit is one or more photographs of the work, preferably in color.

(v) Special relief. An applicant who is unable to submit any of the preferred deposits may seek an alternative deposit under special relief (37 CFR 202.20(d)). In such a case, the applicant should indicate in writing why the deposit preferences cannot be met, and submit alternative identifying materials clearly showing some portion of the copyrightable contents of the restored work which is the subject of registration.

(vi) Motion pictures. If the deposit is a film print (16 or 35 mm), the applicant should contact the Performing Arts Section of the Examining Division for delivery instructions. The telephone number is: (202) 707-6040; the telefax number is: (202) 707-1236.

(5) Group registration. Copyright claims in more than one restored work may be registered as a group in the following circumstances:

(i) Single series title. Works published under a single series title in multiple episodes, installments, or issues during the same calendar year may be registered as a group, provided the owner of U.S. rights is the same for all episodes, installments, or issues. The Form GATT should be used and the number of episodes or installments should be indicated in the title line. The filing fee for registering a group of such works is $ 30. In general, the deposit requirements applicable to restored works will be applied to the episodes or installments in a similar fashion. In the case of a weekly or daily television series, applicants should first contact the Performing Arts Section of the Examining Division. The telephone number is (202) 707-6040; the telefax number is (202) 707-1236.

(ii) Group of related works. A group of related works may be registered on the Form GATT/GRP, provided the following conditions are met: the author(s) is the same for all works in the group; the owner of all United States rights is the same for all works in the group; all works must have been published in the same calendar year; all works fit within the same subject matter category, i.e., literary works, musical works, motion pictures, etc.; and there are at least two and not more than ten individual works in the group submitted. Applicants registering a group of related works must file for registration on the Form GATT/GRP. The filing fee for registering a group of related works is ten dollars per individual work, with a minimum fee of $ 30.

(d) Works excluded. Works which are not copyrightable subject matter under title 17 of the U.S. Code, other than sound recordings fixed before February 15, 1972, shall not be registered as restored copyrights.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 50414, 50422, Sept. 29, 1995; 64 FR 12902, Mar. 16, 1999; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 12902, Mar. 16, 1999, revised the last sentence of paragraph (c)(1), effective Feb. 22, 1999; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999, amended paragraphs (c)(3)(i), (c)(5)(ii), and (c)(5)(ii), effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 202.13--202.16 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 202.17 Renewals.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the application for renewal copyright under section 304(a) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 102-307 and Pub. L. 105-298.

(b) Definition. For purposes of this section, the term posthumous work means a work that was unpublished on the date of the death of the author and with respect to which no copyright assignment or other contract for exploitation of the work occurred during the author's lifetime.

(c) Renewal registration optional. For works originally copyrighted between January 1, 1964 and December 31, 1977 renewal registration is optional and not a condition for securing copyright for the new and extended sixty-seven

year second term. As provided in Public Law 102-307, 106 Stat. 264 (Act of June 26, 1992), however, renewal of copyright by registration during the last year of the original term and renewal registration during the sixty-seven year extended term, of a copyright renewed without registration by operation of Public Law 102-307 differ in legal effect. Among other effects, renewal of copyright by registration during the last year of the original term vests the renewal copyright in the statutory renewal claimant(s) living on the date of registration.

(d) Original term registration. (1) Registration of a claim to copyright in the original twenty-eight year term is not a pre-condition for making a renewal registration, provided the renewal application is accompanied by an Addendum to Form RE and the deposit copy, phonorecord, or identifying material specified in paragraph (h) of this section.

(2) Original term registration can only be made before the expiration of the original term of copyright in the work.

(e) Renewal time limits. (1) For works originally copyrighted between January 1, 1964, and December 31, 1977, claims to renewal copyright may be registered within the last year of the original term, which begins on December 31 of the 27th year of the copyright, and runs through December 31 of the 28th year of the copyright, or at anytime during the extended sixty-seven year second term, if the second term is renewed by operation of Public Law 102-307, 106 Stat. 264. The original copyright term for a published work is computed from the date of first publication; the term for a work originally registered in unpublished form is computed from the date of registration in the Copyright Office. To vest the renewal copyright by registration, the required renewal application, fee, and, if original term registration has not been made, the Addendum specified in paragraph (h) of this section must be received in the Copyright Office during the prescribed period before the first term of copyright expires. The Copyright Office has no discretion to extend the renewal time limits for vesting of the renewal copyright by registration.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (e)(1) of this section are subject to the following qualification: In order to vest the renewal copyright by registration in any case where the year date in the notice on copies distributed by authority of the copyright owner is earlier than the year of first publication, claims to renewal copyright must be registered within the last year of the original copyright term, which begins on December 31 of the 27th year from the year contained in the notice, and runs through December 31 of the 28th year from the year contained in the notice.

(3) Whenever a renewal applicant has cause to believe that a formal application for renewal, which is intended to vest the renewal copyright by registration, and any accompanying Addendum relating to subsistence of first-term copyright, if sent to the Copyright Office by mail, might not be received in the Copyright Office before expiration of the time limits provided by 17 U.S.C. 304(a) for vesting of the renewal copyright by registration, he or she may apply for renewal registration by telegraphic, telefacsimile, or similar written communication. An application made by this method will be accepted only if:

(i) The message is received in the Copyright Office within the specified time limits for vesting by registration;

(ii) The applicant adequately identifies the work involved, the date of first publication or original registration, the name and address of the renewal claimant, and the statutory basis of the renewal claim;

(iii) The fee for renewal registration, if not already on deposit, is received in the Copyright Office before the time for renewal registration has expired; and

(iv) A formal application for renewal (Form RE) (or a fax copy) and in the case of works under paragraph (h) of this section, an accompanying Addendum relating to the subsistence of first-term copyright are also received in the Copyright Office before April 1 of the following year.

(f) Renewal claimants. (1) Except as otherwise provided by paragraphs (f)(2) and (3) of this section, renewal claims may be registered only in the name(s) of the eligible person(s) falling within one of the following classes of renewal claimants specified in section 304(a) of the copyright law. If the work was a new version of a previous work, renewal may be claimed only in the new matter. If the renewal claim is submitted during the last year of the original term of copyright, the renewal must be made in the name(s) of the statutory claimant(s) entitled to claim the renewal on the date the renewal claim is submitted to the Copyright Office for registration. If the renewal claim is submitted during the sixty-seven year renewal term, the renewal claim can only be registered in the name(s) of the statutory claimant(s) entitled to claim the renewal on the last day (December 31st) of the original term of copyright.

(i) In the case of any posthumous work or of any periodical, encyclopedia, or other composite work upon which the copyright was originally secured by the proprietor thereof, the renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor;

(ii) In the case of any work copyrighted by a corporate body (otherwise than as assignees or licensees of the individual author) or by an employer for whom such work is made for hire, the renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor; and

(iii) In the case of any other copyrighted work, including a contribution by an individual author to a periodical or to a cyclopedic or other composite work, the renewal claim may be registered in the name(s) of the following person(s) in descending order of eligibility:

(A) The author of the work, if still living;

(B) The widow, widower, or children of the author, if the author is not living;

(C) The author's executors, if there is a will and neither the author nor any widow, widower, or child of the author is living;

(D) The author's next of kin, in the absence of a will and if neither the author nor any widow, widower, or child of the author is living.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (f)(1) of this section are subject to the following qualification: Notwithstanding the definition of "posthumous work" in paragraph (b) of this section, a renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor of the work, as well as in the name of the appropriate claimant under paragraph (f)(1)(iii) of this section, in any case where a contract for exploitation of the work but no copyright assignment in the work has occurred during the author's lifetime. However, registration by the Copyright Office in this case should not be interpreted as evidencing the validity of the claim.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (f)(1)(iii)(C) and (D) of this section are subject to the following qualifications:

(i) In any case where:

(A) The author has left a will which names no executor;

(B) The author has left a will which names an executor who cannot or will not serve in that capacity; or

(C) The author has left a will which names an executor who has been discharged upon settlement of the estate or removed before the estate has been completely administered, the renewal claim may be registered either in the name of an administrator cum testamento annexo (administrator c.t.a.) or an administrator de bonis non cum testamento annexo (administrator d.b.n.c.t.a.) so appointed by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(ii) In any case described in paragraph (f)(3)(i) of this section, except in the case where the author has left a will without naming an executor and a court appointed administrator c.t.a. or administrator d.b.n.c.t.a. is in existence at the time of renewal registration, the renewal claim also may be registered in the name of the author's next of kin. However, registration by the Copyright Office of the conflicting renewal claims in these cases should not be interpreted as evidencing the validity of either claim.

(g) Application for renewal registration. (1) Each application for renewal registration shall be submitted on Form RE. Copies of Form RE, and if applicable, the Addendum to Form RE, are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, United States Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559.

(2)(i) An application for renewal registration may be submitted by any eligible statutory renewal claimant as specified in paragraph (f) of this section or by the duly authorized agent of any such claimant.

(ii) An application for renewal registration shall be accompanied by the appropriate fee, as required in § 201.3(c). The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(A) A designation of whether the applicant is the renewal claimant, or the duly authorized agent of such claimant (whose identity shall also be given);

(B) The handwritten signature of such claimant or agent, accompanied by the typewritten or printed name of that person;

(C) A declaration that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge; and

(D) The date of certification.

(iii) In the case of an application for renewal registration of a work for which no original registration was made, the application shall be accompanied by an Addendum and deposit material in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section.

(3) Once a renewal registration has been made, the Copyright Office will not accept a duplicate application for renewal registration on behalf of the same renewal claimant.

(h) Addendum for an unregistered work -- (1) Content. If original term registration is not timely made for a work, the renewal application Form RE must be accompanied by an Addendum to Form RE which must contain the following information:

(i) The title of the work;

(ii) The name of the author(s);

(iii) The date of first publication of the work;

(iv) The place of first publication of the work;

(v) The citizenship of the author(s) on the date of first publication of the work;

(vi) The domicile of the author(s) on the date of first publication of the work;

(vii) An averment that, at the time of first publication, all the copies of the work published under the authority of the author or other copyright proprietor bore the copyright notice required by the Copyright Act of 1909, title 17 of the United States Code in effect on December 31, 1977, and that United States copyright subsists in the work; and

(viii) For works of United States origin which were subject to the manufacturing provisions of section 16 of the Copyright Act of 1909 as it existed at the time the work was published, the Addendum must also contain information about the country of manufacture and the manufacturing processes.

(2) Signature. The Addendum must contain the handwritten signature of the renewal claimant or the duly authorized agent of the renewal claimant. The signature shall (i) be accompanied by the printed typewritten name of the person signing the Addendum and by the date of the signature; and (ii) shall be immediately preceded by the following printed or typewritten statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code:

I certify under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct.

(3) Deposit requirement for an unregistered work. In addition to the Addendum to Form RE, an application for renewal registration of a work for which no original term registration is made must be accompanied by one copy or phonorecord or identifying material of the work as first published in accordance with the deposit requirements set out in sections 202.20 and 202.21 of the Copyright Office regulations for basic registration.

(4) Waiver of the deposit requirement. In a case where the renewal applicant asserts that it is either physically impossible or otherwise an undue hardship to satisfy the deposit requirements of § § 1A202.20 and 202.21, the

Copyright Office, at its discretion, may, upon receipt of an acceptable explanation of the inability to submit such copy or identifying material, permit the deposit of the following in the descending order of preference:

(i) A reprint, photocopy, or identifying reproduction of the work as first published; or

(ii)(A) A photocopy of the title page of the work as first published;

(B) A photocopy of the page of the work as first published bearing the copyright notice;

(C) A specification as to the location, relative to each other, of the title and notice pages of the work as first published, if the pages are different; and

(D) A brief description of the copyrightable content of the work, which is sufficient to enable the Copyright Office to examine the work. The Examining Division of the Copyright Office may request deposit of additional descriptive material if the original submission is inadequate.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60483, Dec. 21, 1992; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000; 66 FR 24267, 24268, May 14, 2001; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, as corrected at 66 FR 40322, Aug. 2, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, substituted "duly" for "duty" in paragraph (g)(2)(i), effective June 28, 2000; 66 FR 24267, 24268, May 14, 2001, amended paragraphs (a), (c), (e)(1), and (f)(1), effective May 14, 2001; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (f)(3)(i)(C), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 202.18 [Reserved]

[Reserved]

§ 202.19 Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for the Library of Congress.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of copies and phonorecords of published works for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. The provisions of this section are not applicable to the deposit of copies and phonorecords for purposes of copyright registration under section 408 of title 17, except as expressly adopted in § 202.20 of these regulations.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1)(i) The best edition of a work is the edition, published in the United States at any time before the date of deposit, that the Library of Congress determines to be most suitable for its purposes. The "best edition" requirement is described in detail at Appendix B to this part.

(ii) Criteria for selection of the "best edition" from among two or more published editions of the same version of the same work are set forth in the statement entitled "Best Edition of Published Copyrighted Works for the Collections of the Library of Congress" (hereafter referred to as the "Best Edition Statement") in effect at the time of deposit.

(iii) Where no specific criteria for the selection of the "best edition" are established in the Best Edition Statement, that edition which, in the judgment of the Library of Congress, represents the highest quality for its purposes shall be considered the "best edition." In such cases:

(A) When the Copyright Office is aware that two or more editions of a work have been published it will consult with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress to obtain instructions as to the "best edition" and (except in cases for which special relief is granted) will require deposit of that edition; and

(B) When a potential depositor is uncertain which of two or more published editions comprises the "best edition", inquiry should be made to the Copyright Acquisitions Division.

(iv) Where differences between two or more "editions" of a work represent variations in copyrightable content, each edition is considered a separate version, and hence a different work, for the purpose of this section, and criteria of "best edition" based on such differences do not apply.

(2) A complete copy includes all elements comprising the unit of publication of the best edition of the work, including elements that, if considered separately, would not be copyrightable subject matter or would otherwise be exempt from mandatory deposit requirements under paragraph (c) of this section. In the case of sound recordings, a "complete" phonorecord includes the phonorecord, together with any printed or other visually perceptible material published with such phonorecord (such as textual or pictorial matter appearing on record sleeves or album covers, or embodied in leaflets or booklets included in a sleeve, album, or other container). In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords:

(i) If the only publication of copies in the United States took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a full score and parts, a full score is a "complete" copy; and

(ii) If the only publication of copies in the United States took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a conductor's score and parts, a conductor's score is a "complete" copy.

In the case of a motion picture, a copy is "complete" if the reproduction of all of the visual and aural elements comprising the copyrightable subject matter in the work is clean, undamaged, undeteriorated, and free of splices, and if the copy itself and its physical housing are free of any defects that would interfere with the performance of the work or that would cause mechanical, visual, or audible defects or distortions.

(3) The terms architectural works, copies, collective work, device, fixed, literary work, machine, motion picture, phonorecord, publication, sound recording, useful article, and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in 17 U.S.C. 101.

(c) Exemptions from deposit requirements. The following categories of material are exempt from the deposit requirements of section 407(a) of title 17:

(1) Diagrams and models illustrating scientific or technical works or formulating scientific or technical information in linear or three-dimensional form, such as an architectural or engineering blueprint, plan, or design, a mechanical drawing, or an anatomical model.

(2) Greeting cards, picture postcards, and stationery.

(3) Lectures, sermons, speeches, and addresses when published individually and not as a collection of the works of one or more authors.

(4) Literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in phonorecords. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in a sound recording resulting from the fixation of such works in a phonorecord from the applicable deposit requirements for the sound recording.

(5) Automated databases available only on-line in the United States. The exemption does not include the following: automated databases distributed in the form of machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tape or disks, CD-ROM

formats, punch cards, or the like); computerized information works in the nature of statistical compendia, serials, and reference works; works published in a form requiring the use of a machine or device for purposes of optical enlargement (such as film, filmstrips, slide films and works published in any variety of microform); works published in visually perceptible form but used in connection with optical scanning devices; and works reproduced in CD-ROM formats.

(6) Three-dimensional sculptural works, and any works published only as reproduced in or on jewelry, dolls, toys, games, plaques, floor coverings, wallpaper and similar commercial wall coverings, textiles and other fabrics, packaging material, or any useful article. Globes, relief models, and similar cartographic representations of area are not within this category and are subject to the applicable deposit requirements.

(7) Prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental lease, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services.

(8) Tests, and answer material for tests when published separately from other literary works.

(9) Works first published as individual contributions to collective works. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in the collective work as a whole, from the applicable deposit requirements for the collective work.

(10) Works first published outside the United States and later published in the United States without change in copyrightable content, if:

(i) Registration for the work was made under 17 U.S.C. 408 before the work was published in the United States; or

(ii) Registration for the work was made under 17 U.S.C. 408 after the work was published in the United States but before a demand for deposit is made under 17 U.S.C. 407(d).

(11) Works published only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in the motion picture, from the applicable deposit requirements for the motion picture.

(12) Motion pictures that consist of television transmission programs and that have been published, if at all, only by reason of a license or other grant to a nonprofit institution of the right to make a fixation of such programs directly from a transmission to the public, with or without the right to make further uses of such fixations.

(d) Nature of required deposit. (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the deposit required to satisfy the provisions of section 407(a) of title 17 shall consist of:

(i) In the case of published works other than sound recordings, two complete copies of the best edition; and

(ii) In the case of published sound recordings, two complete phonorecords of the best edition.

(2) In the case of certain published works not exempt from deposit requirements under paragraph (c) of this section, the following special provisions shall apply:

(i) In the case of published three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(ii) In the case of published motion pictures, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. Any deposit of a published motion picture must be accompanied by a separate description of its contents, such as a continuity, pressbook, or synopsis. The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement permitting the return of copies of published motion pictures to the depositor under certain conditions and establishing certain rights and obligations of the Library with respect to such copies. In the event of termination of such an agreement by the Library it shall not be subject to reinstatement, nor shall the depositor or any successor in interest of the depositor be entitled to any similar or

subsequent agreement with the Library, unless at the sole discretion of the Library it would be in the best interests of the Library to reinstate the agreement or enter into a new agreement.

(iii) In the case of any published work deposited in the form of a hologram, the deposit shall be accompanied by:

(A) Two sets of precise instructions for displaying the image fixed in the hologram; and

(B) two sets of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations and clearly showing the displayed image.

(iv) In any case where an individual author is the owner of copyright in a published pictorial or graphic work and (A) less than five copies of the work have been published, or (B) the work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than three hundred numbered copies, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work or, alternatively, the deposit of photographs or other identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations, will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(v) In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords, if the only publication of copies in the United States took place by rental, lease, or lending, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(vi) In the case of published multimedia kits, that include literary works, audiovisual works, sound recordings, or any combination of such works, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(vii) In the case of published computer programs and published computerized information works, such as statistical compendia, serials, and reference works that are not copy-protected, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition as specified in the current Library of Congress Best Edition Statement will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. If the works are copy-protected, two copies of the best edition are required.

(viii) In the case of published architectural works, the deposit shall consist of the most finished form of presentation drawings in the following descending order of preference:

(A) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(B) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(C) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(D) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process). If photographs are submitted, they should be 8 x 10 inches and should clearly show several exterior and interior views. The deposit should disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site.

(e) Special relief. (1) In the case of any published work not exempt from deposit under paragraph (c) of this section, the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation:

(i) Grant an exemption from the deposit requirements of section 407(a) of title 17 on an individual basis for single works or series or groups of works; or

(ii) Permit the deposit of one copy or phonorecord, or alternative identifying material, in lieu of the two copies or phonorecords required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section; or

(iii) Permit the deposit of incomplete copies or phonorecords, or copies or phonorecords other than those normally comprising the best edition; or

(iv) Permit the deposit of identifying material which does not comply with § 202.21 of these regulations.

(2) Any decision as to whether to grant such special relief, and the conditions under which special relief is to be granted, shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, and shall be based upon the acquisition policies of the Library of Congress then in force.

(3) Requests for special relief under this paragraph shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division, shall be signed by or on behalf of the owner of copyright or of the exclusive right of publication in the work, and shall set forth specific reasons why the request should be granted.

(4) The Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, terminate any ongoing or continuous grant of special relief. Notice of termination shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization to whom the grant of special relief had been given, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of termination may be given at any time, but it shall state a specific date of termination that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed. Termination shall not affect the validity of any deposit made earlier under the grant of special relief.

(f) Submission and receipt of copies and phonorecords. (1) All copies and phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office will be considered to be deposited only in compliance with section 407 of title 17 unless they are accompanied by an application for registration of a claim to copyright in the work represented by the deposit, and either a registration fee or a deposit account number on the application. Copies or phonorecords deposited without such an accompanying application and either a fee or a deposit account notation will not be connected with or held for receipt of separate applications, and will not satisfy the deposit provisions of section 408 of title 17 or § 202.20 of these regulations.

(2) All copies and phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office under section 407 of title 17, unless accompanied by written instructions to the contrary, will be considered to be deposited by the person or persons named in the copyright notice on the work.

(3) Upon request by the depositor made at the time of the deposit, the Copyright Office will issue a certificate of receipt for the deposit of copies or phonorecords of a work under this section. Certificates of receipt will be issued in response to requests made after the date of deposit only if the requesting party is identified in the records of the Copyright Office as having made the deposit. In either case, requests for a certificate of receipt must be in writing and accompanied by the appropriate fee, as required in § 201.3(c). A certificate of receipt will include identification of the depositor, the work deposited, and the nature and format of the copy or phonorecord deposited, together with the date of receipt.

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 6403, Feb. 24, 1986, as amended at 54 FR 42299, Oct. 16, 1989; 56 FR 47403, Sept. 19, 1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 57 FR 45310, Oct. 1, 1992; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 62977, 62978, Nov. 18, 1999; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (b)(1)(iii), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 202.20 Deposit of copies and phonorecords for copyright registration.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of copies and phonorecords of published and unpublished works for the purpose of copyright registration under section 408 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. The provisions of this section are not applicable to the deposit of copies and phonorecords for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17, except as expressly adopted in § 202.19 of these regulations.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1) The best edition of a work has the meaning set forth in § 202.19(b)(1) of these regulations.

(2) A complete copy or phonorecord means the following:

(i) Unpublished works. Subject to the requirements of paragraph (b)(2)(vi) of this section, a "complete" copy or phonorecord of an unpublished work is a copy or phonorecord representing the entire copyrightable content of the work for which registration is sought;

(ii) Published works. Subject to the requirements of paragraphs (b)(2) (iii) through (vi) of this section, a "complete" copy or phonorecord of a published work includes all elements comprising the applicable unit of publication of the work, including elements that, if considered separately, would not be copyrightable subject matter. However, even where certain physically separable elements included in the applicable unit of publication are missing from the deposit, a copy or phonorecord will be considered "complete" for purposes of registration where:

(A) The copy or phonorecord deposited contains all parts of the work for which copyright registration is sought; and

(B) The removal of the missing elements did not physically damage the copy or phonorecord or garble its contents; and

(C) The work is exempt from the mandatory deposit requirements under section 407 of title 17 of the United States Code and § 202.19(c) of these regulations, or the copy deposited consists entirely of a container, wrapper, or holder, such as an envelope, sleeve, jacket, slipcase, box, bag, folder, binder, or other receptacle acceptable for deposit under paragraph (c)(2) of this section;

(iii) Contributions to collective works. In the case of a published contribution to a collective work, a "complete" copy is one complete copy of the best edition of the entire collective work, the complete section containing the contribution if published in a newspaper, the contribution cut from the paper in which it appeared, or a photocopy of the contribution itself as it was published in the collective work.

(iv) Sound recordings. In the case of published sound recordings, a "complete" phonorecord has the meaning set forth in § 202.19(b)(2) of these regulations;

(v) Musical scores. In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords:

(A) If the only publication of copies took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a full score and parts, a full score is a "complete" copy; and

(B) If the only publication of copies took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a conductor's score and parts, a conductor's score is a "complete" copy;

(vi) Motion pictures. In the case of a published or unpublished motion picture, a copy is "complete" if the reproduction of all of the visual and aural elements comprising the copyrightable subject matter in the work is clean, undamaged, undeteriorated, and free of splices, and if the copy itself and its physical housing are free of any defects that would interfere with the performance of the work or that would cause mechanical, visual, or audible defects or distortions.

(3) The terms architectural works, copy, collective work, device, fixed, literary work, machine, motion picture, phonorecord, publication, sound recording, transmission program, and useful article, and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in 17 U.S.C. 101.

(4) A secure test is a nonmarketed test administered under supervision at specified centers on specific dates, all copies of which are accounted for and either destroyed or returned to restricted locked storage following each administration. For these purposes a test is not marketed if copies are not sold but it is distributed and used in such a manner that ownership and control of copies remain with the test sponsor or publisher.

(5) Title 17 means title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(6) For the purposes of determining the applicable deposit requirements under this § 202.20 only, the following shall be considered as unpublished motion pictures: motion pictures that consist of television transmission programs and that have been published, if at all, only by reason of a license or other grant to a nonprofit institution of the right to make a fixation of such programs directly from a transmission to the public, with or without the right to make further uses of such fixations.

(c) Nature of required deposit. (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the deposit required to accompany an application for registration of claim to copyright under section 408 of title 17 shall consist of:

(i) In the case of unpublished works, one complete copy or phonorecord.

(ii) In the case of works first published in the United States before January 1, 1978, two complete copies or phonorecords of the work as first published.

(iii) In the case of works first published in the United States on or after January 1, 1978, two complete copies or phonorecords of the best edition.

(iv) In the case of works first published outside of the United States, one complete copy or phonorecord of the work either as first published or of the best edition. For purposes of this section, any works simultaneously first published within and outside of the United States shall be considered to be first published in the United States.

(2) In the case of certain works, the special provisions set forth in this clause shall apply. In any case where this clause specifies that one copy or phonorecord may be submitted, that copy or phonorecord shall represent the best edition, or the work as first published, as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(i) General. In the following cases the deposit of one complete copy or phonorecord will suffice in lieu of two copies or phonorecords:

(A) Published three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models;

(B) Published diagrams illustrating scientific or technical works or formulating scientific or technical information in linear or other two-dimensional form, such as an architectural or engineering blueprint, or a mechanical drawing;

(C) Published greeting cards, picture postcards, and stationery;

(D) Lectures, sermons, speeches, and addresses published individually and not as a collection of the works of one or more authors;

(E) Musical compositions published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords, if the only publication of copies took place by rental, lease, or lending;

(F) Published multimedia kits or any part thereof;

(G) Works exempted from the requirement of depositing identifying material under paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(5) of this section;

(H) Literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in phonorecords, although this category does not exempt the owner of copyright in a sound recording;

(I) Choreographic works, pantomimes, literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in motion pictures;

(J) Published works in the form of two-dimensional games, decals, fabric patches or emblems, calendars, instructions for needle work, needle work and craft kits; and

(K) Works reproduced on three-dimensional containers such as boxes, cases, and cartons.

(ii) Motion pictures. In the case of published or unpublished motion pictures, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice. The deposit of a copy or copies for any published or unpublished motion picture must be accompanied by a separate description of its contents, such as a continuity, pressbook, or synopsis. In any case where the deposit copy or

copies required for registration of a motion picture cannot be viewed for examining purposes on equipment in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the description accompanying the deposit must comply with § 202.21(h) of these regulations. The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement permitting the return of copies of published motion pictures to the depositor under certain conditions and establishing certain rights and obligations of the Library of Congress with respect to such copies. In the event of termination of such an agreement by the Library, it shall not be subject to reinstatement, nor shall the depositor or any successor in interest of the depositor be entitled to any similar or subsequent agreement with the Library, unless at the sole discretion of the Library it would be in the best interests of the Library to reinstate the agreement or enter into a new agreement. In the case of unpublished motion pictures (including television transmission programs that have been fixed and transmitted to the public, but have not been published), the deposit of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of an actual copy. In the case of colorized versions of motion pictures made from pre-existing black and white motion pictures, in addition to the deposit of one complete copy of the colorized motion picture and the separate description of its contents as specified above, the deposit shall consist of one complete print of the black and white version of the motion picture from which the colorized version was prepared. If special relief from this requirement is requested and granted, the claimant shall make a good faith effort to deposit the best available, near-archival quality black and white print, as a condition of any grant of special relief.

(iii) Holograms. In the case of any work deposited in the form of a three-dimensional hologram, the copy or copies shall be accompanied by:

(A) Precise instructions for displaying the image fixed in the hologram; and

(B) Photographs or other identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations and clearly showing the displayed image.

The number of sets of instructions and identifying material shall be the same as the number of copies required. In the case of a work in the form of a two-dimensional hologram, the image of which is visible without the use of a machine or device, one actual copy of the work shall be deposited.

(iv) Certain pictorial and graphic works. In the case of any unpublished pictorial or graphic work, deposit of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of an actual copy. In the case of a published pictorial or graphic work, deposit of one complete copy, or of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations, may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of two actual copies where an individual author is the owner of copyright, and either:

(A) Less than five copies of the work have been published; or

(B) The work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than 300 numbered copies.

(v) Commercial prints and labels. In the case of prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental, lease, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. Where the print or label is published in a larger work, such as a newspaper or other periodical, one copy of the entire page or pages upon which it appears may be submitted in lieu of the entire larger work. In the case of prints or labels physically inseparable from a three-dimensional object, identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations must be submitted rather than an actual copy or copies except under the conditions of paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(4) of this section.

(vi) Tests. In the case of tests, and answer material for tests, published separately from other literary works, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. In the case of any secure test the Copyright Office will return the deposit to the applicant promptly after examination: Provided, That sufficient portions, description, or the like are retained so as to constitute a sufficient archival record of the deposit.

(vii) Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format. In cases where a computer program, database, compilation, statistical compendium, or the like, if unpublished is fixed, or if published is published only in the form of machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tape or disks, punched cards,

semiconductor chip products, or the like) other than a CD-ROM format, from which the work cannot ordinarily be perceived except with the aid of a machine or device, the deposit shall consist of:

(A) For published or unpublished computer programs, one copy of identifying portions of the program, reproduced in a form visually perceptible without the aid of a machine or device, either on paper or in microform. For these purposes "identifying portions" shall mean one of the following:

(1) The first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the source code if reproduced on paper, or at least the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the source code if reproduced in microform, together with the page or equivalent unit containing the copyright notice, if any. If the program is 50 pages or less, the required deposit will be the entire source code. In the case of revised versions of computer programs, if the revisions occur throughout the entire program, the deposit of the page containing the copyright notice and the first and last 25 pages of source code will suffice; if the revisions do not occur in the first and last 25 pages, the deposit should consist of the page containing the copyright notice and any 50 pages of source code representative of the revised material; or

(2) Where the program contains trade secret material, the page or equivalent unit containing the copyright notice, if any, plus one of the following: the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of source code with portions of the source code containing trade secrets blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining, and the deposit reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code; or the first and last 10 pages or equivalent units of source code alone with no blocked-out portions; or the first and last 25 pages of object code, together with any 10 or more consecutive pages of source code with no blocked-out portions; or for programs consisting of, or less than, 50 pages or equivalent units, entire source code with the trade secret portions blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining, and the remaining portion reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code. If the copyright claim is in a revision not contained in the first and last 25 pages, the deposit shall consist of either 20 pages of source code representative of the revised material with no blocked-out portions, or any 50 pages of source code representative of the revised material with portions of the source code containing trade secrets blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining and the deposit reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code. Whatever method is used to block out trade secret material, at least an appreciable amount of original computer code must remain visible.

(B) Where registration of a program containing trade secrets is made on the basis of an object code deposit the Copyright Office will make registration under its rule of doubt and warn that no determination has been made concerning the existence of copyrightable authorship.

(C) Where the application to claim copyright in a computer program includes a specific claim in related computer screen displays, the deposit, in addition to the identifying portions specified in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(A) of this section, shall consist of:

(1) Visual reproductions of the copyrightable expression in the form of printouts, photographs, or drawings no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches; or

(2) If the authorship in the work is predominantly audiovisual, a one-half inch VHS format videotape reproducing the copyrightable expression, except that printouts, photographs, or drawings no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches must be deposited in lieu of videotape where the computer screen material simply constitutes a demonstration of the functioning of the computer program.

(D) For published and unpublished automated databases, compilations, statistical compendia, and the like, so fixed or published, one copy of identifying portions of the work, reproduced in a form visually perceptible without the aid of a machine or device, either on paper or in microform. For these purposes:

(1) Identifying portions shall generally mean either the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the work if reproduced on paper or in microform.

(2) Datafile and file shall mean a group of data records pertaining to a common subject matter regardless of their size or the number of data items in them.

(3) In the case of individual registration of a revised version of the works identified in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(D) of this section, the identifying portions deposited shall contain 50 representative pages or data records which have been added or modified.

(4) If the work is an automated database comprising multiple separate or distinct data files, "identifying portions" shall instead consist of 50 complete data records from each data file or the entire data file, whichever is less, and the descriptive statement required by paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(D)(5) of this section.

(5) In the case of group registration for revised or updated versions of a database, the claimant shall deposit identifying portions that contain 50 representative pages or equivalent units, or representative data records which have been marked to disclose (or do in fact disclose solely) the new material added on one representative publication date if published, or on one representative creation date, if unpublished, and shall also deposit a brief typed or printed descriptive statement containing the notice of copyright information required under paragraphs (c)(2)(vii)(D)(6) or (7) of this section, if the work bears a notice, and;

(i) The title of the database;

(ii) A subtitle, date of creation or publication, or other information, to distinguish any separate or distinct data files for cataloging purposes;

(iii) The name and address of the copyright claimant;

(iv) For each separate file, its name and content, including its subject, the origin(s) of the data, and the approximate number of data records it contains; and

(v) In the case of revised or updated versions of an automated database, information as to the nature and frequency of changes in the database and some identification of the location within the database or the separate data files of the revisions.

(6) For a copyright notice embodied in machine-readable form, the statement shall describe exactly the visually perceptible content of the notice which appears in or with the database, and the manner and frequency with which it is displayed (e.g., at user's terminal only at sign-on, or continuously on terminal display, or on printouts, etc.).

(7) If a visually perceptible copyright notice is placed on any copies of the work (or on magnetic tape reels or containers therefor), a sample of such notice must also accompany the statement.

(viii) Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format. Where a literary, musical, pictorial, graphic, or audiovisual work, or a sound recording, except for works fixed in a CD-ROM format and literary works which are computer programs, databases, compilations, statistical compendia or the like, if unpublished has been fixed or, if published, has been published only in machine-readable form, the deposit must consist of identifying material. The type of identifying material submitted should generally be appropriate to the type of work embodied in machine-readable form, but in all cases should be that which best represents the copyrightable content of the work. In all cases the identifying material must include the title of the work. A synopsis may also be requested in addition to the other deposit materials as appropriate in the discretion of the Copyright Office. In the case of any published work subject to this section, the identifying material must include a representation of the copyright notice, if one exists. Identifying material requirements for certain types of works are specified below. In the case of the types of works listed below, the requirements specified shall apply except that, in any case where the specific requirements are not appropriate for a given work the form of the identifying material required will be determined by the Copyright Office in consultation with the applicant, but the Copyright Office will make the final determination of the acceptability of the identifying material.

(A) For pictorial or graphic works, the deposit shall consist of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations;

(B) For audiovisual works, the deposit shall consist of either a videotape of the work depicting representative portions of the copyrightable content, or a series of photographs or drawings, depicting representative portions of the work, plus in all cases a separate synopsis of the work;

(C) For musical compositions, the deposit shall consist of a transcription of the entire work such as a score, or a reproduction of the entire work on an audiocassette or other phonorecord;

(D) For sound recordings, the deposit shall consist of a reproduction of the entire work on an audiocassette or other phonorecord;

(E) For literary works, the deposit shall consist of a transcription of representative portions of the work including the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units, and five or more pages indicative of the remainder.

(ix) Copies containing both visually-perceptible and machine-readable material other than a CD-ROM format. Where a published literary work is embodied in copies containing both visually-perceptible and machine-readable material, except in the case of a CD-ROM format, the deposit shall consist of the visually-perceptible material and identifying portions of the machine-readable material.

(x) Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials. In the case of any unpublished work that is fixed, or any published work that is published, only in the form of a two-dimensional reproduction on sheetlike materials such as textiles and other fabrics, wallpaper and similar commercial wall coverings, carpeting, floor tile, and similar commercial floor coverings, and wrapping paper and similar packaging material, the deposit shall consist of one copy in the form of an actual swatch or piece of such material sufficient to show all elements of the work in which copyright is claimed and the copyright notice appearing on the work, if any. If the work consists of a repeated pictorial or graphic design, the complete design and at least part of one repetition must be shown. If the sheetlike material in or on which a published work has been reproduced has been embodied in or attached to a three-dimensional object, such as furniture, or any other three-dimensional manufactured article, and the work has been published only in that form, the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations instead of a copy. If the sheet-like material in or on which a published work has been reproduced has been embodied in or attached to a two-dimensional object such as wearing apparel, bed linen, or a similar item, and the work has been published only in that form, the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations instead of a copy unless the copy can be folded for storage in a form that does not exceed four inches in thickness.

(xi) Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects. (A) In the following cases the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 201.21 of these regulations instead of a copy or copies:

(1) Any three-dimensional sculptural work, including any illustration or formulation of artistic expression or information in three-dimensional form. Examples of such works include statues, carvings, ceramics, moldings, constructions, models, and maquettes; and

(2) Any two-dimensional or three-dimensional work that, if unpublished, has been fixed, or, if published, has been published only in or on jewelry, dolls, toys, games, except as provided in paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(3) of this section, or any three-dimensional useful article.

(B) In the following cases the requirements of paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(A) of this section for the deposit of identifying material shall not apply:

(1) Three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models;

(2) Works that have been fixed or published in or on a useful article that comprises one of the elements of the unit of publication of an educational or instructional kit which also includes a literary or audiovisual work, a sound recording, or any combination of such works;

(3) Published games consisting of multiple parts that are packaged and published in a box or similar container with flat sides and with dimensions of no more than 12x24x6 inches;

(4) Works reproduced on three-dimensional containers or holders such as boxes, cases, and cartons, where the container or holder can be readily opened out, unfolded, slit at the corners, or in some other way made adaptable for flat storage, and the copy, when flattened, does not exceed 96 inches in any dimension; or

(5) Any three-dimensional sculptural work that, if unpublished, has been fixed, or, if published, has been published only in the form of jewelry cast in base metal which does not exceed four inches in any dimension.

(xii) Soundtracks. For separate registration of an unpublished work that is fixed, or a published work that is published, only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture, the deposit of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations will suffice in lieu of an actual copy of the motion picture.

(xiii) Oversize deposits. In any case where the deposit otherwise required by this section exceeds 96 inches in any dimension, identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations must be submitted instead of an actual copy or copies.

(xiv) Pictorial advertising material. In the case of published pictorial advertising material, except for advertising material published in connection with motion pictures, the deposit of either one copy as published or prepublication material consisting of camera-ready copy is acceptable.

(xv) Contributions to collective works. In the case of published contributions to collective works, the deposit of either one complete copy of the best edition of the entire collective work, the complete section containing the contribution if published in a newspaper, the entire page containing the contribution, the contribution cut from the paper in which it appeared, or a photocopy of the contribution itself as it was published in the collective work, will suffice in lieu of two complete copies of the entire collective work.

(xvi) Phonorecords. In any case where the deposit phonorecord or phonorecords submitted for registration of a claim to copyright is inaudible on audio playback devices in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the Office will seek an appropriate deposit in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(xvii) Group registration of serials. For group registration of related serials, as specified in § 202.3(b)(6), the deposit must consist of one complete copy of the best edition of each issue included in the group registration. In addition, two complimentary subscriptions to any serial for which group registration is sought must be entered and maintained in the name of the Library of Congress, and the copies must be submitted regularly and promptly after publication.

(xviii) Architectural works. (A) For designs of unconstructed buildings, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of an architectural drawing or blueprint in visually perceptible form showing the overall form of the building and any interior arrangements of spaces and/or design elements in which copyright is claimed. For archival purposes, the Copyright Office prefers that the drawing submissions consist of the following in descending order of preference:

(1) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(2) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(3) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(4) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process).

The Copyright Office prefers that the deposit disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site, if known.

(B) For designs of constructed buildings, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of an architectural drawing or blueprint in visually perceptible form showing the overall form of the building and any interior arrangement of spaces and/or design elements in which copyright is claimed. In addition, the deposit must also include identifying material in the form of photographs complying with § 202.21 of these regulations, which clearly discloses the architectural works being registered. For archival purposes, the Copyright Office prefers that the drawing submissions constitute the most finished form of presentation drawings and consist of the following in descending order of preference:

(1) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(2) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(3) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(4) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process).

With respect to the accompanying photographs, the Copyright Office prefers 8 x 10 inches, good quality photographs, which clearly show several exterior and interior views. The Copyright Office prefers that the deposit disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site.

(xix) Works fixed in a CD-ROM format. (A) Where a work is fixed in a CD-ROM format, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of the entire CD-ROM package, including a complete copy of any accompanying operating software and instructional manual, and a printed version of the work embodied in the CD-ROM, if the work is fixed in print as well as a CD-ROM. A complete copy of a published CD-ROM package includes all of the elements comprising the applicable unit of publication, including elements that if considered separately would not be copyrightable subject matter or could be the subject of a separate registration.

(B) In any case where the work fixed in a CD-ROM package cannot be viewed on equipment available in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the Office will seek an appropriate deposit in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section, in addition to the deposit of the CD-ROM package.

(xx) Photographs: group registration. For groups of photographs registered with one application under § § 202.3(b)(3)(i)(B) (unpublished collections) or 202.3(b)(9) (group registration of published photographs), photographs must be deposited in one of the following formats (listed in the Library's order of preference):

(A) Digital form on one or more CD-ROMs (including CD-RW's) or DVD-ROMs, in one of the following formats: JPEG, GIF, TIFF, or PCD;

(B) Unmounted prints measuring at least 3 inches by 3 inches (not to exceed 20 inches by 24 inches);

(C) Contact sheets;

(D) Slides, each with a single image;

(E) A format in which the photograph has been published (e.g., clippings from newspapers or magazines);

(F) A photocopy of each of the photographs included in the group, clearly depicting the photograph, provided that if registration is made pursuant to § 202.3(b)(9) for group registration of photographs, the photocopy must be either a photocopy of an unmounted print measuring at least 3 inches by 3 inches (not to exceed 20 inches by 24 inches) or a photocopy of the photograph in a format in which it has been published, and if the photograph was published as a color photograph, the photocopy must be a color photocopy;

(G) Slides, each containing up to 36 images; or

(H) A videotape clearly depicting each photograph.

(d) Special relief. (1) In any case the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation:

(i) Permit the deposit of one copy or phonorecord, or alternative identifying material, in lieu of the one or two copies or phonorecords otherwise required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section;

(ii) Permit the deposit of incomplete copies or phonorecords, or copies or phonorecords other than those normally comprising the best edition; or

(iii) Permit the deposit of an actual copy or copies, in lieu of the identifying material otherwise required by this section; or

(iv) Permit the deposit of identifying material which does not comply with § 202.21 of these regulations.

(2) Any decision as to whether to grant such special relief, and the conditions under which special relief is to be granted, shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, and shall be based upon the acquisition policies of the Library of Congress then in force and the archival and examining requirements of the Copyright Office.

(3) Requests for special relief under this paragraph may be combined with requests for special relief under § 202.19(e) of these regulations. Whether so combined or made solely under this paragraph, such requests shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division of the Copyright Office, shall be signed by or on behalf of the person signing the application for registration, and shall set forth specific reasons why the request should be granted.

(4) The Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, terminate any ongoing or continuous grant of special relief. Notice of termination shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization to whom the grant of special relief had been given, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of termination may be given at any time, but it shall state a specific date of termination that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed. Termination shall not affect the validity of any deposit or registration made earlier under the grant of special relief.

(e) Use of copies and phonorecords deposited for the Library of Congress. Copies and phonorecords deposited for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17 and § 202.19 of these regulations may be used to satisfy the deposit provisions of this section if they are accompanied by an application for registration of claim to copyright in the work represented by the deposit, and either a registration fee or a deposit account number on the application.

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 6405, Feb. 24, 1986, as amended at 53 FR 29890, Aug. 9, 1988; 54 FR 13176, 13181, Mar. 31, 1989; 54 FR 21059, May 16, 1989; 55 FR 50557, Dec. 7, 1990; 56 FR 47403, Sept. 19, 1991; 56 FR 55632, Oct. 29, 1991; 56 FR 60065, Nov. 27, 1991; 56 FR 65191, Dec. 16, 1991; 57 FR 45310, Oct. 1, 1992; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35420, 35421, July 1, 1997; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 66 FR 37142, 37150, July 17, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 37142, 37150, July 17, 2001, added paragraph (c)(2)(xx), effective Aug. 16, 2001.]

§ 202.21 Deposit of identifying material instead of copies.

(a) General. Subject to the specific provisions of paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section, and to § § 202.19(e)(1)(iv) and 202.20(d)(1)(iv), in any case where the deposit of identifying material is permitted or required under § 202.19 or § 202.20 of these regulations for published or unpublished works, the material shall consist of photographic prints, transparencies, photostats, drawings, or similar two-dimensional reproductions or renderings of the work, in a form visually perceivable without the aid of a machine or device. In the case of pictorial or graphic works, such material should reproduce the actual colors employed in the work. In all other cases, such material may be in black and white or may consist of a reproduction of the actual colors.

(b) Completeness; number of sets. As many pieces of identifying material as are necessary to show the entire copyrightable content in the ordinary case, but in no case less than an adequate representation of such content, of the work for which deposit is being made, or for which registration is being sought shall be submitted. Except in cases falling under the provisions of § 202.19(d)(2)(iii) or § 202.20(c)(2)(iii) with respect to holograms, only one set of such complete identifying material is required.

(c) Size. Photographic transparencies must be at least 35mm in size and, if such transparencies are 3x3 inches or less, must be fixed in cardboard, plastic, or similar mounts to facilitate identification, handling, and storage. The Copyright Office prefers that transparencies larger than 3x3 inches be mounted in a way that facilitates their handling and preservation, and reserves the right to require such mounting in particular cases. All types of identifying material other than photographic transparencies must be not less than 3x3 inches and not more than 9x12 inches, but preferably 8x10 inches. Except in the case of transparencies, the image of the work must be either lifesize or larger, or if less than lifesize must be large enough to show clearly the entire copyrightable content of the work.

(d) Title and dimensions. At least one piece of identifying material must, on its front, back, or mount, indicate the title of the work; and the indication of an exact measurement of one or more dimensions of the work is preferred.

(e) Copyright notice. In the case of works published with notice of copyright, the notice and its position on the work must be clearly shown on at least one piece of identifying material. Where necessary because of the size or position of the notice, a separate drawing or similar reproduction shall be submitted. Such reproduction shall be no smaller than 33 inches and no larger than 912 inches, and shall show the exact appearance and content of the notice, and its specific position on the work.

(f) For separate registration of an unpublished work that is fixed, or a published work that is published, only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture, identifying material deposited in lieu of an actual copy of the motion picture shall consist of:

(1) A transcription of the entire work, or a reproduction of the entire work on a phonorecord; and

(2) Photographs or other reproductions from the motion picture showing the title of the motion picture, the soundtrack credits, and the copyright notice for the soundtrack, if any.

The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material deposited under this paragraph (f).

(g)(1) In the case of unpublished motion pictures (including transmission programs that have been fixed and transmitted to the public, but have not been published), identifying material deposited in lieu of an actual copy shall consist of either:

(i) An audio cassette or other phonorecord reproducing the entire soundtrack or other sound portion of the motion picture, and description of the motion picture; or

(ii) A set consisting of one frame enlargement or similar visual reproduction from each 10-minute segment of the motion picture, and a description of the motion picture.

(2) In either case the "description" may be a continuity, a pressbook, or a synopsis but in all cases it must include:

(i) The title or continuing title of the work, and the episode title, if any;

(ii) The nature and general content of the program;

(iii) The date when the work was first fixed and whether or not fixation was simultaneous with first transmission;

(iv) The date of first transmission, if any;

(v) The running time; and

(vi) The credits appearing on the work, if any.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material submitted under this paragraph (g).

(h) In the case where the deposit copy or copies of a motion picture cannot be viewed for examining purposes on equipment in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the "description" required by § 202.20(c)(2)(ii) of these regulations may be a continuity, a press-book, a synopsis, or a final shooting script but in all cases must be sufficient to indicate the copyrightable material in the work and include

(1) The continuing title of the work and the episode title, if any;

(2) The nature and general content of the program and of its dialogue or narration, if any;

(3) The running time; and

(4) All credits appearing on the work including the copyright notice, if any.

The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section do not apply to identifying material submitted under this paragraph (h).

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 6409, Feb. 24, 1986]

§ 202.22 Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs.

[PUBLISHER'S NOTE: 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000, purported to substitute "title" for "title;" in paragraph (c)(1). However, this could not be implemented as instructed, since "title;" does not exist in paragraph (c)(1). It is expected that the agency will issue a correction in the Federal Register.]

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the acquisition of copies of unpublished television transmission programs by the Library of Congress under section 407(e) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. It also prescribes rules pertaining to the use of such copies in the registration of claims to copyright, under section 408(b)(2).

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section:

(1) The terms copies, fixed, publication, and transmission program and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in section 101 of title 17. The term network station has the meaning given it in section 111(f) of title 17.

(2) Title 17 means Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(c) Off-the-air copying. (1) Library of Congress employees acting under the general authority of the Librarian of Congress may make a fixation of an unpublished television transmission program directly from a transmission to the public in the United States, in accordance with section 407(e)(1) and (4) of title 17 of the United States Code. The choice of programs selected for fixation shall be based on the Library of Congress acquisition policies in effect at the time of fixation. Specific notice of an intent to copy a transmission program off-the-air will ordinarily not be given. In general, the Library of Congress will seek to copy off-the-air a substantial portion of the programming transmitted by noncommercial educational broadcast stations as defined in section 397 of title 47 of the United States Code, and will copy off-the-air selected programming transmitted by commercial broadcast stations, both network and independent.

(2) Upon written request addressed to the Chief, Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division by a broadcast station or other owner of the right of transmission, the Library of Congress will inform the requestor whether a particular transmission program has been copied off-the-air by the Library.

(3) The Library of Congress will not knowingly copy off-the-air any unfixed or published television transmission program under the copying authority of section 407(e) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(4) The Library of Congress is entitled under this paragraph (c) to presume that a television program transmitted to the public in the United States by a noncommercial educational broadcast station as defined in section 397 of Title 47 of the United States Code has been fixed but not published.

(5) The presumption established by paragraph (c)(4) of this section may be overcome by written declaration and submission of appropriate documentary evidence to the Chief, Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division, either before or after off-the-air copying of the particular transmission program by the Library of Congress. Such written submission shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the transmission program in question;

(ii) A brief statement declaring either that the program was not fixed or that it was published at the time of transmission;

(iii) If it is declared that the program was published at the time of transmission, a brief statement of the facts of publication, including the date and place thereof, the method of publication, the name of the owner of the right of first publication, and whether the work was published in the United States with notice of copyright; and

(iv) The actual handwritten signature of an officer or other duly authorized agent of the organization which transmitted the program in question.

(6) A declaration that the program was unfixed at the time of transmission shall be accepted by the Library of Congress, unless the Library can cite evidence to the contrary, and the off-the-air copy will either be

(i) Erased; or

(ii) Retained, if requested by the owner of copyright or of any exclusive right, to satisfy the deposit provision of section 408 of Title 17 of the United States Code.

(7) If it is declared that the program was published at the time of transmission, the Library of Congress is entitled under this section to retain the copy to satisfy the deposit requirement of section 407(a) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(8) The Library of Congress in making fixations of unpublished transmission programs transmitted by commercial broadcast stations shall not do so without notifying the transmitting organization or its agent that such activity is taking place. In the case of network stations, the notification will be sent to the particular network. In the case of any other commercial broadcasting station, the notification will be sent to the particular broadcast station that has transmitted, or will transmit, the program. Such notice shall, if possible, be given by the Library of Congress prior to the time of broadcast. In every case, the Library of Congress shall transmit such notice no later than fourteen days after such fixation has occurred. Such notice shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the transmission program in question;

(ii) A brief statement asserting the Library of Congress' belief that the transmission program has been, or will be by the date of transmission, fixed and is unpublished, together with language converting the notice to a demand for deposit under section 407 (a) and (b) of title 17 of the United States Code, if the transmission program has been published in the United States.

(9) The notice required by paragraph (c)(8) of this section shall not cover more than one transmission program except that the notice may cover up to thirteen episodes of one title if such episodes are generally scheduled to be broadcast at the same time period on a regular basis, or may cover all the episodes comprising the title if they are scheduled to be broadcast within a period of not more than two months.

(d) Demands for deposit of a television transmission program. (1) The Register of Copyrights may make a written demand upon the owner of the right of transmission in the United States to deposit a copy of a specific transmission program for the benefit of the Library of Congress under the authority of section 407(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(2) The Register of Copyrights is entitled to presume, unless clear evidence to the contrary is proffered, that the transmitting organization is the owner of the United States transmission right.

(3) Notices of demand shall be in writing and shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the work in question;

(ii) An explanation of the optional forms of compliance, including transfer of ownership of a copy to the Library, lending a copy to the Library for reproduction, or selling a copy to the Library at a price not to exceed the cost of reproducing and supplying the copy;

(iii) A ninety-day deadline by which time either compliance or a request for an extension of a request to adjust the scope of the demand or the method for fulfilling it shall have been received by the Register of Copyrights;

(iv) A brief description of the controls which are placed on the copies' use;

(v) A statement concerning the Register's perception of the publication status of the program, together with language converting this demand to a demand for a deposit, under 17 U.S.C. 407 (a) and (c), if the recipient takes the position that the work is published; and

(vi) A statement that a compliance copy must be made and retained if the notice is received prior to transmission.

(4) With respect to paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section, the sale of a copy in compliance with a demand of this nature shall be at a price not to exceed the cost to the Library of reproducing and supplying the copy. The notice of demand should therefore inform the recipient of that cost and set that cost, plus reasonable shipping charges, as the maximum price for such a sale.

(5) Copies transferred, lent, or sold under paragraph (d) of this section shall be of sound physical condition as described in Appendix A to this section.

(6) Special relief. In the case of any demand made under paragraph (d) of this section the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation,

(i) Extend the time period provided in subparagraph (d)(3)(iii);

(ii) Make adjustments in the scope of the demand; or

(iii) Make adjustments in the method of fulfilling the demand. Any decision as to whether to allow such extension or adjustments shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and shall be made as reasonably warranted by the circumstances. Requests for special relief under paragraph (d) of this section shall be made in writing to the Copyright Acquisitions Division, shall be signed by or on behalf of the owner of the right of transmission in the United States and shall set forth the specific reasons why the request shall be granted.

(e) Disposition and use of copies. (1) All copies acquired under this section shall be maintained by the Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division of the Library of Congress. The Library may make one archival copy of a program which it has fixed under the provisions of section 407(e)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code and paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) All copies acquired or made under this section, except copies of transmission programs consisting of a regularly scheduled newscast or on-the-spot coverage of news events, shall be subject to the restrictions concerning copying and access found in Library of Congress Regulation 818-17, Policies Governing the Use and Availability of Motion Pictures and Other Audiovisual Works in the Collections of the Library of Congress, or its successors. Copies of transmission programs consisting of regularly scheduled newscasts or on-the-spot coverage of news events are subject to the provisions of the "American Television and Radio Archives Act" (section 170 of Title 2 of the United States Code) and such regulations as the Librarian of Congress shall prescribe.

(f) Registration of claims to copyright. (1) Copies fixed by the Library of Congress under the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section may be used as the deposit for copyright registration provided that:

(i) The application and fee, in a form acceptable for registration, is received by the Copyright Office not later than ninety days after transmission of the program, and

(ii) Correspondence received by the Copyright Office in the envelope containing the application and fee states that a fixation of the instant work was made by the Library of Congress and requests that the copy so fixed be used to satisfy the registration deposit provisions.

(2) Copies transferred, lent, or sold to the Library of Congress under the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section may be used as the deposit for copyright registration purposes only when the application and fee, in a form acceptable for registration, accompany, in the same container, the copy lent, transferred, or sold, and there is an explanation that the copy is intended to satisfy both the demand issued under section 407(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code and the registration deposit provisions.

(g) Agreements modifying the terms of this section. (1) The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement whereby the provision of copies of unpublished television transmission programs on terms different from those contained in this section is authorized.

(2) Any such agreement may be terminated without notice by the Library of Congress.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 37208, Aug. 17, 1983, as amended at 56 FR 7815, Feb. 26, 1991; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

(17 U.S.C. 407, 408, 702)

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000, amended paragraph (c)(1), effective Aug. 10, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (b)(2) and (c)(1), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 202.23 Full term retention of copyright deposits.

(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions under which a request for full term retention, under the control of the Copyright Office, of copyright deposits (copies, phonorecords, or identifying material) of published works may be made and granted or denied pursuant to section 704(e) of Title 17 of the United States Code. Only copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with registration of a claim to copyright under Title 17 of the United States Code are within the provisions of this section. Only the depositor or the copyright owner of record of the work identified by the copyright deposit, or a duly authorized agent of the depositor or copyright owner, may request full term retention. A fee for this service is fixed by this section pursuant to section 708(a)(11) of Title 17 of the United States Code.

(2) For purposes of this section, under the control of the Copyright Office shall mean within the confines of Copyright Office buildings and under the control of Copyright Office employees, including retention in a Federal records center, but does not include transfer to the Library of Congress collections.

(3) For purposes of this section, full term retention means retention for a period of 75 years from the date of publication of the work identified by the particular copyright deposit which is retained.

(4) For purposes of this section, copyright deposit or its plural means the copy, phonorecord, or identifying material submitted to the Copyright Office in connection with a published work that is subsequently registered and made part of the records of the Office.

(b) Form and content of request for full term retention -- (1) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons requesting full term retention of copyright deposits.

(2) Requests for full term retention must be made in writing addressed to the Chief, Information and Reference Division of the Copyright Office, and shall (i) be signed by or on behalf of the depositor or copyright owner of record, and (ii) clearly indicate that full term retention is desired.

(3) The request for full term retention must adequately identify the particular copyright deposit to be retained, preferably by including the title used in the registration application, the name of the depositor or copyright owner of record, the publication date, and, if registration was completed earlier, the registration number.

(c) Conditions under which requests will be granted or denied -- (1) General. A request that meets the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section will generally be granted if the copyright deposit for which full term retention is requested has been continuously in the custody of the Copyright Office and the Library of Congress has not, by the date of the request, selected the copyright deposit for its collections.

(2) Time of request. The request for full term retention of a particular copyright deposit may be made at the time of deposit or at any time thereafter; however, the request will be granted only if at least one copy, phonorecord, or set of identifying material is in the custody of the Copyright Office at the time of the request. Where the request is made concurrent with the initial deposit of the work for registration, the requestor must submit one copy or phonorecord more than the number specified in § 202.20 of for the particular work.

(3) One deposit retained. The Copyright Office will retain no more than one copy, phonorecord, or set of identifying material for a given registered work.

(4) Denial of request for full term retention. The Copyright Office reserves the right to deny the request for full term retention where:

(i) The excessive size, fragility, or weight of the deposit would, in the sole discretion of the Register of Copyrights, constitute an unreasonable storage burden. The request may nevertheless be granted if, within 60 calendar days of the original denial of the request, the requestor pays the reasonable administrative costs, as fixed in the particular case by the Register of Copyrights, of preparing acceptable identifying materials for retention in lieu of the actual copyright deposit;

(ii) The Library of Congress has selected for its collections the single copyright deposit, or both, if two copies or phonorecords were deposited; or

(iii) Retention would result in a health or safety hazard, in the sole judgment of the Register of Copyrights. The request may nevertheless be granted if, within 60 calendar days of the original denial of the request, the requestor pays the reasonable administrative costs, as fixed in the particular case by the Register of Copyrights of preparing acceptable identifying materials for retention in lieu of the actual copyright deposit.

(d) Form of copyright deposit. If full term retention is granted, the Copyright Office will retain under its control the particular copyright deposit used to make registration for the work. Any deposit made on or after September 19, 1978, shall satisfy the requirements of § § 202.20 and 202.21.

(e) Fee for full term retention. (1) Pursuant to section 708(a)(11) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has fixed the fee for full term retention, as prescribed in § 201.3(d), for each copyright deposit granted full term retention.

(2) A check or money order in the amount prescribed in § 201.3(d) payable to the Register of Copyrights, must be received in the Copyright Office within 60 calendar days from the date of mailing of the Copyright Office's notification to the requestor that full term retention has been granted for a particular copyright deposit.

(3) The Copyright Office will issue a receipt acknowledging payment of the fee and identifying the copyright deposit for which full term retention has been granted.

(f) Selection by Library of Congress -- (1) General. All published copyright deposits are available for selection by the Library of Congress until the Copyright Office has formally granted a request for full term retention. Unless the requestor has deposited the additional copy or phonorecord specified by paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the Copyright Office will not process a request for full term retention submitted concurrent with a copyright registration application and deposit, until the Library of Congress has had a reasonable amount of time to make its selection determination.

(2) A request for full term retention made at the time of deposit of a published work does not affect the right of the Library to select one or both of the copyright deposits.

(3) If one copyright deposit is selected, the second deposit, if any, will be used for full term retention.

(4) If both copyright deposits are selected, or, in the case where the single deposit made is selected, full term retention will be granted only if the additional copy or phonorecord specified by paragraph (c)(2) was deposited.

(g) Termination of full term storage. Full term storage will cease 75 years after the date of publication of the work identified by the copyright deposit retained, and the copyright deposit will be disposed of in accordance with section 704, paragraphs (b) through (d), of Title 17 of the United States Code.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 28822, Aug. 4, 1987; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 63 FR 29137, 29139, May 28, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999, amended paragraphs (e)(1) and (e)(2), effective July 1, 1999; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraphs (c) and (d), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39818, 39819, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (d), effective June 28, 2000.]

## APPENDIX A TO PART 202 -- TECHNICAL GUIDELINES REGARDING SOUND PHYSICAL CONDITION

To be considered a copy "of sound physical condition" within the meaning of 37 CFR 202.22(d)(5), a copy shall conform to all the technical guidelines set out in this Appendix.

A. Physical Condition. All portions of the copy that reproduce the transmission program must be:

1. Clean: Free from dirt, marks, spots, fungus, or other smudges, blotches, blemishes, or distortions;

2. Undamaged: Free from burns, blisters, tears, cuts, scratches, breaks, erasure, or other physical damage. The copies must also be free from:

(i) Any damage that interferes with performance from the tape or other reproduction, including physical damage resulting from earlier mechanical difficulties such as cassette jamming, breaks, tangles, or tape overflow; and

(ii) Any erasures, damage causing visual or audible defects or distortions or any material remaining from incomplete erasure of previously recorded works.

3. Unspliced: Free from splices in any part of the copy reproducing the transmission program, regardless of whether the splice involves the addition or deletion of material or is intended to repair a break or cut.

4. Undeteriorated: Free from any visual or aural deterioration resulting from aging or exposure to climatic, atmospheric, or other chemical or physical conditions, including heat, cold, humidity, electromagnetic fields, or radiation. The copy shall also be free from excessive brittleness or stretching, from any visible flaking of oxide from the tape base or other medium, and from other visible signs of physical deterioration or excessive wear.

B. Physical Appurtenances of Deposit Copy.

1. Physical Housing of Video Tape Copy. (a) In the case of video tape reproduced for reel-to-reel performance, the deposit copy shall consist of reels of uniform size and length. The length of the reels will depend on both the size of the tape and its running time (the last reel may be shorter). (b) In the case of video tape reproduced for cassette, cartridge, or similar performance, the tape drive mechanism shall be fully operable and free from any mechanical defects.

2. "Leader" or Equivalent. The copy, whether housed in reels, cassettes, or cartridges, shall have a leader segment both preceding the beginning and following the end of the recording.

C. Visual and Aural Quality of Copy:

1. Visual Quality. The copy should be equivalent to an evaluated first generation copy from an edited master tape and must reproduce a flawless and consistent electronic signal that meets industry standards for television screening.

2. Aural Quality. The sound channels or other portions must reproduce a flawless and consistent electronic signal without any audible defects.

**Legislative History**

[48 FR 37209, Aug. 17, 1983; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

(17 U.S.C. 407, 408, 702)

## APPENDIX B TO PART 202 -- "BEST EDITION" OF PUBLISHED COPYRIGHTED WORKS FOR THE COLLECTIONS OF THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

The copyright law (title 17, United States Code) requires that copies or phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office be of the "best edition" of the work. The law states that "The 'best edition' of a work is the edition, published in the United States at any time before the date of deposit, that the Library of Congress determines to be most suitable for its purposes." (For works first published only in a country other than the United States, the law requires the deposit of the best edition as first published.)

When two or more editions of the same version of a work have been published, the one of the highest quality is generally considered to be the best edition. In judging quality, the Library of Congress will adhere to the criteria set forth below in all but exceptional circumstances.

Where differences between editions represent variations in copyrightable content, each edition is a separate version and "best edition" standards based on such differences do not apply. Each such version is a separate work for the purpose of the copyright law.

The criteria to be applied in determining the best edition of each of several types of material are listed below in descending order of importance. In deciding between two editions, a criterion-by-criterion comparison should be made. The edition which first fails to satisfy a criterion is to be considered of inferior quality and will not be an acceptable deposit. Example: If a comparison is made between two hardbound editions of a book, one a trade edition printed on acid-free paper, and the other a specially bound edition printed on average paper, the former will be the best edition because the type of paper is a more important criterion than the binding.

Under regulations of the Copyright Office, potential depositors may request authorization to deposit copies or phonorecords of other than the best edition of a specific work (e.g., a microform rather than a printed edition of a serial), by requesting "special relief" from the deposit requirements. All requests for special relief should be in writing and should state the reason(s) why the applicant cannot send the required deposit and what the applicant wishes to submit instead of the required deposit.

I. Printed Textual Matter

A. Paper, Binding, and Packaging:

1. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper.

2. Hard cover rather than soft cover.

3. Library binding rather than commercial binding.

4. Trade edition rather than book club edition.

5. Sewn rather than glue-only binding.

6. Sewn or glued rather than stapled or spiral-bound.

7. Stapled rather than spiral-bound or plastic-bound.

8. Bound rather than looseleaf, except when future looseleaf insertions are to be issued. In the case of looseleaf materials, this includes the submission of all binders and indexes when they are part of the unit as published and offered for sale or distribution. Additionally, the regular and timely receipt of all appropriate looseleaf updates, supplements, and releases including supplemental binders issued to handle these expanded versions, is part of the requirement to properly maintain these publications.

9. Slip-cased rather than nonslip-cased.

10. With protective folders rather than without (for broadsides).

11. Rolled rather than folded (for broadsides).

12. With protective coatings rather than without (except broadsides, which should not be coated).

B. Rarity:

1. Special limited edition having the greatest number of special features.

2. Other limited edition rather than trade edition.

3. Special binding rather than trade binding.

C. Illustrations:

1. Illustrated rather than unillustrated.

2. Illustrations in color rather than black and white.

D. Special Features:

1. With thumb notches or index tabs rather than without.

2. With aids to use such as overlays and magnifiers rather than without.

E. Size:

1. Larger rather than smaller sizes. (Except that large-type editions for the partially-sighted are not required in place of editions employing type of more conventional size.)

II. Photographs

A. Size and finish, in descending order of preference:

1. The most widely distributed edition.

2. 8 x 10-inch glossy print.

3. Other size or finish.

B. Unmounted rather than mounted.

C. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper stock or printing process.

III. Motion Pictures

Film medium is considered a better quality than any other medium. The formats under "film" and "video formats" are listed in descending order of preference:

A. Film

1. Preprint material with special arrangement.

2. 35mm positive prints.

3. 16mm positive prints.

B. Video Formats

1. One-inch open reel tape

2. Betacam SP

3. D-2

4. Betacam

5. Videodisc

6. Three-quarter inch cassette

7. One-half inch VHS cassette

IV. Other Graphic Matter

A. Paper and Printing:

1. Archival quality rather than less-permanent paper.

2. Color rather than black and white.

B. Size and Content:

1. Larger rather than smaller size.

2. In the case of cartographic works, editions with the greatest amount of information rather than those with less detail.

C. Rarity:

1. The most widely distributed edition rather than one of limited distribution.

2. In the case of a work published only in a limited, numbered edition, one copy outside the numbered series but otherwise identical.

3. A photographic reproduction of the original, by special arrangement only.

D. Text and Other Materials:

1. Works with annotations, accompanying tabular or textual matter, or other interpretative aids rather than those without them.

E. Binding and Packaging:

1. Bound rather than unbound.

2. If editions have different binding, apply the criteria in I.A.2-I.A.7, above.

3. Rolled rather than folded.

4. With protective coatings rather than without.

V. Phonorecords

A. Compact digital disc rather than a vinyl disc.

B. Vinyl disc rather than tape.

C. With special enclosures rather than without.

D. Open-reel rather than cartridge.

E. Cartridge rather than cassette.

F. Quadraphonic rather than stereophonic.

G. True stereophonic rather than monaural.

H. Monaural rather than electronically rechanneled stereo.

VI. Musical Compositions

A. Fullness of Score:

1. Vocal music:

a. With orchestral accompaniment --

i. Full score and parts, if any, rather than conductor's score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to full score only.)

ii. Conductor's score and parts, if any, rather than condensed score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to conductor's score only.)

b. Unaccompanied: Open score (each part on separate staff) rather than closed score (all parts condensed to two staves).

2. Instrumental music:

a. Full score and parts, if any, rather than conductor's score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to full score only.)

b. Conductor's score and parts, if any, rather than condensed score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to conductor's score only.)

B. Printing and Paper:

1. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper.

C. Binding and Packaging:

1. Special limited editions rather than trade editions.

2. Bound rather than unbound.

3. If editions have different binding, apply the criteria in I.A.2-I.A.12, above.

4. With protective folders rather than without.

VII. Microforms

A. Related Materials:

1. With indexes, study guides, or other printed matter rather than without.

B. Permanence and Appearance:

1. Silver halide rather than any other emulsion.

2. Positive rather than negative.

3. Color rather than black and white.

C. Format (newspapers and newspaper-formatted serials):

1. Reel microfilm rather than any other microform.

D. Format (all other materials):

1. Microfiche rather than reel microfilm.

2. Reel microfilm rather than microform cassettes.

3. Microfilm cassettes rather than micro-opaque prints.

E. Size:

1. 35 mm rather than 16 mm.

VIII. Machine-Readable Copies

A. Computer Programs

1. With documents and other accompanying material rather than without.

2. Not copy-protected rather than copy-protected (if copy-protected then with a backup copy of the disk(s)).

3. Format:

a. PC-DOS or MS-DOS (or other IBM compatible formats, such as XENIX):

(i) 5 1/4 " Diskette(s).

(ii) 3 1/2 " Diskette(s).

(iii) Optical media, such as CD-ROM -- best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

b. Apple Macintosh:

(i) 3 1/2 " Diskette(s).

(ii) Optical media, such as CD-ROM -- best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

B. Computerized Information Works, Including Statistical Compendia, Serials, or Reference Works:

1. With documentation and other accompanying material rather than without.

2. With best edition of accompanying program rather than without.

3. Not copy-protected rather than copy-protected (if copy-protected then with a backup copy of the disk(s)).

4. Format

a. PC-DOS or MS-DOS (or other IBM compatible formats, such as XENIX):

(i) Optical media, such as CD-ROM -- best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

(ii) 5 1/4 " Diskette(s).

(iii) 3 1/2 " Diskette(s).

b. Apple Macintosh:

(i) Optical media, such as CD-ROM -- best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

(ii) 3 1/2 " Diskette(s).

IX. Works Existing in More Than One Medium

Editions are listed below in descending order of preference.

A. Newspapers, dissertations and theses, newspaper-formatted serials:

1. Microform.

2. Printed matter.

B. All other materials:

1. Printed matter.

2. Microform.

3. Phonorecord.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 42299, Oct. 16, 1989; 62 FR 51603, Oct. 2, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 51603, Oct. 2, 1997, revised paragraph III, effective Nov. 3, 1997.]

## PART 203 --FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT: POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

ORGANIZATION

### § 203.1 General.

This information is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of section 552 of title 5, United States Code, as amended.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, substituted "title" for "Title," effective June 28, 2001.]

### § 203.2 Authority and functions.

(a) The administration of the copyright law was entrusted to the Library of Congress by an act of Congress in 1870, and the Copyright Office has been a separate department of the Library since 1897. The statutory functions of the Copyright Office are contained in and carried out in accordance with the Copyright Act. Pub. L. 94-553 (90 Stat. 2541-2602), 17 U.S.C. 101-1101.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978; 62 FR 35420, 35421, July 1, 1997]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 62 FR 35420, 35421, July 1, 1997, substituted "17 U.S.C. 101-1101." for "17 U.S.C. 101-710." in paragraph (a), effective June 30, 1997.]

§ 203.3 Organization.

(a) In general. The Office of the Register exercises overall direction of the work of the Copyright Office, including work in conjunction with copyright legislation, litigation and promulgation of copyright regulations. The Office of the Register of Copyrights includes the legal, administrative, and automation staff.

(b) The Associate Register of Copyright for Operations has oversight of the operating divisions of the Copyright Office. The operating divisions are:

(1) The Receiving and Processing Division, which receives incoming materials, dispatches outgoing materials and establishes control over fiscal accounts.

(2) The Examining Division, which examines all applications and material presented to the Copyright Office for registration of original and renewal copyright claims, and which determines whether the material deposited constitutes copyrightable subject matter and whether the other legal and formal requirements of Title 17 have been met.

(3) The Cataloging Division, which prepares the bibliographic description of all copyrighted works registered in the Copyright Office, including the recording of legal facts of copyright pertaining to each work, in an on-line database in which copyright records can be searched; and which also examines and catalogs in an on-line database documents submitted for recordation.

(4) The Information and Reference Division, which provides a national copyright information service through the Public Information Office, educates the public on the copyright law, issues and distributes information materials, responds to reference requests regarding copyright matters, prepares search reports based upon copyright records, certifies copies of legal documents concerned with copyright, and maintains liaison with the United States Customs Service, the Department of the Treasury, and the United States Postal Service on certain matters. The Information and Reference Division also develops, services, stores, and preserves the official records and catalogs of the Copyright Office, including applications for registration, historical records, and materials deposited for copyright registration that are not selected by the Library of Congress for addition to its collections.

(5) The Licensing Division, which implements the sections of the Copyright Act dealing with secondary transmissions of radio and television programs, compulsory licenses for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical, pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works in connection with noncommercial broadcasting. The Licensing Division is in charge of collecting the statutory royalties and distributing these royalties based on either a voluntary agreement among the interested parties or a determination of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(c) The Copyright General Counsel is a principal legal officer of the Office. The General Counsel has overall supervisory responsibility for the legal staff and primary responsibility for providing liaison on legal matters between the Office and the Congress, the Department of Justice and other agencies of Government, the courts, the legal community, and a wide range of interests affected by the copyright law. The Copyright General Counsel has responsibility for overseeing all functions related to the administration of the compulsory licenses including oversight of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(d) The Associate Register of Copyrights for International Affairs and Policy is a principal legal adviser to the Register with primary responsibility for the international aspects of copyright protection, as well as legislative and policy matters.

(e) The Associate Register of Copyrights for National Programs is primarily responsible for initiating, planning, developing, and implementing projects and activities related to the Copyright Office electronic registration, recordations, and deposit system (CORDS).

(f) The Office has no field organization.

(g) The Office is located in The James Madison Memorial Building of the Library of Congress, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC. 20559-6000. The Public Information Office is located in Room LM-401. Its hours are 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m., Monday through Friday except legal holidays. The phone number of the Public Information Office is (202) 707-3000. Informational material regarding the copyright law, the registration process, fees, and related information about the Copyright Office and its functions may be obtained free of charge from the Public Information Office upon request.

(h) All Copyright Office forms may be obtained free of charge from the Public Information Office or by calling the Copyright Office Hotline anytime day or night at (202) 707-9100.

(i) The Copyright Office maintains an "electronic reading room" by making available certain documents and records on its World Wide Web page and by providing access to documents that affect the public in electronic format pursuant to 5 USC 552(a)(2). Copyright Office records in machine-readable form cataloged from January 1, 1978, to the present, including registration information and recorded documents, are available on the Internet. Frequently requested Copyright Office circulars, announcements, and recently proposed as well as final regulations are available on-line. The address for the Copyright Office's home page is: http://www.loc.gov/copyright; information may also be accessed by connecting to the Library of Congress' home page on the World Wide Web. The address is: http://www.loc.gov. Other Copyright Office documents may be provided on disk when so requested.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 36820, Aug. 24, 1982; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 55740, 55742, Oct. 28, 1997, as confirmed at 63 FR 1926, 1927, Jan. 13, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (a), effective June 28, 2001.]

PROCEDURES

§ 203.4 Methods of operation.

(a) In accordance with section 552(a)(2) of the Freedom of Information Act, the Copyright Office makes available for public inspection and copying records of copyright registrations and of final refusals to register claims to copyright; statements of policy and interpretations which have been adopted but are not published in the FEDERAL REGISTER; and administrative staff manuals and instructions to the staff that affect a member of the public.

(b) The Copyright Office also maintains and makes available for public inspection and copying current indexes providing identifying information as to matters issued, adopted, or promulgated after July 4, 1967, that are within the scope of 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). The Copyright Office has determined that publication of these indexes is unnecessary and impractical. Copies of the indexes will be provided to any member of the public upon request at the cost of reproduction.

(c) The material and indexes referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section are available for public inspection and copying at the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office, Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building of the Library of Congress, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC, between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m., Monday through Friday, except legal holidays.

(d) The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist is responsible for responding to all initial requests submitted under the Freedom of Information Act. Individuals desiring to obtain access to Copyright Office information under the Act should make a written request to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information and Publications Section, Information and Reference Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559-6000, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC. If a request is made by mail, both the request and the envelope containing it should be plainly marked Freedom of Information Act Request. Failure to so mark a mailed request may delay the Office response.

(e) Records must be reasonably described. A request reasonably describes records if it enables the Office to identify the records requested by any process that is not unreasonably burdensome or disruptive of Office operations. The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist will, upon request, aid members of the public to formulate their requests in such a manner as to enable the Office to respond effectively and reduce search costs for the requester.

(f) The Office will respond to all properly marked mailed requests and all personally delivered written requests for records within twenty (20) working days of receipt by the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist. Inquiries should be mailed to: Copyright Office, GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400 Southwest Station, Washington, D.C. 20024. If hand delivered, materials should go to: Copyright Public Information Office, LM 401, James Madison Memorial Building, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC. Office hours are from 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, excluding holidays. If it is determined that an extension of time greater than ten (10) working days is necessary to respond to a request due to unusual circumstances, as defined in paragraph (i) of this section, the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist shall so notify the requester and give the requester the opportunity to:

(1) Limit the scope of the request so that it may be processed within twenty (20) working days, or

(2) Arrange with the Office an alternative time frame for processing the request or a modified request. If a request is denied, the written notification will include the basis for the denial, names of all individuals who participated in the determination, and procedures available to appeal the determination. If a requester wishes to appeal a denial of some or all of his or her request for information, he or she must make an appeal in writing within 30 calendar days of the date of the Office's denial. The request should be directed to the General Counsel of the United States Copyright Office at: Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024. The appeal should be clearly labeled "Freedom of Information Act Appeal".

(g) The appeal shall include a statement explaining the basis for the appeal. Determinations of appeals will be set forth in writing and signed by the General Counsel or his or her delegate within 20 working days. If, on appeal, the denial is in whole or in part upheld, the written determination will include the basis for the appeal denial and will also contain a notification of the provisions for judicial review and the names of the persons who participated in the determination.

(h) In unusual circumstances, the General Counsel may extend the time limits prescribed in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section for not more than 10 working days. The extension period may be split between the initial request and the appeal but the total period of extension shall not exceed 10 working days. Extensions will be by written notice to the person making the request. The Copyright Office will advise the requester of the reasons for the extension and the date the determination is expected. As used in this paragraph "unusual circumstances" means:

(1) The need to search for and collect the requested records from establishments that are physically separate from the office processing the request;

(2) The need to search for, collect, and examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records which are demanded in a single request; or

(3) The need for consultation, which shall be conducted with all practical speed, with another agency having a substantial interest in the determination of the request or among two or more components of the Copyright Office which have a substantial subject matter interest therein.

(i) The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist will consider requests for expedited processing of requests in cases where the requester demonstrates a compelling need for such processing. The term "compelling need" means:

(1) That a failure to obtain requested records on an expedited basis could reasonably be expected to pose an imminent threat to the life or physical safety of an individual; or

(2) With respect to a request made by a person primarily engaged in disseminating information, urgency to inform the public concerning actual or alleged Federal Government activity. Requesters for expedited processing must include in their requests a statement setting forth the basis for the claim that a "compelling need" exists for the requested information, certified by the requester to be true and correct to the best of his or her knowledge and belief. The Office will determine whether to grant a request for expedited processing and will notify the requester of such determination within ten (10) days of receipt of the request. If a request for expedited processing is approved, documents responsive to the request will be processed as soon as is practicable. Denials of requests for expedited processing may be appealed to the Office of the General Counsel.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36820, Aug. 24, 1982; 62 FR 55740, 55742, Oct. 28, 1997, as confirmed and amended at 63 FR 1926, 1927, Jan. 13, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraph (d), effective June 28, 2001.]

AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION

§ 203.5 Inspection and copying.

(a) When a request for information has been approved, the person making the request may make an appointment to inspect or copy the materials requested during regular business hours by writing or telephoning the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist at the address or telephone number listed in § 203.4(d). Such material may be copied manually without charge, and reasonable facilities are available in the Public Information Office for that purpose. Also, copies of individual pages of such materials will be made available at the price per page specified in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 203.6.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978]

CHARGES FOR SEARCH FOR REPRODUCTION

§ 203.6 Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered.

(a) General. The fee schedule of this section does not apply with respect to the charging of fees for those records for which the Copyright Act of 1976, Title 17 of the United States Code (Pub. L. 94-553) requires a fee to be charged. The fees required to be charged are contained in § 201.3 of this chapter, or have been established by the Register of Copyrights or Library of Congress pursuant to the requirements of that section. If the Copyright Office receives a request for copies or other services involving the public records or indexes of the Office or for copies of deposited articles for which a fee is required to be charged, the Office will notify the requester of the procedure established to

obtain the copies or services and the amount of the chargeable fees. Fees pursuant to Title 5 U.S.C., section 552 for all other services not involving the public records of the Copyright Office will be assessed according to the schedule in paragraph (b) of this section. All fees so assessed shall be charged to the requester, except where the charge is limited under paragraph (c) of this section or where a waiver or reduction of fees is granted under paragraph (d) of this section. Requests by record subjects asking for copies of records about themselves shall be processed under the Privacy Act fee schedule found in 37 CFR 204.6.

(b) FOIA requests. In responding to requests under this part the following fees shall be assessed, unless a waiver or reduction in fees has been granted pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section:

(1) For copies of certificates of copyright registration, $ 25.

(2) For copies of all other Copyright Office records not otherwise provided for in this section a minimum fee of $ 15.00 for up to 15 pages and $ .50 per page over 15.

(3) For each hour or fraction of an hour spent in searching for a requested record, $ 65, except that no search fee shall be assessed with respect to requests by educational institutions, non-commercial scientific institutions, and representatives of the news media. Search fees shall be assessed with respect to all other requests, subject to the limitations of paragraph (c) of this section. Fees may be assessed for time spent searching even if the search fails to locate any responsive records or where the records located are subsequently determined to be entirely exempt from disclosure.

(4) For the issuance of any certification, $ 65 for each hour or fraction of an hour consumed in respect thereto.

(5) Other costs incurred by the Copyright Office in fulfilling a request will be chargeable at the actual cost of the Office.

(6) For computer searches of records, which may be undertaken through the use of existing programing, the actual direct costs of conducting the search including the cost of operating a central processing unit for that portion of operating time that is directly attributable to searching for records responsive to a request, as well as the direct costs of operator/programmer salary apportionable to search (at no less than $ 65 per hour or fraction thereof).

(7) No review fees will be charged for time spent in resolving legal or policy issues affecting access to Office records. No charge will be made for the time involved in examining records to determine whether some or all such records may be withheld.

(c) Fee limitations. The following limitations on fees shall apply:

(1) Except for requesters seeking records for commercial use the following will be provided without charge --

(i) The first 100 pages of duplication (or its cost equivalent), and

(ii) The first two hours of search (or its cost equivalent).

(2) No fees will be charged for ordinary packaging and mailing costs.

(d) Waiver or reduction of fees. (1) Records responsive to a request under 5 U.S.C. 552 shall be furnished without charge or at a charge reduced below that established under paragraph (b) of this section where the Office determines, based upon information provided by a requester in support of a fee waiver request or otherwise made known to the Office, that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government and is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. Requests for a waiver or reduction of fees shall be considered on a case-by-case basis.

(2) In order to determine whether the first fee waiver requirement is met -- i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government -- the Office shall consider the following four factors in sequence:

(i) The subject of the request: Whether the subject of the requested records concerns "the operations or activities of the government."

(ii) The informative value of the information to be disclosed: Whether the disclosure is "likely to contribute" to an understanding of government operations or activities.

(iii) The contribution to an understanding of the subject by the public likely to result from disclosures: Whether disclosure of the requested information will contribute to "public understanding."

(iv) The significance of the contribution to public understanding: Whether the disclosure is likely to contribute "significantly" to public understanding of government operations or activities.

(3) In order to determine whether the second fee waiver requirement is met -- i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester -- the Office shall consider the following two factors in sequence:

(i) The existence and magnitude of a commercial interest: Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure.

(ii) The primary interest in disclosure: Whether the magnitude of the identified commercial interest of the requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is "primarily in the commercial interest of the requester."

(4) Where only a portion of the requested records satisfies both of the requirements for a waiver or reduction of fees under this paragraph, a waiver or reduction shall be granted only as to that portion.

(e) Notice of anticipated fees in excess of $ 25.00. Where the Office determines or estimates that the fees to be assessed under this section may amount to more than $ 25.00, the Office shall notify the requester as soon as practicable of the actual or estimated amount of the fees, unless the requester has indicated in advance his willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. (If only a portion of the fee can be estimated readily, the Office shall advise the requester that the estimated fee may be only a portion of the total fee.) In cases where a requester has been notified that actual or estimated fees may amount to more than $ 25.00, the requests will be deemed not to have been received until the requester has agreed to pay the anticipated total fee. A notice to a requester pursuant to this paragraph shall offer him the opportunity to confer with Copyright Office personnel in order to reformulate his request to meet his needs at a lower cost.

(f) Aggregation of requests. Where the Office reasonably believes that a requester or a group of requesters acting in concert is attempting to divide a request into a series of requests for the purpose of evading the assessment of fees, the Office may aggregate any such requests and charge accordingly.

(g) Advance payments. (1) Where the Office estimates that a total fee to be assessed under this section is likely to exceed $ 250.00, it may require the requester to make an advance payment of an amount up to the entire estimated fee before beginning to process the request, except where it receives a satisfactory assurance of full payment from a requester with a history of prompt payment.

(2) Where a requester has previously failed to pay a records access fee within 30 days of the date of billing, the Office may require the requester to pay the full amount owed, plus any applicable interest (as provided for in paragraph (h) of this section), and to make an advance payment of the full amount of any estimated fee before the Office begins to process a new request or continues to process a pending request from that requester.

(3) For requests other than those described in paragraphs (g)(1) and (g)(2) of this section, the Office shall not require the requester to make an advance payment, i.e., a payment made before work is commenced or continued on a request. Payment owed for work already completed is not an advance payment.

(h) Charging interest. The Office may assess interest charges on an unpaid bill starting on the 31st day following the day on which the bill was sent to the requester. Once a fee payment has been received by a component of the Office, even if

not processed, the accrual of interest shall be stayed. Interest charges shall be assessed at the rate prescribed in section 3717 of title 31 U.S.C. and shall accrue from the date of billing.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 8456, March 15, 1988, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 62 FR 55740, 55742, Oct. 28, 1997, as confirmed at 63 FR 1926, 1927, Jan. 13, 1998; 63 FR 29137, 29139, May 28, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (a) and (h), effective June 28, 2001.]

## PART 204 --PRIVACY ACT: POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

### § 204.1 Purposes and scope.

The purposes of these regulations are:

(a) The establishment of procedures by which an individual can determine if the Copyright Office maintains a system of records in which there is a record pertaining to the individual; and

(b) The establishment of procedures by which an individual may gain access to a record or information maintained on that individual and have such record or information disclosed for the purpose of review, copying, correction, or amendment.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978]

### § 204.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) The term individual means a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence;

(b) The term maintain includes maintain, collect, use, or disseminate;

(c) The term record means any item, collection, or grouping of information about an individual that is maintained by an agency, including, but not limited to, his education, financial transactions, medical history, and criminal or employment history, and that contains his or her name, or the identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, such as a finger or voice print or a photograph;

(d) The term system of records means a group of any records under the control of any agency from which information is retrieved by the name of the individual; and

(e) The term routine use means, with respect to the disclosure of a record, the use of such record for a purpose which is compatible with the purpose for which it was collected.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978]

§ 204.3 General policy.

The Copyright Office serves primarily as an office of public record. Section 705 of Title 17, United States Code, requires the Copyright Office to open for public inspection all records of copyright deposits, registrations, recordations, and other actions taken under Title 17. Therefore, a routine use of all Copyright Office systems of records created under section 705 of Title 17 is disclosure to the public. All Copyright Office systems of records created under section 705 of Title 17 are also available for public copying as required by section 706(a), with the exception of copyright deposits, whose reproduction is governed by section 706(b) and the regulations issued under that section. In addition to the records mandated by section 705 of Title 17, the Copyright Office maintains other systems of records which are necessary for the Office effectively to carry out its mission. These systems of records are routinely consulted and otherwise used by Copyright Office employees in the performance of their duties. The Copyright Office will not sell, rent, or otherwise make publicly available any mailing list prepared by the Office.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982]

§ 204.4 Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals.

(a) The Copyright Office will publish in the Federal Register, upon the establishment or revision of the system of records, notices of all Copyright Office systems of records subject to the Privacy Act, as provided by 5 U.S.C., section 552a(e)(4). Individuals desiring to know if a Copyright Office system of records contains a record pertaining to them should submit a written request to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC.

(b) The written request should identify clearly the system of records which is the subject of inquiry, by reference, whenever possible, to the system number and title as given in the notices of systems of records in the Federal Register. Both the written request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked "Privacy Act Request." Failure to so mark the request may delay the Office response.

(c) The Office will acknowledge all properly marked requests made by individuals wishing to gain access to view or copy their records or any information pertaining to the individual, within a reasonable time. The Office will acknowledge in writing an individual's request to amend a record pertaining to him or her within ten business days.

(d) Since all Copyright Office Records created under section 705 of Title 17 are open to public inspection, no identity verification is necessary for individuals who wish to know whether a system of records created under section 705 pertains to them.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 50 FR 697, Aug. 14, 1985; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraphs (a) and (c), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 204.5 Procedures for requesting access to records.

(a) Individuals desiring to obtain access to Copyright Office information pertaining to them in a system of records other than those created under section 705 of Title 17 should make a written request, signed by themselves or their duly authorized agent, to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC.

(b) The written request should identify clearly the system of records which is the subject of inquiry, by reference, whenever possible, to the system number and title as given in the notices of systems of records in the Federal Register. Both the written request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked "Privacy Act Request." Failure to so mark the request may delay the Office response.

(c) The Office will acknowledge all properly marked requests within 20 working days of receipt; and will notify the requester within 30 working days of receipt when and where access to the record will be granted. If the individual requested a copy of the record, the copy will accompany such notification.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraphs (a) and (c), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 204.6 Fees.

(a) The Copyright Office will provide, free of charge, one copy to an individual of any record pertaining to that individual contained in a Copyright Office system of records, except where the request is for a copy of a record for which a specific fee is required and identified in § 201.3 of this chapter, in which case that fee shall be charged. For additional copies of records not covered by section 708 the fee will be a minimum of $ 15.00 for up to 15 pages and $ .50 per page over 15. The Office will require prepayment of fees estimated to exceed $ 25.00 and will remit any excess paid or bill an additional amount according to the differences between the final fee charged and the amount prepaid. When prepayment is required, a request is not deemed "received" until prepayment has been made.

(b) The Copyright Office may waive the fee requirement whenever it determines that such waiver would be in the public interest.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 56 FR 59886, Nov. 26, 1991; 63 FR 29137, 29139, May 28, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999, substituted "and identified in § 201.3 of this chapter" for "under section 708 of title 17 of the United States Code" in paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 204.7 Request for correction or amendment of records.

(a) Any individual may request the correction or amendment of a record pertaining to her or him. With respect to an error in a copyright registration, the procedure for correction and fee chargeable is governed by section 408(d) of Title 17 of the United States Code, and the regulations issued as authorized by that section. With respect to an error in any other record, the request shall be in writing and delivered either by mail addressed to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays, at Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC The request shall explain why the individual believes the record to be incomplete, inaccurate, irrelevant, or untimely.

(b) With respect to an error in a copyright registration, the time limit for Office response to requests for correction is governed by section 408(d) of Pub. L. 94-553, and the regulations issued as authorized by that section. With respect to other requests for correction or amendment of records, the Office will respond within ten working days indicating to the requester that the requested correction or amendment has been made or that it has been refused. If the requested correction or amendment is refused, the Office response will indicate the reason for the refusal and the procedure available to the individual to appeal the refusal.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (a), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 204.8 Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual's record.

(a) An individual who disagrees with a refusal of the Copyright Office to amend his or her record may request a review of the denial. The decision will be made within 30 business days, unless the Office can demonstrate good cause for extending the 30 day period. If the requestor is dissatisfied with the agency's final determination, the individual may bring a civil action against the Office in the appropriate United States district court appeal the refusal to correct or amend a record pertaining to the individual. The individual should submit a written appeal to the General Counsel, Copyright Office, Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024. Appeals, and the envelopes containing them, should be plainly marked "Privacy Act Appeal." Failure to so mark the appeal may delay the Copyright Office General Counsel's response. An appeal should contain a copy of the request for amendment or correction and a copy of the record alleged to be untimely, inaccurate, incomplete or irrelevant.

(b) The General Counsel will issue a written decision granting or denying the appeal within 30 working days after receipt of the appeal unless, after showing good cause, the General Counsel extends the 30 day period. If the appeal is granted, the requested amendment or correction will be made promptly. If the appeal is denied, in whole or part, the General Counsel's decision will set forth reasons for the denial. Additionally, the decision will advise the requester that he or she has the right to file with the Copyright Office a concise statement of his or her reasons for disagreeing with the refusal to amend the record and that such statement will be attached to the requester's record and included in any future disclosure of such record.

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000; 65 FR 48913, 48914, Aug. 10, 2000, revised the first sentence in paragraph (a), effective Aug. 10, 2000; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, amended paragraphs (a) and (b), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 204.9 Judicial review.

Within two years of the receipt of a final adverse administrative determination, an individual may seek judicial review of that determination as provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1).

**Legislative History**

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978]

## PART 205 --PRODUCTION OF LEGAL DOCUMENTS AND OFFICIAL TESTIMONY

§ 205.1 Complaints served on the Register of Copyrights pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 411(a).

When an action has been instituted pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 411(a) for infringement of the copyright of a work for which registration has been refused, notice of the institution of the action and a copy of the complaint must be served on the Register of Copyrights by delivering such documents by first class mail to the General Counsel of the Copyright Office, GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, D.C. 20024, or delivery by hand to the General Counsel of the Copyright Office, James Madison Memorial Building, Room LM-403, First and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, D.C. A second copy should be delivered by first class mail to the United States Department of Justice, directed to the Director of Intellectual Property Staff, Commercial Litigation Branch, Civil Division, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530.

**Legislative History**

[66 FR 19094, Apr. 13, 2001; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 19094, Apr. 13, 2001, added Part 205, effective May 14, 2001; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, substituted "Copyrights" for "Copyright" in the section heading, effective June 28, 2001.]

## PART 211 --MASK WORK PROTECTION

§ 211.1 General provisions.

(a) Mail and other communications with the Copyright Office concerning the Semiconductor Chip Protection Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98-620, chapter 9 of Title 17 U.S.C., shall be addressed to: Library of Congress, Department MW, Washington, DC 20540.

(b) Section 201.2 of this chapter relating to the information given by the Copyright Office, and parts 203 and 204 of this chapter pertaining to the Freedom of Information Act and Privacy Act, shall apply, where appropriate, to the administration by the Copyright Office of the Semiconductor Chip Protection Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98-620.

(c) For purposes of this part, the terms semiconductor chip product, mask work, fixed, commercially exploited, and owner, shall have the meanings set forth in section 901 of Title 17 U.S.C.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985]

§ 211.2 Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works.

The conditions prescribed in § 201.4 of this chapter for recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to copyright are applicable to the recordation of documents pertaining to mask works under section 903 of title 17 U.S.C.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, substituted "title" for "Title," effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 211.3 Mask work fees.

(a) Section 201.3 of this chapter prescribes the fees or charges established by the Register of Copyrights for services relating to mask works.

(b) Section 201.6 of this chapter on the payment and refund of Copyright Office fees shall apply to mask work fees.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 56 FR 59886, Nov. 26, 1991; 59 FR 38372, July 28, 1994; 63 FR 29137, 29139, May 28, 1998; 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 29518, 29522, June 1, 1999, revised paragraph (a), effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 211.4 Registration of claims of protection in mask works.

(a) General. This section prescribes conditions for the registration of claims of protection in mask works pursuant to section 908 of title 17 U.S.C.

(b) Application for registration. (1) For purposes of registration of mask work claims, the Register of Copyrights has designated "Form MW" to be used for all applications submitted on and after January 7, 1985. Copies of the form are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, U.S. Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20559. Applications submitted before January 7, 1985 will be dated January 7, 1985.

(2) An application for registration of a mask work claim may be submitted by the owner of the mask work, or the duly authorized agent of any such owner.

(i) The owner of a mask work includes a party that has obtained the transfer of all of the exclusive rights in the work, but does not include the transferee of less than all of the exclusive rights, or the licensee of all or less than all of these rights.

(ii) For purposes of eligibility to claim mask work protection pursuant to section 902(a)(1)(A) of 17 U.S.C., the owner of the mask work must be either the initial owner or a person who has obtained by transfer the totality of rights in the mask work under the Act.

(3) An application for registration shall be submitted on Form MW prescribed by the Register under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and shall be accompanied by the registration fee and deposit required under 17 U.S.C. 908 and § § 211.3 and 211.5 of these regulations. The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(i) A declaration that the applicant is authorized to submit the application and that the statements made are correct to the best of that person's knowledge; and

(ii) The handwritten signature of the applicant, accompanied by the typed or printed name of that person.

(c) One registration per mask work. (1) Subject to the exception specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, only one registration can generally be made for the same version of a mask work fixed in an intermediate or final form of any semiconductor chip product. However, where an applicant for registration alleges that an earlier registration for the same version of the work is unauthorized and legally invalid and submits for recordation a signed affidavit, a registration may be made in the applicant's name.

(2) Notwithstanding the general rule permitting only one registration per work, owners of mask works in final forms of semiconductor chip products that are produced by adding metal-connection layers to unpersonalized gate arrays may separately register the entire unpersonalized gate array and the custom metallization layers. Applicants seeking to register separately entire unpersonalized gate arrays or custom metallization layers should make the nature of their claim clear at Space 8 of application Form MW. For these purposes, an "unpersonalized gate array" is an intermediate form chip product that includes a plurality of circuit elements that are adaptable to be personalized into a plurality of different final form chip products, in which some of the circuit elements are, or will be, connected as gates.

(d) Registration as a single work. Subject to the exception specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, for purposes of registration on a single application and upon payment of a single fee, the following shall be considered a single work.

(1) In the case of a mask work that has not been commercially exploited: All original mask work elements fixed in a particular form of a semiconductor chip product at the time an application for registration is filed and in which the owner or owners of the mask work is or are the same; and

(2) In the case of a mask work that has been commercially exploited. All original mask work elements fixed in a semiconductor chip product at the time that product was first commercially exploited and in which the owner or owners of the mask is or are the same.

(e) Registration in most complete form. Owners seeking registration of a mask work contribution must submit the entire original mask work contribution in its most complete form as fixed in a semiconductor chip product. The most complete form means the stage of the manufacturing process which is closest to completion. In cases where the owner is unable to register on the basis of the most complete form because he or she lacks control over the most complete form, an averment of this fact must be made at Space 2 of Form MW. Where such an averment is made, the owner may register on the basis of the most complete form in his or her possession. For applicants seeking to register an unpersonalized gate array or custom metallization layers under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the most complete form is the entire chip on which the unpersonalized gate array or custom metallization layers reside(s), and registration covers those elements of the chip in which work protection is asserted.

(f) Corrections and amplifications of prior registration. Except for errors or omissions made by the Copyright Office, no corrections or amplifications can be made to the information contained in the record of a completed registration after the effective date of the registration. A document purporting to correct or amplify the information in a completed registration may be recorded in the Copyright Office for whatever effect a court of competent jurisdiction may later give to it, if the document is signed by the owner of the mask work, as identified in the registration record, or by a duly authorized agent of the owner.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 56 FR 7818, Feb. 26, 1991; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999; 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34372, 34373, June 28, 2001, substituted "title" for "Title" in paragraph (a), removed paragraph (f), and redesignated paragraph (g) as paragraph (f), effective June 28, 2001.]

§ 211.5 Deposit of identifying material.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of identifying material for registration of a claim of protection in a mask work under section 908 of title 17 U.S.C.

(b) Nature of required deposit. Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section, the deposit of identifying material to accompany an application for registration of a mask work claim under § 211.4 of these regulations shall consist of:

(1) In the case of a commercially exploited mask work, four reproductions of the mask work fixed in the form of the semiconductor chip product in which it was first commercially exploited. Defective chips may be deposited under this section provided that the mask work contribution would be revealed in reverse dissection of the chips. The four reproductions shall be accompanied by a visually perceptible representation of each layer of the mask work consisting of:

(i) Sets of plastic color overlay sheets;

(ii) Drawings or plots in composite form on a single sheet or on separate sheets; or

(iii) A photograph of each layer of the work fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

The visually perceptible representation of a mask work deposited under this section shall be reproduced on material which can be readily stored in an 8 1/2 x 11 inch format, and shall be reproduced at a magnification sufficient to reveal the basic circuitry design of the mask work and which shall in all cases be at least 20 times magnification.

(2) In the case of a mask work that has not been commercially exploited, one of the following:

(i) Where the mask work contribution in which registration is sought represents twenty percent or more of the area of the intended final form, a visually perceptible representation of the work in accordance with paragraph (b)(1)(i) or (ii) of this section. In addition to the deposit of visually perceptible representations of the work, an applicant may, at his or her option, deposit four reproductions in the most complete form of the mask work as fixed in a semiconductor product.

(ii) Where the mask work contribution in which registration is sought represents less than twenty percent of the area of the intended final form, a visually perceptible representation of the work which reveals the totality of the mask work contribution to a person trained in the state of the art. The visually perceptible representations may consist of any combination of plastic color overlay sheets, drawing or plots in composite form, or a photograph or photographs of the entire mask set. If the visually perceptible representation fails to identify all of the elements of the mask work contribution, they may be accompanied by additional explanatory material. The visually perceptible representation of a

mask work deposited under this section shall be reproduced on material which can be readily stored in an 8 1/2 x 11 inch format and shall be of sufficient magnification and completeness to reveal all elements of the mask work contribution. In addition to the deposit of visually perceptible representations of the work, an applicant may, at his or her option, deposit four reproductions in the most complete form of the mask work as fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

(c) Trade secret protection. Where specific layers of a mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product contain information in which trade secret protection is asserted, certain material may be withheld as follows:

(1) Mask works commercially exploited. For commercially exploited mask works no more than two layers of each five or more layers in the work. In lieu of the visually perceptible representations required under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, identifying portions of the withheld material must be submitted. For these purposes, identifying portions shall mean (i) a printout of the mask work design data pertaining to each withheld layer, reproduced in microform, or (ii) visually perceptible representations in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) (i), (ii), or (iii) of this section with those portions containing sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy blocked out, provided that the portions remaining are greater than those which are blocked out.

(2) Mask work not commercially exploited. For mask works not commercially exploited falling under paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, any layer may be withheld. In lieu of the visually perceptible representations required under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, "identifying portions" shall mean (i) a printout of the mask work design data pertaining to each withheld layer, reproduced in microform, in which sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy has been blocked out or stripped, or (ii) visually perceptible representations in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section with those portions containing sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy blocked out, provided that the portions remaining are greater than those which are blocked out. The identifying portions shall be accompanied by a single photograph of the top or other visible layers of the mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product in which the sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy has been blocked out, provided that the blocked out portions do not exceed the remaining portions.

(d) Special relief. The Register of Copyrights may decide to grant special relief from the deposit requirements of this section, and shall determine the conditions under which special relief is to be granted., Requests for special relief under this paragraph shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division of the Copyright Office, Washington, DC 20559-6000, shall be signed by the person signing the application for registration, shall set forth specific reasons why the request should be granted and shall propose an alternative form of deposit.

(e) Retention and disposition of deposits. (1) Any identifying material deposited under this section, including material deposited in connection with claims that have been refused registration, are the property of the United States Government.

(2) Where a claim of protection in a mask work is registered in the Copyright Office, the identifying material deposited in connection with the claim shall be retained under the control of the Copyright Office, including retention in Government storage facilities, during the period of protection. After that period, it is within the joint discretion of the Register of Copyrights and the Librarian of Congress to order its destruction or other disposition.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraphs (c)(2) and (d), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 211.6 Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice.

(a) General. (1) This section specifies methods of affixation and placement of the mask work notice that will satisfy the notice requirement in section 909 of title 17 U.S.C. A notice deemed "acceptable" under this regulation shall be considered to satisfy the requirement of that section that it be affixed "in such manner and location as to give reasonable notice" of protection. As provided in that section, the examples specified in this regulation shall not be considered exhaustive of the methods of affixation and positions giving reasonable notice of the claim of protection in a mask work.

(2) The acceptability of a mask work notice under these regulations shall depend upon its being legible under normal conditions of use, and affixed in such manner and position that, when affixed, it may be viewed upon reasonable examination.

(b) Elements of mask work notice. The elements of a mask work notice shall consist of:

(1) The words mask work, the symbol "M" or the symbol [the letter M in a circle]; and

(2) The name of the owner or owners of the mask work or an abbreviation by which the name is recognized or is generally known.

(c) Methods of affixation and placement of the notice. In the case of a mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product, the following locations are acceptable:

(1) A gummed or other label securely affixed or imprinted upon the package or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the product; or

(2) A notice imprinted or otherwise affixed in or on the top or other visible layer of the product.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

# PART 212 --PROTECTION OF VESSEL HULL DESIGNS

## § 212.1 Scope.

The provisions of this part apply to the protection and registration of original designs of vessel hulls under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code. Design protection and registration under this part are separate from copyright protection and registration. Copyright registration is governed by the provisions of part 202 of this subchapter.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 36576, 36578, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36576, 36578, July 7, 1999, added Part 212, effective July 1, 1999.]

## § 212.2 Fees.

The following fees or charges are established by the Register of Copyrights for services related to designs:

(a) For filing an application for registration of one design: $ 75;

(b) For filing an application for registration of more than one design: $ 75, plus $ 75 for each design beyond the first;

(c) For each page of deposit material identifying the design beyond the third page: $ 20;

(d)(1) For special handling of an application for registration of a design: $ 500;

(2) For special handling of each additional design in an application for registration of multiple designs: $ 50;

(e) For corrections or omissions in the certificate of registration: $ 65;

(f) For recordation of a distinctive identification of an owner: $ 50;

(g) For providing an additional certificate of registration: $ 25;

(h) For providing any other certification of Copyright Office records: $ 65 per hour;

(i) For preparing a search report: $ 65 per hour;

(j) For expediting a request for certification or search of Office records, the appropriate fees set out in § 201.3(d).

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 36576, 36578, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36576, 36578, July 7, 1999, added Part 212, effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 212.3 Registration of claims for protection of eligible designs.

(a) Limitations. Protection is not available for, and an application for registration will not be accepted for:

(1) An otherwise eligible design made public prior to October 28, 1998;

(2) An otherwise eligible design made public on a date more than two years prior to the filing of an application for registration under this section;

(3) A design ineligible for any of the reasons set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1302.

(b) Required elements of application. An application is considered filed with the Copyright Office on the date on which the following three items have been received by the Copyright Office:

(1) Completed Form D-VH;

(2) Deposit material identifying the design or designs for which registration is sought; and

(3) The appropriate fee.

(c) Application by owner of design. An application for registration under this section may be made only by the owner or owners of the design, or by the duly authorized agent or representative of the owner or owners of the design.

(d) Application form. Registration must be made on Form D-VH. Forms are available from the Copyright Office and may be reprinted from the Copyright Office's website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright/forms/formdvh.pdf).

(e) Deposit material. -- (1) In General. Identification of the design to be registered may be made in the form of drawings or photographs. No more than two drawings or photographs of the design may appear on a single sheet. Applicants may submit up to three 8 1/2 " x 11" sheets containing drawings or photographs as part of the basic $ 75 application fee. The fee for each additional sheet beyond three is $ 20 per sheet. No combinations of drawings and photographs may be submitted on a single sheet. The drawings or photographs that accompany the application must reveal those aspects of the design for which protection is claimed. The registration extends only to those aspects of the design which are adequately shown in the drawings or photographs.

(2) Views. The drawings or photographs submitted should contain a sufficient number of views to make an adequate disclosure of the appearance of the design, i.e. front, rear, right and left sides, top and bottom. While not required, it is suggested that perspective views be submitted to show clearly the appearance and shape of the three dimensional designs.

(3) Drawings. (i) Drawings must be in black ink on white 8 1/2 " x 11" unruled paper. A drawing of a design should include appropriate surface shading which shows clearly the character and contour of all surfaces of any 3-dimensional aspects of the design. Surface shading is also necessary to distinguish between any open and solid areas of the design. Solid black surface shading is not permitted except when used to represent the black color as well as color contrast.

(ii) The use of broken lines in drawings depicting the design is understood to be for illustrative purposes only and forms no part of the claimed design. Structure that is not part of the design, but that is considered necessary to show the environment in which the design is used, may be represented in the drawing by broken lines. This includes any portion of the vessel hull in which the design is embodied or applied that is not considered part of the design. When the claimed design is only surface ornamentation to the vessel hull, the vessel hull in which it is embodied must be shown in broken lines.

(iii) When broken lines are used, they should not intrude upon or cross the depiction of the design and should not be of heavier weight than the lines used in depicting the design. Where a broken line showing of environmental structure must necessarily cross or intrude upon the representation of the design and obscure a clear understanding of the design, such an illustration should be included as a separate figure, in addition to other figures which fully disclose the subject matter of the design.

(4) Photographs. High quality black and white or color photographs will be accepted provided that they are mounted on plain white 8 1/2 " x 11" unlined paper and do not exceed two photographs per sheet. Photographs must be developed on double weight photographic paper and must be of sufficient quality so that all the details of the design are plainly visible and are capable of reproduction on the registration certificate, if issued.

(f) Multiple claims. -- (1) In general. Claims for more than one design may be filed in one of two ways. If multiple designs are contained on a single make and model of a vessel hull (and therefore, the information in Space 1 of Form D-VH -- the make and model of the vessel that embodies the design -- is the same for each of the designs), a single application form may be used for all designs, provided that the information in spaces 3 through 9 is the same for each of the designs. If multiple designs are contained on more than one make and model of a vessel, or the information in spaces 3 through 9 is not the same for each of the multiple designs, then separate applications must be used for each design.

(2) Single application. Where a single application for multiple designs is appropriate, a separate Form D-VH/CON must be used for each design beyond the first appearing on Form D-VH. Each Form D-VH/CON must be accompanied by deposit material identifying the design that is the subject of the Form D-VH/CON, and the deposit material must be attached to the Form D-VH/CON. The Form D-VH and all the Form D-VH/CONs for the single application must be submitted together.

(3) Multiple applications. Where multiple applications for more than one design are required, a Form D-VH must be completed for each design. Deposit material identifying the design must accompany each application. Multiple applications may be filed separately.

(4) Fees. The $ 75 basic application fee applies to each design submitted, regardless of whether a single application or multiple applications are used.

(g) Written declaration. In lieu of the oath required by 17 U.S.C. 1312(a), the application shall contain a written declaration, as permitted by 17 U.S.C. 1312(b), signed by the applicant, or the applicant's duly authorized agent or representative. If the design has been made public with the design notice prescribed in 17 U.S.C. 1306, the written declaration shall also describe the exact form and position of the design notice. The written declaration shall read as follows:

The undersigned, as the applicant or the applicant's duly appointed agent or representative, being hereby warned that willful false statements are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of this application or any resulting registration, hereby declares to the best of his/her knowledge and belief:

(1) That the design has been fixed in a useful article;

(2) That the design is original and was created by the designer(s), or employer if applicable, named in the application;

(3) That those aspects of the design for which registration is sought are not protected by a design patent;

(4) That the design has not previously been registered on behalf of the applicant or the applicant's predecessor in title; and

(5) That the applicant is the person entitled to protection and to registration under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code.

(h) Priority claims. An applicant seeking the benefit of 17 U.S.C. 1311 because the applicant has, within the previous 6 months, filed an application for protection of the same design in a foreign country, must provide:

(1) Identification of the filing date of the foreign application;

(2) Identification of the foreign country in which the application was filed;

(3) The serial number or any other identifying number of the foreign application;

(4) A certified copy of the foreign application;

(5) A translation of the foreign application and a statement, signed by the translator, that the translation is accurate, if the foreign application is in a language other than English; and

(6) If requested by the Copyright Office, proof that the foreign country in which the prior application was filed extends to designs of owners who are citizens of the United States, or to applications filed under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code, similar protection to that provided under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code.

(i) Effective date of registration. The effective date of registration is the date of publication of the registration by the Copyright Office.

(j) Publication of registration. Publication of registrations of vessel hull designs shall be made on the Copyright Office website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright/vessels).

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 36576, 36578, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36576, 36578, July 7, 1999, added Part 212, effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 212.4 Affixation and placement of design notice.

(a) General. (1) This section specifies the methods of affixation and placement of the design notice required by 17 U.S.C. 1306. Sections 1306 and 1307 govern the circumstances under which a design notice must be used and the effect of omission of a design notice. A notice deemed acceptable under this part shall be considered to satisfy the requirements of section 1306 that it be so located and applied as to give reasonable notice of design protection while the useful article embodying the design is passing through its normal channels of commerce. As provided in that section, the examples specified in this part shall not be considered exhaustive of the methods of affixation and locations giving reasonable notice of the claim of protection in the design.

(2) The acceptability of a design notice under these regulations shall depend upon its being legible under normal conditions of use, and affixed in such a manner and position that, when affixed, it may be viewed upon reasonable examination. There is no requirement that a design notice be permanently embossed or engraved into a vessel hull or deck, but it should be affixed in such a manner that, under normal conditions of use, it is not likely to become unattached or illegible.

(b) Elements of a design notice. If the design has been registered, the registration number may be included in the design notice in place of the year of the date on which protection for the design commenced and the name of the owner, an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally accepted alternative designation of the owner. The elements of a design notice shall consist of:

(1) The words "Protected Design", the abbreviation "Prot'd Des.", or the letter "D" within a circle, or the symbol *D*;

(2) The year of the date on which protection for the design commenced; and

(3) The name of the owner, an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally accepted alternative designation of the owner.

(c) Distinctive identification. Any distinctive identification of an owner may be used for purposes of paragraph (b)(3) of this section if it has been recorded by the Register of Copyrights pursuant to § 212.5 before the design marked with such identification is registered.

(d) Acceptable locations of notice. The following are acceptable means of affixing and placement of a design notice:

(1) In close proximity to the hull identification number required by 33 CFR 181.23;

(2) In close proximity to the driver's console such that it is in plain view from the console;

(3) If the vessel is twenty feet in length or less and is governed by 33 CFR 183.21, in close proximity to the capacity marking; and

(4) In close proximity to the make and/or model designation of the vessel.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 36576, 36579, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36576, 36579, July 7, 1999, added Part 212, effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 212.5 Recordation of distinctive identification of vessel hull designer.

(a) General. Any owner of a vessel hull may record a distinctive identification with the Register of Copyrights for purposes of using such distinctive identification in a design protection notice required by 17 U.S.C. 1306. A distinctive identification of an owner may not be used in a design notice before it has first been recorded with the Register.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording distinctive identifications of ownership of a vessel hull. However, persons recording distinctive identifications are encouraged to use the suggested format available on the Copyright Office website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright/vessels).

(c) Recording distinctive identifications. Any distinctive identification of an owner of a vessel hull may be recorded with the Register of Copyrights provided that a document containing the following is submitted:

(1) The name and address of the owner;

(2) A statement of the owner that he/she is entitled to use the distinctive identification;

(3) A statement or depiction of the identification; and

(4) A recordation fee of $ 50.

(d) The document should be mailed to: Dept. D-VH, Vessel Hull Registration, P.O. Box 71380, Washington, DC 20024-1380.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 36576, 36580, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36576, 36580, July 7, 1999, added Part 212, effective July 1, 1999.]

§ 212.6 Recordation of transfers and other documents.

The conditions prescribed in § 201.4 of this chapter for recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to copyright are applicable to the recordation of documents pertaining to design protection of vessel hulls under 17 U.S.C. chapter 13.

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 36576, 36580, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36576, 36580, July 7, 1999, added Part 212, effective July 1, 1999.]

[EDITORIAL NOTE: For nomenclature changes to subchapter B, see 58 FR 67691, Dec. 22, 1993, 59 FR 23993, 23994, and 23995, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 33201 and 33202, June 28, 1994.]

Authority: 17 U.S.C. 801-803.

[PUBLISHER'S NOTE: For Federal Register citations concerning Part 251 CARP Arbitrator List, see: 63 FR 9419, 9420, Feb. 25, 1998.]

SUBCHAPTER B –COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL RULES AND PROCEDURES

SUBPART A –ORGANIZATION

§ 251.1 Official addresses.

Claims, pleadings, and general correspondence should be addressed to:

Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP), P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024

or, hand-delivered to:

Office of the Copyright General Counsel, Room 403, James Madison Building, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20540

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996, revised this section, effective Jan. 2, 1997.]

§ 251.2 Purpose of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

The Librarian of Congress, upon the recommendation of the Register of Copyrights, may appoint and convene a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) for the following purposes:

(a) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for the cable compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 111;

(b) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for making ephemeral recordings, 17 U.S.C. 112(e);

(c) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for the public performance of sound recordings by certain digital audio transmissions, 17 U.S.C. 114;

(d) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for making and distributing phonorecords, and royalty rates and terms for digital transmissions that constitute digital phonorecord deliveries, 17 U.S.C. 115;

(e) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes) whenever a negotiated license expires or is terminated and is not replaced by another such license agreement, 17 U.S.C. 116;

(f) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for the use by noncommercial educational broadcast stations for certain copyrighted works, 17 U.S.C. 118;

(g) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for the satellite carrier compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 119; and

(h) To make determinations concerning the distribution of cable and satellite carrier royalty fees and digital audio recording devices and media payments deposited with the Register of Copyrights, 17 U.S.C. 111, 119, and chapter 10, respectively.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 37213, 37215, July 17, 1996; 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998, redesignated paragraphs (b) through (g) as paragraphs (c) through (h), added a new paragraph (b), and revised newly redesignated paragraph (c), effective Dec. 28, 1998.]

§ 251.3 Arbitrator lists.

(a) Any professional arbitration association or organization may submit, before January 1, 1998, and every two years thereafter, a list of persons qualified to serve as arbitrators on a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. The list shall contain the following for each person:

(1) The full name, address, and telephone number of the person.

(2) The current position and name of the person's employer, if any, along with a brief summary of the person's employment history, including areas of expertise, and, if available, a description of the general nature of clients represented and the types of proceedings in which the person represented clients.

(3) A brief description of the educational background of the person, including teaching positions and membership in professional associations, if any.

(4) A statement of the facts and information which qualify the person to serve as an arbitrator under § 251.5.

(5) A description or schedule detailing fees proposed to be charged by the person for service on a CARP.

(6) Any other information which the professional arbitration association or organization may consider relevant.

(b) After January 1, 1998, and every two years thereafter, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the Federal Register a list of at least 30, but not more than 75 persons, submitted to the Librarian from at least three professional arbitration associations or organizations. The persons so listed must satisfy the qualifications and requirements of this subchapter and can reasonably be expected to be available to serve as arbitrators on a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel during that calendar year. This list will constitute the "arbitrator list" referred to in this subchapter. With respect to persons on the arbitrator list, the Librarian will make available for copying and inspection the information provided under paragraph (a) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, substituted "1998" for "1988" in the introductory text of paragraph (a) and in paragraph (b), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.4 Arbitrator lists: Objections.

(a) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, any party to a proceeding may, during the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(2)(i), file an objection with the Librarian of Congress to one or more of the persons contained on the arbitrator list for that proceeding. Such objection shall plainly state the grounds and reasons for each person claimed to be objectionable.

(b) In the case of a royalty distribution proceeding, any party to the proceeding may, during the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(2)(i), file an objection with the Librarian of Congress to one or more of the persons contained

on the arbitrator list for the proceeding. Such objection shall plainly state the grounds and reasons for each person claimed to be objectionable.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23982, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.5 Qualifications of the arbitrators.

In order to serve as an arbitrator to a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, a person must, at a minimum, have the following qualifications:

(a) Admitted to the practice of law in any state, territory, trust territory, or possession of the United States.

(b) Ten or more years of legal practice.

(c) Experience in conducting arbitration proceedings and facilitating the resolution and settlement of disputes.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23982, May 9, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996, substituted "and" for "or" in paragraph (c), effective Jan. 2, 1997.]

§ 251.6 Composition and selection of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(a) Within ten days after publication of a notice in the Federal Register initiating arbitration proceedings under this subchapter, the Librarian of Congress will, upon recommendation of the Register of Copyrights, select two arbitrators from the arbitrator list for that calendar year.

(b) The two arbitrators so selected shall, within ten days of their selection, choose a third arbitrator from the same arbitrator list. The third arbitrator shall serve as the chairperson of the panel during the course of the proceedings.

(c) If the two arbitrators fail to agree upon the selection of the third, the Librarian will promptly select the third arbitrator from the same arbitrator list.

(d) The third arbitrator so chosen shall serve as the chairperson of the panel during the course of the proceeding. In all matters, procedural or substantive, the chairperson shall act according to the majority wishes of the panel.

(e) Two arbitrators shall constitute a quorum necessary to the determination of any proceeding.

(f) If, before the commencement of hearings in a proceeding, one or more of the arbitrators is unable to continue service on the CARP, the Librarian will suspend the proceeding as provided by § 251.8, and will inaugurate a procedure to bring the CARP up to the full complement of three arbitrators. Where one or two vacancies exist, and either or both of the vacant seats were previously occupied by arbitrators selected by the Librarian, the Librarian will select the necessary replacements from the current arbitrator list. If there is one vacancy, and it was previously occupied by the chairperson, the two remaining arbitrators shall select the replacement from the arbitrator list, and the person chosen shall serve as chairperson. If there are two vacant seats, and one of them was previously occupied by the chairperson, the Librarian will select one replacement from the arbitrator list, and that person shall join with the remaining arbitrator to choose the replacement, who shall serve as chairperson.

(g) After hearings have commenced, the Librarian will not suspend the proceedings or inaugurate a replacement procedure unless it is necessary in order for the CARP to have a quorum. If the hearing is underway and two arbitrators are unable to continue service, or if the hearing had been proceeding with two arbitrators and one of them is no longer able to serve, the Librarian will suspend the proceedings under § 251.8 and seek the unanimous written agreement of the parties to the proceeding for the Librarian to select a replacement. In the absence of such an agreement, the Librarian will terminate the proceeding. If such agreement is obtained, the Librarian will select one arbitrator from the arbitrator list.

(h) If, after hearings have commenced, the chairperson of the CARP is no longer able to serve, the Librarian will ask the two remaining arbitrators, or the one remaining arbitrator and the newly-selected arbitrator, to agree between themselves which of them will serve as chairperson. In the absence of such an agreement, the Librarian will terminate the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23982, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, substituted "ten" for "10" in paragraph (b), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.7 Actions of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

Any action of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel requiring publication in the Federal Register according to 17 U.S.C. or the rules and regulations of this subchapter shall be published under the authority of the Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights. Under no circumstances shall a CARP engage in rulemaking designed to amend, supplement, or supersede any of the rules and regulations of this subchapter, or seek to have any such action published in the Federal Register.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23982, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.8 Suspension of proceedings.

(a) Where it becomes necessary to replace a selected arbitrator under § 251.6 or to remove and replace a selected arbitrator under subpart D of this part, the Librarian will order a suspension of any ongoing hearing or other proceeding by notice in writing to all parties. Immediately after issuing the order of suspension, and without delay, the Librarian will take the necessary steps to replace the arbitrator or arbitrators, and upon such replacement will issue an order, by notice in writing to all parties, resuming the proceeding from the time and point at which it was suspended.

(b) Where, for any other reason, such as a serious medical or family emergency affecting an arbitrator, the Librarian considers a suspension of a proceeding necessary and fully justified, he may, with the unanimous written consent of all parties to the proceeding, order a suspension of the proceeding for a stated period not to exceed one month.

(c) Any suspension under this section shall result in a complete cessation of all aspects of the proceeding, including the running of any period provided by statute for the completion of the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23982, May 9, 1994]

## SUBPART B --PUBLIC ACCESS TO COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL MEETINGS

### § 251.11 Open meetings.

(a) All meetings of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall be open to the public, with the exception of meetings that are listed in § 251.13.

(b) At the beginning of each proceeding, the CARP shall develop the original schedule of the proceeding which shall be published in the Federal Register at least seven calendar days in advance of the first meeting. Such announcement shall state the times, dates, and place of the meetings, the testimony to be heard, whether any of the meetings, or any portion of a meeting, is to be closed, and, if so, which ones, and the name and telephone number of the person to contact for further information.

(c) If changes are made to the original schedule, they will be announced in open meeting and issued as orders to the parties participating in the proceeding, and the changes will be noted in the docket file of the proceeding.

In addition, the contact person for the proceeding shall make any additional efforts to publicize the change as are practicable.

(d) If it is decided that the publication of the original schedule must be made on shorter notice than seven days, that decision must be made by a recorded vote of the panel and included in the announcement.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23983, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

### § 251.12 Conduct of open meetings.

Meetings of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel will be conducted in a manner to ensure the greatest degree of openness possible. Reasonable access for the public will be provided at all public sessions. Any person may take photographs, and make audio or video recordings of the proceedings, so long as the panel is informed in advance. The chairperson has the discretion to regulate the time, place, and manner of the taking of photographs or the audio or video recording of the proceedings to ensure the order and decorum of the proceedings. The right of the public to be present does not include the right to participate or make comments.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23983, May 9, 1994]

### § 251.13 Closed meetings.

In the following circumstances, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel may close meetings, or any portion of a meeting, or withhold information from the public:

(a) If the matter to be discussed has been specifically authorized to be kept secret by Executive Order, in the interests of national defense or foreign policy; or

(b) If the matter relates solely to the internal practices of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel; or

(c) If the matter has been specifically exempted from disclosure by statute (other than 5 U.S.C. 552) and there is no discretion on the issue; or

(d) If the matter involves privileged or confidential trade secrets or financial information; or

(e) If the result might be to accuse any person of a crime or formally censure him or her; or

(f) If there would be a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy; or

(g) If there would be disclosure of investigatory records compiled for law enforcement, or information that if written would be contained in such records, and to the extent disclosure would:

(1) Interfere with enforcement proceedings; or

(2) Deprive a person of the right to a fair trial or impartial adjudication; or

(3) Constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy; or

(4) Disclose the identity of a confidential source or, in the case of a criminal investigation or a national security intelligence investigation, disclose confidential information furnished only by a confidential source; or

(5) Disclose investigative techniques and procedures; or

(6) Endanger the life or safety of law enforcement personnel.

(h) If premature disclosure of the information would frustrate a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel's action, unless the panel has already disclosed the concept or nature of the proposed action, or is required by law to make disclosure before taking final action; or

(i) If the matter concerns a CARP's participation in a civil action or proceeding or in an action in a foreign court or international tribunal, or an arbitration, or a particular case of formal agency adjudication pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 554, or otherwise involving a determination on the record after opportunity for a hearing; or

(j) If a motion or objection has been raised in an open meeting and the panel determines that it is in the best interests of the proceeding to deliberate on such motion or objection in closed session.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23983, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.14 Procedure for closed meetings.

(a) Meetings may be closed, or information withheld from the public, only by a recorded vote of a majority of arbitrators of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. Each question, either to close a meeting or to withhold information, must be voted on separately, unless a series of meetings is involved, in which case the CARP may vote to keep the discussions closed for 30 days, starting from the first meetings. If the CARP feels that information about a closed meeting must be withheld, the decision to do so must also be the subject of a recorded vote.

(b) Before a discussion to close a meeting or withhold information, the chairperson of a CARP must certify that such an action is permissible, and the chairperson shall cite the appropriate exemption under § 251.13. This

certification shall be included in the announcement of the meeting and be maintained as part of the record of proceedings of that CARP.

(c) Following such a vote, the following information shall be published in the Federal Register as soon as possible:

(1) The vote of each arbitrator; and

(2) The appropriate exemption under § 251.13; and

(3) A list of all persons expected to attend the meeting and their affiliation.

(d) The procedure for closed meetings in this section and in § 251.15 shall not apply to the internal deliberations of arbitrators carried out in furtherance of their duties and obligations under this chapter.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23983, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.15 Transcripts of closed meetings.

(a) All meetings closed to the public shall be subject either to a complete transcript or, in the case of § 251.13(h) and at the discretion of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, detailed minutes. Detailed minutes shall describe all matters discussed, identify all documents considered, summarize action taken as well as the reasons for it, and record all roll call votes as well as any views expressed.

(b) Such transcripts or minutes shall be kept by the Copyright Office for at least two years, or for at least one year after the conclusion of the proceedings, whichever is later. Any portion of transcripts of meetings which the chairperson of a CARP does not feel is exempt from disclosure under § 251.13 will ordinarily be available to the public within 20 working days of the meeting. Transcripts or minutes of closed meetings will be reviewed by the chairperson at the end of the proceedings of the panel and, if at that time the chairperson determines that they should be disclosed, he or she will resubmit the question to the CARP to gain authorization for their disclosure.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23983, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.16 Requests to open or close meetings.

(a) Any person may request a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel to open or close a meeting or disclose or withhold information. Such request must be captioned "Request to Open" or "Request to Close" a meeting on a specified date concerning a specific subject. The person making the request must state his or her reasons, and include his or her name, address, and telephone number.

(b) In the case of a request to open a meeting that a CARP has previously voted closed, the panel must receive the request within 3 working days of the meeting's announcement. Otherwise the request will not be heeded, and the person making the request will be so notified. An original and three copies of the request must be submitted.

(c) For a CARP to act on a request to open or close a meeting, the question must be brought to a vote before the panel. If the request is granted, an amended meeting announcement will be issued and the person making the request notified. If a vote is not taken, or if after a vote the request is denied, said person will also be notified promptly.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23984, May 9, 1994]

## SUBPART C --PUBLIC ACCESS TO AND INSPECTION OF RECORDS

### § 251.21 Public records.

(a) All official determinations of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel will be published in the Federal Register in accordance with § 251.7 and include the relevant facts and reasons for those determinations.

(b) All records of a CARP, and all records of the Librarian of Congress assembled and/or created under 17 U.S.C. 801 and 802, are available for inspection and copying at the address provided in § 251.1 with the exception of:

(1) Records that relate solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress;

(2) Records exempted by statute from disclosure;

(3) Interoffice memoranda or correspondence not available by law except to a party in litigation with a CARP, the Copyright Office, or the Library of Congress;

(4) Personnel, medical, or similar files whose disclosure would be an invasion of personal privacy;

(5) Communications among arbitrators of a CARP concerning the drafting of decisions, opinions, reports, and findings on any CARP matter or proceeding;

(6) Communications among the Librarian of Congress and staff of the Copyright Office or Library of Congress concerning decisions, opinions, reports, selection of arbitrators, or findings on any matter or proceeding conducted under 17 U.S.C. chapter 8;

(7) Offers of settlement that have not been accepted, unless they have been made public by the offeror;

(8) Records not herein listed but which may be withheld as "exempted" if a CARP or the Librarian of Congress finds compelling reasons for such action.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23984, May 9, 1994]

### § 251.22 Public access.

(a) Location of Records. All of the following records relating to rate adjustment and distribution proceedings under this subchapter shall be maintained at the Copyright Office:

(1) Records required to be filed with the Copyright Office; or

(2) Records submitted to or produced by the Copyright Office or Library of Congress under 17 U.S.C. 801 and 802, or

(3) Records submitted to or produced by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel during the course of a concluded proceeding. In the case of records submitted to or produced by a CARP that is currently conducting a proceeding, such records shall be maintained by the chairperson of that panel at the location of the hearing or at a location specified by the panel. Upon conclusion of the proceeding, all records shall be delivered by the chairperson to the Copyright Office.

(b) Requesting information. Requests for information or access to records described in § 251.21 shall be directed to the Copyright Office at the address listed in § 251.1. No requests shall be directed to or accepted by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. In the case of records in the possession of a CARP, the Copyright Office shall make arrangements with the panel for access and copying by the person making the request.

(c) Fees. Fees for photocopies of CARP or Copyright Office records are the applicable Office charge. Fees for searching for records, certification of documents, and other costs incurred are as provided in 17 U.S.C. 705, 708.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23984, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.23 FOIA and Privacy Act.

Freedom of Information Act and Privacy Act provisions applicable to CARP proceedings can be found in parts 203 and 204 of subchapter A of this chapter.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23984, May 9, 1994]

SUBPART D --STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

§ 251.30 Basic obligations of arbitrators.

(a) Definitions. For purposes of these regulations, the following terms shall have the meanings given in this subsection:

(1) A "selected arbitrator" is a person named by the Librarian of Congress, or by other selected arbitrators, for service on a particular CARP, in accordance with § 251.6 of these regulations;

(2) A "listed arbitrator" is a person named in the "arbitration list" published in accordance with § 251.3 of these regulations.

(b) General principles applicable to arbitrators. Selected arbitrators are persons acting on behalf of the United States, and the following general principles apply to them. Where a situation is not covered by standards set forth specifically in this subpart, selected arbitrators shall apply these general principles in all cases in determining whether their conduct is proper. Listed arbitrators shall apply these principles where applicable.

(1) Arbitrators are engaged in a matter of trust that requires them to place ethical and legal principles above private gain.

(2) Arbitrators shall not hold financial interests that conflict with the conscientious performance of their service.

(3) Arbitrators shall not engage in financial transactions using nonpublic information or allow the improper use of such information to further any private interest.

(4) Selected arbitrators shall not solicit or accept any gift or other item of monetary value from any person or entity whose interests may be affected by the arbitrators' decisions. Listed arbitrators may accept gifts of nominal value or gifts from friends and family as specified in § 251.34(b).

(5) Arbitrators shall put forth their honest efforts in the performance of their service.

(6) Arbitrators shall act impartially and not give preferential treatment to any individual, organization, or entity whose interests may be affected by the arbitrators' decisions.

(7) Arbitrators shall not engage in outside employment or activities, including seeking or negotiating for employment, that conflicts with the performance of their service.

(8) Arbitrators shall endeavor to avoid any actions creating the appearance that they are violating the law or the ethical standards set forth in this subpart.

(9) Arbitrators shall maintain order and decorum in the proceedings, be patient, dignified, and courteous to the parties, witnesses, and their representatives, and dispose promptly the business before them.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23984, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, removed "panel" following "CARP" in paragraph (a)(1), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.31 Financial interests.

(a) No selected arbitrator shall have a direct or indirect financial interest --

(1) in the case of a distribution proceeding, in any claimant to the proceeding whether or not in a voluntary settlement agreement, or any copyright owner who receives royalties from such claimants because of their representation;

(2) in the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, in any individual, organization or entity that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) "Direct or indirect financial interest" shall include: being employed by, being a consultant to, being a representative or agent for, being a member or affiliate of, being a partner of, holding any office in, owning any stocks, bonds, or other securities, or deriving any income from the prohibited entity.

(c) "Direct or indirect financial interest" shall not include-

(1) owning shares in any stock or bond mutual fund or blind trust which might have an interest in a prohibited entity but whose decisions to invest or sell is not under the control of the selected arbitrator, or

(2) receiving any post-employment benefit such as health insurance or a pension so long as the benefit would not be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(d) For the purposes of this section, the financial interests of the following persons will serve to disqualify the selected arbitrator to the same extent as if they were the arbitrator's own interests:

(1) The arbitrator's spouse;

(2) The arbitrator's minor child;

(3) The arbitrator's general partner, except that the personal financial holdings, including stock and bond investments, of such partner will not serve to disqualify the selected arbitrator; or

(4) An organization or entity for which the arbitrator serves as officer, director, trustee, general partner or employee.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23985, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.32 Financial disclosure statement.

(a) Within 45 days of their nomination, each nominated arbitrator shall file with the Librarian of Congress a confidential financial disclosure statement as provided by the Library of Congress, which statement shall be reviewed by the Librarian and designated Library staff to determine what conflicts of interest, if any, exist according to § 251.31.

(b) If any conflicts do exist, the Librarian shall not choose that person for the proceeding for which he or she has the financial conflict, except --

(1) The listed arbitrator may divest himself or herself of the interest that caused the disqualification, and become qualified to serve; or

(2) The listed arbitrator may offer to disclose on the record the conflict of interest causing disqualification. In such instances:

(i) The Librarian shall publish a list detailing the conflicts of interest the listed arbitrators have offered to disclose, and any other matters which, although outside of the scope of the restrictions of § 251.31, nevertheless, in the view of the Librarian, raise sufficient concerns to warrant disclosure to the affected parties;

(ii) Such list shall be included in an order issued no later than the commencement of the 45-day precontroversy discovery period;

(iii) Such list shall contain the matters of concern, but shall not contain the names of the listed arbitrators.

(iv) Any party to the proceeding for which the listed arbitrator is being considered may interpose within the 45-day period described in § 251.45(b) an objection to that arbitrator being selected. If the objection is raised to a matter found to be within the scope of § 251.31, the objection will serve automatically to disqualify the arbitrator. If the objection is raised to a matter found to be outside the scope of § 251.31, the objection will be taken into account when the Librarian makes his or her selection, but will not serve automatically to disqualify the arbitrator.

(c) At such time as the two selected arbitrators choose a third arbitrator, they shall consult with the Librarian to determine if any conflicts of interest exist for the third arbitrator. If, in the opinion of the Librarian of Congress, any conflicts of interest do exist, the two selected arbitrators shall be asked to choose another arbitrator who has no conflict of interest.

(d) Within one week of the selection of the CARP, the three selected arbitrators shall file with the Librarian an updated confidential financial disclosure form or, if there are no changes in the arbitrator's financial interests, a statement to that effect. If any conflicts of interest are revealed on the updated form, the Librarian will suspend the proceeding and replace the selected arbitrator with another arbitrator from the arbitrator list in accordance with the provision of § 251.6.

(e) During the following periods of time, the selected arbitrators shall be obliged to inform the Librarian immediately of any change in their financial interests that would reasonably raise a conflict of interest --

(1) during the period beginning with the filing of the updated disclosure form or statement required by paragraph (d) of this section and ending with the submission of the panel's report to the Librarian, and

(2) if the same arbitrator or arbitrators are recalled to serve following a court-ordered remand, during the time the panel is reconvened.

(f) If the Librarian determines that an arbitrator has failed to give timely notice of a financial interest constituting a conflict of interest, or that the arbitrator in fact has a conflict of interest, the Librarian shall remove that arbitrator from the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23985, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995; 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, removed "panel" following "CARP" in paragraph (d), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.33. Ex parte communications.

(a) Communications with Librarian or Register. No person outside the Library of Congress shall engage in ex parte communication with the Librarian of Congress or the Register of Copyrights on the merit or status of any matter, procedural or substantive, relating to the distribution of royalty fees, the adjustment of royalty rates or the status of digital audio recording devices, at any time whatsoever. This prohibition shall not apply to statements concerning public policies related to royalty fee distribution and rate adjustment so long as they are unrelated to the merits of any particular proceeding.

(b) Selected arbitrators. No interested person shall engage in, or cause someone else to engage in, ex parte communications with the selected arbitrators in a proceeding for any reason whatsoever from the time of their selection to the time of the submission of their report to the Librarian, and, in the case of a remand, from the time of their reconvening to the time of their submission of their report to the Librarian. Incidental communications unrelated to any proceeding, such as an exchange of pleasantries, shall not be deemed to constitute an ex parte communication.

(c) Listed arbitrators. No interested person shall engage in, or cause someone else to engage in, ex parte communications with any person listed by the Librarian of Congress as qualified to serve as an arbitrator about the merits of any past, pending, or future proceeding relating to the distribution of royalty fees or the adjustment of royalty rates. This prohibition applies during any period when the individual appears on a current arbitrator list.

(d) Library and Copyright Office personnel. No person outside the Library of Congress (including the Copyright Office staff) shall engage in ex parte communications with any employee of the Library of Congress about the substantive merits of any past, pending, or future proceeding relating to the distribution of royalty fees or the adjustment of royalty rates. This prohibition does not apply to procedural inquiries such as scheduling, filing requirements, status requests, or requests for public information.

(e) Outside contacts. The Librarian of Congress, the Register of Copyrights, the selected arbitrators, the listed arbitrators, and the employees of the Library of Congress described in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section, shall not initiate or continue the prohibited communications that apply to them.

(f) Responsibilities of recipients of communication. (1) Whoever receives a prohibited communication shall immediately end it and place on the public record of the applicable proceeding: (i) all such written or recorded communications;

(ii) memoranda stating the substance of all such oral communications; and

(iii) all written responses, and memoranda stating the substance of all oral responses, to the materials described in paragraphs (f)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section.

(2) The materials described in this paragraph (f) shall not be considered part of the record for the purposes of decision unless introduced into evidence by one of the parties.

(g) Action by Librarian. When notice of a prohibited communication described in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section has been placed in the record of a proceeding, either the Librarian of Congress or the CARP may require the party causing the prohibited communication to show cause why his or her claim or interest in the proceeding should not be dismissed, denied, or otherwise adversely affected.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23985, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63040, 63041, Dec. 7, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.34 Gifts and other things of monetary value.

(a) Selected arbitrators. From the time of selection to the time of the submission of the arbitration panel's report, whether during the initial proceeding or during a court-ordered remand, no selected arbitrator shall solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, any gift, gratuity, favor, travel, entertainment, service, loan, or any other thing of monetary value from a person or organization that has an interest that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding, regardless of whether the offer was intended to affect the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) Listed arbitrators. No listed arbitrator shall solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, any gift, gratuity, favor, travel, entertainment, service, loan, or any other thing of monetary value from a person or organization that has an interest in any proceeding for which the arbitrator might be selected, regardless of whether the offer was intended to affect the outcome of the proceeding, except --

(1) a listed arbitrator may accept unsolicited gifts having an aggregate market value of $ 20 or less per occasion, as long as the aggregate market value of individual gifts received from any one source does not exceed $ 50 in a calendar year, or

(2) a listed arbitrator may accept a gift given under circumstances in which it is clear that the gift is motivated by a family relationship or personal friendship rather than the potential of the listed arbitrator to decide a future proceeding.

(c) A gift that is solicited or accepted indirectly includes a gift --

(1) given with the arbitrator's knowledge and acquiescence to the arbitrator's parent, sibling, spouse, child, or dependent relative because of that person's relationship to the arbitrator, or

(2) given to any other person, including any charitable organization, on the basis of designation, recommendation, or other specification by the arbitrator.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23986, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.35 Outside employment and other activities.

(a) From the time of selection to the time when all possibility of being selected to serve on a court-ordered remand is ended, no arbitrator shall --

(1) engage in any outside business or other activity that would cause a reasonable person to question the arbitrator's ability to render an impartial decision;

(2) accept any speaking engagement, whether paid or unpaid, related to the proceeding or sponsored by a party that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding; or

(3) accept any honorarium, whether directly or indirectly paid, for any appearance, speech, or article related to the proceeding or offered by a party who would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) Honoraria indirectly paid include payments --

(1) given with the arbitrator's knowledge and acquiescence to the arbitrator's parent, sibling, spouse, child, or dependent relative because of that person's relationship to the arbitrator, or

(2) given to any other person, including any charitable organization, on the basis of designation, recommendation, or other specification by the arbitrator.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23986, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.36 Pre-arbitration and post-arbitration employment restrictions.

(a) The Librarian of Congress will not select any arbitrator who was employed at any time during the period of five years immediately preceding the date of that arbitrator's selection by any party to, or any person, organization or entity with a financial interest in, the proceeding for which he or she is being considered. However, a listed arbitrator may disclose on the record the past employment causing disqualification and may ask the parties to consider whether to allow him or her to serve in the proceeding, in which case any agreement by the parties to allow the listed arbitrator to serve shall be unanimous and shall be incorporated into the record of the proceeding.

(b) No arbitrator may arrange for future employment with any party to, or any person, organization, or entity with a financial interest in, the proceeding in which he or she is serving.

(c) For a period of three years from the date of submission of the arbitration panel's report to the Librarian, no arbitrator may enter into employment with any party to, or any person, organization, or entity with a financial interest in, the particular proceeding in which he or she served.

(d) For purposes of this section, "employed" or "employment" means any business relationship involving the provision of personal services including, but not limited to, personal services as an officer, director, employee, agent, attorney, consultant, contractor, general partner or trustee, but does not include serving as an arbitrator, mediator, or neutral engaged in alternative dispute resolution.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23986, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.37 Use of nonpublic information.

(a) Unless required by law, no arbitrator shall disclose in any manner any information contained in filings, pleadings, or evidence that the arbitration panel has ruled to be confidential in nature.

(b) Unless required by law, no arbitrator shall disclose in any manner --

(1) intra-panel communications or communications between the Library of Congress and the panel intended to be confidential;

(2) draft interlocutory rulings or draft decisions; or

(3) the CARP report before its submission to the Librarian of Congress.

(c) No arbitrator shall engage in a financial transaction using nonpublic information, or allow the improper use of nonpublic information, to further his or her private interest or that of another, whether through advice or recommendation, or by knowing unauthorized disclosure.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23986, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.38 Billing and commitment to standards.

(a) Arbitrators are bound by the hourly or daily fee they proposed to the Librarian of Congress when their names were submitted to be listed under § 251.3, and shall not bill in excess of their proposed charges.

(b) Arbitrators shall not charge the parties any expense in addition to their hourly or daily charge, except, in the case of an arbitrator who resides outside the Washington, DC metropolitan area, for travel, lodging, and meals not to exceed the government rate.

(c) When submitting their statement of costs to the parties under § 251.54, arbitrators shall include a detailed account of their charges, including the work performed during each hour or day charged.

(d) Except for support services provided by the Library of Congress, arbitrators shall perform their own work, including research, analysis of the record, and decision-writing.

(e) At the time of selection, arbitrators shall sign an agreement stating that they will abide by all the terms therein, including all of the standards of conduct and billing restrictions specified in this subpart. Any arbitrator who does not sign the agreement will not be selected to serve.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23986, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.39 Remedies.

In addition to those provided above, remedies for the violation of the standards of conduct of this section may include, but are not limited to, the following --

(a) in the case of a selected arbitrator,

(1) removal of the arbitrator from the proceeding;

(2) permanent removal of the arbitrator's name from the current and any future list of available arbitrators published by the Librarian;

(3) referral of the matter to the bar of which the arbitrator is a member.

(b) in the case of a listed but not selected arbitrator --

(1) permanent removal of the arbitrator's name from the current and any future list of available arbitrators published by the Librarian;

(2) referral of the matter to the bar of which the listed arbitrator is a member.

(c) in the case of an interested party or individual who engaged in the ethical violation --

(1) referral of the matter to the bar or professional association of which the interested individual is a member;

(2) barring the offending individual from current and/or future appearances before the CARP;

(3) designation of an issue in the current or in a future proceeding as to whether the party's interest should not be dismissed, denied, or otherwise adversely affected.

(d) In all applicable matters of violations of standards of conduct, the Librarian may refer the matter to the Department of Justice, or other legal authority of competent jurisdiction, for criminal prosecution.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23987, May 9, 1994]

## SUBPART E --PROCEDURES OF COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANELS

§ 251.40 Scope.

This subpart governs the proceedings of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels convened under 17 U.S.C. 803 for the adjustment of royalty rates and distribution of royalty fees. This subpart does not apply to other arbitration proceedings specified by 17 U.S.C., or to actions or rulemakings of the Librarian of Congress or the Register of Copyrights, except where expressly provided in the provisions of this subpart.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23987, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.41 Formal hearings.

(a) The formal hearings that will be conducted under the rules of this subpart are rate adjustment hearings and royalty fee distribution hearings. All parties intending to participate in a hearing of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel must file a notice of their intention. A CARP may also, on its own motion or on the petition of an interested party, hold other proceedings it considers necessary to the exercise of its functions, subject to the provisions of § 251.7. All such proceedings will be governed by the rules of this subpart.

(b) During the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(1)(i) for distribution proceedings, or during the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(2)(i) for rate adjustment proceedings, as appropriate, any party may petition the Librarian of Congress to dispense with formal hearings, and have the CARP decide the controversy or rate adjustment on the basis of written pleadings. The petition may be granted if --

(1) The controversy or rate adjustment, as appropriate, does not involve any genuine issue of material fact; or

(2) All parties to the proceeding agree, in writing, that a grant of the petition is appropriate.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23987, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.42 Suspension or waiver of rules.

For purposes of an individual proceeding, the provisions of this subpart may be suspended or waived, in whole or in part, by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel upon a showing of good cause, subject to the provisions of § 251.7. Such suspension or waiver shall apply only to the proceeding of the CARP taking that action, and shall not be binding on any other panel or proceeding. Where procedures have not been specifically prescribed in this subpart, and subject to § 251.7, the panel shall follow procedures consistent with 5 U.S.C. chapter 5, subchapter II.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23987, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.43 Written cases.

(a) All parties who have filed a notice of intent to participate in the hearing shall file written direct cases with the Copyright Office, and with other parties in the manner in which the Librarian of Congress shall direct in accordance with § 251.45(b).

(b) The written direct case shall include all testimony, including each witness's background and qualifications, along with all the exhibits to be presented in the direct case.

(c) Each party may designate a portion of past records, including records of the Copyright Royalty Tribunal, that it wants included in its direct case. Complete testimony of each witness whose testimony is designated (i.e., direct, cross and redirect) must be referenced.

(d) In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, each party must state in the written direct case its percentage or dollar claim to the fund. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, each party must state its requested rate. No party will be precluded from revising its claim or its requested rate at any time during the proceeding up to the filing of the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.

(e) No evidence, including exhibits, may be submitted in the written direct case without a sponsoring witness, except where the CARP has taken official notice, or in the case of incorporation by reference of past records, or for good cause shown.

(f) Written rebuttal cases of the parties shall be filed at a time designated by a CARP upon conclusion of the hearing of the direct case, in the same form and manner as the direct case, except that the claim or the requested rate shall not have to be included if it has not changed from the direct case.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23987, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, removed "panel" following "CARP" in paragraph (e), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.44 Filing and service of written cases and pleadings.

(a) Filing of pleadings. In a royalty fee distribution proceeding or in a rate adjustment proceeding, the submitting party shall deliver an original and five copies of all filings to the Copyright Office at the address listed in § 251.1, unless otherwise instructed by the Librarian of Congress or the CARP. The Copyright Office will make further distribution to the CARP, as necessary. In no case shall a party tender any written case or pleading by facsimile transmission.

(b) Exhibits. All exhibits must be included with a party's case; however, in the case of exhibits whose bulk or whose cost of reproduction would unnecessarily encumber the record or burden the party, the Librarian of Congress or the CARP may reduce the number of required copies. Nevertheless, a complete copy must still be submitted to the Copyright Office.

(c) English language translations. In all filings with a CARP or the Librarian of Congress, each submission that is in a language other than English shall be accompanied by an English-language translation, duly verified under oath to be a true translation. Any other party to the proceeding may, in response, submit its own English-language translation, similarly verified.

(d) Affidavits. The testimony of each witness in a party's written case, direct or rebuttal, shall be accompanied by an affidavit or a declaration made pursuant to 28 U.S.C. 1746 supporting the testimony.

(e) Subscription and verification. (1) The original of all documents filed by any party represented by counsel shall be signed by at least one attorney of record and shall list the attorney's address and telephone number. All copies shall be conformed. Except for English-language translations, written cases, or when otherwise required, documents signed by the attorney for a party need not be verified or accompanied by an affidavit. The signature of an attorney constitutes certification that to the best of his or her knowledge and belief there is good ground to support the document, and that it has not been interposed for purposes of delay.

(2) The original of all documents filed by a party not represented by counsel shall be signed by that party and list that party's address and telephone number.

(3) The original of a document that is not signed, or is signed with the intent to defeat the purpose of this section, may be stricken as sham and false, and the matter shall proceed as though the document had not been filed.

(f) Service. The Librarian of Congress shall compile and distribute to those parties who have filed a notice of intent to participate, the official service list of the proceeding, which shall be composed of the names and addresses of the representatives of all the parties to the proceeding. In all filings, a copy shall be served upon counsel of all other parties identified in the service list, or, if the party is unrepresented by counsel, upon the party itself. Proof of service shall accompany the filing. Parties shall notify the Librarian of any change in the name or address to which service shall be made, and shall serve a copy of such notification on all parties and the CARP.

(g) Oppositions and replies. Except as otherwise provided in this part or by the Librarian of Congress or a CARP, oppositions to motions shall be filed within seven business days of the filing of the motion, and replies to oppositions shall be filed within five business days of the filing of the opposition. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23987, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995; 61 FR 63715, 63717, Dec. 2, 1996; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, added a heading to paragraph (f), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 251.45 Discovery and prehearing motions.

(a) Request for comment, notice of intention to participate. In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the time period for filing claims, publish in the Federal Register a notice requesting each claimant on the claimant list to negotiate with each other a settlement of their differences, and to comment by a date certain as to the existence of controversies with respect to the royalty funds described in the notice. Such notice shall also establish a date certain by which parties wishing to participate in the proceeding must file with the Librarian a notice of intention to participate. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after receiving a petition for rate adjustment filed under § 251.62, or, in the case of noncommercial educational broadcasting and satellite carrier, prior to the commencement of proceedings, publish in the Federal Register a notice requesting interested parties to comment on the petition for rate adjustment. Such notice shall also establish a date certain by which parties wishing to participate in the proceeding must file with the Librarian a notice of intention to participate.

(b) Precontroversy discovery, filing of written cases, scheduling. (1)(i) In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of comments and notices described in paragraph (a) of this section, designate a 45-day period for precontroversy discovery and exchange of documents. The period will begin with the exchange of written direct cases among the parties to the proceeding. Each party to the proceeding must effect actual delivery of a complete copy of its written direct case on each of the other parties to the proceeding no later than the first day of the 45-day period. At any time during the 45-day period, any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian prehearing motions and objections, including petitions to dispense with formal hearings under § 251.41(b) and objections to arbitrators appearing on the arbitrator list under § 251.4. Responses to motions, petitions, and objections must be filed with the Librarian within seven business days from the filing of such motions, petitions, and objections. Replies to the responses shall be filed within five business days from the filing of such responses with the Librarian. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

(ii) Subject to § 251.72, the Librarian shall establish, prior to the commencement of the 45-day period, the date on which arbitration proceedings will be initiated.

(2)(i) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of comments and notices described in paragraph (a) of this section, designate a 45-day period for precontroversy discovery and exchange of documents. The period will begin with the exchange of written direct cases among the parties to the proceeding. Each party to the proceeding must effect actual delivery of a complete copy of its written direct case on each of the other parties to the proceeding no later than the first day of the 45-day period. At any time during the 45-day period, any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian prehearing motions and objections, including petitions to dispense with formal hearings under § 251.41(b) and objections to arbitrators appearing on the arbitrator list under § 251.4. Responses to motions, petitions, and objections must be filed with the Librarian within seven business days from the filing of such motions, petitions, and objections. Replies to the responses shall be filed within five business days from the filing of such responses with the Librarian. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

(ii) Subject to § 251.64, the Librarian shall establish, prior to the commencement of the 45-day period, the date on which arbitration proceedings will be initiated.

(c) Discovery and motions filed with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. (1) A Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall designate a period following the filing of written direct and rebuttal cases with it in which parties may request of an opposing party nonprivileged underlying documents related to the written exhibits and testimony.

(2) After the filing of written cases with a CARP, any party may file with a CARP objections to any portion of another party's written case on any proper ground including, without limitation, relevance, competency, and failure to provide underlying documents. If an objection is apparent from the face of a written case, that objection must be raised or the party may thereafter be precluded from raising such an objection.

(d) Amended filings and discovery. In the case of objections filed with either the Librarian of Congress or a CARP, each party may amend its claim, petition, written case, or direct evidence to respond to the objections raised by other parties, or to the requests of either the Librarian or a panel. Such amendments must be properly filed with the Librarian or the CARP, wherever appropriate, and exchanged with all parties. All parties shall be given a reasonable opportunity to conduct discovery on the amended filings.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23988, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996, revised paragraphs (b)(1)(i) and (b)(2)(i), effective Jan. 2, 1997.]

§ 251.46 Conduct of hearings: Role of arbitrators.

(a) At the opening of a hearing conducted by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, the chairperson shall announce the subject under consideration.

(b) Only the arbitrators of a CARP, or counsel as provided in this chapter, shall question witnesses.

(c) Subject to the vote of the CARP, the chairperson shall have responsibility for:

(1) Setting the order of presentation of evidence and appearance of witnesses;

(2) Administering oaths and affirmations to all witnesses;

(3) Announcing the CARP's ruling on objections and motions and all rulings with respect to introducing or excluding documentary or other evidence. In all cases, whether there are an even or odd number of arbitrators sitting at

the hearing, it takes a majority vote to grant a motion or sustain an objection. A split vote will result in the denial of the motion or the overruling of the objection;

(4) Regulating the course of the proceedings and the decorum of the parties and their counsel, and insuring that the proceedings are fair and impartial; and

(5) Announcing the schedule of subsequent hearings.

(d) Each arbitrator may examine any witness or call upon any party for the production of additional evidence at any time. Further examination, cross-examination, or redirect examination by counsel relevant to the inquiry initiated by an arbitrator may be allowed by a CARP, but only to the limited extent that it is directly responsive to the inquiry of the arbitrator.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23988, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, removed "panel" following "CARP" in paragraphs (c)(3) and (d), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.47 Conduct of hearings: Witnesses and counsel.

(a) With all due regard for the convenience of the witnesses, proceedings shall be conducted as expeditiously as possible.

(b) In each distribution or rate adjustment proceeding, each party may present its opening statement with the presentation of its direct case.

(c) All witnesses shall be required to take an oath or affirmation before testifying; however, attorneys who do not appear as witnesses shall not be required to do so.

(d) Witnesses shall first be examined by their attorney and by opposing attorneys for their competency to support their written testimony and exhibits (voir dire).

(e) Witnesses may then summarize, highlight or read their testimony. However, witnesses may not materially supplement or alter their written testimony except to correct it, unless the CARP expands the witness's testimony to complete the record.

(f) Parties are entitled to raise objections to evidence on any proper ground during the course of the hearing, including an objection that an opposing party has not furnished nonprivileged underlying documents. However, they may not raise objections that were apparent from the face of a written case and could have been raised before the hearing without leave from the CARP. See § 251.45(c).

(g) All written testimony and exhibits will be received into the record, except any to which the panel sustains an objection; no separate motion will be required.

(h) If the panel rejects or excludes testimony and an offer of proof is made, the offer of proof shall consist of a statement of the substance of the evidence which it is contended would have been adduced. In the case of documentary or written evidence, a copy of such evidence shall be marked for identification and shall constitute the offer of proof.

(i) The CARP shall discourage the presentation of cumulative evidence, and may limit the number of witnesses that may be heard on behalf of any one party on any one issue.

(j) Parties are entitled to conduct cross-examination and redirect examination. Cross-examination is limited to matters raised on direct examination. Redirect examination is limited to matters raised on cross-examination. The panel, however, may limit cross-examination and redirect examination if in its judgment this evidence or examination would

be cumulative or cause undue delay. Conversely, this subsection does not restrict the discretion of the panel to expand the scope of cross-examination or redirect examination.

(k) Documents that have not been exchanged in advance may be shown to a witness on cross-examination. However, copies of such documents must be distributed to the CARP and to other participants or their counsel at hearing before being shown to the witness at the time of cross-examination, unless the panel directs otherwise. If the document is not, or will not be, supported by a witness for the cross-examining party, that document can be used solely to impeach the witness's direct testimony and cannot itself be relied upon in findings of fact as rebutting the witness's direct testimony. However, upon leave from the panel, the document may be admitted as evidence without a sponsoring witness if official notice is proper, or if, in the panel's view, the cross-examined witness is the proper sponsoring witness.

(l) A CARP will encourage individuals or groups with the same or similar interests in a proceeding to select a single representative to conduct their examination and cross-examination of any given witness. However, if there is no agreement on the selection of a representative, each individual or group will be allowed to conduct its own examination and cross-examination of any given witness, but only on issues affecting its particular interests, provided that the questioning is not repetitious or cumulative of the questioning of other parties within the group.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23988, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, removed "panel" following "CARP" in paragraphs (e), (f), (i) and (k), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.48 Rules of evidence.

(a) Admissibility. In any public hearing before a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, evidence that is not unduly repetitious or cumulative and is relevant and material shall be admissible. The testimony of any witness will not be considered evidence in a proceeding unless the witness has been sworn.

(b) Documentary evidence. Evidence that is submitted in the form of documents or detailed data and information shall be presented as exhibits. Relevant and material matter embraced in a document containing other matter not material or relevant or not intended as evidence must be plainly designated as the matter offered in evidence, and the immaterial or irrelevant parts shall be marked clearly so as to show they are not intended as evidence. In cases where a document in which material and relevant matter occurs is of such bulk that it would unnecessarily encumber the record, it may be marked for identification and the relevant and material parts, once properly authenticated, may be read into the record. If the CARP desires, a true copy of the material and relevant matter may be presented in extract form, and submitted as evidence. Anyone presenting documents as evidence must present copies to all other participants at the hearing or their attorneys, and afford them an opportunity to examine the documents in their entirety and offer into evidence any other portion that may be considered material and relevant.

(c) Documents filed with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel or Copyright Office. If the matter offered in evidence is contained in documents already on file with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel or the Copyright Office, the documents themselves need not be produced, but may instead be referred to according to how they have been filed.

(d) Public documents. If a public document such as an official report, decision, opinion, or published scientific or economic data, is offered in evidence either in whole or in part, and if the document has been issued by an Executive Department, a legislative agency or committee, or a Federal administrative agency (Government-owned corporations included), and is proved by the party offering it to be reasonably available to the public, the document need not be produced physically, but may be offered instead by identifying the document and signaling the relevant parts.

(e) Introduction of studies and analyses. If studies or analyses are offered in evidence, they shall state clearly the study plan, all relevant assumptions, the techniques of data collection, and the techniques of estimation and testing. The facts and judgments upon which conclusions are based shall be stated clearly, together with any alternative courses of

action considered. If requested, tabulations of input data shall be made available to the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel.

(f) Statistical studies. Statistical studies offered in evidence shall be accompanied by a summary of their assumptions, their study plans, and their procedures. Supplementary details shall be included in appendices. For each of the following types of statistical studies the following should be furnished:

(1) Sample surveys. (i) A clear description of the survey design, the definition of the universe under consideration, the sampling frame and units, the validity and confidence limits on major estimates; and

(ii) An explanation of the method of selecting the sample and of the characteristics which were measured and counted.

(2) Econometric investigations. (i) A complete description of the econometric model, the reasons for each assumption, and the reasons for the statistical specification;

(ii) A clear statement of how any changes in the assumptions might affect the final result; and

(iii) Any available alternative studies that employ alternative models and variables, if requested.

(3) Experimental analysis. (i) A complete description of the design, the controlled conditions, and the implementation of controls; and

(ii) A complete description of the methods of observation and adjustment of observation.

(4) Studies involving statistical methodology. (i) The formula used for statistical estimates;

(ii) The standard error for each component;

(iii) The test statistics, the description of how the tests were conducted, related computations, computer programs, and all final results; and

(iv) Summarized descriptions of input data and, if requested, the input data themselves.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23989, May 9, 1994; 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998, removed "panel" following "CARP" in paragraph (b), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 251.49 Transcript and record.

(a) An official reporter for the recording and transcribing of hearings shall be designated by the Librarian of Congress. Anyone wishing to inspect or copy the transcript of a hearing may do so at a location specified by the chairperson of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel conducting the hearing.

(b) The transcript of testimony and all exhibits, papers, and requests filed in the proceeding, shall constitute the official written record. Such record shall accompany the report of the determination of the CARP to the Librarian of Congress required by 17 U.S.C. 802(e).

(c) The record, including the report of the determination of a CARP, shall be available at the Copyright Office for public inspection and copying in accordance with § 251.22.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.50 Rulings and orders.

In accordance with 5 U.S.C., subchapter II, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel may issue rulings or orders, either on its own motion or that of an interested party, necessary to the resolution of issues contained in the proceeding before it; Provided, that no such rules or orders shall amend, supplement or supersede the rules and regulations contained in this subchapter. See § 251.7.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.51 Closing the record.

To close the record of hearing, the chairperson of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall make an announcement that the taking of testimony has concluded. In its discretion the panel may close the record as of a future specified date, and allow time for exhibits yet to be prepared to be admitted, provided that the parties to the proceeding stipulate on the record that they waive the opportunity to cross-examine or present evidence with respect to such exhibits. The record in any hearing that has been recessed may not be closed by the chairperson before the day on which the hearing is to resume, except upon ten days' notice to all parties.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.52 Proposed findings and conclusions.

(a) Any party to the proceeding may file proposed findings of fact and conclusions, briefs, or memoranda of law, or may be directed by the chairperson to do so. Such filings, and any replies to them, shall take place at such time after the record has been closed as the chairperson directs.

(b) Failure to file when directed to do so shall be considered a waiver of the right to participate further in the proceeding, unless good cause for the failure is shown.

(c) Proposed findings of fact shall be numbered by paragraph and include all basic evidentiary facts developed on the record used to support proposed conclusions, and shall contain appropriate citations to the record for each evidentiary fact. Proposed findings submitted by someone other than a party in a proceeding shall be restricted to those issues specifically affecting that person.

(d) Proposed conclusions shall be stated separately.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; as corrected and revised at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.53 Report to the Librarian of Congress.

(a) At any time after the filing of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law and any replies thereto specified in § 251.52, and not later than 180 days from publication in the Federal Register of notification of commencement of the proceeding, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall deliver to the Librarian of Congress a report incorporating its written determination. Such determination shall be accompanied by the written record, and shall set forth the facts that the panel found relevant to its determination.

(b) The determination of the panel shall be certified by the chairperson and signed by all of the arbitrators. Any dissenting opinion shall be certified and signed by the arbitrator so dissenting.

(c) At the same time as the submission to the Librarian of Congress, the chairperson of the panel shall cause a copy of the determination to be delivered to all parties participating in the proceeding.

(d) The Librarian of Congress shall make the report of the CARP and the accompanying record available for public inspection and copying.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.54 Assessment of costs of arbitration panels.

(a) The ordinary and necessary costs of an arbitrator shall be assessed, in accordance with § 251.38, as follows:

(1) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the parties to the proceeding shall bear the entire cost thereof in such manner and proportion as the panel shall direct.

(2) In the case of a distribution proceeding, the parties to the proceeding shall bear the total cost of the proceeding in direct proportion to their share of the distribution. These costs shall be considered reasonable costs incurred by the Librarian of Congress and the Copyright Office. Such costs shall be deducted from the royalty fees which have been deposited and collected under title 17 of the United States Code and which are the subject of the distribution proceeding.

(b) Each arbitrator shall itemize his or her expenses on the statement of cost in a format approved by the General Counsel and shall specify the name and address to whom payment should be made. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, each statement of cost shall specify each party's share of the total cost and the amount owed by that party to each arbitrator, or alternatively, reflect the method of payment agreed upon by the parties and the arbitrators.

(c) The statements of cost shall be sent to the Library of Congress no more frequently than once a month.

(1) In the case of a distribution proceeding, the statements of cost shall be sent to the Accounting Operations Section, Financial Services Directorate, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20540-9112, and a copy of the statements of cost shall be submitted to the Copyright Office as directed in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(2) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the statements of cost shall be sent to the CARP Specialist, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, or hand delivered to the Office of the Copyright General Counsel, Room 403, James Madison Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20540.

(d) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, all parties to the proceeding shall have 30 days from receipt of a proper statement of cost in which to tender payment to the arbitrators, unless otherwise directed by the panel. Payment should be in the form of a money order, check, bank draft, or electronic fund transfer.

(e) In the case of a distribution proceeding, the Library of Congress shall reimburse the arbitrators from the royalty fees collected under title 17 of the United States Code which are the subject of the CARP proceeding. Payment of approved costs shall be made within 30 days of the receipt of a proper statement of cost in the form of an electronic fund transfer in accordance with the regulations of the Library of Congress.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 64 FR 25201, May 11, 1999; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 25201, May 11, 1999, revised this section, effective June 10, 1999; 64 FR 36574, 36575, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (e), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 251.55 Post-panel motions.

(a) Any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian of Congress a petition to modify or set aside the determination of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel within 14 days of the Librarian's receipt of the panel's report of its determination. Such petition shall state the reasons for modification or reversal of the panel's determination, and shall include applicable sections of the party's proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.

(b) Replies to petitions to modify or set aside shall be filed within 14 days of the filing of such petitions.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23990, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.56 Order of the Librarian of Congress.

(a) After the filing of post-panel motions, see § 251.55, but within 90 days from receipt of the report of the determination of a panel, the Librarian of Congress shall issue an order accepting the panel's determination or substituting the Librarian's own determination. The Librarian shall adopt the determination of the panel unless he or she finds that the determination is arbitrary or contrary to the applicable provisions of 17 U.S.C.

(b) If the Librarian substitutes his or her own determination, the Librarian shall have an additional 30 days to issue the order which shall set forth the reasons for not accepting the panel's determination, and shall set forth the facts which the Librarian found relevant to his or her determination.

(c) The Librarian shall cause a copy of the order to be delivered to all parties participating in the proceeding. The Librarian shall also publish the order, and the determination of the panel, in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, amended paragraphs (a) and (b), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 251.57 Effective date of order.

An order of determination issued by the Librarian under § 251.56 shall become effective 30 days following its publication in the Federal Register, unless an appeal has been filed pursuant to § 251.58 and notice of the appeal has been served on all parties to the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.58 Judicial review.

(a) Any order of determination issued by the Librarian of Congress under § 251.55 may be appealed, by any aggrieved party who would be bound by the determination, to the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit, within 30 days after publication of the order in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) If no appeal is brought within the 30-day period, the order of determination of the Librarian is final, and shall take effect as set forth in the order.

(c) The pendency of any appeal shall not relieve persons obligated to make royalty payments under 17 U.S.C. 111, 112, 114, 115, 116, 118, 119, or 1003, and who would be affected by the determination on appeal, from depositing statements of account and royalty fees by those sections.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 61 FR 37213, 37215, July 17, 1996; 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998, amended paragraph (c), effective Dec. 28, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (b), effective July 7, 1999.]

SUBPART F --RATE ADJUSTMENT PROCEEDINGS

§ 251.60 Scope.

This subpart governs only those proceedings dealing with royalty rate adjustments affecting cable (17 U.S.C. 111), the making of ephemeral recordings (17 U.S.C. 112), certain digital audio transmissions (17 U.S.C. 114), the manufacture and distribution of phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries (17 U.S.C. 115), performances on coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes) (17 U.S.C. 116), noncommercial educational broadcasting (17 U.S.C.

118) and satellite carriers (17 U.S.C. 119). Those provisions of subpart E of this part generally regulating the conduct of proceedings shall apply to rate adjustment proceedings, unless they are inconsistent with the specific provisions of this subpart.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 37213, 37215, July 17, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998, amended this section, effective Dec. 28, 1998.]

§ 251.61 Commencement of adjustment proceedings.

(a) In the case of cable, ephemeral recordings, certain digital audio transmissions, phonorecords, digital phonorecord deliveries, and coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes), rate adjustment proceedings shall commence with the filing of a petition by an interested party according to the following schedule:

(1) Cable: During 1995, and each subsequent fifth calendar year.

(2) Ephemeral Recordings: During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in 1999, 2000, and at 2-year intervals thereafter, or as otherwise agreed to by the parties.

(3) Digital Audio Transmissions: For preexisting digital subscription transmission services and preexisting satellite digital audio radio services:

(i) During a 60-day period commencing on July 1, 2001 and at 5-year intervals thereafter, or

(ii) During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in a proceeding to set reasonable terms and rates for a new type of subscription digital audio transmission service; and for an eligible nonsubscription service or a new subscription service:

(A) During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in 1999,

(B) During a 60-day period commencing on July 1, 2000, and at 2-year intervals thereafter,

(C) During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in a proceeding to set reasonable terms and rates for a new type of eligible nonsubscription service or new subscription service, or

(D) As otherwise agreed to by the parties.

(4) Phonorecords: During 1997 and each subsequent tenth calendar year.

(5) Digital Phonorecord Deliveries: During 1997 and each subsequent fifth calendar year, or as otherwise agreed to by the parties.

(6) Coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes): Within one year of the expiration or termination of a negotiated license authorized by 17 U.S.C. 116.

(b) Cable rate adjustment proceedings may also be commenced by the filing of a petition, according to 17 U.S.C. 801(b)(2)(B) and (C), if the Federal Communications Commission amends certain of its rules with respect to the carriage by cable systems of broadcast signals, or with respect to syndicated and sports programming exclusivity.

(c) In the case of noncommercial educational broadcasting, a petition is not necessary for the commencement of proceedings. Proceedings commence with the publication of a notice of the initiation of arbitration proceedings in the Federal Register on June 30, 1997, and at five year intervals thereafter.

(d) In the case of the satellite carrier compulsory license, rate adjustment proceedings shall commence on January 1, 1997, in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 119(c)(3)(A), for satellite carriers who are not parties to a voluntary agreement filed with the Copyright Office in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 119(c)(2).

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 37213, 37215, July 17, 1996; 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 65555, 65556, Nov. 27, 1998, revised paragraph (a), effective Dec. 28, 1998.]

§ 251.62 Content of petition.

(a) In the case of a petition for rate adjustment proceedings for cable, ephemeral recordings, certain digital audio transmissions, phonorecords, digital phonorecord deliveries,and coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes), the petition shall detail the petitioner's interest in the royalty rate sufficiently to permit the Librarian of Congress to determine whether the petitioner has a "significant interest" in the matter. The petition must also identify the extent to which the petitioner's interest is shared by other owners or users; owners or users with similar interests may file a petition jointly.

(b) In the case of a petition for rate adjustment proceedings as the result of a Federal Communications Commission rule change, the petition shall also set forth the actions of the Federal Communications Commission on which the petition for a rate adjustment is based.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 61 FR 37213, 37216, July 17, 1996; 63 FR 65555, 65557, Nov. 27, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 65555, 65557, Nov. 27, 1998, amended paragraph (a), effective Dec. 28, 1998.]

§ 251.63 Consideration of petition; settlements.

(a) To allow time for the parties to settle their differences concerning cable, phonorecord, and jukebox rate adjustments, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of the petition under § 251.62 and before the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(2)(i), designate a 30-day period for negotiation of a settlement. The Librarian shall cause notice of the dates for that period to be published in the Federal Register.

(b) In the case of a settlement among the parties to a proceeding, the Librarian may, upon the request of the parties, submit the agreed upon rate to the public in a notice-and-comment proceeding. The Librarian may adopt the rate embodied in the proposed settlement without convening an arbitration panel, provided that no opposing comment is received by the Librarian from a party with an intent to participate in a CARP proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 37213, 37216, July 17, 1996; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996, amended paragraph (a), effective Jan. 2, 1997.]

§ 251.64 Disposition of petition; initiation of arbitration proceeding.

After the end of the 45-day precontroversy discovery period, and after the Librarian has ruled on all motions and objections filed under § 251.45, the Librarian will determine the sufficiency of the petition, including, where appropriate, whether one or more of the petitioners' interests are "significant." If the Librarian determines that a petition is significant, he or she will cause to be published in the Federal Register a declaration of a controversy accompanied by a notice of initiation of an arbitration proceeding. The same declaration and notice of initiation shall be made for noncommercial educational broadcasting and the satellite carrier compulsory license in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 118 and 119, respectively. Such notice shall, to the extent feasible, describe the nature, general structure, and schedule of the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended this section, effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 251.65 Deduction of costs of rate adjustment proceedings.

In accordance with 17 U.S.C. 802(h)(1), the Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights may assess the reasonable costs incurred by the Library of Congress and the Copyright Office as a result of the rate adjustment proceedings directly to the parties participating in the proceedings.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

SUBPART G --ROYALTY FEE DISTRIBUTION PROCEEDINGS

§ 251.70 Scope.

This subpart governs only those proceedings dealing with distribution of royalty payments deposited with the Register of Copyrights for cable (17 U.S.C. 111), satellite carrier (17 U.S.C. 119), and digital audio recording devices and media (17 U.S.C. chapter 10). Those provisions of subpart E generally regulating the conduct of proceedings shall apply to royalty fee distribution proceedings, unless they are inconsistent with the specific provisions of this subpart.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23991, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.71 Commencement of proceedings.

(a) Cable. In the case of royalty fees collected under the cable compulsory license (17 U.S.C. 111), any person claiming to be entitled to such fees must file a claim with the Copyright Office during the month of July each year in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

(b) Satellite carriers. In the case of royalty fees collected under the satellite carrier compulsory license (17 U.S.C. 119), any person claiming to be entitled to such fees must file a claim with the Copyright Office during the month of July each year in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

(c) Digital audio recording devices and media. In the case of royalty payments for the importation and distribution in the United States, or the manufacture and distribution in the United States, of any digital recording device or medium, any person claiming to be entitled to such payments must file a claim with the Copyright Office during the month of January or February each year in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994]

§ 251.72 Declaration of controversy: Initiation of arbitration proceeding.

If the Librarian determines that a controversy exists among the claimants to either cable, satellite carrier, or digital audio recording devices and media royalties, the Librarian shall publish in the Federal Register a declaration of controversy along with a notice of initiation of an arbitration proceeding. Such notice shall, to the extent feasible, describe the nature, general structure and schedule of the proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994; redesignated at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.73 Deduction of costs of distribution proceedings.

The Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights may, before any distributions of royalty fees are made, deduct the reasonable costs incurred by the Library of Congress and the Copyright Office as a result of the distribution proceeding, from the relevant royalty pool.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994; redesignated at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

## PART 252 --FILING OF CLAIMS TO CABLE ROYALTY FEES

§ 252.1 Scope.

This part prescribes procedures under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4)(A), whereby parties claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 252.2 Time of filing.

During the month of July each year, any party claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions of one or more of its works during the preceding calendar year shall file a claim to such fees with the Copyright Office. No royalty fees shall be distributed to a party for secondary transmissions during the specified period unless such party has timely filed a claim to such fees. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994]

§ 252.3 Content of Claims.

(a) Single claim. A claim filed on behalf of a single copyright owner of a work or works secondarily transmitted by a cable system shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name and address of the copyright owner entitled to claim the royalty fees.

(2) A general statement of the nature of the copyright owner's work or works, and identification of at least one secondary transmission by a cable system of such work or works establishing a basis for the claim.

(3) The name, telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the person or entity filing the single claim.

(4) An original signature of the copyright owner or of a duly authorized representative of the copyright owner.

(b) Joint claim. A claim filed on behalf of more than one copyright owner whose works have been secondarily transmitted by a cable system shall include the following information:

(1) A list including the full legal name and address of each copyright owner to the joint claim entitled to claim royalty fees.

(2) A concise statement of the authorization for the person or entity filing the joint claim. For this purpose, a performing rights society shall not be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate authorizations, apart from their standard membership affiliate agreements, or to list the name of each of its members or affiliates in the joint claim as required by paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(3) A general statement of the nature of the copyright owners' works and identification of at least one secondary transmission of one of the copyright owners' works by a cable system establishing a basis for the joint claim and the identification of the copyright owner of each work so identified.

(4) The name, telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the person filing the joint claim.

(5) Original signatures of the copyright owners to the joint claim or of a duly authorized representative or representatives of the copyright owners.

(c) In the event that the legal name and/or address of the copyright owner entitled to royalties or the person or entity filing the claim changes after the filing of the claim, the Copyright Office shall be notified of the change. If the good faith efforts of the Copyright Office to contact the copyright owner or person or entity filing the claim are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 66 FR 29700, 29703, June 1, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 29700, 29703, June 1, 2001, revised this section, effective July 1, 2001.]

§ 252.4 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant's agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, Room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of July; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a July U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which July 31 falls on a Saturday, Sunday, holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in August, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in August, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after July 31, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a July date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30635, June 5, 1998; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (a)(1), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 252.5 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to cable royalty fees.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

## PART 253 --USE OF CERTAIN COPYRIGHTED WORKS IN CONNECTION WITH NONCOMMERCIAL EDUCATIONAL BROADCASTING

§ 253.1 General.

This part 304 establishes terms and rates of royalty payments for certain activities using published nondramatic musical works and published pictorial, graphic and sculptural works during a period beginning on January 1, 1998 and ending on December 31, 2002. Upon compliance with 17 U.S.C. 118, and the terms and rates of this part, a public broadcasting entity may engage in the activities with respect to such works set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d).

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992, as redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 5, 1994; 63 FR 2142, 2144, Jan. 14, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 2142, 2144, Jan. 14, 1998, substituted "1998" for "1993" and "2002" for "1997" in the first sentence, effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 253.2 Definition of public broadcasting entity.

As used in this part, the term public broadcasting entity means a noncommercial educational broadcast station as defined in section 397 of title 47 and any nonprofit institution or organization engaged in the activities described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(2).

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992, as redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 253.3 Performance of musical compositions in the repertory of ASCAP and BMI by PBS and NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d).

(a) Scope. This section shall apply to the performance during a period beginning January 1, 1998, and ending on December 31, 2002, by the Public Broadcasting Service (PBS), National Public Radio (NPR) and other public broadcasting entities (as defined in § 253.2) engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d) of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions in the repertory of the American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers (ASCAP) and Broadcast Music, Inc. (BMI), except for public broadcasting entities covered by § § 253.5 and 253.6.

(b) Royalty rates. The following annual royalty rates shall apply to the performance of published nondramatic musical compositions within the scope of this section: $ 3,320,000 to ASCAP, and $ 2,123,000 to BMI.

(c) Payment of royalties. The royalty payments specified in paragraph (b) of this section shall be made in two equal payments on July 31 and December 31 of each calendar year, except for 1998, in which year the royalty payments shall also be made in two equal installments, the first of which shall be made within thirty (30) days from the date the Librarian of Congress renders his decision in In the Matter of Adjustment of the Rates for Noncommercial Educational Broadcasting Compulsory License, Docket No. 96-6 CARP NCBRA, and the second of which shall be made on December 31, 1998, subject to 17 U.S.C. 802(g).

(d) Identification of stations. PBS, NPR and/or the Corporation for Public Broadcasting (CPB) shall annually for the years 1999-2002, by not later than January 31 of each such calendar year, and in 1998, within thirty (30) days of the date the Librarian of Congress renders the decision in In the Matter of Adjustment of the Rates for Noncommercial Educational Broadcasting Compulsory License, Docket No. 96-6 CARP NCBRA, furnish to ASCAP and BMI a complete list of all public broadcasting entities within the scope of this section, as of January 1 of that calendar year. Such lists shall include:

(1) A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as television broadcast stations that are associated with PBS ("PBS Stations"), and the PBS licensee with which each PBS Station is associated ("PBS Licensees"), identifying which PBS Licensees are Single Feed Licensees and which are Multiple Feed Licensees, and which PBS Stations or groups of stations are Independently Programmed Stations, as those terms are defined in paragraph (e)(2) of this section;

(2) A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as television broadcast stations that are not associated with PBS ("Non-PBS Stations");

(3) A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as radio broadcast stations that are associated with NPR ("NPR Stations"), which list shall designate which NPR Stations have six (6) or more full-time employees and which NPR Stations repeat one hundred (100) percent of the programming of another NPR Station; and

(4) A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as radio broadcast stations that are not associated with NPR ("Non-NPR Stations"), which list shall designate which Non-NPR Stations have six (6) or more full-time employees.

(5) For purposes of this section, Non-PBS Stations and Non-NPR Stations shall include, but not be limited to, public broadcasting entities operating as television and radio broadcast stations which receive or are eligible to receive general operational support from CPB pursuant to the Public Broadcasting Act of 1967, as amended.

(e) Records of use. (1) PBS and NPR shall maintain and, within thirty-one (31) days after the end of each calendar quarter, furnish to ASCAP and BMI copies of their standard cue sheets listing the nondramatic performances of musical compositions on PBS and NPR programs during the preceding quarter (including to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable by PBS and NPR the title, author, publisher, type of use, and manner of performance thereof). PBS and NPR will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such cue sheets. In addition, to the extent the information is reasonably obtainable, PBS shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI the PBS programming feed schedules including, but not limited to, the PBS National Programming Service schedule. PBS and NPR shall make a good faith expeditious effort to provide the data discussed in this paragraph in electronic format where possible.

(2) PBS Licensees shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by a particular PBS Station owned by such PBS Licensee showing the title, author, and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable; provided, however, that PBS Licensees shall not be responsible for providing cue sheets for programs for which cue sheets have

already been provided by PBS to ASCAP and BMI. PBS Licensees will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In the case where a PBS Licensee operates only one (1) or more PBS Stations each of which broadcasts simultaneously or on a delayed basis all or at least eighty-five (85) percent of the same programming (a "Single Feed Licensee"), that Single Feed Licensee will not be obligated to furnish music use reports to either ASCAP or to BMI for more than one of its PBS Stations in each calendar year. In the case where a PBS Licensee operates two (2) or more PBS Stations which do not broadcast all or at least eighty-five (85) percent of the same programming on a simultaneous or delayed basis (a "Multiple Feed Licensee"), that Multiple Feed Licensee may be required to furnish a music use report for each PBS Station or group of stations which broadcasts less than eighty-five (85) percent of the same programming as that aired by any other PBS Station or group of stations operated by that Multiple Feed Licensee (such station or group of stations being referred to as an "Independently Programmed Station") in each calendar year. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from PBS Licensees covering a total number of PBS Stations equal to no more than fifty (50) percent of the total of the number of PBS Single Feed Licensees plus the number of Independently Programmed Stations operated by Multiple Feed Licensees; provided, however, that ASCAP and BMI shall be entitled to receive music use reports covering not less than ninety (90) PBS Stations in any given calendar year. Subject to the limitations set forth above, PBS Stations shall be obligated to furnish to ASCAP and BMI such music use reports for each station for a period of no more than seven days in each calendar year.

(3) Non-PBS Stations shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by such Non-PBS Stations showing the title, author and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable. Non-PBS Stations will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from no more than fifty (50) percent of Non-PBS Stations. Subject to the limitations set forth above, Non-PBS Stations shall be obligated to furnish to ASCAP and BMI such music use reports for each station for a period of no more than seven days in each calendar year.

(4) NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by such NPR Station showing the title, author and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable; provided, however, that NPR Stations shall not be responsible for providing cue sheets for programs for which cue sheets have already been provided by NPR to ASCAP and BMI. NPR Stations will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from no more than fifty (50) percent of NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the number of NPR Stations with six (6) or more employees (from which ASCAP and BMI shall initially designate and request reports) falls below twenty-five (25) percent of the total number of all NPR Stations, then ASCAP and BMI may each request reports from additional NPR Stations, regardless of the number of employees, so that ASCAP and BMI shall each be entitled to receive music use reports from not less than twenty-five (25) percent of all NPR Stations. NPR Stations shall be obligated to furnish music use reports for each station for a period of up to one week in each calendar year to ASCAP and BMI.

(5) Non-NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by such Non-NPR Station showing the title, author and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable. Non-NPR Stations will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from no more than fifty (50) percent of the Non-NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the number of Non-NPR Stations with six (6) or more employees (from which ASCAP and BMI shall initially designate and request reports) falls below twenty-five (25) percent of the total number of all Non-NPR Stations, then ASCAP and BMI may each request reports from additional Non-NPR Stations, regardless of the number of employees, so that ASCAP and BMI shall each be entitled to receive music use reports from not less than twenty-five (25) percent of all Non-NPR Stations. Non-NPR Stations shall be obligated to furnish music use reports for each station for a period of up to one week in each calendar year to ASCAP and BMI.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 49823, 49836, Sept. 18, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 49823, 49836, Sept. 18, 1998, added this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (e)(4), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 253.4 Performance of musical compositions by PBS, NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d).

The following schedule of rates and terms shall apply to the performance by PBS, NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d) of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions, except for public broadcasting entities covered by § § 253.5 and 253.6, and except for compositions which are the subject of voluntary license agreements, or compositions in the repertories of ASCAP, BMI or SESAC which are licensed on terms and conditions established by a duly empowered Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel pursuant to the procedures set forth in subchapter B of 37 CFR, part 251.

(a) Determination of royalty rates. (1) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of PBS:

1998-2002 -- $ 211.53

(2) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a PBS program:

1998-2002 -- $ 53.59

(3) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of a station of PBS:

1998-2002 -- $ 18.08

(4) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a program of a station of PBS:

1998-2002 -- $ 3.81

(5) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of NPR:

1998-2002 -- $ 21.44

(6) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in an NPR program:

1998-2002 -- $ 5.20

(7) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of a station of NPR:

1998-2002 -- $ 1.52

(8) For the performance of such work as background or theme music in a program of a station of NPR:

1998-2002 -- $ .54

(9) For the purposes of this schedule the rate for the performance of theme music in an entire series shall be double the single program theme rate.

(10) In the event the work is first performed in a program of a station of PBS or NPR, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS or NPR, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for a program of a station of PBS or NPR, respectively, and the rate specified in this section for a PBS or NPR program, respectively.

(b) Payment of royalty rate. The required royalty rate shall be paid to each known copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(c) Records of use. PBS and NPR shall, upon the request of a copyright owner of a published musical work who believes a musical composition of such owner has been performed under the terms of this schedule, permit such copyright owner a reasonable opportunity to examine their standard cue sheets listing the nondramatic performances of musical compositions on PBS and NPR programs. Any local PBS and NPR station that shall be required by the provisions of any voluntary license agreement with ASCAP or BMI covering the license period January 1, 1998, to December 31, 2002, to prepare a music use report shall, upon request of a copyright owner who believes a musical composition of such owner has been performed under the terms of this schedule, permit such copyright owner to examine the report.

(d) Terms of use. The fees provided in this schedule for the performance of a musical work in a program shall cover performances of such work in such program for a period of three years following the first performance.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992, as redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 2142, 2144, Jan. 14, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 2142, 2144, Jan. 14, 1998, revised the introductory text, paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(8), and the last sentence of paragraph (c), effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 253.5 Performance of musical compositions by public broadcasting entities licensed to colleges and universities.

(a) Scope. This section applies to the performance of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions by noncommercial radio stations which are licensed to colleges, universities, or other nonprofit educational institutions and which are not affiliated with National Public Radio.

(b) Voluntary license agreements. Notwithstanding the schedule of rates and terms established in this section, the rates and terms of any license agreements entered into by copyright owners and colleges, universities, and other nonprofit educational institutions concerning the performance of copyrighted musical compositions, including performances by noncommercial radio stations, shall apply in lieu of the rates and terms of this section.

(c) Royalty rate. A public broadcasting entity within the scope of this section may perform published nondramatic musical compositions subject to the following schedule of royalty rates:

(1) For all such compositions in the repertory of ASCAP, $ 244 annually.

(2) For all such compositions in the repertory of BMI, $ 244 annually.

(3) For all such compositions in the repertory of SESAC, $ 66 annually.

(4) For the performance of any other such compositions: $ 1.

(d) Payment of royalty rate. The public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty rate to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC not later than January 31 of each year.

(e) Records of use. A public broadcasting entity subject to this section shall furnish to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC, upon request, a music-use report during one week of each calendar year. ASCAP, BMI and SESAC shall not in any one calendar year request more than 10 stations to furnish such reports.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; 58 FR 63294, Dec. 1, 1993; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 60901, Nov. 29, 1994; 60 FR 61654, 61655, Dec. 1, 1995; 61 FR 60613, Nov. 29, 1996; 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998; 63 FR 66042, Dec. 1, 1998; 64 FR 67187, 67188, Dec. 1, 1999; 65 FR 75167, Dec. 1, 2000, 66 FR 59698, Nov. 30, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 67187, 67188, Dec. 1, 1999, revised paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(3), effective Jan. 1, 2000; 65 FR 75167, Dec. 1, 2000, revised paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(3), effective Jan. 1, 2001.]

§ 253.6 Performance of musical compositions by other public broadcasting entities.

(a) Scope. This section applies to the performance of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions by radio stations not licensed to colleges, universities, or other nonprofit educational institutions and which are not affiliated with National Public Radio.

(b) Voluntary license agreements. Notwithstanding the schedule of rates and terms established in this section, the rates and terms of any license agreements entered into by copyright owners and noncommercial radio stations within the scope of this section concerning the performance of copyrighted musical compositions, including performances by noncommercial radio stations, shall apply in lieu of the rates and terms of this section.

(c) Royalty rate. A public broadcasting entity within the scope of this section may perform published nondramatic musical compositions subject to the following schedule of royalty rates:

(1) For all such compositions in the repertory of ASCAP, in 1998, $ 375; in 1999, $ 390; in 2000, $ 405; in 2001, $ 420; in 2002, $ 440.

(2) For all such compositions in the repertory of BMI, in 1998, $ 375; in 1999, $ 390; in 2000, $ 405; in 2001, $ 420; in 2002, $ 440.

(3) For all such compositions in the repertory of SESAC, in 1998, $ 78; in 1999, $ 82; in 2000, $ 86; in 2001, $ 89; in 2002, $ 92.

(4) For the performance of any other such compositions, in 1998 through 2002, $ 1.

(d) Payment of royalty rate. The public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty rate to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC not later than January 31 of each year.

(e) Records of use. A public broadcasting entity subject to this section shall furnish to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC, upon request, a music-use report during one week of each calendar year. ASCAP, BMI and SESAC each shall not in any one calender year request more than 5 stations to furnish such reports.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995; 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998, revised paragraph (c), effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 253.7 Recording rights, rates and terms.

(a) Scope. This section establishes rates and terms for the recording of nondramatic performances and displays of musical works, other than compositions subject to voluntary license agreements, or compositions represented by the Harry Fox Agency, Inc., SESAC, and/or the National Music Publishers Association and which are licensed on terms and conditions established by a duly empowered Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel pursuant to the procedures set forth in this subchapter, on and for the radio and television programs of public broadcasting entities, whether or not in synchronization or timed relationship with the visual or aural content, and for the making, reproduction, and distribution of copies and phonorecords of public broadcasting programs containing such nondramatic performances and displays of musical works solely for the purpose of transmission by public broadcasting entities. The rates and terms established in this schedule include the making of the reproductions described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(3).

(b) Royalty rate. (1) (i) For uses described in paragraph (a) of this section of a musical work in a PBS-distributed program, the royalty fees shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in that PBS-distributed program:

| | 1998-2002 |
|---|---|
| Feature | $ 106.04 |
| Concert feature (per minute) | 31.84 |
| Background | 53.59 |
| Theme: | |
| Single program or first series program | 53.59 |
| Other series program | 21.75 |

(ii) For such uses other than in a PBS-distributed television program, the royalty fee shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in that program:

| | 1998-2002 |
|---|---|
| Feature | $ 8.76 |
| Concert feature (per minute) | 2.30 |
| Background | 3.81 |
| Theme: | |
| Single program or first series program | 3.81 |
| Other series program | 1.52 |

(iii) In the event the work is first recorded other than in a PBS-distributed program, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for other than a PBS-distributed program and the rate specified in this section for a PBS-distributed program.

(2) For uses licensed herein of a musical work in a NPR program, the royalty fees shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in any NPR program distributed by NPR. For purposes of this schedule "National Public Radio" programs include all programs produced in whole or in part by NPR, or by any NPR station or organization under contract with NPR.

| | 1998-2002 |
|---|---|
| Feature | $ 11.48 |
| Concert feature (per half hour) | 16.85 |
| Background | 5.75 |
| Theme: | |
| Single program or first series program | $ 5.75 |
| Other series program | 2.29 |

(3) For the purposes of this schedule, a "Concert Feature" shall be deemed to be the nondramatic presentation in a program of all or part of a symphony, concerto, or other serious work originally written for concert performance or the nondramatic presentation in a program of portions of a serious work originally written for opera performance.

(4) For such uses other than in a NPR-produced radio program:

| | 1998-2002 |
|---|---|
| Feature | $ .74 |
| Feature (concert) (per half hour) | 1.54 |
| Background | .37 |

(5) The schedule of fees covers broadcast use for a period of three years following the first broadcast. Succeeding broadcast use periods will require the following additional payment: second three-year period -- 50 percent; each three-year period thereafter -- 25 percent; provided that a 100 percent additional payment prior to the expiration of the first three-year period will cover broadcast use during all subsequent broadcast use periods without limitation. Such succeeding uses which are subsequent to December 31, 2002, shall be subject to the royalty rates established in this schedule.

(c) Payment of royalty rates. The required royalty rates shall be paid to each known copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(d) Records of use. (1) Maintenance of cue sheets. PBS and its stations, NPR, or other television public broadcasting entities shall maintain and make available for examination pursuant to subsection (e) copies of their standard cue sheets or summaries of same listing the recording of the musical works of such copyright owners.

(2) Content of cue sheets or summaries. Such cue sheets or summaries shall include:

(i) The title, composer and author to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable.

(ii) The type of use and manner of performance thereof in each case.

(iii) For Concert Feature music, the actual recorded time period on the program, plus all distribution and broadcast information available to the public broadcasting entity.

(e) Filing of use reports with the Copyright Office. Deposit of cue sheets or summaries. PBS and its stations, NPR, or other television public broadcasting entity shall deposit with the Copyright Office copies of their standard music cue sheets or summaries of same (which may be in the form of hard copy of computerized reports) listing the recording pursuant to this schedule of the musical works of copyright owners. Such cue sheets or summaries shall be deposited not later than July 31 of each calendar year for recordings during the first six months of the calendar year and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for recordings during the second six months of the preceding calendar year. PBS and NPR shall maintain at their offices copies of all standard music cue sheets from which such music use reports are prepared. Such music cue sheets shall be furnished to the Copyright Office upon its request and also shall be available during regular business hours at the offices of PBS or NPR for examination by a copyright owner who believes a musical composition of such owner has been recorded pursuant to this schedule.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1993; 58 FR 7051, Feb. 4, 1993; 58 FR 8820, Feb. 17, 1993; 58 FR 67691, Dec. 22, 1993; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998; 63 FR 30634, 30635, 30636, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998, amended this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998; 63 FR 30634, 30635, 30636, June 5, 1998, amended paragraph (e), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 253.8 Terms and rates of royalty payments for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.

(a) Scope. This section establishes rates and terms for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works by public broadcasting entities for the activities described in 17 U.S.C. 118. The rates and terms established in this schedule include the making of the reproductions described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(3).

(b) Royalty rate. (1) The following schedule of rates shall apply to the use of works within the scope of this section:

(i) For such uses in a PBS-distributed program:

Click here to view image.

(ii) For such uses in other than PBS-distributed programs:

Click here to view image.

For the purposes of this schedule the rate for the thematic use of a work in an entire series shall be double the single program theme rate. In the event the work is first used other than in a PBS-distributed program, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for other than a PBS-distributed program and the rate specified in this section for a PBS distributed program.

(2) "Featured display" for purposes of this schedule means a full-screen or substantially full-screen display appearing on the screen for more than three seconds. Any display less than full-screen or substantially full-screen, or full-screen for three seconds or less, is deemed to be a "background or montage display".

(3) "Thematic use" is the utilization of the works of one or more artists where the works constitute the central theme of the program or convey a story line.

(4) "Display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced" means a transparency or other reproduction of an underlying work of fine art.

(c) Payment of royalty rate. PBS or other public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty fees to each copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(d) Records of use. (1) PBS and its stations or other public broadcasting entity shall maintain and furnish either to copyright owners, or to the offices of generally recognized organizations representing the copyright owners of pictorial, graphic and sculptural works, copies of their standard lists containing the pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works displayed on their programs. Such notice shall include the name of the copyright owner, if known, the specific source from which the work was taken, a description of the work used, the title of the program on which the work was used, and the date of the original broadcast of the program.

(2) Such listings shall be furnished not later than July 31 of each calendar year for displays during the first six months of the calendar year, and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for displays during the second six months of the preceding calendar year.

(e) Filing of use reports with the Copyright Office. (1) PBS and its stations or other public broadcasting entity shall deposit with the Copyright Office copies of their standard lists containing the pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works displayed on their programs. Such notice shall include the name of the copyright owner, if known, the specific source from which the work was taken, a description of the work used, the title of the program on which the work was used, and the date of the original broadcast of the program.

(2) Such listings shall be furnished not later than July 31 of each calendar year for displays during the first six months of the calendar year, and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for displays during the second six months of the preceding calendar year.

(f) Terms of use. (1) The rates of this schedule are for unlimited broadcast use for a period of three years from the date of the first broadcast use of the work under this schedule. Succeeding broadcast use periods will require the following additional payment: Second three-year period -- 50 percent; each three-year period thereafter -- 25 percent; provided that a 100 percent additional payment prior to the expiration of the first three-year period will cover broadcast use during all subsequent broadcast use periods without limitation. Such succeeding uses which are subsequent to December 31, 2002, shall be subject to the rates established in this schedule.

(2) Pursuant to the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 118 (f), nothing in this schedule shall be construed to permit, beyond the limits of fair use as provided in 17 U.S.C. 107, the production of a transmission program drawn to any substantial extent from a published compilation of pictorial, graphic, or sculptural works.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; 58 FR 7051, Feb. 4, 1993; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998, revised paragraph (b)(1) and the last sentence of paragraph (f)(1), effective Jan. 1, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (b)(1), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 253.9 Unknown copyright owners.

If PBS and its stations, NPR and its stations, or other public broadcasting entity is not aware of the identity of, or unable to locate, a copyright owner who is entitled to receive a royalty payment under this part, they shall retain the required fee in a segregated trust account for a period of three years from the date of the required payment. No claim to such royalty fees shall be valid after the expiration of the three year period. Public broadcasting entities may establish a joint trust fund for the purposes of this section. Public broadcasting entities shall make available to the Copyright Office, upon request, information concerning fees deposited in trust funds.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 253.10 Cost of living adjustment.

(a) On December 1, 1998, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the Federal Register a notice of the change in the cost of living as determined by the Consumer Price Index (all consumers, all items) during the period from the most recent Index published prior to December 1, 1997, to the most recent Index published prior to December 1, 1998. On each December 1 thereafter the Librarian of Congress shall publish a notice of the change in the cost of living during the period from the most recent index published prior to the previous notice, to the most recent Index published prior to December 1, of that year.

(b) On the same date of the notices published pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the Federal Register a revised schedule of rates for § 253.5 which shall adjust those royalty amounts established in dollar amounts according to the change in the cost of living determined as provided in paragraph (a) of this section. Such royalty rates shall be fixed at the nearest dollar.

(c) The adjusted schedule of rates for § 253.5 shall become effective thirty days after publication in the Federal Register.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 2142, 2145, Jan. 14, 1998, revised the first sentence of paragraph (a), effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 253.11 Notice of restrictions on use of reproductions of transmission programs.

Any public broadcasting entity which, pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 118, supplies a reproduction of a transmission program to governmental bodies or nonprofit institutions shall include with each copy of the reproduction a warning notice stating in substance that the reproductions may be used for a period of not more than seven days from the specified date of transmission, that the reproductions must be destroyed by the user before or at the end of such period, and that a failure to fully comply with these terms shall subject the body or institution to the remedies for infringement of copyright.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 5, 1994]

# PART 254 --ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY RATE FOR COIN-OPERATED PHONORECORD PLAYERS

§ 254.1 General.

This part 254 establishes the compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players beginning on January 1, 1982, in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 116.

**Legislative History**

[45 FR 890, Jan. 5, 1981; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 254.2 Definition of coin-operated phonorecord player.

As used in this part, the term coin-operated phonorecord player is a machine or device that:

(a) Is employed solely for the performance of nondramatic musical works by means of phonorecords upon being activated by insertion of coins, currency, tokens, or other monetary units or their equivalent;

(b) Is located in an establishment making no direct or indirect charge for admission;

(c) Is accompanied by a list of the titles of all the musical works available for performance on it, which list is affixed to the phonorecord player or posted in the establishment in a prominent position where it can be readily examined by the public; and

(d) Affords a choice of works available for performance and permits the choice to be made by the patrons of the establishment in which it is located.

**Legislative History**

[45 FR 890, Jan. 5, 1981; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 254.3 Compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players.

(a) Commencing January 1, 1982, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $ 25.

(b) Commencing January 1, 1984, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $ 50.

(c) Commencing January 1, 1987, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $ 63.

(d) If performances are made available on a particular coin-operated phonorecord player for the first time after July 1 of any year, the compulsory license fee for the remainder of that year shall be one half of the annual rate of (a), (b), or (c) of this section, whichever is applicable.

(e) Commencing January 1, 1990, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player is suspended through December 31, 1999, or until such earlier or later time as the March, 1990 license agreement between AMOA and ASCAP/BMI/SESAC is terminated.

**Legislative History**

[51 FR 27537, Aug. 1, 1986, as amended at 55 FR 28197, July 10, 1990; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

## PART 255 --ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY PAYABLE UNDER COMPULSORY LICENSE FOR MAKING AND DISTRIBUTING PHONORECORDS

§ 255.1 General.

This part 255 adjusts the rates of royalties payable under the compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries, embodying nondramatic musical works, under 17 U.S.C. 115.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 891, Jan. 5, 1981; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 60 FR 61655, 61657, Dec. 1, 1995]

§ 255.2 Royalty payable under compulsory license.

With respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord, the royalty payable shall be either four cents, or three-quarters of one cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, for every phonorecord made and distributed on or after July 1, 1981, subject to adjustment pursuant to § 255.3.

**Legislative History**

[46 FR 891, Jan. 5, 1981, as amended at 46 FR 62268, Dec. 23, 1981; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 255.3 Adjustment of Royalty Rate.

(a) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1983, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 4.25 cents, or 0.8 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (b) through (m) of this section.

(b) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after July 1, 1984, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 4.5 cents, or 0.85 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (c) through (m) of this section.

(c) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1986, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.0 cents, or 0.95 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (d) through (m) of this section.

(d) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1988, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.25 cents, or 1.0 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (e) through (m) of this section.

(e) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1990, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.7 cents, or 1.1 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (f) through (m) of this section.

(f) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1992, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.25 cents, or 1.2 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (g) through (m) of this section.

(g) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1994, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.6 cents, or 1.25 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (h) through (m) of this section.

(h) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1996, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.95 cents, or 1.3 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (i) through (m) of this section.

(i) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1998, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 7.1 cents, or 1.35 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (j) through (m) of this section.

(j) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2000, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 7.55 cents, or 1.45 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (k) through (m) of this section.

(k) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2002, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 8.0 cents, or 1.55 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (l) through (m) of this section.

(l) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2004, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 8.5 cents, or 1.65 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraph (m) of this section.

(m) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2006, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 9.1 cents, or 1.75 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger.

**Legislative History**

[56 FR 56158, Nov. 1, 1991; 58 FR 58283, Nov. 1, 1993, as corrected at 58 FR 60787, Nov. 18, 1993; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 33201, June 28, 1994, as corrected and revised at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995; 60 FR 55458, 55459, Nov. 1, 1995; 63 FR 7288, 7289, Feb. 13, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 7288, 7289, Feb. 13, 1998, amended this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 255.4 Definition of digital phonorecord delivery.

A "digital phonorecord delivery" is each individual delivery of a phonorecord by digital transmission of a sound recording which results in a specifically identifiable reproduction by or for any transmission recipient of a phonorecord of that sound recording, regardless of whether the digital transmission is also a public performance of the sound recording or any nondramatic musical work embodied therein. A digital phonorecord delivery does not result from a real-time, noninteractive subscription transmission of a sound recording where no reproduction of the sound recording or the musical work embodied therein is made from the inception of the transmission through to its receipt by the transmission recipient in order to make the sound recording audible.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 61655, 61657, Dec. 1, 1995]

§ 255.5 Royalty rate for digital phonorecord deliveries in general.

(a) For every digital phonorecord delivery made on or before December 31, 1997, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.95 cents, or 1.3 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger.

(b) For every digital phonorecord delivery made on or after January 1, 1998, except for digital phonorecord deliveries where the reproduction or distribution of a phonorecord is incidental to the transmission which constitutes the digital phonorecord delivery, as specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) and (D), the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be the royalty rate prescribed in § 255.3 for the making and distribution of a phonorecord made and distributed on the date of the digital phonorecord delivery (the "Physical Rate"). In any future proceeding under 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) or (D), the royalty rates payable for a compulsory license for digital phonorecord deliveries in general shall be established de novo, and no precedential effect shall be given to the royalty rate payable under this paragraph for any period prior to the period as to which the royalty rates are to be established in such future proceeding.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 61655, 61657, Dec. 1, 1995; 64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999, revised this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 255.6 Royalty rate for incidental digital phonorecord deliveries.

The royalty rate for digital phonorecord deliveries where the reproduction or distribution of a phonorecord is incidental to the transmission which constitutes a digital phonorecord delivery, as specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) and (D), is deferred for consideration until the next digital phonorecord delivery rate adjustment proceeding pursuant to the schedule set forth in § 255.7; provided, however, that any owner or user of a copyrighted work with a significant interest in such royalty rate, as provided in 17 U.S.C. 803(a)(1), may petition the Librarian of Congress to establish a rate prior to the commencement of the next digital phonorecord delivery rate adjustment proceeding. In the event such a petition is filed, the Librarian of Congress shall proceed in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(D), and all applicable regulations, as though the petition had been filed in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 803(a)(1).

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999, added this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 255.7 Future proceedings.

The procedures specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) shall be repeated in 1999, 2001, 2003, and 2006 so as to determine the applicable rates and terms for the making of digital phonorecord deliveries during the periods beginning January 1, 2001, 2003, 2005, and 2008. The procedures specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(D) shall be repeated, in the absence of license agreements negotiated under 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(B) and (C), upon the filing of a petition in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 803(a)(1), in 2000, 2002, 2004, and 2007 so as to determine new rates and terms for the making of digital phonorecord deliveries during the periods beginning January 1, 2001, 2003, 2005, and 2008. Thereafter, the procedures specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) and (D) shall be repeated in each fifth calendar year. Notwithstanding the foregoing, different years for the repeating of such proceedings may be determined in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) and (D).

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999, added this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

§ 255.8 Public performances of sound recordings and musical works.

Nothing in this part annuls or limits the exclusive right to publicly perform a sound recording or the musical work embodied therein, including by means of a digital transmission, under 17 U.S.C. 106(4) and 106(6).

**Legislative History**

[64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 6221, 6223, Feb. 9, 1999, added this section, effective Jan. 1, 1998.]

## PART 256 --ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY FEE FOR CABLE COMPULSORY LICENSE

### § 256.1 General.

This part establishes adjusted terms and rates for royalty payments in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 111 and 801(b)(2)(A), (B), (C), and (D). Upon compliance with 17 U.S.C 111 and the terms and rates of this part, a cable system entity may engage in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 111.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 52159, Nov. 19, 1982; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

### § 256.2 Royalty fee for compulsory license for secondary transmission by cable systems.

(a) Commencing with the second semiannual accounting period of 2000 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, the royalty rates established by 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(1)(B) shall be as follows:

(1).956 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the privilege of further transmitting any nonnetwork programming of a primary transmitter in whole or in part beyond the local service area of such primary transmitter, such amount to be applied against the fees, if any, payable pursuant to paragraphs (a) (2) through (4) and (c);

(2).956 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(3).630 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(4).296 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter.

(b) Commencing with the second semiannual accounting period of 2000 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, the gross receipts limitations established by 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(1) (C) and (D) shall be adjusted as follows:

(1) If the actual gross receipts paid by subscribers to a cable system for the period covered by the statement for the basic service of providing secondary transmission of primary broadcast transmitters total $ 189,800 or less, gross receipts of the cable system for the purpose of this paragraph shall be computed by subtracting from such actual gross receipts the amount by which $ 189,800 exceeds such actual gross receipts, except that in no case shall a cable system's gross receipts be reduced to less than $ 7,400. The royalty fee payable under this paragraph shall be 0.5 of 1 per centum regardless of the number of distant signal equivalents, if any; and

(2) If the actual gross receipts paid by the subscribers to a cable system for the period covered by the statement, for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters, are more than $ 189,800 but less than $ 379,600, the royalty fee payable under this paragraph shall be:

(i) 0.5 of 1 per centum of any gross receipts up to $ 189,800 and

(ii) 1 per centum of any gross receipts in excess of $ 189,800 but less than $ 379,600, regardless of the number of distant signal equivalents, if any.

(c) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) and (d) of this section, commencing with the first accounting period of 1983 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, for each distant signal equivalent or fraction thereof not represented by the carriage of:

(1) Any signal which was permitted (or, in the case of cable systems commencing operations after June 24, 1981, which would have been permitted) under the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on June 24, 1981, or

(2) A signal of the same type (that is, independent, network, or non-commercial educational) substituted for such permitted signal, or

(3) A signal which was carried pursuant to an individual waiver of the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission, as such rules were in effect on June 24, 1981;

the royalty rate shall be, in lieu of the royalty rates specified in paragraphs (a) (2) through (4) and (d) of this section, 3.75 per centum of the gross receipts of the cable systems for each distant signal equivalent; any fraction of a distant signal equivalent shall be computed at its fractional value.

(d) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1990 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, in the case of a cable system located outside the 35-mile specified zone of a commercial VHF station that places a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over the cable system, and that is not significantly viewed or otherwise exempt from the FCC's syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981, for each distant signal equivalent or fraction thereof represented by the carriage of such commercial VHF station, the royalty rate shall be, in addition to the amount specified in paragraph (a) of this section,

(1) For cable systems located wholly or in part within a top 50 television market,

(i).599 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(ii).377 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third, and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(iii).178 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter;

(2) For cable systems located wholly or in part within a second 50 television market,

(i).300 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(ii).189 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third, and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(iii).089 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter;

(3) For purposes of this section top 50 television markets and "second 50 television markets" shall be defined as the comparable terms are defined or interpreted in accordance with 47 CFR 76.51, as effective June 24, 1981.

**Legislative History**

[47 FR 52159, Nov. 19, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 18481, May 1, 1985; 54 FR 12619, Mar. 28, 1989; 55 FR 33613, Aug. 16, 1990; 56 FR 12122, Mar. 22, 1991; redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998; 63 FR 39737, 39739, July 24, 1998; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000; 65 FR 64622, 64623, Oct. 30, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (b)(2), effective June 28, 2000; 65 FR 64622, 64623, Oct. 30, 2000, amended this section, effective July 1, 2000.]

## PART 257 --FILING OF CLAIMS TO SATELLITE CARRIER ROYALTY FEES

### § 257.1 General.

This part prescribes the procedures under 17 U.S.C. 119(b)(4) whereby parties claiming to be entitled to compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers of television broadcast signals to the public for private home viewing shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 32811, Aug. 10, 1989; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

### § 257.2 Time of filing.

During the month of July each year, any party claiming to be entitled to compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers during the previous calendar year of television broadcast signals to the public for private home viewing shall file a claim to such fees with the Copyright Office. No royalty fees shall be distributed to any party during the specified period unless such party has timely filed a claim to such fees. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 32811, Aug. 10, 1989; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23994, May 5, 1994]

### § 257.3 Content of Claims.

(a) Single claim. A claim filed on behalf of a single copyright owner of a work or works secondarily transmitted by a satellite carrier shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name and address of the copyright owner entitled to claim the royalty fees.

(2) A general statement of the nature of the copyright owner's work or works, and identification of at least one secondary transmission by a satellite carrier of such work or works establishing a basis for the claim.

(3) The name, telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the person or entity filing the single claim.

(4) An original signature of the copyright owner or of a duly authorized representative of the copyright owner.

(b) Joint claim. A claim filed on behalf of more than one copyright owner whose works have been secondarily transmitted by a satellite carrier shall include the following information:

(1) A list including the full legal name and address of each copyright owner to the joint claim entitled to claim royalty fees.

(2) A concise statement of the authorization for the person or entity filing the joint claim. For this purpose, a performing rights society shall not be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate authorizations, apart from their standard membership affiliate agreements, or to list the name of each of its members or affiliates in the joint claim as required by paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(3) A general statement of the nature of the copyright owners' works, identification of at least one secondary transmission of one of the copyright owners' works by a satellite carrier establishing a basis for the joint claim, and the identification of the copyright owner of each work so identified.

(4) The name, telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the person filing the joint claim.

(5) Original signatures of the copyright owners to the joint claim or of a duly authorized representative or representatives of the copyright owners.

(c) In the event that the legal name and/or address of the copyright owner entitled to royalties or the person or entity filing the claim changes after the filing of the claim, the Copyright Office shall be notified of the change. If the good faith efforts of the Copyright Office to contact the copyright owner or person or entity filing the claim are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 32811, Aug. 10, 1989, as amended at 56 FR 2438, Jan. 23, 1991; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 66 FR 29700, 29704, June 1, 2001]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 29700, 29704, June 1, 2001, revised this section, effective July 1, 2001.]

§ 257.4 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant's agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, Room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of July; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a July U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which July 31 falls on a Saturday, Sunday, holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in August, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in August, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after July 31, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a July date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 32811, Aug. 10, 1989, as amended at 56 FR 2438, Jan. 23, 1991; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (a)(1), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 257.5 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to satellite carrier royalty fees.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 32811, Aug. 10, 1989; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

§ 257.6 Separate claims required.

If a party intends to file claims for both cable compulsory license and satellite carrier compulsory license royalty fees during the same month of July, that party must file separate claims with the Copyright Office. Any single claim which purports to file for both cable and satellite carrier royalty fees will be dismissed.

**Legislative History**

[54 FR 32811, Aug. 10, 1989; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

## PART 258 --ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY FEE FOR SECONDARY TRANSMISSIONS BY SATELLITE CARRIERS

§ 258.1 General.

This part 258 adjusts the rates of royalties payable under the compulsory license for the secondary transmission of broadcast stations under 17 U.S.C. 119.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998, added "the" after "under," effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 258.2 Definition of syndex-proof signal.

A satellite retransmission of a broadcast signal shall be deemed "syndex-proof" for purposes of § 258.3(b) if, during any semiannual reporting period, the retransmission does not include any program which, if delivered by any cable system in the United States, would be subject to the syndicated exclusivity rules of the Federal Communications Commission.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

§ 258.3 Royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations by satellite carriers.

(a) Commencing May 1, 1992, the royalty rate for the secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(1) 17.5 cents per subscriber per month for superstations.

(2) 14 cents per subscriber per month for superstations whose signals are syndex-proof, as defined in § 258.2.

(3) 6 cents per subscriber per month for network stations and noncommercial educational stations.

(b) Commencing January 1, 1998, the royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(1) 27 cents per subscriber per month for distant superstations.

(2) 27 cents per subscriber per month for distant network stations.

(3) No royalty rate (zero) for a superstation secondarily transmitted within the station's local market, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 119(d)(11).

(4) No royalty rate (zero) for a network station secondarily transmitted within the station's local market, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 119(d)(11), to subscribers residing in unserved households, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 119(d)(10).

(c) Commencing July 1, 1999, the royalty rate for secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(1) 18.9 cents per subscriber per month for distant superstations.

(2) 14.85 cents per subscriber per month for distant network stations.

(3) 14.85 cents per subscriber per month for the Public Broadcasting Service satellite feed.

**Legislative History**

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992, as redesignated at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 62 FR 55742, 55759, Oct. 28, 1997; 64 FR 71659, 71660, Dec. 22, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 71659, 71660, Dec. 22, 1999, added paragraph (c), effective July 1, 1999.]

## PART 259 --FILING OF CLAIMS TO DIGITAL AUDIO RECORDING DEVICES AND MEDIA ROYALTY PAYMENTS

### § 259.1 General.

This part prescribes procedures pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1007(a)(1), whereby interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7), claiming to be entitled to royalty payments made for the importation and distribution in the United States, or the manufacture and distribution in the United States, of digital audio recording devices and media pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1006, shall file claims with the copyright arbitration royalty panel and/or Librarian of Congress.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 6445, Jan. 29, 1993; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

### § 259.2 Time of filing.

(a) General. During January and February of each succeeding year, every interested copyright party claiming to be entitled to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments made for quarterly periods ending during the previous calendar year shall file a claim with the Copyright Office. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

(b) Consequences of an untimely filing. No royalty payments for the previous calendar year shall be distributed to any interested copyright party who has not filed a claim to such royalty payments during January or February of the following calendar year.

(c) Authorization. Any organization or association, acting as a common agent, shall be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate, specific, and written authorization, signed by members, affiliates, or their representatives, to file claims to the Musical Works Fund or the Sound Recording Fund, apart from their standard agreements, for purposes of royalties filing and fee distribution. Such written authorization, however, will not be required for claimants to the Musical Works Fund where either:

(1) The agreement between the organization or association and its members or affiliates specifically authorizes such entity to represent its members or affiliates before the Copyright Office and/or the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels in royalty filing and fee distribution proceedings; or

(2) The agreement between the organization or association and its members or affiliates, as specified in a court order issued by a court with authority to interpret the terms of the contract, authorizes such entity to represent its members or affiliates before the Copyright Office and/or Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels in royalty filing and fee distribution proceedings.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 6445, Jan. 29, 1993; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; suspended at 59 FR 63045, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995; 60 FR 61657, 61660, Dec. 1, 1995; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996, added paragraph (d), effective March 5, 1996; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996, amended the last sentence in paragraph (c), effective Jan. 2, 1997.]

§ 259.3 Content of claims.

(a) Claims filed by interested copyright parties for digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty payments.

(2) The telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity.

(3) A statement as to how the claimant fits within the definition of interested copyright party specified in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7).

(4) A statement as to whether the claim is being made against the Sound Recordings Fund or the Musical Works Fund, as set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b) and as to which Subfund of the Sound Recordings Fund (i.e., the copyright owners or featured recording artists Subfund) or the Musical Works Fund (i.e., the music publishers or writers Subfund) the claim is being made against as set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1)-(2).

(5) Identification, establishing a basis for the claim, of at least one musical work or sound recording embodied in a digital musical recording or an analog musical recording lawfully made under title 17 U.S.C. that has been distributed (as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(6)), and that, during the period to which the royalty payments claimed pertain, has been

(i) Distributed (as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(6)) in the form of digital musical recordings or analog musical recordings, or

(ii) Disseminated to the public in transmissions.

(b) Claims shall bear the original signature of the claimant or of a duly authorized representative of the claimant.

(c) In the event that the legal name and/or address of the claimant changes after the filing of the claim, the claimant shall notify the copyright arbitration royalty panel and/or Librarian of Congress of such change. If the good faith efforts of the copyright arbitration royalty panel and/or Librarian of Congress to contact the claimant are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

(d) If the claim is a joint claim, a concise statement of the authorization for the filing of the joint claim, and the name of each claimant to the joint claim.

(e) If an interested copyright party intends to file claims against more than one Subfund, each such claim must be filed separately with the Copyright Office. Any claim that purports to file against more than one subfund will be rejected.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 6445, Jan. 29, 1993; redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (a)(5), effective July 7, 1999.]

§ 259.4 Content of notices regarding independent administrators.

(a) The independent administrator jointly appointed by the interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001 (7)(A), and the American Federation of Musicians (or any successor entity) for the purpose of managing, and ultimately distributing the royalty payments to nonfeatured musicians as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1), shall file a notice informing the Copyright Office of his/her name and address.

(b) The independent administrator jointly appointed by the interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7)(A), and the American Federation of Television and Radio Artists (or any successor entity) for the purpose of managing, and ultimately distributing the royalty payments to nonfeatured vocalists as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1), shall file a notice informing the Copyright Office of his/her full name and address.

(c) A notice filed under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section shall include the following information:

(1) The full name of the independent administrator;

(2) The telephone number and facsimile number, if any, full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the independent administrator.

(d) Notice shall bear the original signature of the independent administrator or a duly authorized representative of the independent administrator, and shall be filed with the Copyright Office no later than March 31 of each year, commencing with March 31, 1994.

(e) No notice may be filed by facsimile transmission.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 53826, Oct. 18, 1993. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, 23995, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 259.5 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant's agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, Room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue SE, Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of January or February; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a January or February U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which the last day of February falls on Saturday, Sunday, a holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in March, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in March, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after the last day of February, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a January or February date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

**Legislative History**

[58 FR 6445, Jan. 29, 1993; redesignated and revised at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63715, 63718, Dec. 2, 1996; 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (a)(1), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 259.6 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments.

**Legislative History**

[59 FR 23995, May 9, 1994]

## PART 260 --USE OF SOUND RECORDINGS IN A DIGITAL PERFORMANCE

§ 260.1 General.

(a) This part 260 establishes terms and rates of royalty payments for the public performance of sound recordings by nonexempt subscription digital transmission services in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 114 and 801(b)(1).

(b) Upon compliance with 17 U.S.C. 114 and the terms and rates of this part, a nonexempt subscription digital transmission service may engage in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 114.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25413, May 8, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 25394, 25413, May 8, 1998, added Part 260, effective May 8, 1998.]

§ 260.2 Royalty fees for the digital performance of sound recordings.

(a) Commencing June 1, 1998, the royalty fee for the digital performance of sound recordings by nonexempt subscription digital services shall be 6.5% of gross revenues resulting from residential services in the United States.

(b) A nonexempt subscription digital transmission service (the "Licensee") shall pay a late fee of 1.5% per month, or the highest lawful rate, whichever is lower, for any payment received after the due date. Late fees shall accrue from the due date until payment is received.

(c)(1) For purposes of this section, gross revenues shall mean all monies derived from the operation of the programming service of the Licensee and shall be comprised of the following:

(i) Monies received by Licensee from Licensee's carriers and directly from residential U.S. subscribers for Licensee's programming service;

(ii) Licensee's advertising revenues (as billed), or other monies received from sponsors if any, less advertising agency commissions not to exceed 15% of those fees incurred to recognized advertising agency not owned or controlled by Licensee;

(iii) Monies received for the provision of time on the Programming Service to any third party;

(iv) Monies received from the sale of time to providers of paid programming such as infomercials;

(v) Where merchandise, service, or anything of value is received by Licensee in lieu of cash consideration for the use of Licensee's programming service, the fair market value thereof or Licensee's prevailing published rate, whichever is less;

(vi) Monies or other consideration received by Licensee from Licensee's carriers, but not including monies received by Licensee's carriers from others and not accounted for by Licensee's carriers to Licensee, for the provision of hardware by anyone and used in connection with the Programming Service;

(vii) Monies or other consideration received for any references to or inclusion of any product or service on the programming service; and

(viii) Bad debts recovered regarding paragraphs (c)(1) (i) through (vii) of this section.

(2) Gross revenues shall include such payments as set forth in paragraphs (c)(1) (i) through (viii) of this section to which Licensee is entitled but which are paid to a parent, subsidiary, division, or affiliate of Licensee, in lieu of payment to Licensee but not including payments to Licensee's carriers for the programming service. Licensee shall be allowed a deduction from "gross revenues" as defined in paragraph (c)(1) of this section for affiliate revenue returned during the reporting period and for bad debts actually written off during reporting period.

(d) During any given payment period, the value of each performance of each digital sound recording shall be the same.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, amended paragraph (c), effective July 7, 1999; 65 FR 39819, 39820, June 28, 2000, amended paragraph (c)(1)(v), effective June 28, 2000.]

§ 260.3 Terms for making payment of royalty fees.

(a) All royalty payments shall be made to a designated agent(s), to be determined by the parties through voluntary license agreements or by a duly appointed Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel pursuant to the procedures set forth in subchapter B of 37 CFR, part 251.

(b) Payment shall be made on the twentieth day after the end of each month for that month, commencing with the month succeeding the month in which the royalty fees are set.

(c) The agent designated to receive the royalty payments and the statements of account shall have the responsibility of making further distribution of these fees to those parties entitled to receive such payment according to the provisions set forth at 17 U.S.C. 114(g).

(d) The designated agent may deduct reasonable costs incurred in the administration of the distribution of the royalties, so long as the reasonable costs do not exceed the actual costs incurred by the collecting entity.

(e) Commencing June 1, 1998, and until such time as a new designation is made, the Recording Industry Association of America, Inc. shall be the agent receiving royalty payments and statements of account.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998; 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998, added Part 260, effective May 8, 1998; 63 FR 30634, 30636, June 5, 1998, substituted "account" for "accounts" in paragraph (e), effective June 5, 1998.]

§ 260.4 Confidential information and statements of account.

(a) For purposes of this part, confidential information shall include statements of account and any information pertaining to the statements of account designated as confidential by the nonexempt subscription digital transmission service filing the statement. Confidential information shall also include any information so designated in a confidentiality agreement which has been duly executed between a nonexempt subscription digital transmission service and an interested party, or between one or more interested parties; Provided that all such information shall be made available, for the verification proceedings provided for in § § 260.5 and 260.6 of this part.

(b) Nonexempt subscription digital transmission services shall submit monthly statements of account on a form provided by the agent designated to collect such forms and the monthly royalty payments.

(c) A statement of account shall include only such information as is necessary to verify the accompanying royalty payment. Additional information beyond that which is sufficient to verify the calculation of the royalty fees shall not be included on the statement of account.

(d) Access to the confidential information pertaining to the royalty payments shall be limited to:

(1) Those employees of the designated agent who are not also employees or officers of a sound recording copyright owner or performing artist, and who, for the purpose of performing their assigned duties during the ordinary course of business, require access to the records; and

(2) An independent and qualified auditor who is not an employee or officer of a sound recording copyright owner or performing artist, but is authorized to act on behalf of the interested copyright owners with respect to the verification of the royalty payments.

(e) The designated agent shall implement procedures to safeguard all confidential financial and business information, including but not limited to royalty payments, submitted as part of the statements of account. Confidential information shall be maintained in locked files.

(f) Books and records relating to the payment of the license fees shall be kept in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for a period of three years. These records shall include, but are not limited to, the statements of account, records documenting an interested party's share of the royalty fees, and the records pertaining to the administration of the collection process and the further distribution of the royalty fees to those interested parties entitled to receive such fees.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998, added Part 260, effective May 8, 1998.]

§ 260.5 Verification of statements of account.

(a) General. This section prescribes general rules pertaining to the verification of the statements of account by interested parties according to terms promulgated by a duly appointed copyright arbitration royalty panel, under its authority to set reasonable terms and rates pursuant to 17 U.S.C. and 801(b)(1), and the Librarian of Congress under his authority pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(b) Frequency of verification. Interested parties may conduct a single audit of a nonexempt subscription digital transmission service during any given calendar year.

(c) Notice of intent to audit. Interested parties must submit a notice of intent to audit a particular service with the Copyright Office, which shall publish in the Federal Register a notice announcing the receipt of the notice of intent to audit within 30 days of the filing of the interested parties' notice. Such notification of intent to audit shall also be served at the same time on the party to be audited.

(d) Retention of records. The party requesting the verification procedure shall retain the report of the verification for a period of three years.

(e) Acceptable verification procedure. An audit, including underlying paperwork, which was performed in the ordinary course of business according to generally accepted auditing standards by an independent auditor, shall serve as an acceptable verification procedure for all parties.

(f) Costs of the verification procedure. The interested parties requesting the verification procedure shall pay for the cost of the verification procedure, unless an independent auditor concludes that there was an underpayment of five (5) percent or more; in which case, the service which made the underpayment shall bear the costs of the verification procedure.

(g) Interested parties. For purposes of this section, interested parties are those copyright owners who are entitled to receive royalty fees pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114(g), their designated agents, or the entity designated by the copyright arbitration royalty panel in 37 CFR 260.3 to receive and to distribute the royalty fees.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 25394, 25414, May 8, 1998, added Part 260, effective May 8, 1998.]

§ 260.6 Verification of royalty payments.

(a) General. This section prescribes general rules pertaining to the verification of the payment of royalty fees to those parties entitled to receive such fees, according to terms promulgated by a duly appointed copyright arbitration royalty panel, under its authority to set reasonable terms and rates pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114 and 801(b)(1), and the Librarian of Congress under his authority pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(b) Frequency of verification. Interested parties may conduct a single audit of the entity making the royalty payment during any given calendar year.

(c) Notice of intent to audit. Interested parties must submit a notice of intent to audit the entity making the royalty payment with the Copyright Office, which shall publish in the Federal Register a notice announcing the receipt of the notice of intent to audit within 30 days of the filing of the interested parties' notice. Such notification of interest shall also be served at the same time on the party to be audited.

(d) Retention of records. The party requesting the verification procedure shall retain the report of the verification for a period of three years.

(e) Acceptable verification procedure. An audit, including underlying paperwork, which was performed in the ordinary course of business according to generally accepted auditing standards by an independent auditor, shall serve as an acceptable verification procedure for all parties.

(f) Costs of the verification procedure. The interested parties requesting the verification procedure shall pay for the cost of the verification procedure, unless an independent auditor concludes that there was an underpayment of five (5) percent or more; in which case, the entity which made the underpayment shall bear the costs of the verification procedure.

(g) Interested parties. For purposes of this section, interested parties are those copyright owners who are entitled to receive royalty fees pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114(g), or their designated agents.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25415, May 8, 1998]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 25394, 25415, May 8, 1998, added Part 260, effective May 8, 1998.]

§ 260.7 Unknown copyright owners.

If the designated collecting agent is unable to identify or locate a copyright owner who is entitled to receive a royalty payment under this part, the collecting agent shall retain the required payment in a segregated trust account for a period of three years from the date of payment. No claim to such payment shall be valid after the expiration of the three-year period. After the expiration of this period, the collecting agent may use the unclaimed funds to offset the cost of the administration of the collection and distribution of the royalty fees.

**Legislative History**

[63 FR 25394, 25415, May 8, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 63 FR 25394, 25415, May 8, 1998, added Part 260, effective May 8, 1998; 64 FR 36574, 36576, July 7, 1999, substituted "three-year" for "three year," effective July 7, 1999.]

CHAPTER IV -- ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY POLICY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

# PART 401 --RIGHTS TO INVENTIONS MADE BY NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS AND SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS UNDER GOVERNMENT GRANTS, CONTRACTS, AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS

## § 401.1 Scope.

(a) Traditionally there have been no conditions imposed by the government on research performers while using private facilities which would preclude them from accepting research funding from other sources to expand, to aid in completing or to conduct separate investigations closely related to research activities sponsored by the government. Notwithstanding the right of research organizations to accept supplemental funding from other sources for the purpose of expediting or more comprehensively accomplishing the research objectives of the government sponsored project, it is clear that the ownership provisions of these regulations would remain applicable in any invention "conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance" of the project. Separate accounting for the two funds used to support the project in this case is not a determining factor.

(1) To the extent that a non-government sponsor established a project which, although closely related, falls outside the planned and committed activities of a government-funded project and does not diminish or distract from the performance of such activities, inventions made in performance of the non-government sponsored project would not be subject to the conditions of these regulations. An example of such related but separate projects would be a government sponsored project having research objectives to expand scientific understanding in a field and a closely related industry sponsored project having as its objectives the application of such new knowledge to develop usable new technology. The time relationship in conducting the two projects and the use of new fundamental knowledge from one in the performance of the other are not important determinants since most inventions rest on a knowledge base built up by numerous independent research efforts extending over many years. Should such an invention be claimed by the performing organization to be the product of non-government sponsored research and be challenged by the sponsoring agency as being reportable to the government as a "subject invention", the challenge is appealable as described in § 401.11(d).

(2) An invention which is made outside of the research activities of a government-funded project is not viewed as a "subject invention" since it cannot be shown to have been "conceived or first actually reduced to practice" in performance of the project. An obvious example of this is a situation where an instrument purchased with government funds is later used, without interference with or cost to the government-funded project, in making an invention all expenses of which involve only non-government funds.

(b) This part implements 35 U.S.C. 202 through 204 and is applicable to all Federal agencies. It applies to all funding agreements with small business firms and nonprofit organizations executed after the effective date of this part, except for a funding agreement made primarily for educational purposes. Certain sections also provide guidance for the administration of funding agreements which predate the effective date of this part. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 212, no scholarship, fellowship, training grant, or other funding agreement made by a Federal agency primarily to an awardee for educational purposes will contain any provision giving the Federal agency any rights to inventions made by the awardee.

(c) The march-in and appeals procedures in § § 401.6 and 401.11 shall apply to any march-in or appeal proceeding under a funding agreement subject to Chapter 18 of Title 35, U.S.C., initiated after the effective date of this part even if the funding agreement was executed prior to that date.

(d) At the request of the contractor, a funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility which is in effect on the effective date of this part shall be promptly amended to include the provisions required by § § 401.3(a) unless the agency determines that one of the exceptions at 35 U.S.C. 202(a)(i) through (iv) § 401.3(a)(8) through (iv) of

this part) is applicable and will be applied. If the exception at § 401.3(a)(iv) is determined to be applicable, the funding agreement will be promptly amended to include the provisions required by § 401.3(c).

(e) This regulation supersedes OMB Circular A-124 and shall take precedence over any regulations dealing with ownership of inventions made by small businesses and nonprofit organizations which are inconsistent with it. This regulation will be followed by all agencies pending amendment of agency regulations to conform to this part and amended Chapter 18 of Title 35. Only deviations requested by a contractor and not inconsistent with Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code, may be made without approval of the Secretary. Modifications or tailoring of clauses as authorized by § 401.5 or § 401.3, when alternative provisions are used under § 401.3(a)(1) through (4), are not considered deviations requiring the Secretary's approval. Three copies of proposed and final agency regulations supplementing this part shall be submitted to the Secretary at the office set out in § 401.16 for approval for consistency with this part before they are submitted to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) for review under Executive Order 12291 or, if no submission is required to be made to OMB, before their submission to the FEDERAL REGISTER for publication.

(f) In the event an agency has outstanding prime funding agreements that do not contain patent flow-down provisions consistent with this part or earlier Office of Federal Procurement Policy regulations (OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22), the agency shall take appropriate action to ensure that small business firms or nonprofit organizations that are subcontractors under any such agreements and that received their subcontracts after July 1, 1981, receive rights in their subject inventions that are consistent with Chapter 18 and this part.

(g) This part is not intended to apply to arrangements under which nonprofit organizations, small business firms, or others are allowed to use government-owned research facilities and normal technical assistance provided to users of those facilities, whether on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis. This part is also not intended to apply to arrangements under which sponsors reimburse the government or facility contractor for the contractor employee's time in performing work for the sponsor. Such arrangements are not considered "funding agreements" as defined at 35 U.S.C. 201(b) and § 401.2(a) of this part.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.2 Definitions.

As used in this part --

(a) The term funding agreement means any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into between any Federal agency, other than the Tennessee Valley Authority, and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal government. This term also includes any assignment, substitution of parties, or subcontract of any type entered into for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under a funding agreement as defined in the first sentence of this paragraph.

(b) The term contractor means any person, small business firm or nonprofit organization which is a party to a funding agreement.

(c) The term invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).

(d) The term subject invention means any invention of a contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under a funding agreement; provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(e) The term practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition of product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(f) The term made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(g) The term small business firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this part, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.5 will be used.

(h) The term nonprofit organization means universities and other institutions of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(i) The term Chapter 18 means Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code.

(j) The term "Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy.

(k) The term electronically filed means any submission of information transmitted by an electronic or optical-electronic system.

(l) The term electronic or optical-electronic system means a software-based system approved by the agency for the transmission of information.

(m) The term patent application or "application for patent" includes a provisional or nonprovisional U.S. national application for patent as defined in 37 CFR 1.9 (a)(2) and (a)(3), respectively, or an application for patent in a foreign country or in an international patent office.

(n) The term initial patent application means a nonprovisional U.S. national application for patent as defined in 37 CFR 1.9(a)(3).

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987; 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.3 Use of the standard clauses at § 401.14.

(a) Each funding agreement awarded to a small business firm or nonprofit organization (except those subject to 35 U.S.C. 212) shall contain the clause found in § 401.14(a) with such modifications and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part. However, a funding agreement may contain alternative provisions--

(1) When the contractor is not located in the United States or does not have a place of business located in the United States or is subject to the control of a foreign government; or

(2) In exceptional circumstances when it is determined by the agency that restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention will better promote the policy and objectives of Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code; or

(3) When it is determined by a government authority which is authorized by statute or executive order to conduct foreign intelligence or counterintelligence activities that the restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention is necessary to protect the security to such activities; or

(4) When the funding agreement includes the operation of the government-owned, contractor-operated facility of the Department of Energy primarily dedicated to that Department's naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs and all funding agreement limitations under this subparagraph on the contractor's right to elect title to a subject invention are limited to inventions occurring under the above two programs.

(b) When an agency exercises the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3), it shall use the standard clause at § 401.14(a) with only such modifications as are necessary to address the exceptional circumstances or concerns which led to the use of the exception. For example, if the justification relates to a particular field of use or market, the clause might be modified along lines similar to those described in § 401.14(b). In any event, the clause should provide the contractor with an opportunity to receive greater rights in accordance with the procedures at § 401.15. When an agency justifies and exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(2) and uses an alternative provision in the funding agreement o the basis of national security, the provision shall provide the contractor with the right to elect ownership to any invention made under such funding agreement as provided by the Standard Patent Rights Clause found at § 401.14(a) if the invention is not classified by the agency within six months of the date it is reported to the agency, or within the same time period the Department of Energy does not, as authorized by regulation, law or Executive order or implementing regulations thereto, prohibit unauthorized dissemination of the invention. Contracts in support of DOE's naval nuclear propulsion program are exempted from this paragraph.

(c) When the Department of Energy exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(4), it shall use the clause prescribed at § 401.14(b) or substitute thereto with such modification and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part.

(d) When a funding agreement involves a series of separate task orders, an agency may apply the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3) to individual task orders, and it may structure the contract so that modified patent rights provisions will apply to the task order even though the clauses at either § 401.14(a) or (b) are applicable to the remainder of the work. Agencies are authorized to negotiate such modified provisions with respect to task orders added to a funding agreement after its initial award.

(e) Before utilizing any of the exceptions in § 401.3(a) of this section, the agency shall prepare a written determination, including a statement of facts supporting the determination, that the conditions identified in the exception exist. A separate statement of facts shall be prepared for each exceptional circumstances determination, except that in appropriate cases a single determination may apply to both a funding agreement and any subcontracts issued under it or to any funding agreement to which such an exception is applicable. In cases when § 401.3(a)(2) is used, the determination shall also include an analysis justifying the determination. This analysis should address with specificity how the alternate provisions will better achieve the objectives set forth in 35 U.S.C. 200. A copy of each determination, statement of facts, and, if applicable, analysis shall be promptly provided to the contractor or prospective contractor along with a notification to the contractor or prospective contractor of its rights to appeal the determination of the exception under 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) and § 401.4 of this part.

(f) Except for determinations under § 401.3(a)(3), the agency shall also provide copies of each determination, statement of fact, and analysis to the Secretary. These shall be sent within 30 days after the award of the funding agreement to which they pertain. Copies shall also be sent to the Chief Counsel for Advocacy of the Small Business Administration if the funding agreement is with a small business firm. If the Secretary of Commerce believes that any individual determination or pattern of determinations is contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or otherwise not in conformance with this chapter, the Secretary shall so advise the head of the agency concerned and the Administrator of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy and recommend corrective actions.

(g) To assist the Comptroller General of the United States to accomplish his or her responsibilities under 35 U.S.C. 202, each Federal agency that enters into any funding agreements with nonprofit organizations or small business firms shall accumulate and, at the request of the Comptroller General, provide the Comptroller General or his or her duly authorized representative the total number of prime agreements entered into with small business firms or nonprofit organizations that contain the patent rights clause in this part or under OMB Circular A-124 for each fiscal year beginning with October 1, 1982.

(h) To qualify for the standard clause, a prospective contractor may be required by an agency to certify that it is either a small business firm or a nonprofit organization. If the agency has reason to question the status of the prospective contractor as a small business firm, it may file a protest in accordance with 13 CFR 121.9. If it questions nonprofit status, it may require the prospective contractor to furnish evidence to establish its status as a nonprofit organization.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.4 Contractor appeals of exceptions.

(a) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) a contractor has the right to an administrative review of a determination to use one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a) (1) through (4) if the contractor believes that a determination is either contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or constitutes an abuse of discretion by the agency. Paragraph (b) of this section specifies the procedures to be followed by contractors and agencies in such cases. The assertion of such a claim by the contractor shall not be used as a basis for withholding or delaying the award of a funding agreement or for suspending performance under an award. Pending final resolution of the claim the contract may be issued with the patent rights provision proposed by the agency; however, should the final decision be in favor of the contractor, the funding agreement will be amended accordingly and the amendment made retroactive to the effective date of the funding agreement.

(b)(1) A contractor may appeal a determination by providing written notice to the agency within 30 working days from the time it receives a copy of the agency's determination, or within such longer time as an agency may specify in its regulations. The contractor's notice should specifically identify the basis for the appeal.

(2) The appeal shall be decided by the head of the agency or by his/her designee who is at a level above the person who made the determination. If the notice raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or the designee shall undertake, or refer the matter for, fact-finding.

(3) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may rely upon. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency.

(4) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended decision. A copy of the findings of fact and recommended decision shall be sent to the contractor by registered or certified mail.

(5) Fact-finding should be completed within 45 working days from the date the agency receives the contractor's written notice.

(6) When fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her decision on the facts found, together with any argument submitted by the contractor, agency officials or any other information in the administrative record. In cases referred for fact-finding, the agency head or the designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. The agency head or the designee may hear oral arguments after fact-finding provided that the contractor or contractor's attorney or representative is present and given an opportunity to make arguments and rebuttal. The decision of the agency head or the designee shall be in writing and, if it is unfavorable to the contractor shall include an explanation of the basis of the decision. The decision of the agency or designee shall be made within 30 working days after fact-finding or, if there was no fact-finding, within 45 working days from the date the agency received the contractor's written notice. A contractor adversely affected by a determination under this section may, at any time within sixty days after the determination is issued, file a petition in the United States Claims Court, which shall have jurisdiction to determine the appeal on the record and to affirm, reverse, remand, or modify as appropriate, the determination of the Federal agency.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.5 Modification and tailoring of clauses.

(a) Agencies should complete the blank in paragraph (g)(2) of the clauses at § 401.14 in accordance with their own or applicable government-wide regulations such as the Federal Acquisition Regulation. In grants and cooperative agreements (and in contracts, if not inconsistent with the Federal Acquisition Regulation) agencies wishing to apply the same clause to all subcontractors as is applied to the contractor may delete paragraph (g)(2) of the clause and delete the words "to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization" from paragraph (g)(1). Also, if the funding agreement is a grant or cooperative agreement, paragraph (g)(3) may be deleted. When either paragraph (g)(2) or paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) are deleted, the remaining paragraph or paragraphs should be renumbered appropriately.

(b) Agencies should complete paragraph (l), "Communications", at the end of the clauses at § 401.14 by designating a central point of contact for communications on matters relating to the clause. Additional instructions on communications may also be included in paragraph (l).

(c) Agencies may replace the italicized words and phrases in the clauses at § 401.14 with those appropriate to the particular funding agreement. For example, "contracts" could be replaced by "grant," "contractor" by "grantee," and "contracting officer" by "grants officer." Depending on its use, "Federal agency" can be replaced either by the identification of the agency or by the specification of the particular office or official within the agency.

(d) When the agency head or duly authorized designee determines at the time of contracting with a small business firm or nonprofit organization that it would be in the national interest to acquire the right to sublicense foreign governments or international organizations pursuant to any existing treaty or international agreement, a sentence may be added at the end of paragraph (b) of the clause at § 401.14 as follows:

This license will include the right of the government to sublicense foreign governments, their nationals, and international organizations, pursuant to the following treaties or international agreements:_____.

The blank above should be completed with the names of applicable existing treaties or international agreements, agreements of cooperation, memoranda of understanding, or similar arrangements, including military agreements relating to weapons development and production. The above language is not intended to apply to treaties or other agreements that are in effect on the date of the award but which are not listed. Alternatively, agencies may use substantially similar language relating the government's rights to specific treaties or other agreements identified elsewhere in the funding agreement. The language may also be modified to make clear that the rights granted to the foreign government, and its nationals or an international organization may be for additional rights beyond a license or sublicense if so required by the applicable treaty or international agreement. For example, in some exclusive licenses or even the assignment of title in the foreign country involved might be required. Agencies may also modify the language above to provide for the direct licensing by the contractor of the foreign government or international organization.

(e) If the funding agreement involves performance over an extended period of time, such as the typical funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility, the following language may also be added:

The agency reserves the right to unilaterally amend this funding agreement to identify specific treaties or international agreements entered into or to be entered into by the government after the effective date of this funding agreement and effectuate those license or other rights which are necessary for the government to meet its obligations to foreign governments, their nationals and international organizations under such treaties or international agreements with respect to subject inventions made after the date of the amendment.

(f) Agencies may add additional subparagraphs to paragraph (f) of the clauses at § 401.14 to require the contractor to do one or more of the following:

(1) Provide a report prior to the close-out of a funding agreement listing all subject inventions or stating that there were none.

(2) Provide, upon request, the filing date, patent application number and title; a copy of the patent application; and patent number and issue date for any subject invention in any country in which the contractor has applied for a patent.

(3) Provide periodic (but no more frequently than annual) listings of all subject inventions which were disclosed to the agency during the period covered by the report.

(g) If the contract is with a nonprofit organization and is for the operation of a government-owned, contractor-operated facility, the following will be substituted for paragraph (k)(3) of the clause at § 401.14(a):

(3) After payment of patenting costs, licensing costs, payments to inventors, and other expenses incidental to the administration of subject inventions, the balance of any royalties or income earned and retained by the contractor during any fiscal year on subject inventions under this or any successor contract containing the same requirement, up to any amount equal to five percent of the budget of the facility for that fiscal year, shall be used by the contractor for scientific research, development, and education consistent with the research and development mission and objectives of the facility, including activities that increase the licensing potential of other inventions of the facility. If the balance exceeds five percent, 75 percent of the excess above five percent shall be paid by the contractor to the Treasury of the United States and the remaining 25 percent shall be used by the contractor only for the same purposes as described above. To the extent it provides the most effective technology transfer, the licensing of subject inventions shall be administered by contractor employees on location at the facility.

(h) If the contract is for the operation of a government-owned facility, agencies may add the following at the end of paragraph (f) of the clause at § 401.14(a):

(5) The contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to ensure that subject inventions are promptly identified and timely disclosed and shall submit a description of the procedures to the contracting officer so that the contracting officer may evaluate and determine their effectiveness.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987; 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.6 Exercise of march-in rights.

(a) The following procedures shall govern the exercise of the march-in rights of the agencies set forth in 35 U.S.C. 203 and paragraph (j) of the clause at § 401.14.

(b) Whenever an agency receives information that it believes might warrant the exercise of march-in rights, before initiating any march-in proceeding, it shall notify the contractor in writing of the information and request informal written or oral comments from the contractor as well as information relevant to the matter. In the absence of any comments from the contractor within 30 days, the agency may, at its discretion, proceed with the procedures below. If a comment is received within 30 days, or later if the agency has not initiated the procedures below, then the agency shall, within 60 days after it receives the comment, either initiate the procedures below or notify the contractor, in writing, that it will not pursue march-in rights on the basis of the available information.

(c) A march-in proceeding shall be initiated by the issuance of a written notice by the agency to the contractor and its assignee or exclusive licensee, as applicable and if known to the agency, stating that the agency is considering the exercise of march-in rights. The notice shall state the reasons for the proposed march-in in terms sufficient to put the contractor on notice of the facts upon which the action would be based and shall specify the field or fields of use in which the agency is considering requiring licensing. The notice shall advise the contractor (assignee or exclusive

licensee) of its rights, as set forth in this section and in any supplemental agency regulations. The determination to exercise march-in rights shall be made by the head of the agency or his or her designee.

(d) Within 30 days after the receipt of the written notice of march-in, the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) may submit in person, in writing, or through a representative, information or argument in opposition to the proposed march-in, including any additional specific information which raises a genuine dispute over the material facts upon which the march-in is based. If the information presented raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or designee shall undertake or refer the matter to another official for fact-finding.

(e) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with the procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may present. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency. Any portion of the march-in proceeding, including a fact-finding hearing that involves testimony or evidence relating to the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the contractor, its assignee, or licensees shall be closed to the public, including potential licensees. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), agencies shall not disclose any such information obtained during a march-in proceeding to persons outside the government except when such release is authorized by the contractor (assignee or licensee).

(f) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended determination. A copy of the findings of fact shall be sent to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) by registered or certified mail. The contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives will be given 30 days to submit written arguments to the head of the agency or designee; and, upon request by the contractor oral arguments will be held before the agency head or designee that will make the final determination.

(g) In cases in which fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her determination on the facts found, together with any other information and written or oral arguments submitted by the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives, and any other information in the administrative record. The consistency of the exercise of march-in rights with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 shall also be considered. In cases referred for fact-finding, the head of the agency or designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. Written notice of the determination whether march-in rights will be exercised shall be made by the head of the agency or designee and sent to the contractor (assignee of exclusive licensee) by certified or registered mail within 90 days after the completion of fact-finding or 90 days after oral arguments, whichever is later, or the proceedings will be deemed to have been terminated and thereafter no march-in based on the facts and reasons upon which the proceeding was initiated may be exercised.

(h) An agency may, at any time, terminate a march-in proceeding if it is satisfied that it does not wish to exercise march-in rights.

(i) The procedures of this part shall also apply to the exercise of march-in rights against inventors receiving title to subject inventions under 35 U.S.C. 202(d) and, for that purpose, the term "contractor" as used in this section shall be deemed to include the inventor.

(j) An agency determination unfavorable to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) shall be held in abeyance pending the exhaustion of appeals or petitions filed under 35 U.S.C. 203(2).

(k) For purposes of this section the term exclusive licensee includes a partially exclusive licensee.

(l) Agencies are authorized to issue supplemental procedures not inconsistent with this part for the conduct of march-in proceedings.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.7 Small business preference.

(a) Paragraph (k)(4) of the clauses at § 401.14 Implements the small business preference requirement of 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7)(D). Contractors are expected to use efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract small business licensees. They are also expected to give small business firms that meet the standard outlined in the clause a preference over other applicants for licenses. What constitutes reasonable efforts to attract small business licensees will vary with the circumstances and the nature, duration, and expense of efforts needed to bring the invention to the market. Paragraph (k)(4) is not intended, for example, to prevent nonprofit organizations from providing larger firms with a right of first refusal or other options in inventions that relate to research being supported under long-term or other arrangements with larger companies. Under such circumstances it would not be reasonable to seek and to give a preference to small business licensees.

(b) Small business firms that believe a nonprofit organization is not meeting its obligations under the clause may report their concerns to the Secretary. To the extent deemed appropriate, the Secretary will undertake informal investigation of the concern, and, if appropriate, enter into discussions or negotiations with the nonprofit organization to the end of improving its efforts in meeting its obligations under the clause. However, in no event will the Secretary intervene in ongoing negotiations or contractor decisions concerning the licensing of a specific subject invention. All the above investigations, discussions, and negotiations of the Secretary will be in coordination with other interested agencies, including the Small Business Administration; and in the case of a contract for the operation of a government-owned, contractor operated research or production facility, the Secretary will coordinate with the agency responsible for the facility prior to any discussions or negotiations with the contractor.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.8 Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.

(a) Paragraph (h) of the clauses at § 401.14 and its counterpart in the clause at Attachment A to OMB Circular A-124 provides that agencies have the right to receive periodic reports from the contractor on utilization of inventions. Agencies exercising this right should accept such information, to the extent feasible, in the format that the contractor normally prepares it for its own internal purposes. The prescription of forms should be avoided. However, any forms or standard questionnaires that are adopted by an agency for this purpose must comply with the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act. Copies shall be sent to the Secretary.

(b) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c) (5) and the terms of the clauses at § 401.14, agencies shall not disclose such information to persons outside the government. Contractors will continue to provide confidential markings to help prevent inadvertent release outside the agency.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.9 Retention of rights by contractor employee inventor.

Agencies which allow an employee/inventor of the contractor to retain rights to a subject invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization contractor, as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(d),

will impose upon the inventor at least those conditions that would apply to a small business firm contractor under paragraphs (d)(1) and (3); (f)(4); (h); (i); and (j) of the clause at § 401.14(a).

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.10 Government assignment to contractor of rights in invention of government Employee.

In any case when a Federal employee is a co-inventor of any invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization and the Federal agency employing such co-inventor transfers or reassigns the right it has acquired in the subject invention from its employee to the contractor as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(e), the assignment will be made subject to the same conditions as apply to the contractor under the patent rights clause of its funding agreement. Agencies may add additional conditions as long as they are consistent with 35 U.S.C. 201-206.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.11 Appeals.

(a) As used in this section, the term standard clause means the clause at § 401.14 of this part and the clauses previously prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22.

(b) The agency official initially authorized to take any of the following actions shall provide the contractor with a written statement of the basis for his or her action at the time the action is taken, including any relevant facts that were relied upon in taking the action.

(1) A refusal to grant an extension under paragraph (c)(4) of the standard clauses.

(2) A request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clauses.

(3) A refusal to grant a waiver under paragraph (i) of the standard clauses.

(4) A refusal to approve an assignment under paragraph (k)(1) of the standard clauses.

(5) A refusal to grant an extension of the exclusive license period under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22.

(c) Each agency shall establish and publish procedures under which any of the agency actions listed in paragraph (b) of this section may be appealed to the head of the agency or designee. Review at this level shall consider both the factual and legal basis for the actions and its consistency with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200-206.

(d) Appeals procedures established under paragraph (c) of this section shall include administrative due process procedures and standards for fact-finding at least comparable to those set forth in § 401.6 (e) through (g) whenever there is a dispute as to the factual basis for an agency request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clause, including any dispute as to whether or not an invention is a subject invention.

(e) To the extent that any of the actions described in paragraph (b) of this section are subject to appeal under the Contract Dispute Act, the procedures under the Act will satisfy the requirements of paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.12 Licensing of background patent rights to third parties.

(a) A funding agreement with a small business firm or a domestic nonprofit organization will not contain a provision allowing a Federal agency to require the licensing to third parties of inventions owned by the contractor that are not subject inventions unless such provision has been approved by the agency head and a written justification has been signed by the agency head. Any such provision will clearly state whether the licensing may be required in connection with the practice of a subject invention, a specifically identified work object, or both. The agency head may not delegate the authority to approve such provisions or to sign the justification required for such provisions.

(b) A Federal agency will not require the licensing of third parties under any such provision unless the agency head determines that the use of the invention by others is necessary for the practice of a subject invention or for the use of a work object of the funding agreement and that such action is necessary to achieve practical application of the subject invention or work object. Any such determination will be on the record after an opportunity for an agency hearing. The contractor shall be given prompt notification of the determination by certified or registered mail. Any action commenced for judicial review of such determination shall be brought within sixty days after notification of such determination.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.13 Administration of patent rights clauses.

(a) In the event a subject invention is made under funding agreements of more than one agency, at the request of the contractor or on their own initiative the agencies shall designate one agency as responsible for administration of the rights of the government in the invention.

(b) Agencies shall promptly grant, unless there is a significant reason not to, a request by a nonprofit organization under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22 inasmuch as 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) has since been amended to eliminate the limitation on the duration of exclusive licenses. Similarly, unless there is a significant reason not to, agencies shall promptly approve an assignment by a nonprofit organization to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions when a request for approval has been necessitated under paragraph (k)(1) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22 because the patent management organization is engaged in or holds a substantial interest in other organizations engaged in the manufacture or sale of products or the use of processes that might utilize the invention or be in competition with embodiments of the invention. As amended, 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) no longer contains this limitation. The policy of this subsection should also be followed in connection with similar approvals that may be required under Institutional Patent Agreements, other patent rights clauses, or waivers that predate Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code.

(c) The President's Patent Policy Memorandum of February 18, 1983, states that agencies should protect the confidentiality of invention disclosure, patent applications, and utilization reports required in performance or in

consequence of awards to the extent permitted by 35 U.S.C. 205 or other applicable laws. The following requirements should be followed for funding agreements covered by and predating this part 401.

(1) To the extent authorized by 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) any information disclosing a subject invention for a reasonable time in order for a patent application to be filed. With respect to subject inventions of contractors that are small business firms or nonprofit organizations, a reasonable time shall be the time during which an initial patent application may be filed under paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at § 401.14(a) or such other clause may be used in the funding agreement. However, an agency may disclose such subject inventions under the FOIA, at its discretion, after a contractor has elected not to retain title or after the time in which the contractor is required to make an election if the contractor has not made an election within that time. Similarly, an agency may honor a FOIA request at its discretion if it finds that the same information has previously been published by the inventor, contractor, or otherwise. If the agency plans to file itself when the contractor has not elected title, it may, of course, continue to avail itself of the authority of 35 U.S.C. 205.

(2) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose or release for a period of 18 months from the filing date of the patent application to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act, or otherwise, copies of any document which the agency obtained under this clause which is part of an application for patent with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office or any foreign patent office filed by the contractor (or its assignees, licensees, or employees) on a subject invention to which the contractor has elected to retain title. This prohibition does not extend to disclosure to other government agencies or contractors of government agencies under an obligation to maintain such information in confidence.

(3) A number of agencies have policies to encourage public dissemination of the results of work supported by the agency through publication in government or other publications of technical reports of contractors or others. In recognition of the fact that such publication, if it included descriptions of a subject invention could create bars to obtaining patent protection, it is the policy of the executive branch that agencies will not include in such publication programs copies of disclosures of inventions submitted by small business firms or nonprofit organizations, pursuant to paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at § 401.14(a), except that under the same circumstances under which agencies are authorized to release such information pursuant to FOIA requests under paragraph (c)(1) of this section, agencies may publish such disclosures.

(4) Nothing in this paragraph is intended to preclude agencies from including in the publication activities described in the first sentence of paragraph (c)(3), the publication of materials describing a subject invention to the extent such materials were provided as part of a technical report or other submission of the contractor which were submitted independently of the requirements of the patent rights provisions of the contract. However, if a small business firm or nonprofit organization notifies the agency that a particular report or other submission contains a disclosure of a subject invention to which it has elected title or may elect title, the agency shall use reasonable efforts to restrict its publication of the material for six months from date of its receipt of the report or submission or, if earlier, until the contractor has filed an initial patent application. Agencies, of course, retain the discretion to delay publication for additional periods of time.

(5) Nothing in this paragraph is intended to limit the authority of agencies provided in 35 U.S.C. 205 in circumstances not specifically described in this paragraph.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987; 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.14 Standard patent rights clauses.

(a) The following is the standard patent rights clause to be used as specified in § 401.3(a).

Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)

(a) Definitions

(1) Invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).

(2) Subject invention means any invention of the contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(3) Practical Application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(4) Made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(5) Small Business Firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3-8 and 13 CFR 121.3-12, respectively, will be used.

(6) Nonprofit Organization means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (25 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Contractor may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Contractor retains title, the Federal government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Application by Contractor

(1) The contractor will disclose each subject invention to the Federal Agency within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to contractor personnel responsible for patent matters. The disclosure to the agency shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the contract under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the agency, the Contractor will promptly notify the agency of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the contractor.

(2) The Contractor will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the Federal agency within two years of disclosure to the Federal agency. However, in any case where publication, on sale or public use has initiated the one year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The contractor will file its initial patent application on a subject invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The contractor will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application or six months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure, election, and filing under subparagraphs (1), (2), and (3) may, at the discretion of the agency, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The contractor will convey to the Federal agency, upon written request, title to any subject invention --

(1) If the contractor fails to disclose or elect title to the subject invention within the times specified in (c), above, or elects not to retain title; provided that the agency may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the contractor to disclose or elect within the specified times.

(2) In those countries in which the contractor fails to file patent applications within the times specified in (c) above; provided, however, that if the contractor has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in (c) above, but prior to its receipt of the written request of the Federal agency, the contractor shall continue to retain title in that country.

(3) In any country in which the contractor decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to Contractor and Protection of the Contractor Right to File

(1) The contractor will retain a nonexclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the contractor fails to disclose the invention within the times specified in (c), above. The contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiary and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the contractor is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of the Federal agency except when transferred to the successor of that party of the contractor's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The contractor's domestic license may be revoked or modified by the funding Federal agency to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and agency licensing regulations (if any). This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the contractor has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the contractor, its licensees, or the domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the contractor will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by the funding Federal agency for good cause shown by the contractor) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The contractor has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and agency regulations (if any) concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of the license.

(f) Contractor Action to Protect the Government's Interest

(1) The contractor agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to the Federal agency all instruments necessary to (i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to

which the contractor elects to retain title, and (ii) convey title to the Federal agency when requested under paragraph (d) above and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the contractor each subject invention made under contract in order that the contractor can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c), above, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by (c)(1), above. The contractor shall instruct such employees through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The contractor will notify the Federal agency of any decisions not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than thirty days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The contractor agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent applications and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement, "This invention was made with government support under (identify the contract) awarded by (identify the Federal agency). The government has certain rights in the invention."

(g) Subcontracts

(1) The contractor will include this clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization. The subcontractor will retain all rights provided for the contractor in this clause, and the contractor will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions.

(2) The contractor will include in all other subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental developmental or research work the patent rights clause required by (cite section of agency implementing regulations or FAR).

(3) In the case of subcontracts, at any tier, when the prime award with the Federal agency was a contract (but not a grant or cooperative agreement), the agency, subcontractor, and the contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Federal agency with respect to the matters covered by the clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause.

(h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The Contractor agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the contractor or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the contractor, and such other data and information as the agency may reasonably specify. The contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by the agency in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by the agency in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), the agency agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the government without permission of the contractor.

(i) Preference for United States Industry

Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the contractor agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject inventions in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by the Federal agency upon a showing by the contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in Rights

The contractor agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, the Federal agency has the right in accordance with the procedures in 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the agency to require the contractor, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the contractor, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request the Federal agency has the right to grant such a license itself if the Federal agency determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use.

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the contractor, assignee or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the contractor, assignee or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Contracts with Nonprofit Organizations

If the contractor is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned without the approval of the Federal agency, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the contractor;

(2) The contractor will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when the agency deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the contractor with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject invention that are small business firms and that it will give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the contractor determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, that the contractor is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the contractor. However, the contractor agrees that the Secretary may review the contractor's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the contractor will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures, or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the contractor could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communication

(Complete According to Instructions at 401.5(b))

(b) When the Department of Energy (DOE) determines to use alternative provisions under § 401.3(a)(4), the standard clause at § 401.14(a), of this section, shall be used with the following modifications unless a substitute clause is drafted by DOE:

(1) The title of the clause shall be changed to read as follows: Patent Rights to Nonprofit DOE Facility Operators

(2) Add an "(A)" after "(1)" in paragraph (c)(1) and add subparagraphs (B) and (C) to paragraph (c)(1) as follows:

(B) If the subject invention occurred under activities funded by the naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs of DOE, then the provisions of this subparagraph (c)(1)(B) will apply in lieu of paragraphs (c)(2) and (3). In such cases the contractor agrees to assign the government the entire right, title, and interest thereto throughout the world in and to the subject invention except to the extent that rights are retained by the contractor through a greater rights determination or under paragraph (e), below. The contractor, or an employee-inventor, with authorization of the contractor, may submit a request for greater rights at the time the invention is disclosed or within a reasonable time thereafter. DOE will process such a request in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.15. Each determination of greater rights will be subject to paragraphs (h)-(k) of this clause and such additional conditions, if any, deemed to be appropriate by the Department of Energy.

(C) At the time an invention is disclosed in accordance with (c)(1)(A) above, or within 90 days thereafter, the contractor will submit a written statement as to whether or not the invention occurred under a naval nuclear propulsion or weapons-related program of the Department of Energy. If this statement is not filed within this time, subparagraph (c)(1)(B) will apply in lieu of paragraphs (c)(2) and (3). The contractor statement will be deemed conclusive unless, within 60 days thereafter, the Contracting Officer disagrees in writing, in which case the determination of the Contracting Officer will be deemed conclusive unless the contractor files a claim under the Contract Disputes Act within 60 days after the Contracting Officer's determination. Pending resolution of the matter, the invention will be subject to subparagraph (c)(1)(B).

(3) Paragraph (k)(3) of the clause will be modified as prescribed at § 401.5(g).

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.15 Deferred determinations.

(a) This section applies to requests for greater rights in subject inventions made by contractors when deferred determination provisions were included in the funding agreement because one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a) was applied, except that the Department of Energy is authorized to process deferred determinations either in accordance with its waiver regulations or this section. A contractor requesting greater rights should include with its request information on its plans and intentions to bring the invention to practical application. Within 90 days after receiving a request and supporting information, or sooner if a statutory bar to patenting is imminent, the agency should seek to make a determination. In any event, if a bar to patenting is imminent, unless the agency plans to file on its own, it shall authorize the contractor to file a patent application pending a determination by the agency. Such a filing shall normally be at the contractor's own risk and expense. However, if the agency subsequently refuses to allow the contractor to retain title and elects to proceed with the patent application under government ownership, it shall reimburse the contractor for the cost of preparing and filing the patent application.

(b) If the circumstances of concerns which originally led the agency to invoke an exception under § 401.3(a) are not applicable to the actual subject invention or are no longer valid because of subsequent events, the agency should allow the contractor to retain title to the invention on the same conditions as would have applied if the standard clause at § 401.14(a) had been used originally, unless it has been licensed.

(c) If paragraph (b) is not applicable the agency shall make its determination based on an assessment whether its own plans regarding the invention will better promote the policies and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 than will contractor ownership of the invention. Moreover, if the agency is concerned only about specific uses or applications of the

invention, it shall consider leaving title in the contractor with additional conditions imposed upon the contractor's use of the invention for such applications or with expanded government license rights in such applications.

(d) A determination not to allow the contractor to retain title to a subject invention or to restrict or condition its title with conditions differing from those in the clause at § 401.14(a), unless made by the head of the agency, shall be appealable by the contractor to an agency official at a level above the person who made the determination. This appeal shall be subject to the procedures applicable to appeals under § 401.11 of this part.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987]

§ 401.16 Electronic filing.

Unless otherwise requested or directed by the agency,

(a) the written report required in (c)(1) of the standard clause in § 401.14(a) may be electronically filed;

(b) the written election required in (c)(2) of the standard clause in § 401.14(a) may be electronically filed; and

(c) the close-out report in (f)(1) and the information identified in (f)(2) and (f)(3) of § 401.5 may be electronically filed.

**Legislative History**

[60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.17 Submissions and inquiries.

All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Director, Technology Competitiveness Staff, Office of Technology Policy, Technology Administration, telephone number 202-482-2100, Room H4418, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20230.

**Legislative History**

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987; redesignated and revised at 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

## PART 404 --LICENSING OF GOVERNMENT OWNED INVENTIONS

§ 404.1 Scope of part.

This part prescribes the terms, conditions, and procedures upon which a federally owned invention, other than an invention in the custody of the Tennessee Valley Authority, may be licensed. It supersedes the regulations at 41 CFR Subpart 101-4.1. This part does not affect licenses which (a) were in effect prior to July 1, 1981; (b) may exist at the time of the Government's acquisition of title to the invention, including those resulting from the allocation of rights to

inventions made under Government research and development contracts; (c) are the result of an authorized exchange of rights in the settlement of patent disputes; or (d) are otherwise authorized by law or treaty.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.2 Policy and objective.

It is the policy and objective of this subpart to use the patent system to promote the utilization of inventions arising from federally supported research or development.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.3 Definitions.

(a) Federally owned invention means an invention, plant, or design which is covered by a patent, or patent application in the United States, or a patent, patent application, plant variety protection, or other form of protection, in a foreign country, title to which has been assigned to or otherwise vested in the United States Government.

(b) Federal agency means an executive department, military department, Government corporation, or independent establishment, except the Tennessee Valley Authority, which has custody of a federally owned invention.

(c) Small business firm means a small business concern as defined in section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration.

(d) Practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

(e) United States means the United States of America, its territories and possessions, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.4 Authority to grant licenses.

Federally owned inventions shall be made available for licensing as deemed appropriate in the public interest. Federal agencies having custody of federally owned inventions may grant nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive licenses thereto under this part.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.5 Restrictions and conditions on all licenses granted under this part.

(a)(1) A license may be granted only if the applicant has supplied the Federal agency with a satisfactory plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, and with information about the applicant's capability to fulfill the plan.

(2) A license granting rights to use or sell under a federally owned invention in the United States shall normally be granted only to a licensee who agrees that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States.

(b) Licenses shall contain such terms and conditions as the Federal agency determines are appropriate for the protection of the interests of the Federal Government and the public and are not in conflict with law or this part. The following terms and conditions apply to any license:

(1) The duration of the license shall be for a period specified in the license agreement, unless sooner terminated in accordance with this part.

(2) The license may be granted for all or less than all fields of use of the invention or in specified geographical areas, or both.

(3) The license may extend to subsidiaries of the licensee or other parties if provided for in the license but shall be nonassignable without approval of the Federal agency, except to the successor of that part of the licensee's business to which the invention pertains.

(4) The licensee may provide the license the right to grant sublicenses under the license, subject to the approval of the Federal agency. Each sublicense shall make reference to the license, including the rights retained by the Government, and a copy of such sublicense shall be furnished to the Federal agency.

(5) The license shall require the licensee to carry out the plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, to bring the invention to practical application within a period specified in the license, and to continue to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public.

(6) The license shall require the licensee to report periodically on the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the licensee, with particular reference to the plan submitted.

(7) Licenses may be royalty-free or for royalties or other consideration.

(8) Where an agreement is obtained pursuant to § 404.5(a)(2) that any products embodying the invention or produced through use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States, the license shall recite such agreement.

(9) The license shall provide for the right of the Federal agency to terminate the license, in whole or in part, if:

(i) The Federal agency determines that the licensee is not executing the plan submitted with its request for a license and the licensee cannot otherwise demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that it has taken or can be expected to take within a reasonable time effective steps to achieve practical application of the invention;

(ii) The Federal agency determines that such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations issued after the date of the license and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the licensee;

(iii) The licensee has willfully made a false statement of or willfully omitted a material fact in the license application or in any report required by the license agreement; or

(iv) The licensee commits a substantial breach of a covenant or agreement contained in the license.

(10) The license may be modified or terminated, consistent with this part, upon mutual agreement of the Federal agency and the licensee.

(11) Nothing relating to the grant of a license, nor the grant itself, shall be construed to confer upon any person any immunity from or defenses under the antitrust laws or from a charge of patent misuse, and the acquisition and use of rights pursuant to this part shall not be immunized from the operation of state or Federal law by reason of the source of the grant.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.6 Nonexclusive licenses.

(a) Nonexclusive licenses may be granted under federally owned inventions without publication of availability or notice of a prospective license.

(b) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the nonexclusive license may also provide that, after termination of a period specified in the license agreement, the Federal agency may restrict the license to the fields of use or geographic areas, or both, in which the licensee has brought the invention to practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. However, such restriction shall be made only in order to grant an exclusive or partially exclusive license in accordance with this subpart.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.7 Exclusive and partially exclusive licenses.

(a)(1) Exclusive or partially exclusive domestic licenses may be granted on federally owned inventions three months after notice of the invention's availability has been announced in the FEDERAL REGISTER, or without such notice where the Federal agency determines that expeditious granting of such a license will best serve the interest of the Federal Government and the public; and in either situation, only if;

(i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and the prospective licensee, has been published in the Federal Register, providing opportunity for written objections within at least a 15-day period;

(ii) After expiration of the period in § 404.7(a)(1)(i) and consideration of any written objections received during the period, the Federal agency has determined that;

(A) The interests of the Federal Government and the public will best be served by the proposed license, in view of the applicant's intentions, plans, and ability to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public;

(B) The desired practical application has not been achieved, or is not likely expeditiously to be achieved, under any nonexclusive license which has been granted, or which may be granted, on the invention;

(C) Exclusive or partially exclusive licensing is a reasonable and necessary incentive to call forth the investment of risk capital and expenditures to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public; and

(D) The proposed terms and scope of exclusivity are not greater than reasonably necessary to provide the incentive for bringing the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public;

(iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the country in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with the antitrust laws; and

(iv) The Federal agency has given first preference to any small business firms submitting plans that are determined by the agency to be within the capabilities of the firms and as equally likely, if executed, to bring the invention to practical application as any plans submitted by applicants that are not small business firms.

(2) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the following terms and conditions apply to domestic exclusive and partially exclusive licenses;

(i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.

(ii) The license shall reserve to the Federal agency the right to require the licensee to grant sublicenses to responsible applicants, on reasonable terms, when necessary to fulfill health or safety needs.

(iii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.

(iv) The license may grant the licensee the right of enforcement of the licensed patent pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 29 of Title 35, United States Code, or other statutes, as determined appropriate in the public interest.

(b)(1) Exclusive or partially exclusive licenses may be granted on a federally owned invention covered by a foreign patent, patent application, or other form of protection, provided that;

(i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and the prospective licensee, has been published in the Federal Register, providing opportunity for written objections within at least a 15-day period and following consideration of such written objections received during the period.

(ii) The agency has considered whether the interests of the Federal Government or United States industry in foreign commerce will be enhanced; and

(iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the United States in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with antitrust laws.

(2) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5 the following terms and conditions apply to foreign exclusive and partially exclusive licenses:

(i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.

(ii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.

(iii) The license may grant the licensee the right to take any suitable and necessary actions to protect the licensed property, on behalf of the Federal Government.

(c) Federal agencies shall maintain a record of determinations to grant exclusive or partially exclusive licenses.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985; 66 FR 34545, 34546, June 29, 2001]

**Legislative History**

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 66 FR 34545, 34546, June 29, 2001, revised paragraphs (a)(1)(i) and (b)(1)(i), effective June 29, 2001.]

§ 404.8 Application for a license.

An application for a license should be addressed to the Federal agency having custody of the invention and shall normally include:

(a) Identification of the invention for which the license is desired including the patent application serial number or patent number, title, and date, if known;

(b) Identification of the type of license for which the application is submitted;

(c) Name and address of the person, company, or organization applying for the license and the citizenship or place of incorporation of the applicant;

(d) Name, address, and telephone number of the representative of the applicant to whom correspondence should be sent;

(e) Nature and type of applicant's business, identifying products or services which the applicant has successfully commercialized, and approximate number of applicant's employees;

(f) Source of information concerning the availability of a license on the invention;

(g) A statement indicating whether the applicant is a small business firm as defined in § 404.3(c)

(h) A detailed description of applicant's plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, which should include:

(1) A statement of the time, nature and amount of anticipated investment of capital and other resources which applicant believes will be required to bring the invention to practical application;

(2) A statement as to applicant's capability and intention to fulfill the plan, including information regarding manufacturing, marketing, financial, and technical resources;

(3) A statement of the fields of use for which applicant intends to practice the invention; and

(4) A statement of the geographic areas in which applicant intends to manufacture any products embodying the invention and geographic areas where applicant intends to use or sell the invention, or both;

(i) Identification of licenses previously granted to applicant under federally owned inventions;

(j) A statement containing applicant's best knowledge of the extent to which the invention is being practiced by private industry or Government, or both, or is otherwise available commercially; and

(k) Any other information which applicant believes will support a determination to grant the license to applicant.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.9 Notice to Attorney General.

A copy of the notice provided for in § 404.7 (a)(1)(i) and (b)(1)(i) will be sent to the Attorney General.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.10 Modification and termination of licenses.

Before modifying or terminating a license, other than by mutual agreement, the Federal agency shall furnish the licensee and any sublicensee of record a written notice of intention to modify or terminate the license, and the licensee and any sublicensee shall be allowed 30 days after such notice to remedy any breach of the license or show cause why the license shall not be modified or terminated.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.11 Appeals.

In accordance with procedures prescribed by the Federal agency, the following parties may appeal to the agency head or designee any decision or determination concerning the grant, denial, interpretation, modification, or termination of a license:

(a) A person whose application for a license has been denied.

(b) A licensee whose license has been modified or terminated, in whole or in part; or

(c) A person who timely filed a written objection in response to the notice required by § 404.7(a)(1)(i) or § 404.7(b)(1)(i) and who can demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that such person may be damaged by the agency action.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.12 Protection and administration of inventions.

A Federal agency may take any suitable and necessary steps to protect and administer rights to federally owner inventions, either directly or through contract.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.13 Transfer of custody.

A Federal agency having custody of a federally owned invention may transfer custody and administration, in whole or in part, to another Federal agency, of the right, title, or interest in such invention.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

§ 404.14 Confidentiality of information.

Title 35, United States Code, section 209, provides that any plan submitted pursuant to § 404.8(h) and any report required by § 404.5(b)(6) may be treated by the Federal agency as commercial and financial information obtained from a person and privileged and confidential and not subject to disclosure under section 552 of Title 5 of the United States Code.

**Legislative History**

[50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985]

CHAPTER V --UNDER SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PART 501 --UNIFORM PATENT POLICY FOR RIGHTS IN INVENTIONS MADE BY GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES

§ 501.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to provide for the administration of a uniform patent policy for the Government with respect to the rights in inventions made by Government employees and to prescribe rules and regulations for implementing and effectuating such policy.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988; 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996, which revised this section, became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.2 Scope.

This part applies to any invention made by a Government employee and to any action taken with respect thereto.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988]

§ 501.3 Definitions.

(a) The term Secretary, as used in this part, means the Under Secretary of Commerce for Technology.

(b) The term Government agency, as used in this part, means any Executive department or independent establishment of the Executive branch of the Government (including any independent regulatory commission or board, any corporation wholly owned by the United States, and the Smithsonian Institution), but does not include the Department of Energy for inventions made under the provisions of 42 U.S.C. 2182, the Tennessee Valley Authority, or the Postal Service.

(c) The term Government employee, as used in this part, means any officer or employee, civilian or military, of any Government agency, including any special Government employee as defined in 18 U.S.C. 202 or an individual working for a Federal agency pursuant to the Intergovernmental Personnel Act (IPA), 5 U.S.C. 1304 and 3371-3376, or a part-time consultant or part-time employee as defined in 29 U.S.C. 2101(a)(8) except as may otherwise be provided by agency regulation approved by the Secretary.

(d) The term invention, as used in this part, means any art or process, machine, manufacture, design, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, or any variety of plant, which is or may be patentable under the patent laws of the United States.

(e) The term made as used in this part in relation to any invention, means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention as stated in In re King, 3 USPQ2d (BNA) 1747 (Comm'r Pat. 1987).

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, as amended at 55 FR 38983, Sept. 24, 1990; 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996, which revised this section, became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.4 Determination of inventions and rights.

Each Government agency has the approval of the Secretary to determine whether the results of research, development, or other activity in the agency constitute an invention within the purview of Executive Order 10096, as amended by Executive Order 10930 and Executive Order 10695, and to determine the rights in and to the invention in accordance with the provisions of § § 501.6 and 501.7.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988; 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996, which revised this section, became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.5 Agency Liaison Officer.

Each Government agency shall designate a liaison officer to represent the agency before the Secretary; Provided, however, that the Departments of the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force may each designate a liaison officer.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988]

§ 501.6 Criteria for the Determination of rights in and to inventions.

(a) The following rules shall be applied in determining the respective rights of the Government and of the inventor in and to any invention that is subject to the provisions of this part:

(1) The Government shall obtain, except as herein otherwise provided, the entire right, title and interest in and to any invention made by any Government employee:

(i) During working hours, or

(ii) With a contribution by the Government of facilities, equipment, materials, funds or information, or of time or services of other Government employees on official duty, or

(iii) Which bears a direct relation to or is made in consequence of the official duties of the inventor.

(2) In any case where the contribution of the Government, as measured by any one or more of the criteria set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, to the invention is insufficient equitably to justify a requirement of assignment to the Government of the entire right, title and interest in and to such invention, or in any case where the Government has insufficient interest in an invention to obtain the entire right, title and interest therein (although the Government could obtain same under paragraph (a)(1) of this section), the Government agency concerned shall leave title to such invention in the employee, subject however, to the reservation to the Government of a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes. The terms of such reservation will appear, where practicable, in any patent, domestic or foreign, which may issue on such invention. Reference is made to section 15 of the Federal Technology Transfer Act of 1986 (15 U.S.C. 3710d) which requires a Government agency to allow the inventor to retain title to any covered invention when the agency does not intend to file a patent application or otherwise promote commercialization.

(3) In applying the provisions of paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section to the facts and circumstances relating to the making of a particular invention, it shall be presumed that an invention made by an employee who is employed or assigned:

(i) To invent or improve or perfect any art or process, machine, design, manufacture, or composition of matter;

(ii) To conduct or perform research, development work, or both,

(iii) To supervise, direct, coordinate, or review Government financed or conducted research, development work, or both, or

(iv) To act in a liaison capacity among governmental or non-governmental agencies or individuals engaged in such research or development work, falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and it shall be presumed that any invention made by any other employee falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Either presumption may be rebutted by a showing of the facts and circumstances in the case and shall not preclude a determination that these facts and circumstances justify leaving the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.

(4) In any case wherein the Government neither:

(i) Obtains the entire right, title and interest in and to an invention pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section nor

(ii) Reserves a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention, with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes, pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section, the Government shall leave the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988; 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996, which amended this section, became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.7 Agency determination.

(a) If the agency determines that the Government is entitled to obtain title pursuant to § 501.6(a)(1) and the employee does not appeal, no further review is required.

(b) In the event that a Government agency determines, pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) or (a)(4) of § 501.6, that title to an invention will be left with the employee, the agency shall notify the employee of this determination. In cases pursuant to § 501.6(a)(2) where the Government's insufficient interest in the invention is evidenced by its decision not to file a patent application, the agency may impose on the employee any one or all of the following conditions or any other conditions that may be necessary in a particular case:

(1) That a patent application be filed in the United States and/or abroad, if the Government has determined that it has or may need to practice the invention;

(2) That the invention not be assigned to any foreign-owned or controlled corporation without the written permission of the agency; and

(3) That any assignment or license of rights to use or sell the invention in the United States shall contain a requirement that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention be substantially manufactured in the United States. The agency shall notify the employee of any conditions imposed.

(c) In the case of a determination under either paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, the agency shall promptly provide the employee with:

(1) A signed and dated statement of its determination and reasons therefor; and

(2) A copy of 37 CFR part 501.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988; 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 40999, Aug. 7, 1996, which revised paragraphs (b) and (c), became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.8 Appeals by employees.

(a) Any Government employee who is aggrieved by a Government agency determination pursuant to § § 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2), may obtain a review of any agency determination by filing, within 30 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown in writing, fix in any case) after receiving notice of such determination, two copies of an appeal with the Secretary. The Secretary then shall forward one copy of the appeal to the liaison officer of the Government agency.

(b) On receipt of a copy of an appeal filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the agency liaison officer shall, subject to considerations of national security, or public health, safety or welfare, promptly furnish both the Secretary and the inventor with a copy of a report containing the following information about the invention involved in the appeal:

(1) A copy of the agency's statement specified in § 501.7(c);

(2) A description of the invention in sufficient detail to identify the invention and show its relationship to the employee's duties and work assignments;

(3) The name of the employee and employment status, including a detailed statement of official duties and responsibilities at the time the invention was made; and

(4) A detailed statement of the points of dispute or controversy, together with copies of any statements or written arguments filed with the agency, and of any other relevant evidence that the agency considered in making its determination of Government interest.

(c) Within 25 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown, fix in any case) after the transmission of a copy of the agency report to the employee, the employee may file a reply with the Secretary and file one copy with the agency liaison officer.

(d) After the time for the inventor's reply to the Government agency's report has expired and if the inventor has so requested in his or her appeal, a date will be set for hearing of oral arguments before the Secretary, by the employee (or by an attorney whom he or she designates by written power of attorney filed before, or at the hearing) and a representative of the Government agency involved. Unless it shall be otherwise ordered before the hearing begins, oral arguments will be limited to thirty minutes for each side. The employee need not retain an attorney or request an oral

hearing to secure full consideration of the facts and his or her arguments. The employee may expedite such consideration by notifying the Secretary when he or she does not intend to file a reply to the agency report.

(e) After a hearing on the appeal, if a hearing was requested, or after expiration of the period for the inventor's reply to the agency report if no hearing is set, the Secretary shall issue a decision on the matter within 120 days, which decision shall be final after a thirty day period for requesting reconsideration expires or on the date that a decision on a petition for reconsideration is finally disposed of. Any request for reconsideration or modification of the decision must be filed within 30 days from the date of the original decision (or within such an extension thereof as may be set by the Secretary before the original period expires). The decision of the Secretary shall be made after consideration of the statements of fact in the employee's appeal, the agency's report, and the employee's reply, but the Secretary at his or her discretion and with due respect to the rights and convenience of the inventor and the Government agency, may call for further statements on specific questions of fact or may request additional evidence in the form of affidavits or depositions on specific facts in dispute.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988; 61 FR 40997, 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 41000, Aug. 7, 1996, which revised paragraphs (a) and (b), redesignated paragraphs (c) and (d) as paragraphs (d) and (e), and added new paragraph (c), became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.9 Patent protection.

(a) A Government agency, upon determining that an invention coming within the scope of § § 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2) has been made, shall promptly determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States by or on behalf of the agency for such invention. A controversy over the respective rights of the Government and of the employee shall not unnecessarily delay the filing of a patent application by the agency to avoid the loss of patent rights. In cases coming within the scope of § 501.6(a)(2), the filing of a patent application shall be contingent upon the consent of the employee.

(b) Where there is an appealed dispute as to whether § § 501.6 (a)(1) or (a)(2) applies in determining the respective rights of the Government and of an employee in and to any invention, the agency may determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States pending the Secretary's decision on the dispute. If the agency decides that an application for patent should be filed, the agency will take such rights as are specified in § 501.6(a)(2), but this shall be without prejudice to acquiring the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(c) Where an agency has determined to leave title to an invention with an employee under § 501.6(a)(2), the agency will, upon the filing of an application for patent, take the rights specified in that paragraph without prejudice to the subsequent acquisition by the Government of the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(d) Where an agency has filed a patent application in the United States, the agency will, within 8 months from the filing date of the U.S. application, determine if any foreign patent applications should also be filed. If the agency chooses not to file an application in any foreign country, the employee may request rights in that country subject to the conditions stated in § 501.7(b) that may be imposed by the agency. Alternatively, the agency may permit the employee to retain foreign rights by including in any assignment to the Government of an unclassified U.S. patent application on the invention an option for the Government to acquire title in any foreign country within 8 months from the filing date of the U.S. application.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988; 61 FR 40997, 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 41000, Aug. 7, 1996, which revised this section, became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]

§ 501.10 Dissemination of this part and of implementing regulations.

Each Government agency shall disseminate to its employees the provisions of this part, and any appropriate implementing agency regulations and delegations. Copies of any such regulations shall be sent to the Secretary. If the Secretary identifies an inconsistency between this part and the agency regulations or delegations, the agency, upon being informed by the Secretary of the inconsistency, shall take prompt action to correct it.

**Legislative History**

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988]

§ 501.11 Submissions and inquiries.

All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Chief Counsel for Technology, telephone number 202-482-1984, Room H4835, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington DC 20230.

**Legislative History**

[61 FR 40997, 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]

[EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 61 FR 40997, 41000, Aug. 7, 1996, which added this section, became effective Aug. 7, 1996.]